



2 Chronicles

translationNotes

v10

Copyrights & Licensing

License:

This work is made available under a [Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License](#), which means

You are free:

- Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

Under the following conditions:

- Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <http://unfoldingword.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

Use of trademarks: **unfoldingWord** is a trademark of Distant Shores Media and may not be included on any derivative works created from this content. Unaltered content from <http://unfoldingword.org> must include the **unfoldingWord** logo when distributed to others. But if you alter the content in any way, you must remove the **unfoldingWord** logo before distributing your work.

This work is still being revised, if you have comments or questions please email them to help@door43.org

Version: 10

Published: 2017-10-03

Table of Contents

Copyrights & Licensing	1
translationNotes	24
Introduction to 2 Chronicles	24
2 Chronicles 01 General Notes	27
2 Chronicles 1:1	28
2 Chronicles 1:2	29
2 Chronicles 1:6-7	32
2 Chronicles 1:8-11	33
2 Chronicles 1:12-13	36
2 Chronicles 1:14-15	37
2 Chronicles 1:16-17	39
2 Chronicles 02 General Notes	41
2 Chronicles 2:1-3	42
2 Chronicles 2:4-5	44
2 Chronicles 2:6-7	46
2 Chronicles 2:8-10	48
2 Chronicles 2:11-12	50
2 Chronicles 2:13-14	51
2 Chronicles 2:15-16	53
2 Chronicles 2:17-18	55
2 Chronicles 03 General Notes	57
2 Chronicles 3:1-3	58
2 Chronicles 3:4-5	60
2 Chronicles 3:6-7	62
2 Chronicles 3:8-9	63
2 Chronicles 3:10-11	65
2 Chronicles 3:13-14	66
2 Chronicles 3:15-17	67
2 Chronicles 04 General Notes	69
2 Chronicles 4:1-3	70
2 Chronicles 4:4-6	72
2 Chronicles 4:7-8	74
2 Chronicles 4:9-10	76
2 Chronicles 4:11-13	77
2 Chronicles 4:14-16	79
2 Chronicles 4:17-18	81
2 Chronicles 4:19-21	82
2 Chronicles 4:22	84
2 Chronicles 05 General Notes	85
2 Chronicles 5:1	86
2 Chronicles 5:2-3	87

Table of Contents

2 Chronicles 5:4-6	89
2 Chronicles 5:7-8	91
2 Chronicles 5:9-10	92
2 Chronicles 5:11-12	93
2 Chronicles 5:13-14	95
2 Chronicles 06 General Notes	97
2 Chronicles 6:1-3	98
2 Chronicles 6:4-6	100
2 Chronicles 6:7-9	102
2 Chronicles 6:10-11	104
2 Chronicles 6:12-13	106
2 Chronicles 6:14-15	108
2 Chronicles 6:16-17	110
2 Chronicles 6:18-20	112
2 Chronicles 6:21	115
2 Chronicles 6:22-23	116
2 Chronicles 6:24-25	118
2 Chronicles 6:26-27	120
2 Chronicles 6:28-31	122
2 Chronicles 6:32-33	124
2 Chronicles 6:34-35	126
2 Chronicles 6:36-39	128
2 Chronicles 6:40-42	131
2 Chronicles 07 General Notes	134
2 Chronicles 7:1-3	135
2 Chronicles 7:4-6	137
2 Chronicles 7:7	139
2 Chronicles 7:8-10	140
2 Chronicles 7:11-12	142
2 Chronicles 7:13-15	144
2 Chronicles 7:16-18	147
2 Chronicles 7:19-20	149
2 Chronicles 7:21-22	151
2 Chronicles 08 General Notes	153
2 Chronicles 8:1-2	154
2 Chronicles 8:3-4	156
2 Chronicles 8:5-6	158
2 Chronicles 8:7-8	160
2 Chronicles 8:9-10	162
2 Chronicles 8:11	163
2 Chronicles 8:12-13	165
2 Chronicles 8:14-15	167
2 Chronicles 8:16	169

2 Chronicles 8:17-18	170
2 Chronicles 09 General Notes	172
2 Chronicles 9:1-2	173
2 Chronicles 9:3-4	175
2 Chronicles 9:5-6	177
2 Chronicles 9:7-8	179
2 Chronicles 9:9	181
2 Chronicles 9:10	182
2 Chronicles 9:13-14	184
2 Chronicles 9:15-16	185
2 Chronicles 9:17-18	188
2 Chronicles 9:19-21	190
2 Chronicles 9:22-24	192
2 Chronicles 9:25-26	194
2 Chronicles 9:27-28	195
2 Chronicles 9:29-31	196
2 Chronicles 10 General Notes	198
2 Chronicles 10:1-2	199
2 Chronicles 10:3-5	200
2 Chronicles 10:6-7	202
2 Chronicles 10:8-9	203
2 Chronicles 10:10-11	204
2 Chronicles 10:12-14	206
2 Chronicles 10:15	208
2 Chronicles 10:16	210
2 Chronicles 10:17-19	212
2 Chronicles 11 General Notes	214
2 Chronicles 11:1	215
2 Chronicles 11:2-4	217
2 Chronicles 11:5-10	219
2 Chronicles 11:11-12	220
2 Chronicles 11:13-15	221
2 Chronicles 11:16-17	223
2 Chronicles 11:18-19	225
2 Chronicles 11:20-21	226
2 Chronicles 11:22-23	228
2 Chronicles 12 General Notes	229
2 Chronicles 12:1	230
2 Chronicles 12:2-4	231
2 Chronicles 12:5-6	233
2 Chronicles 12:7-8	235
2 Chronicles 12:9-10	237
2 Chronicles 12:11-12	239

Table of Contents

2 Chronicles 12:13-14	241
2 Chronicles 12:15-16	243
2 Chronicles 13 General Notes	245
2 Chronicles 13:1-3	246
2 Chronicles 13:4-5	248
2 Chronicles 13:6-7	249
2 Chronicles 13:8-9	250
2 Chronicles 13:10-11	252
2 Chronicles 13:12	254
2 Chronicles 13:13-15	255
2 Chronicles 13:16-18	257
2 Chronicles 13:19-22	259
2 Chronicles 14 General Notes	261
2 Chronicles 14:1-4	262
2 Chronicles 14:5-6	264
2 Chronicles 14:7-8	266
2 Chronicles 14:9-11	268
2 Chronicles 14:12-13	270
2 Chronicles 14:14-15	272
2 Chronicles 15 General Notes	273
2 Chronicles 15:1-2	274
2 Chronicles 15:3-5	276
2 Chronicles 15:6-7	278
2 Chronicles 15:8-9	280
2 Chronicles 15:10-11	282
2 Chronicles 15:12-13	284
2 Chronicles 15:14-15	285
2 Chronicles 15:16-17	286
2 Chronicles 15:18-19	288
2 Chronicles 16 General Notes	289
2 Chronicles 16:1	290
2 Chronicles 16:2-3	292
2 Chronicles 16:4-6	294
2 Chronicles 16:7-8	296
2 Chronicles 16:9-10	298
2 Chronicles 16:11-12	300
2 Chronicles 16:13-14	302
2 Chronicles 17 General Notes	304
2 Chronicles 17:1-2	305
2 Chronicles 17:3-4	307
2 Chronicles 17:5-6	309
2 Chronicles 17:7-9	311
2 Chronicles 17:10-11	313

2 Chronicles 17:12-13	315
2 Chronicles 17:14-16	316
2 Chronicles 17:17-19	318
2 Chronicles 18 General Notes	319
2 Chronicles 18:1-3	320
2 Chronicles 18:4-5	322
2 Chronicles 18:6-8	324
2 Chronicles 18:9-11	325
2 Chronicles 18:12-14	327
2 Chronicles 18:15-16	329
2 Chronicles 18:17-18	331
2 Chronicles 18:19	333
2 Chronicles 18:20-21	334
2 Chronicles 18:22	335
2 Chronicles 18:23-24	336
2 Chronicles 18:25-27	338
2 Chronicles 18:28-30	340
2 Chronicles 18:31-32	342
2 Chronicles 18:33-34	343
2 Chronicles 19 General Notes	345
2 Chronicles 19:1-3	346
2 Chronicles 19:4-5	349
2 Chronicles 19:6-7	351
2 Chronicles 19:8-9	353
2 Chronicles 19:10	355
2 Chronicles 19:11	357
2 Chronicles 20 General Notes	359
2 Chronicles 20:1-2	360
2 Chronicles 20:3-4	362
2 Chronicles 20:5-7	364
2 Chronicles 20:8-9	366
2 Chronicles 20:10-11	368
2 Chronicles 20:12-13	370
2 Chronicles 20:14-15	371
2 Chronicles 20:16-17	373
2 Chronicles 20:18-19	375
2 Chronicles 20:20-21	377
2 Chronicles 20:22-23	379
2 Chronicles 20:24	381
2 Chronicles 20:25-26	382
2 Chronicles 20:27-28	384
2 Chronicles 20:29-30	386
2 Chronicles 20:31-33	387

Table of Contents

2 Chronicles 20:34	389
2 Chronicles 20:35-37	391
2 Chronicles 21 General Notes	393
2 Chronicles 21:1-3	394
2 Chronicles 21:4-5	396
2 Chronicles 21:6-7	397
2 Chronicles 21:8-10	399
2 Chronicles 21:11	401
2 Chronicles 21:12-15	402
2 Chronicles 21:16-17	404
2 Chronicles 21:18-20	406
2 Chronicles 22 General Notes	408
2 Chronicles 22:1-3	409
2 Chronicles 22:4-5	411
2 Chronicles 22:6	413
2 Chronicles 22:7-8	414
2 Chronicles 22:9	416
2 Chronicles 22:10-12	418
2 Chronicles 23 General Notes	420
2 Chronicles 23:1-3	421
2 Chronicles 23:4-5	424
2 Chronicles 23:6-7	426
2 Chronicles 23:8-9	428
2 Chronicles 23:10-11	430
2 Chronicles 23:12-13	432
2 Chronicles 23:14-15	434
2 Chronicles 23:16-17	436
2 Chronicles 23:18-19	438
2 Chronicles 23:20-21	440
2 Chronicles 24 General Notes	442
2 Chronicles 24:1-3	443
2 Chronicles 24:4-5	445
2 Chronicles 24:6-7	447
2 Chronicles 24:8-10	449
2 Chronicles 24:11-12	450
2 Chronicles 24:13-14	452
2 Chronicles 24:15-16	454
2 Chronicles 24:17-19	456
2 Chronicles 24:20-22	458
2 Chronicles 24:23-24	460
2 Chronicles 24:25-26	462
2 Chronicles 24:27	464
2 Chronicles 25 General Notes	465

2 Chronicles 25:1-2	466
2 Chronicles 25:3-4	468
2 Chronicles 25:5-6	470
2 Chronicles 25:7-8	472
2 Chronicles 25:9-10	473
2 Chronicles 25:11-12	475
2 Chronicles 25:13	476
2 Chronicles 25:14-15	478
2 Chronicles 25:16	480
2 Chronicles 25:17	481
2 Chronicles 25:18-19	482
2 Chronicles 25:20-22	484
2 Chronicles 25:23-24	486
2 Chronicles 25:25-26	488
2 Chronicles 25:27-28	490
2 Chronicles 26 General Notes	492
2 Chronicles 26:1-3	493
2 Chronicles 26:4-5	495
2 Chronicles 26:6-8	497
2 Chronicles 26:9-10	499
2 Chronicles 26:11-13	501
2 Chronicles 26:14-15	503
2 Chronicles 26:16-18	505
2 Chronicles 26:19-20	507
2 Chronicles 26:21	509
2 Chronicles 26:22-23	511
2 Chronicles 27 General Notes	513
2 Chronicles 27:1-2	514
2 Chronicles 27:3-4	516
2 Chronicles 27:5	517
2 Chronicles 27:6-7	519
2 Chronicles 27:8-9	521
2 Chronicles 28 General Notes	523
2 Chronicles 28:1-2	524
2 Chronicles 28:3-4	526
2 Chronicles 28:5-6	528
2 Chronicles 28:7-8	530
2 Chronicles 28:9-11	532
2 Chronicles 28:12-13	534
2 Chronicles 28:14-15	536
2 Chronicles 28:16-18	538
2 Chronicles 28:19-21	540
2 Chronicles 28:22-23	542

Table of Contents

2 Chronicles 28:24-25	544
2 Chronicles 28:26-27	546
2 Chronicles 29 General Notes	548
2 Chronicles 29:1-2	549
2 Chronicles 29:3-5	550
2 Chronicles 29:6-7	552
2 Chronicles 29:8-9	554
2 Chronicles 29:10-11	556
2 Chronicles 29:12-14	558
2 Chronicles 29:15-17	560
2 Chronicles 29:18-19	563
2 Chronicles 29:20-21	564
2 Chronicles 29:22-24	565
2 Chronicles 29:25-26	567
2 Chronicles 29:27-28	569
2 Chronicles 29:29-30	570
2 Chronicles 29:31	571
2 Chronicles 29:32-33	572
2 Chronicles 29:34	573
2 Chronicles 29:35-36	575
2 Chronicles 30 General Notes	577
2 Chronicles 30:1	578
2 Chronicles 30:4-5	580
2 Chronicles 30:6	582
2 Chronicles 30:7-9	584
2 Chronicles 30:10-12	587
2 Chronicles 30:13-15	589
2 Chronicles 30:16-17	591
2 Chronicles 30:18-20	593
2 Chronicles 30:21-22	595
2 Chronicles 30:23-24	597
2 Chronicles 30:25-27	598
2 Chronicles 31 General Notes	600
2 Chronicles 31:1	601
2 Chronicles 31:2-3	603
2 Chronicles 31:4-5	605
2 Chronicles 31:6-8	607
2 Chronicles 31:9-10	609
2 Chronicles 31:11-13	610
2 Chronicles 31:14-15	612
2 Chronicles 31:16	614
2 Chronicles 31:17-19	616
2 Chronicles 31:20-21	618

2 Chronicles 32 General Notes	620
2 Chronicles 32:1	621
2 Chronicles 32:2-3	622
2 Chronicles 32:5	624
2 Chronicles 32:6-8	626
2 Chronicles 32:9-10	628
2 Chronicles 32:11-12	630
2 Chronicles 32:13-15	632
2 Chronicles 32:16-17	634
2 Chronicles 32:18-19	635
2 Chronicles 32:20-21	637
2 Chronicles 32:22-23	639
2 Chronicles 32:24-26	641
2 Chronicles 32:27-29	643
2 Chronicles 32:30-31	645
2 Chronicles 32:32-33	647
2 Chronicles 33 General Notes	648
2 Chronicles 33:1-3	649
2 Chronicles 33:4-6	651
2 Chronicles 33:7-9	653
2 Chronicles 33:10-11	655
2 Chronicles 33:12-13	657
2 Chronicles 33:14-15	658
2 Chronicles 33:16-17	660
2 Chronicles 33:18-20	661
2 Chronicles 33:21-23	663
2 Chronicles 33:24-25	665
2 Chronicles 34 General Notes	666
2 Chronicles 34:1-3	667
2 Chronicles 34:4-5	669
2 Chronicles 34:6-7	671
2 Chronicles 34:8-9	672
2 Chronicles 34:10-11	674
2 Chronicles 34:12-13	676
2 Chronicles 34:14-16	678
2 Chronicles 34:17-19	680
2 Chronicles 34:20-21	682
2 Chronicles 34:22	684
2 Chronicles 34:23-25	686
2 Chronicles 34:26-28	688
2 Chronicles 34:29-30	690
2 Chronicles 34:31-32	692
2 Chronicles 34:33	694

Table of Contents

2 Chronicles 35 General Notes	696
2 Chronicles 35:1-2	697
2 Chronicles 35:3-4	699
2 Chronicles 35:5-6	701
2 Chronicles 35:7-9	703
2 Chronicles 35:10-12	705
2 Chronicles 35:13-14	707
2 Chronicles 35:15	709
2 Chronicles 35:16-17	710
2 Chronicles 35:18-19	712
2 Chronicles 35:20-21	714
2 Chronicles 35:22	716
2 Chronicles 35:23-24	718
2 Chronicles 35:25	719
2 Chronicles 35:26	720
2 Chronicles 36 General Notes	722
2 Chronicles 36:1-2	723
2 Chronicles 36:3-4	725
2 Chronicles 36:5-7	727
2 Chronicles 36:8	729
2 Chronicles 36:9-10	731
2 Chronicles 36:11-12	733
2 Chronicles 36:13-14	734
2 Chronicles 36:15-16	736
2 Chronicles 36:17	738
2 Chronicles 36:18-19	739
2 Chronicles 36:20-21	740
2 Chronicles 36:22-23	742
translationQuestions	744
2 Chronicles 1	744
2 Chronicles 2	746
2 Chronicles 3	748
2 Chronicles 4	750
2 Chronicles 5	752
2 Chronicles 6	754
2 Chronicles 7	760
2 Chronicles 8	763
2 Chronicles 9	765
2 Chronicles 10	768
2 Chronicles 11	771
2 Chronicles 12	774
2 Chronicles 13	776
2 Chronicles 14	777

2 Chronicles 15	779
2 Chronicles 16	781
2 Chronicles 17	783
2 Chronicles 18	784
2 Chronicles 19	786
2 Chronicles 20	787
2 Chronicles 21	789
2 Chronicles 22	790
2 Chronicles 23	791
2 Chronicles 24	793
2 Chronicles 25	795
2 Chronicles 26	799
2 Chronicles 27	802
2 Chronicles 28	803
2 Chronicles 29	807
2 Chronicles 30	811
2 Chronicles 31	815
2 Chronicles 32	818
2 Chronicles 33	822
2 Chronicles 34	824
2 Chronicles 35	827
2 Chronicles 36	829
translationWords	832
shame, shames, shamed, shameful, shamefully, shameless, shamelessly, ashamed, unashamed	833
Aaron	834
Abijah	836
Abraham, Abram	837
Absalom	839
adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies	840
afflicted, afflict, afflicted, afflicting, affliction, afflictions	841
Ahab	843
Ahaz	844
Ahaziah	845
Ahijah	846
alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners	847
altar, altars	848
amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marveling, marvelous, wonder, wonders	850
Amaziah	851
ambassador, ambassadors, representative, representatives	852
Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites	853
Amorite, Amorites	854

Table of Contents

Amoz	855
ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather	856
angel, angels, archangel	858
anger, angered, angry	860
anoint, anointed, anointing	861
appoint, appoints, appointed	863
Arabia, Arabian, Arabians	865
Aram, Aramean, Arameans, Aramaic	866
archer, archers	868
ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh	869
armor, armory	870
Asa	871
Asaph	872
Ashdod, Azotus	873
Asher	874
Asherah, Asherah pole, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth, Ashtoreths	875
assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled	876
Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrians, Assyrian Empire	878
Athaliah	880
atonement, atone, atones, atoned	881
authority, authorities	882
Azariah	884
Baal	885
Baasha	887
Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian, Babylonians	888
barley	890
beast, beasts	891
Beersheba	892
beg, begged, begging, beggar	893
believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief	894
Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites	897
Beth Shemesh	898
Bethel	899
Bethlehem, Ephrathah	900
bless, blessed, blessing	901
blood	903
bloodshed	905
bow and arrow, bows and arrows	906
bow, bows, bowed, bowing, bow down, bows down, bowed down, bowing down	907
bread	909
bribe, bribes, bribed, bribery	911
bronze	912
brother, brothers	913

burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire	915
bury, buries, buried, burying, burial	917
call, calls, calling, called	919
camel, camels	921
captive, captives, captivate, captivated, captivity	922
cedar, cedars, cedarwood	924
Chaldea, Chaldean, Chaldeans	925
chariot, chariots, charioteers	926
cherub, cherubim, cherubs	928
chief priests	930
chief, chiefs	931
chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect	932
chronicles	934
cistern, cisterns, well, wells	935
city of David	937
clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, un- clean	938
clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed	940
column, columns, pillar, pillars	941
command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments	943
commander, commanders	945
compassion, compassionate	946
concubine, concubines	947
confess, confessed, confesses, confession	948
consecrate, consecrated, consecration	950
consume, consumes, consumed, consuming	952
court, courts, courtyard, courtyards	953
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love	955
covenant, covenants, new covenant	956
cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen	959
crown, crowns, crowned	961
cry, cries, cried, crying, cry out, cries out, cried out, out, outcry, outcries	963
cure, cured, heal, heals, healed, healing, healings, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy	964
curse, cursed, curses, cursing	966
curtain, curtains	968
cut off, cuts off, cutting off	969
Cyrus	970
Damascus	971
Dan	972
darkness	973
David	975
day, days	977

deceive, deceives, deceived, deceiving, deceit, deceiver, deceivers, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deception, deceptive	978
declare, declares, declared, declaring, declaration, declarations	980
decree, decrees, decreed	981
dedicate, dedicates, dedicated, dedication	982
descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants	983
desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses	985
devour, devours, devoured, devouring	986
die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly	987
donkey, mule	990
drink offering	991
earth, earthen, earthly	992
Edom, Edomite, Edomites, Idumea	994
Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians	995
elder, elders	997
Elijah	998
En Gedi	1000
enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants	1001
Ephraim, Ephraimite, Ephraimites	1003
epistle, letter, letters	1004
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever	1005
Ethiopia, Ethiopian	1008
Euphrates River, the River	1009
evil, wicked, wickedness	1010
ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins	1012
exile, exiles, exiled	1014
face, faces, faced, facing, facial, facedown	1015
faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness	1017
family, families	1019
famine, famines	1020
fast, fasts, fasted, fasting, fastings	1021
favor, favors, favorable, favoritism	1022
fear, fears, afraid	1024
feast, feasts, feasting	1026
fellowship offering, fellowship offerings	1027
festival, festivals	1028
fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots	1029
firstfruits	1030
flesh	1031
flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds	1033
fool, fools, foolish, folly	1034
footstool	1035
forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned	1036

forsake, forsakes, forsaken, forsook	1038
found, founded, founder, foundation, foundations	1040
fountain, fountains, spring, springs, springing	1042
freewill offering, freewill offerings	1043
fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful	1044
fulfill, fulfilled	1046
Gad	1048
gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways	1049
Gath, Gittite, Gittites	1051
Gerar	1052
Gibeon, Gibeonite, Gibeonites	1053
gift, gifts	1054
Gilead, Gileadite, Gileadites	1056
glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies	1057
goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids	1060
God	1062
god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry	1065
gold, golden	1068
good, goodness	1070
govern, government, governments, governor, governors, proconsul, proconsuls	1072
grace, gracious	1074
grain offering, grain offerings	1075
grain, grains, grainfields	1076
grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs, burial place	1077
guilt, guilty	1079
Hamath, Hamathites, Lebo Hamath	1081
hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of	1082
harp, harps, harpist, harpists	1084
harvest, harvests, harvested, harvesting, harvester, harvesters	1085
head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded	1087
heart, hearts	1089
heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly	1091
Hebron	1093
Hezekiah	1094
high place, high places	1095
high priest	1097
Hittite, Hittites	1099
Hivite, Hivites	1100
holy place	1101
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit	1103
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred	1105
honey, honeycomb	1108

Table of Contents

honor, honors	1109
Horeb	1111
horse, horses, warhorse, warhorses, horseback	1112
horseman, horsemen	1113
house of David	1114
house of God, Yahweh's house	1115
house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers	1117
humble, humbles, humbled, humility	1119
image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures	1121
incense, incenses	1123
inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir	1124
iniquity, iniquities	1126
innocent	1127
Isaac	1129
Isaiah	1131
Israel, Israelite, Israelites, Jacob	1133
Israel, Israelites	1135
Issachar	1138
Jebus, Jebusite, Jebusites	1139
Jehoiachin	1140
Jehoiakim	1141
Jehoram, Joram	1142
Jehoshaphat	1143
Jehu	1144
Jeremiah	1145
Jericho	1147
Jeroboam	1148
Jerusalem	1150
Jesse	1153
Jew, Jewish, Jews	1154
Jezreel, Jezreelite	1156
Joash	1157
Joppa	1158
Joram	1159
Jordan River, Jordan	1160
Josiah	1161
Jotham	1162
joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, re- joices, rejoiced, rejoicing	1163
Judah	1165
Judah, kingdom of Judah	1167
judge, judges	1169

judge, judges, judgment, judgments	1170
just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification	1172
kind, kinds, kindness, kindnesses	1175
king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly	1176
kingdom of Israel	1179
kingdom, kingdoms	1181
know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge	1183
labor, labors, labored, laborer, laborers	1185
lamb, Lamb of God	1186
lament, laments, lamentation	1188
lamp, lamps	1189
lampstand, lampstands	1190
law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh	1191
law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, prin- ciples	1193
Lebanon	1194
leper, lepers, leprosy, leprous	1195
Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical	1196
life, live, lived, lives, living, alive	1198
lions, lion, lioness, lionesses	1200
locust, locusts	1201
loins	1202
lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs	1203
love, loves, loving, loved	1206
lute, lyre, lyres	1209
Manasseh	1210
mercy, merciful	1212
messenger, messengers	1214
might, mighty, mightier, mightily	1215
mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, re- minding, likeminded	1217
miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs	1219
Mizpah	1221
Moab, Moabite, Moabites	1222
mock, mocks, mocked, mocking, mocker, mockers, mockery, ridicule, ridiculed, scoff at, scoffed at	1223
Moses	1225
mourn, mourns, mourned, mourning, mourner, mourners, mournful, mournfully	1227
name, names, named	1228
Naphtali	1230
Nathan	1231
nation, nations	1232

Table of Contents

Nebuchadnezzar	1234
Negev	1236
neighbor, neighbors, neighborhood, neighboring	1237
new moon, new moons	1238
noble, nobles, nobleman, noblemen	1239
oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by	1240
obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, dis- obeyed, disobedience, disobedient	1242
oil	1244
Omri	1245
oppress, oppresses, oppressed, oppressing, oppression, oppressive, oppressor, oppressors	1246
pagan, pagans	1248
palace, palaces	1249
palm, palms	1250
Passover	1251
peace, peaceful, peacefully, peaceable, peacemakers	1253
Pentecost, Festival of Weeks	1255
people group, peoples, the people, a people	1256
people of God, my people	1259
perfect, perfected, perfecter, perfection, perfectly	1261
Perizzite	1262
Persia, Persians	1263
perverse, perversely, perversion, perversions, perversities, pervert, perverts, perverted, perverting	1264
Pharaoh, king of Egypt	1265
Philistines	1267
plague, plagues	1268
pomegranate, pomegranates	1269
possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess	1270
power, powers	1272
praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy	1274
pray, prayer, prayers, prayed	1276
priest, priests, priesthood	1278
prince, princes, princess, princesses	1281
prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons, imprison, imprisons, imprisoned, imprisonment, im- prisonments	1283
proclaim, proclaims, proclaimed, proclaiming, proclamation, proclamations	1285
promise, promises, promised	1286
prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	1288
prosper, prospered, prospering, prosperity, prosperous	1291
prostitute, prostituted, prostitutes, harlot, whored	1292
proud, proudly, pride, prideful	1293
proverb, proverbs	1295

punish, punishes, punished, punishing, punishment, unpunished	1296
pure, purify, purification	1298
purple	1300
queen, queens	1301
raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose	1302
Ramah	1304
Ramoth	1305
rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness	1306
receive, receives, received, receiving, receiver	1308
Rehoboam	1310
reign, reigns, reigned, reigning	1311
remnant	1313
repent, repents, repented, repentance	1314
report, reports, reported	1316
rest, rests, rested, resting, restless	1317
restore, restores, restored, restoration	1319
reward, rewards, rewarded, rewarding, rewarder	1321
right hand	1322
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness	1324
royal, royalty	1327
ruin, ruins, ruined	1328
rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled	1329
Sabbath	1331
sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings	1333
saint, saints	1336
Salt Sea, Dead Sea	1337
Samaria, Samaritan	1338
Samuel	1340
sanctuary	1341
sandal, sandals	1342
Saul (OT)	1343
save, saves, saved, safe, salvation	1344
scribe, scribes	1346
seek, seeks, seeking, sought	1347
send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out	1348
Sennacherib	1350
serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice	1351
set apart	1353
Sheba	1355
Shechem	1356
shepherd, shepherds, shepherded, shepherding	1357
shield, shields, shielded	1359
Shiloh	1360

Table of Contents

siege, besiege, besieged, besiegers, besieging, siegeworks	1361
sign, signs, proof, reminder	1362
silver	1364
Simeon	1365
sin offering, sin offerings	1366
sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning	1367
slaughter, slaughters, slaughtered, slaughtering	1370
Solomon	1371
son, sons	1373
sorcerer, sorcerers, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft	1375
soul, souls	1376
spear, spears, spearmen	1378
spirit, spirits, spiritual	1379
statute, statutes	1381
stone, stones, stoning	1382
storehouse, storehouses	1383
stronghold, strongholds, fortifications, fortified, fortress, fortresses	1384
Succoth	1386
suffer, suffers, suffered, suffering, sufferings	1387
sword, swords, swordsmen	1389
tabernacle	1391
tax, taxes, taxed, taxation, taxpayers	1393
temple	1394
tent of meeting	1396
tent, tents, tentmakers	1397
tenth, tenths, tithe, tithes	1398
terror, terrorize, terrorized, terrors, terrify, terrified, terrifying	1399
test, tests, tested	1400
testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses	1402
thresh, threshes, threshed, threshing	1405
threshold, thresholds	1406
throne, thrones, enthroned	1407
transgress, transgresses, transgression	1408
trespass, trespasses, trespassed	1409
tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen	1411
tribute	1412
trouble, troubles, troubled, troubling, troublemaker, troublesome	1413
true, truth, truths	1415
trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters	1417
trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness	1418
turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back	1420
Tyre, Tyrians	1422

unleavened bread	1423
Uzziah, Azariah	1425
vine, vines	1426
vineyard, vineyards	1427
virgin, virgins, virginity	1428
vision, visions, envision	1429
walk, walks, walked, walking	1430
watchtower, watchtowers, tower	1432
water, waters, watered, watering	1433
wheat	1435
will of God	1436
wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine	1437
wise, wisdom	1439
word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures	1441
word, words	1443
works, deeds, work, acts	1445
worship	1447
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless	1449
wrath, fury	1451
written	1452
Yahweh	1453
year, years	1457
yoke, yokes, yoked	1458
Zadok	1459
Zebulun	1460
Zechariah (OT)	1461
Zedekiah	1462
Zion, Mount Zion	1463
translationAcademy	1464
Abstract Nouns	1464
Active or Passive	1468
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	1474
Background Information	1480
Biblical Distance	1483
Biblical Money	1486
Biblical Volume	1488
Biblical Weight	1492
Connecting Words	1495
Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding	1498
Double Negatives	1501
Doublet	1504
Ellipsis	1506

Table of Contents

Euphemism	1508
Exclamations	1510
Exclusive and Inclusive “We”	1513
First, Second, or Third Person	1515
Generic Noun Phrases	1517
Go and Come	1519
Hebrew Months	1522
Hendiadys	1525
How to Translate Names	1527
Hyperbole and Generalization	1534
Hypothetical Situations	1539
Idiom	1542
Irony	1547
Merism	1550
Metaphor	1552
Metonymy	1563
Nominal Adjectives	1571
Numbers	1573
Order of Events	1578
Ordinal Numbers	1580
Parables	1583
Parallelism	1585
Personification	1588
Reflexive Pronouns	1590
Rhetorical Question	1593
Simile	1597
Symbolic Action	1600
Synecdoche	1603
Translate Unknowns	1606

translationNotes

Introduction to 2 Chronicles

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of 2 Chronicles

1. The kingdom ruled by Solomon (Chapters 1–9)
 - Solomon put on the throne of David, his father (Chapter 1)
 - The building of the temple of Yahweh (2:1–5:1)
 - Dedication of the temple for the worship of Yahweh (5:2–7:22)
 - The life of Solomon (8:1–9:28)
2. The decline of Judah, to the fall and exile (Chapters 10–36)
 - From Rehoboam to Zedekiah (10:1–36:21)
 - The edict of Cyrus, permitting Israel to return to Canaan (36:22–23)

What are 1 and 2 Chronicles about?

First Chronicles retold the list of descendants from Adam to Jacob. It then retold the list of descendants from Jacob to the first king of Israel. Second Chronicles retold the history of Israel beginning at the time of Solomon. It ended when the Babylonian army attacked Judah and took some of the people to Babylon. The writers of Chronicles probably wrote these books for the Jews who returned from exile in Babylon. The purpose was to instruct the people to avoid disobeying God as their ancestors did.

How should the title of this book be translated?

You may also call this book “The Events of the Kings of Judah and Israel, Book 2” or “The Second Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah and Israel.”

Who wrote 1 and 2 Chronicles?

It is uncertain who wrote these books. The writers of Chronicles mentioned that they used other books to help with their writing. The names of these other books are “The Chronicles of Samuel the Seer,” “The Chronicles of Nathan the Seer,” “The Chronicles of Gad the Seer,” “The History of Nathan the Prophet,” “The Chronicles of Shemaiah the Prophet and Iddo,” “The Story of the Prophet Iddo” and “The books of the kings of Judah and Israel.”

Why are there multiple books which give the history of the kings of Israel?

The books of Chronicles and the books of Kings told much of the same history, but they are not exactly the same. The writers of Chronicles were not simply retelling history. They wanted the people to know that Yahweh will still do what he promised in his covenant.

The writers of 1 and 2 Chronicles wanted the Jews to think carefully about David and Solomon. They also wanted the Jews to think about how Jehoshaphat, Hezekiah, and Josiah caused their ancestors to repent and to worship Yahweh. The writers wanted to encourage the Jews and their leaders to obey the law and to honor God's covenant with them. (See: [covenant](#), [covenants](#), [new covenant](#))

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts**Why did God punish the people of Israel?**

God punished the people of Israel because they disobeyed him and worshiped false gods. God punished the people by causing disasters and causing them to lose in battle. However, God forgave the people and caused them to prosper again if they repented and obeyed him. The writers of 1 and 2 Chronicles continually reminded the readers that God punished his people because they disobeyed. They wanted the readers to understand that they must obey God or he will punish them also.

Why are alliances with foreign countries seen as evil in these books?

Yahweh was the true leader of Israel and the protector of their nation. The people of Israel should have trusted him instead of relying on other nations to protect them.

Part 3: Important Translation Issues**What is the meaning of the term "Israel"?**

The name "Israel" is used in many different ways in the Bible. There was a man named Jacob. God changed his name to Israel. The descendants of Jacob became a nation also called Israel. Eventually, the nation of Israel split into two kingdoms. The northern kingdom was named Israel. The southern kingdom was named Judah.

What does it mean to "seek God?"

The writers of 1 and 2 Chronicles often wrote about "seeking God." To "seek God" means to make an effort to please and honor God. It can also mean to ask God for help. It does not imply that God is hidden. (See: [Metaphor](#))

What does the phrase “to this day” mean?

The writers used the phrase “to this day” to refer to the time when they were writing. The translator should be aware that “to this day” refers to a time which has already passed. The translator might decide to say, “to this day, at the time when this is being written,” or, “to this day, at the time of writing.” This Hebrew phrase occurs in 1 Chronicles 4:41, 43; 5:26; 13:11; 20:26; 21:10; 35:25.

2 Chronicles 01 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins a section about King Solomon's reign (2 Chronicles 1-9).

Special concepts in this chapter

Wisdom

Solomon asks God for wisdom to rule God's people. God is pleased with this request because it is used to serve others. Therefore, God also gives Solomon tremendous wealth and a long life. (See: [wise, wisdom](#) and [people of God, my people](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 01:01 Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles intro](#)

2 Chronicles 1:1

UDB:

¹ King Solomon, David's son, was able to gain complete control over his kingdom, because Yahweh his God was with him and enabled him to become a very strong king.

ULB:

¹ Solomon son of David was strengthened in his rule, and Yahweh his God was with him and made him very powerful.

translationNotes

was strengthened in his rule

This can be stated in active form. AT: "gained complete control over his kingdom" or "ruled powerfully over his kingdom" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Yahweh

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

God was with him

Here "was with him" is an idiom. AT: "God supported him" or "God helped him" (See: [Idiom](#))

translationWords

- [Solomon](#)
- [David](#)
- [rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 01 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 1 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 1:2

UDB:

²⁻⁵ When David had been king, he arranged for a new sacred tent to be made in Jerusalem. Then David and the Israelite leaders brought God's sacred chest from the city of Kiriath Jearim to the new sacred tent. But when Solomon became the king, the first sacred tent was still in the city of Gibeon. There was a bronze altar there that Bezalel son of Uri and grandson of Hur, had made was also still at Gibeon, in front of the first sacred tent.

Solomon called together the army commanders who directed thousands of soldiers, and the commanders who directed hundreds of soldiers, with the judges and all the other leaders in Israel. He told them to go with him to Gibeon. So they all went to the place on the hill where idols were worshiped at Gibeon. That was the same place where God had met with his people in the tent which Moses had made. There Solomon and all the others with him prayed to Yahweh.

ULB:

² Solomon spoke to all Israel, to the commanders of thousands and of hundreds, and to the judges, and to every prince in all Israel, the heads of the fathers' houses. ³ So Solomon and all the assembly with him went to the high place that was at Gibeon, for there was the tent of meeting of God, which Moses the servant of Yahweh, had made in the wilderness. ⁴ But David had brought up the ark of God from Kiriath Jearim to the place that he had prepared for it, for he had pitched a tent for it in Jerusalem. ⁵ In addition, the bronze altar made by Bezalel son of Uri son of Hur was there before the tabernacle of Yahweh; Solomon and the assembly went to it. ^[1]

1:5 ^[1]Some older versions have, *the bronze altar made by Bezalel son of Uri son of Hur, he placed there before the tabernacle of Yahweh*, where *he* refers to David.

translationNotes

General Information:

It may be helpful to reorder the events in these verses as in the UDB. (See: [Order of Events](#))

spoke to all Israel, to the commanders ... heads of the fathers' house

Here "all of Israel" means those people mentioned afterwards. They represent all of Israel. AT: "spoke to the commanders ... heads of the father's house"

the commanders of thousands and of hundreds

Possible meanings are 1) these numbers represent the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders led. AT: “the commanders of 1,000 soldiers and the commanders of 100 soldiers” or 2) the words translated as “thousands” and “hundreds” do not represent exact numbers, but are the names of larger and smaller military divisions. AT: “the commanders of large military divisions and the commanders of smaller military divisions” (See: [Numbers](#))

to every prince in all Israel, the heads of the fathers’ houses

Here “the heads of the fathers’ houses” further describe the princes. AT: “to every prince in all Israel, that is, the heads of the fathers’ houses”

to every prince

Here “prince” means leaders in general. They are not necessarily the sons of the king. AT: “to every leader”

the heads of the fathers’ houses

Here “heads” is a metaphor for the most important part. And “houses” represents families. AT: “the leaders of the families in Israel” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Kiriath Jearim

A little town about 9 miles west of Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

pitched a tent

“set up a tent”

the bronze altar made by Bezalel son of Uri son of Hur

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the bronze altar that Bezalel son of Uri son Hur made” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Bezalel son of Uri son of Hur

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [judge, judges](#)

- prince, princes, princess, princesses
- head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded
- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers
- high place, high places
- Gibeon, Gibeonite, Gibeonites
- tent of meeting
- God
- Moses
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh
- Jerusalem
- bronze
- altar, altars
- tabernacle
- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 01 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 1 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 1:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ Then Solomon went up to the bronze altar in front of the sacred tent, and he offered one thousand animals to be killed and completely burned on the altar.

⁷ That night God appeared to Solomon in a dream and said to him, “Request whatever you want me to give to you.”

ULB:

⁶ Solomon went up there to the bronze altar before Yahweh, which was at the tent of meeting, and offered one thousand burnt offerings on it.

⁷ God appeared to Solomon that night and said to him, “Ask! What should I give you?”

translationNotes**went up there**

“went up to the high place at Gibeon”

one thousand

“1,000” (See: [Numbers](#))

Ask! What should I give you?

This can be translated as a statement. AT: “Ask for whatever you want from me.”

translationWords

- [sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings](#)
- [burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 01 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 1 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 1:8-11

UDB:

⁸ Solomon replied to God, "You were very kind to David my father, and now you have appointed me to be the next king. ⁹ So Yahweh my God, you have caused me to become the king to rule people who are as many as the dust of the earth. So do what you promised to my father David. ¹⁰ Please enable me to be wise and to know what I should do, in order that I may rule these people well, because there is no one who can rule all this great nation of yours without your help."

¹¹ God replied to Solomon, "You have not requested a huge amount of money or to be honored or that your enemies be killed. And you have not requested that you be enabled to live for a long time. Instead, you have requested that I enable you to be wise and to know what you should do in order that you may govern well my people whom I have appointed you to rule."

ULB:

⁸ Solomon said to God, "You have shown great covenant faithfulness to David my father, and have made me king in his place. ⁹ Now, Yahweh God, let your promise to David my father be carried out, for you have made me king over a people as numerous as the dust of the earth. ¹⁰ Now give me wisdom and knowledge, so that I may lead this people, for who can judge your people, who are so many in number?" ¹¹ God said to Solomon, "Because this was in your heart, and because you have not asked for riches, wealth, or honor, nor for the life of those who hate you, nor for long life for yourself, but you have asked for wisdom and knowledge for yourself, so that you might rule my people, over whom I have made you king, and this is what I will do."

translationNotes

You have shown great covenant faithfulness to David

The abstract noun "faithfulness" can be stated as "faithfully" or "faithful." AT: "You have greatly and faithfully loved David" or "You have been very faithful to David" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Now

Here the word "Now" is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

let your promise to David my father be carried out

This can be stated in active form. AT: "please do what you promised to David my father that you would do" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

a people as numerous as the dust of the earth

This simile emphasizes the great number of Israelites. AT: “countless people” or “very many people” (See: [Simile](#))

give me wisdom and knowledge

This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns “wisdom” and “knowledge.” AT: “cause me to be wise and to know many things” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

who can judge your people, who are so many in number?

Here “judge” means to govern or rule. Solomon uses a question to state that it is impossible to rule over so many people without God’s help. AT: “no one can judge all of your countless people without your help.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Because this was in your heart

Here “heart” represents desire. AT: “Because this was your desire” or “Because this is what you wanted” (See: [Metonymy](#))

nor for the life of those who hate you

“nor to be able to defeat those who hate you” or “nor to be able to kill your enemies”

translationWords

- [covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)
- [promise, promises, promised](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [honor, honors](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 01 General Notes](#)

- 2 Chronicles 1 translationQuestions

2 Chronicles 1:12-13

UDB:

¹² So I will enable you to be wise and to know what you should do to rule my people well. But I will also enable you to have a huge amount of money and for people everywhere to honor you, more any king before you, and more than any king who will come after you.” ¹³ Then Solomon and the people who were with him all left the sacred tent at Gibeon, and they returned to Jerusalem. There he ruled the Israelite people.

ULB:

¹² I will now give you wisdom and knowledge. I will also give you riches, wealth, and honor, as none of the kings had before you, and none after you will have.” ¹³ So Solomon came to Jerusalem from the high place that was at Gibeon, from before the tent of meeting; he reigned over Israel.

translationNotes

I will now give you wisdom and knowledge

This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns “wisdom” and “knowledge.” AT: “I will now cause you to be wise and to know many things” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

So Solomon came to Jerusalem

Here “Solomon” represents all the people with him. Also “came” can be stated as “went.” AT: “So Solomon and the people with him went to Jerusalem” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Go and Come](#))

from before the tent of meeting

“from the tent of meeting”

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 01 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 1 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 1:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ Solomon acquired 1,400 chariots and twelve thousand men who rode on horses. He put some of the chariots and horses in Jerusalem, and put some of them in various other cities. ¹⁵ During the years that Solomon was king, silver and gold were as common in Jerusalem as stones, and lumber from cedar trees were as plentiful as lumber from ordinary sycamore trees in the foothills.

ULB:

¹⁴ Solomon gathered chariots and horsemen, and he had 1,400 chariots and twelve thousand horsemen that he placed in the chariot cities, and with himself, the king in Jerusalem. ¹⁵ The king made silver and gold as common in Jerusalem as the stones, and he made cedar wood as common as the sycamore trees that are in the lowlands.

translationNotes

1,400 chariots

“one thousand four hundred chariots” (See: [Numbers](#))

twelve thousand horsemen

“12,000 horsemen” (See: [Numbers](#))

in the chariot cities

This is a reference to cities which stored his chariots.

The king made silver and gold as common in Jerusalem as the stones

The narrator uses exaggeration to emphasize the great amount of silver that was in Jerusalem. AT: “The king had so much silver in Jerusalem, it was like there was as much silver as there was stones on the ground” (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

the sycamore trees

This is a tree that grows fruit that looks like figs. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

translationWords

- [chariot, chariots, charioteers](#)
- [horseman, horsemen](#)
- [silver](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [cedar, cedars, cedarwood](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 01 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 1 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 1:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ Solomon's horses were imported from Egypt and from the region of Kue. ¹⁷ In Egypt his men paid seven kilograms of silver for each chariot and one and seven-tenths kilograms of silver for each horse. They also sold many of them to the kings of the Heth and Aram people groups.

ULB:

¹⁶ As for the importation of horses from Egypt and Kue for Solomon, his merchants bought them from Kue at a price. ¹⁷ They imported a chariot from Egypt for six hundred shekels of silver, and a horse for 150 shekels. They also exported them to the kings of the Hittites and the Arameans.

translationNotes

As for the importation of horses from Egypt and Kue for Solomon

"Importation" is the act of bringing something into one country from another country. This can be stated as a verb. AT: "As for the horses Solomon imported from Egypt and Kue" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Kue

This is the name of a region. Some think that Kue was the same as Cilicia, in Asia Minor. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

at a price

"at a set price" or "for money"

six hundred shekels of silver ... 150 shekels

A shekel is a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams. AT: "about 6.6 kilograms of silver ... about 1.7 kilograms" (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

six hundred

"600" (See: [Numbers](#))

150

"one hundred and fifty" (See: [Numbers](#))

exported

to send something out of one country into another

translationWords

- [horse, horses, warhorse, warhorses, horseback](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians](#)
- [Hittite, Hittites](#)
- [Aram, Aramean, Arameans, Aramaic](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 01 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 1 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 02 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of Solomon's reign continues in this chapter. This chapter also begins a section on building the temple. (2 Chronicles 2-4 and [temple](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

House of God

The temple is repeatedly referred to as the "house of God" because Yahweh will dwell in the temple. (See: [house of God](#), [Yahweh's house](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 02:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 2:1-3

UDB:

¹ Solomon decided that a temple should be built where Yahweh would be worshiped, and also that he would build a palace for himself. ² He commanded seventy thousand men to carry the building supplies and eighty thousand men to cut stones from quarries in the hills. He also chose 3,600 men to supervise them.

³ Solomon sent this message to King Hiram of the city of Tyre:

”Many years ago when my father David was building his palace, you sent him cedar logs. Will you send me cedar logs, too?”

ULB:

¹ Now Solomon commanded the building of a house for Yahweh’s name and the building of a palace for his kingdom. ² Solomon assigned seventy thousand men to carry loads, and eighty thousand men as stonecutters in the mountains, and 3,600 men to supervise them. ³ Solomon sent a message to Hiram, the king of Tyre, saying, ”As you did with David my father, sending him cedar logs to build a house to live in, do the same with me.

translationNotes

Now

This marks a new part of the story.

commanded the building of a house for Yahweh’s name

The word “name” is a metonym for the person. AT: “commanded his people to build a house where Yahweh may live” or “commanded his people to build a house where they could worship Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

of a palace for his kingdom

“of a royal palace for his kingdom” or “of a palace for himself”

seventy thousand men ... eighty thousand men

“70,000 men ... 80,000 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

to carry loads

It is understood that these are loads of materials for building Yahweh’s house. AT: “to carry loads of materials” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

3,600

“three thousand six hundred” (See: [Numbers](#))

Hiram

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- [Solomon](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name, names, named](#)
- [palace, palaces](#)
- [kingdom, kingdoms](#)
- [send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out](#)
- [Tyre, Tyrians](#)
- [cedar, cedars, cedarwood](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 2 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 2:4-5

UDB:

⁴ We are about to build a temple to set it apart for Yahweh, to burn for him incense made from fragrant spices, to always display before him the bread, and to burn animal offerings every morning and evening and day of rest, as well as at every new moon and on the other special festivals to honor Yahweh our God. We want to do these things forever, as Yahweh has commanded. ⁵ We want this temple to be a great temple, because our God is greater than all other gods.

ULB:

⁴ See, I am about to build a house for the name of Yahweh my God, to set it apart to him, to burn incense of sweet spices before him, to set out the bread of the presence, and for the burnt offerings morning and evening, on the Sabbaths and on the new moons, and on the appointed feasts for Yahweh our God. This is forever, for Israel. ⁵ The house that I will build will be very large, for our God is greater than all other gods.

translationNotes

I am about to build a house for the name of Yahweh my God

Here “name” represents the person. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 2:1](#). AT: “I am about to build a house where Yahweh my God may live” or “I am about to build a house where people may worship Yahweh my God” (See: [Metonymy](#))

I am about to build

Solomon would command his people to build the house. AT: “I am about to command my people to build” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the bread of the presence

This is a reference to the 12 loaves of bread that were placed in front of the altar.

new moons

This was the time of a festival coinciding with the movement of the moon.

This is forever, for Israel

Here “This” refers back to all the ways the people will worship Yahweh at his temple. AT: “These are the things Yahweh has commanded Israel to do forever”

God is greater

This is a reference to God being more important and more powerful than other gods, not to being larger than other gods.

translationWords

- [God](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [incense, incenses](#)
- [bread](#)
- [burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [new moon, new moons](#)
- [festival, festivals](#)
- [eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 2 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 2:6-7

UDB:

⁶ But no one can build a place for God to live in, since even the heavens and the earth are not big enough for him. I myself am not worthy to build him a house, except as a place to offer sacrifices to him.

⁷ Therefore, please send me someone who is very good at making things from gold and silver and bronze and iron, and at making things from purple and red and blue cloth. He should also know well how to engrave designs. I want him to work in Jerusalem and in other places in Judah with my skilled craftsmen, the ones whom my father David appointed.

ULB:

⁶ But who is able to build God a house, since the entire universe and even heaven itself cannot contain him? Who am I to build him a house, except to burn sacrifices before him? ⁷ So send me a man who is skilled at work in gold, silver, bronze, iron, and in purple, crimson, and blue wool, a man who knows how to make all kinds of engraved wood. He will be with the skilled men who are with me in Judah and Jerusalem, whom David my father provided.

translationNotes

who is able to build God a house, since the entire universe and even heaven itself cannot contain him? Who am I to build him a house, except to burn sacrifices before him?

Solomon uses a question to emphasize that no one is able or worthy to build a house for God. AT: "no one is able to build a house for God because not even the universe or heaven is big enough to contain him. I am not worthy to build a house for him, except as a place to offer sacrifices to him. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

translationWords

- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [silver](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [purple](#)
- [kind, kinds, kindness, kindnesses](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [David](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 2 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 2:8-10

UDB:

⁸ I know that your workers are skilled in cutting timber, so also please send me cedar logs, pine logs, and algum from the Lebanon mountains. My workers will work with your workers. ⁹ In that way, they will provide me with plenty of lumber. We will need plenty, because I want the temple that we will build to be large and beautiful. ¹⁰ I will pay to your workers, the men who cut the logs, 4,400 kiloliters of bushels of ground wheat, 4,400 kiloliters of barley, and 440 kiloliters of wine, and 440 kiloliters of olive oil.”

ULB:

⁸ Send me also cedar, cypress, and algum trees from Lebanon, for I know that your servants know how to cut timber in Lebanon. See, my servants will be with your servants, ⁹ in order to prepare for me timber in abundance, for the house which I am about to build will be great and marvelous. ¹⁰ See, I will give to your servants, the men who will cut the timber, twenty thousand cors of ground wheat, twenty thousand cors of barley, twenty thousand baths of wine, and twenty thousand baths of oil.” ^[1]

2:10 ^[1]Some versions have, *twenty thousand cors of wheat as food* .

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

This continues Solomon’s message to Hiram, the king of Tyre.

cedar, cypress, and algum trees

These are different types of trees. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

twenty thousand cors

A cor is 220 liters. Twenty thousand cors equals 4,400 kiloliters. (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

twenty thousand

“20,000” (See: [Numbers](#))

ground wheat

“wheat flour”

twenty thousand baths

A bath is 22 liters. Twenty thousand baths equals 440 kiloliters. (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

translationWords

- [Lebanon](#)
- [enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants](#)
- [amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marveling, marvelous, wonder, wonders](#)
- [wheat](#)
- [barley](#)
- [wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine](#)
- [oil](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 2 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 2:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ When Hiram received this message, he replied by sending a message back to Solomon:

”Because Yahweh loves his people, he has appointed you to be their king. ¹² Let everyone praise Yahweh, the God to whom the Israelite people belong, the one who created the sky and the earth! He has given King David a wise son, one who is very intelligent and who has good skill and understanding. He wants to build a temple for Yahweh and a palace for himself.

ULB:

¹¹ Then Hiram, the king of Tyre, answered in writing, which he sent to Solomon: “Because Yahweh loves his people, he has made you king over them.” ¹² In addition, Hiram said, ”Blessed be Yahweh, the God of Israel, who made heaven and earth, who has given to David the king a wise son, gifted with prudence and understanding, who will build a house for Yahweh and a palace for himself.

translationNotes

gifted with prudence and understanding

This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns “prudence” and “understanding.” AT: “who is very intelligent and understands many things” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

translationWords

- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- Tyre, Tyrians
- love, loves, loving, loved
- people of God, my people
- bless, blessed, blessing
- Israel, Israelites
- earth, earthen, earthly
- wise, wisdom
- gift, gifts
- house of God, Yahweh’s house
- kingdom, kingdoms

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 2 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 2:13-14

UDB:

¹³ I will send to you Hiram-Abi, one of my skilled craftsmen. ¹⁴ His mother was from the tribe of Dan, and his father was from here in Tyre. He is able to make things from gold and silver and bronze and iron and stone and wood, but he also makes nice things from purple and blue and red cloth, and he does all kinds of engraving. He can make things using any design that you give to him. He will work with your craftsmen, and the craftsmen who did work for your father, King David.

ULB:

¹³ Now I have sent a skillful man, Hiram-Abi, who is gifted with understanding. ¹⁴ He is the son of a woman of the daughters of Dan. His father was a man from Tyre. He is skilled at work in gold, silver, bronze, iron, stone, and in timber, and in purple, blue, and crimson wool, and fine linen. He is also skilled in making any kind of engraving and in making any kind of design. Let a place be made for him among your skilled workers, and with those of my master, David, your father.

translationNotes

gifted with understanding

The abstract noun “understanding” can be stated as “understands” or “wise.” AT: “who understand many things” or “who is very wise” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Hiram-Abi

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

He is skilled at work in gold ... crimson wool

Translate many of these words as you did in [2 Chronicles 2:7](#).

fine linen

“high quality cloth” or “the best cloth”

He is the son of a woman of the daughters of Dan

“His mother is from the tribe of Dan” or “His mother is a descendant of Dan”

translationWords

- [send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out](#)
- [Dan](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 2 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 2:15-16

UDB:

¹⁵ Now please send us the wheat, barley, olive oil, and wine that you promised to send to us. ¹⁶ When you do that, my workers will cut in the Lebanon mountains all the logs that you need and bring them down to the sea. Then we will tie the logs together to form rafts with them, and float them in the sea to the city of Joppa. From there, you can arrange for men to take them up to Jerusalem.”

ULB:

¹⁵ Now then, the wheat and the barley, the oil and the wine, of which my master has spoken, let him send these things to his servants. ¹⁶ We will cut wood from Lebanon, as much wood as you need. We will take it to you as rafts by sea to Joppa, and you will carry it up to Jerusalem.”

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

This continues the message from Hiram, king of Tyre, to Solomon.

of which my master has spoken, let him send these things to his servants

Hiram refers to Solomon as “my master” and to himself and his own people as “his servants.” This is a way of showing respect. AT: “of which you, my master, have spoken, please send these things to us, your servants” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

you will carry it up to Jerusalem

Here “you” refers to Solomon. The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. AT: “you will command your people to take the wood to Jerusalem” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [Lebanon](#)
- [Joppa](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 2 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 2:17-18

UDB:

¹⁷ Solomon told his workers to count all the people from other countries who were living in Israel, similar to what his father David had done. There were 153,600 of them. ¹⁸ Solomon assigned seventy thousand of them to carry materials, and eighty thousand to cut stone from quarries in the hills, and 3,600 of them to supervise the others and be sure that they worked steadily.

ULB:

¹⁷ Solomon counted all the foreigners who were in the land of Israel, following the method that David, his father, had counted them. They were found to be 153,600. ¹⁸ He assigned seventy thousand of them to carry loads, eighty thousand to be stonecutters in the mountains, and 3,600 to be supervisors to put the people to work.

translationNotes

Solomon counted

The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. AT: “Solomon had his servants count” (See: [Metonymy](#))

They were found to be 153,600

This can be stated in active form. AT: “There were 153,600 foreigners” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Numbers](#))

153,600

“one hundred and fifty-three thousand six hundred” (See: [Numbers](#))

seventy thousand ... eighty thousand

“70,000 men ... 80,000 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

to carry loads

It is understood that these are loads of materials for building Yahweh’s house. AT: “to carry loads of materials” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

3,600

“three thousand six hundred” (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners
- Israel, Israelites

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 2 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 03 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of King Solomon and the building of the temple continues in this chapter. (See: [temple](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Location of the temple

The location of the temple was very significant. Many important events in history occurred at this location.

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 03:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 3:1-3

UDB:

¹ Then Solomon's workers started to build the temple for Yahweh in Jerusalem. They built it on Mount Moriah, where an angel from Yahweh had appeared to his father David. They built it on the ground that Ornan, a descendant of the Jebus people group, had sold to David and where David said that it should be built. ² They began the work on the second day of the second month, when Solomon had been ruling almost four years.

³ The foundation of the temple was twenty-seven meters long and nine meters wide.

ULB:

¹ Then Solomon began to build the house of Yahweh at Jerusalem on Mount Moriah, where Yahweh had appeared to David his father. He prepared the place that David had planned for it, at the threshing floor of Ornan the Jebusite. ² He began to build on the second day of the second month, in the fourth year of his reign. ³ Now these are the dimensions of the foundation that Solomon laid for the house of God. Using the old style cubit, the length was sixty cubits, and the width was twenty cubits.

translationNotes

Then Solomon began to build ... He prepared ... He began ... that Solomon laid

The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. AT: "Then Solomon's workers began to build ... They prepared ... They began ... that Solomon's workers laid" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Mount Moriah

This is the name of a mountain. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ornan the Jebusite

"Ornan" is the name of a man. "Jebusite" is the name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the second day of the second month

"day 2 of month 2." This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. The second day is near the middle of April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

in the fourth year

“in year 4” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the narrator begins to explain the dimensions and the design of the temple.

sixty cubits ... twenty cubits

“60 cubits ... 20 cubits.” A cubit is 46 centimeters. AT: “27.6 meters long ... 9.2 meters” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Distance](#))

translationWords

- [Solomon](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [thresh, threshes, threshed, threshing](#)
- [Jebus, Jebusite, Jebusites](#)
- [day, days](#)
- [year, years](#)
- [reign, reigns, reigned, reigning](#)
- [found, founded, founder, foundation, foundations](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 03 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 3 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 3:4-5

UDB:

⁴ The entrance room across the front of the temple was also nine meters long, the same as the temple's width. The entrance room was also nine meters high. Solomon caused workmen to coat the interior of the entrance room with thin sheets of pure gold.

⁵ Solomon's workers used panels of pine wood to line the main hall of the temple. Then they covered those panels with very thin sheets of pure gold. On them they carved images of palm trees and designs that resembled chains.

ULB:

⁴ The length of the portico at the front of the house was twenty cubits, matching the building's width. Its height was also twenty cubits, and Solomon overlaid its interior with pure gold. ⁵ He fashioned the ceiling of the main hall with cypress, which he overlaid with fine gold, and which he carved with palm trees and chains.

translationNotes

portico

an area of a building made of columns and a roof that leads to and connects with the building's entrance door. This portico was probably attached to the front part of the wall that surrounded the temple.

twenty cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. AT: "9.2 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

Solomon overlaid ... He fashioned ... which he carved

The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. AT: "Solomon's workers overlaid ... They fashioned ... which they carved" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the main hall

This is a reference to a large room, not a hallway.

translationWords

- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [palm, palms](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 03 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 3 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 3:6-7

UDB:

⁶ They decorated the temple with very valuable stones. The gold that they used was from the land of Parvaim.

⁷ They covered the ceiling beams, doorframes, walls and doors of the temple with very thin sheets of gold. They also carved statues of winged creatures on the walls.

ULB:

⁶ He decorated the house with precious stones; the gold was gold from Parvaim. ⁷ He also overlaid its beams, thresholds, walls, and doors with gold; he carved cherubs on its walls.

translationNotes

He decorated ... He also overlaid ... he carved

The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. AT: “Solomon’s workers decorated ... They also overlaid ... they carved” (See: [Metonymy](#))

precious stones

Stones that were beautiful, highly valued, and used for decorations.

Parvaim

This is probably the name of a region. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

beams

A beam is a long heavy piece of wood used to support a building.

translationWords

- [threshold, thresholds](#)
- [cherub, cherubim, cherubs](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 03 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 3 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 3:8-9

UDB:

⁸ They also built the very holy place inside the temple. It was nine meters long, the same as the temple's width. The width of the very holy place was the same. They covered its walls with sheets of pure gold that altogether weighed about twenty metric tons. ⁹ Each gold nails weighed about one-half a kilogram. They also covered the walls of the upper rooms with thin sheets of gold.

ULB:

⁸ He built the most holy place. Its length matched the house's width, twenty cubits, and its width was also twenty cubits. He overlaid it with fine gold, amounting to six hundred talents. ⁹ The weight of the nails was fifty shekels of gold. He overlaid its high surfaces with gold.

translationNotes

He built ... He overlaid

The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. AT: "Solomon's workers built ... They overlaid" (See: [Metonymy](#))

twenty cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. AT: "9.2 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

six hundred talents

"600 talents." A talent is 33 kilograms. AT: "about 20 metric tons" (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Money](#))

fifty shekels

"50 shekels." A shekel is 11 grams. AT: ".55 kilograms" or "about a half a kilogram"(See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Money](#))

translationWords

- [holy place](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 03 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 3 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 3:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ Solomon's workers made two statues of creatures with wings to put inside the very holy place. They covered those statues with very thin sheets of gold. ¹¹⁻¹² Each statue had two long wings. One wing of each statue touched the wall of the temple. The other wing of each statue touched a wing of the other statue. The wingspan of each cherub was about four and three-fifths meters across. One wing of each cherub touched the wall, while the other reached to the middle of room and touched the inner wing of the other cherub. Each wing was two and one-third meters long.

ULB:

¹⁰ He made two images of cherubs for the most holy place; craftsmen overlaid them with gold. ^[1]
¹¹ The wings of the cherubs were twenty cubits long all together; the wing of one cherub was five cubits long, reaching to the wall of the room; the other wing was likewise five cubits, reaching to the wing of the other cherub. ¹² The wing of the other cherub was also five cubits, reaching to the wall of the room; its other wing was also five cubits, touching the wing of the first cherub.

3:10 ^[1]Some versions have, *two wooden images of cherubs* .

translationNotes

He made

The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. AT: "Solomon's workers made" (See: [Metonymy](#))

twenty cubits ... five cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. AT: "9.2 meters ... 2.3 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

translationWords

- [image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 03 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 3 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 3:13-14

UDB:

¹³ It was nine meters from the outer wing of the one statue to the outer wing of the other statue. The statues faced the doorway leading to the main room.

¹⁴ Solomon's workers made a curtain to separate the main room from the very holy place. It was made of blue, purple, and red thread and fine linen. Figures of winged creatures were embroidered on the curtain.

ULB:

¹³ The wings of these cherubs spread a total of twenty cubits. The cherubs stood on their feet, with their faces toward the main hall. ¹⁴ He made the curtain of blue, purple, and crimson wool and fine linen, and he fashioned cherubs on it.

translationNotes

twenty cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. AT: "9.2 meters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

He made ... he fashioned

The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. AT: "Solomon's workers made ... they fashioned" (See: [Metonymy](#))

blue, purple, and crimson wool

Translate these words as you did in [2 Chronicles 2:7](#).

fine linen

"high quality cloth" or "the best cloth"

translationWords

- [curtain, curtains](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 03 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 3 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 3:15-17

UDB:

¹⁵ They made two bronze pillars and put them at the entrance of the temple. They were each sixteen meters high. A separate piece was attached to the top of each pillar; each of the top pieces was two and one-third meters high. ¹⁶ The workers made carvings that resembled chains and put them on top of the pillars. They made carvings that resembled pomegranates and attached them to the chains. There were one hundred of them. ¹⁷ They set up the pillars in front of the temple, one the south side of the entrance and the other on the north side. The one of the south side was named Jakin and the one on the north side was named Boaz.

ULB:

¹⁵ Solomon also made two pillars, each thirty-five cubits high, for in front of the house; the capitals that were on the top of them were five cubits high. ¹⁶ He made chains for the pillars and put them on top of them; he also made one hundred pomegranates and joined them to the chains. ¹⁷ He set up the pillars in front of the temple, one on the right hand, and the other on the left; he named the pillar on the right Jakin, and the pillar on the left Boaz.

translationNotes

Solomon also made ... He made ... he also made ... He set up

The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. AT: “Solomon’s workers also made ... They made ... they also made ... They set up” (See: [Metonymy](#))

thirty-five cubits ... five cubits

“35 cubits ... 5 cubits.” A cubit is 46 centimeters. AT: “16.1 meters ... 2.3 meters” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Distance](#))

the capitals

decorations on top of the pillars

one hundred pomegranates

“100 pomegranates” (See: [Numbers](#))

on the right hand ... on the left

“on the right side ... on the left side” or “on the south side ... on the north side”

he named

“Solomon named”

Jakin

Possibly a name to describe God as “The One who establishes.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Boaz

This name means “in strength” and is possibly used here to describe God because it means, “In Him is strength.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- [column, columns, pillar, pillars](#)
- [pomegranate, pomegranates](#)
- [temple](#)
- [right hand](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 03 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 3 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 04 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of King Solomon and the building of the temple continues in this chapter. (See: [temple](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Special construction

Not only is the temple constructed in a special way, the things that are used in the temple's sacrificial system and its decorations are constructed in a special way.

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 04:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 4:1-3

UDB:

¹ Solomon's workers made a square bronze altar, nine meters long on each side, and four and three-fifths meters high. ² They also made a very large round tank that was called "The Sea," and it had a circumference of fourteen meters. ³ Below the outer rim there were small figures of bulls that were set in a circle, the bulls were placed 45 centimeters apart around the whole circle. The bulls were cast together in two rows, and they were also cast together with the metal basin that was called "The Sea." (Each row had three hundred figures of bulls.)

ULB:

¹ Moreover he made an altar of bronze; its length was twenty cubits, and its width was twenty cubits. Its height was ten cubits. ² He also made the round sea of cast metal, ten cubits from brim to brim. Its height was five cubits, and the sea was thirty cubits in circumference. ³ Under the brim encircling the sea were bulls, ten to each cubit, cast in one piece with the sea when the sea itself was cast.

translationNotes

he made

Here "he" refers to Solomon. The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. AT: "Solomon's workers made" (See: [Metonymy](#))

twenty cubits ... ten cubits ... five cubits ... thirty cubits ... each cubit

A cubit is 46 centimeters. AT: "9.2 meters ... 4.6 meters ... 2.3 meters ... 13.8 meters ... every 46 centimeters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

the round sea

This refers to a tank or basin that would hold water.

cast metal

This is metal that was melted then formed in a mold.

from brim to brim

"from one edge to the other"

in circumference

Circumference is the distance or measurement around a circular object or area.

ten to each cubit

“ten per cubit”

when the sea itself was cast

This can be stated in active form. AT: “when the workers cast the sea itself” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- altar, altars
- bronze
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 4 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 4:4-6

UDB:

⁴ “The Sea” was set on twelve large figures of bulls, with the bulls facing outward. Three bulls faced north, three faced west, three faced south, and three faced east. ⁵ The sides of the tank were eight centimeters thick. The tank’s brim was fashioned like the brim of a cup; it resembled a lily blossom. The tank held sixty-six kiloliters of water.

⁶ The craftsmen also made ten basins for washing the articles that were to be used in making offerings, and they set five on the south side, and five on the north side. In them the utensils used for the burnt offering were washed, and the priests washed themselves in the large bronze tank that was called “The Sea.”

ULB:

⁴ The large basin known as “The Sea” was set upon twelve oxen, three looking toward the north, three looking toward the west, three looking toward the south, and three looking toward the east. “The Sea” was set on top of them, and all their hindquarters were toward the inside. ⁵ “The Sea” was as thick as the width of a hand, and its brim was forged like the brim of a cup, like a lily blossom. “The Sea” held three thousand baths of water. ⁶ He made also ten basins for washing things; he put five on the south side, and five on the north; items used in performing the burnt offering were to be washed in them. The large basin known as “The Sea” was used by the priests for them to wash.

translationNotes

The Sea

This refers to the tank or basin that held water for sacrifices.

was set upon twelve oxen

“was on top of twelve oxen”

twelve oxen

These are images of oxen made of bronze. AT: “twelve large figures of bulls” or “twelve bronze oxen” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

“The Sea” was set on top of them

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Solomon’s workers set ‘The Sea’ on top of the oxen” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

hindquarters

This is the back quarter of the body of an animal with four feet.

thick as the width of a hand

This is about 8 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

its brim was forged like the brim of a cup, like a lily blossom

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Solomon’s workers forged the brim to look like the brim of a cup, to curve outward like a lily” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

three thousand baths

“3,000 baths.” A bath is a unit of volume equal to about 22 liters. AT: “66 kiloliters” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

He made ... he put

Here “he” refers to Solomon. The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. AT: “Solomon’s workers made ... they put” (See: [Metonymy](#))

items used in performing the burnt offering were to be washed in them

This can be stated in active form. AT: “people were to wash the items used in performing the burnt offering in them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

-
- [burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 4 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 4:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ The craftsmen also made ten gold lampstands according to how Solomon had instructed them. They put them in the temple, five on the south side and five on the north side.

⁸ They made ten tables and put them in the temple, five on the south side and five on the north side. They also made one hundred gold basins.

ULB:

⁷ He made the ten lampstands of gold that were made from the instructions for their design; he placed them in the temple, five on the right hand, and five on the left. ⁸ He made ten tables and placed them in the temple, five on the right side, and five on the left. He made one hundred basins of gold.

translationNotes**He made ... he placed ... He made ... He made**

Here “he” refers to Solomon. The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. AT: “Solomon’s workers made ... they placed ... They made ... They made” (See: [Metonymy](#))

that were made from the instructions for their design

This can be stated in active form. AT: “according to the instructions for their design” or “according to how Solomon instructed his workers to design them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

on the right hand ... on the left

“on the right side ... on the left side” or “on the south side ... on the north side”

one hundred basins

“100 basins” (See: [Numbers](#))

basins

shallow bowls used for washing

translationWords

- [lampstand, lampstands](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [temple](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 4 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 4:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ They constructed one courtyard for the priests, and a larger courtyard for the other people. They made doors for the courtyards and covered them with thin sheets of bronze. ¹⁰ They placed the large tank that was called “The Sea” at the southeast corner of the temple.

ULB:

⁹ Furthermore he made the courtyard of the priests, and the great court and the doors for the court and overlaid their doors with bronze. ¹⁰ He placed the basin known as “The Sea” on the east side of the temple, facing toward the south.

translationNotes**he made the courtyard ... and overlaid ... He placed**

Here “he” refers to Solomon. The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. AT: “Solomon’s workers made ... they overlaid ... They placed” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the great court

“the large court”

on the east side of the temple, facing toward the south

“next to the southeast corner of the temple”

translationWords

- [court, courts, courtyard, courtyards](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 4 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 4:11-13

UDB:

¹¹ They also made pots and shovels for the ashes of the altar, and other small bowls.

So Hiram and his workers finished the work that King Solomon had given him to do at the temple of God. ¹² These were the things that they made:

the two large pillars

the two bowl shaped tops on top of the pillars

¹³ the four hundred carvings that resembled pomegranates that were placed in two rows, they were made to decorate the tops of the two pillars.

ULB:

¹¹ Hiram made the pots, the shovels, and the sprinkling bowls.

So Hiram finished the work that he did for King Solomon in the house of God: ¹² the two pillars, the bowl-like capitals that were on top of the two pillars, and the two sets of decorative latticework to cover the two bowl-like capitals that were on top of the pillars. ¹³ He had made the four hundred pomegranates for the two sets of decorative latticework: two rows of pomegranates for each set of latticework to cover the two bowl-like capitals that were on the pillars.

translationNotes

Hiram

See how you translated this name in [2 Chronicles 2:13](#).

the sprinkling bowls

bowls that held blood that was used in the house of God for sprinkling the altar

Hiram finished the work that he did ... He had

Here Hiram represents all who worked on the temple. AT: "Hiram and the other workers finished the work that they did ... They had" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

bowl-like capitals

The upper part of a pillar is called a capital. See how you translated "capital" in [2 Chronicles 3:15](#). AT: "bowl-shaped tops" or "bowl-shaped upper parts"

decorative latticework

This refers to the decorative carving or markings on the upper part of the pillars. AT: “carvings that resembled chains”

the four hundred pomegranates

“the 400 pomegranates.” Translate “pomegranates” as you did in [2 Chronicles 3:16](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh’s house](#)
- [column, columns, pillar, pillars](#)
- [pomegranate, pomegranates](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 4 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 4:14-16

UDB:

¹⁴ The pomegranate carvings also were used to decorate the stands, and the basins that were placed on them,

¹⁵ the very large tank called “The Sea,” and the figures of twelve bulls underneath it,

¹⁶ the pots, shovels, meat forks, and all the other things needed for the work at the altar.

All those things that Hiram-Abi and his craftsmen made for King Solomon were of bronze that they polished for it to gleam brightly.

ULB:

¹⁴ He also made the stands and the basins to go on the stands; ¹⁵ one sea and the twelve bulls under it, ¹⁶ also the pots, shovels, meat forks, and all the other implements that Hiram-Abi made of polished bronze for King Solomon, for the house of Yahweh. ^[1]

4:16 ^[1]Instead of *meat forks* , some versions have *bowels* .

translationNotes

He also made ... Hiram-Abi made

Here Hiram, who is also called Hiram-Abi, represents all those who worked with him. AT: “They also made ... Hiram-Abi and his craftsmen made” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

the basins

“the bowls”

one sea and the twelve bulls

This is a large decorative washing container. Translate “sea” and “bulls” as you did in [2 Chronicles 4:2-3](#).

other implements

“other tools” or “other objects used for the altar”

polished bronze

Bronze that the workmen polished so that it would reflect light.

translationWords

- [cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [bronze](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 4 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 4:17-18

UDB:

¹⁷ They made them by pouring melted bronze into the clay molds that Hiram-Abi had set up near the Jordan River between the cities of Succoth and Zarethan. ¹⁸ All of those things that Solomon told them to make used a very large amount of bronze, so great was the amount they used that no one knew how much it all weighed.

ULB:

¹⁷ The king had cast them in the plain of the Jordan, in the clay ground between Succoth and Zarethan. ¹⁸ Thus Solomon made all these vessels in great abundance; indeed, the weight of the bronze could not be known.

translationNotes

The king had cast them ... Solomon made

The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. AT: “The king commanded his workers to cast them ... Solomon’s workers made” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Zarethan

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the weight of the bronze could not be known

This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) there was so much bronze no one tried to weigh it. AT: “no one even tried to weigh the bronze” or 2) this is a hyperbole that emphasizes the great amount of bronze. AT: “no one could even determine how much all the bronze weighed” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

translationWords

- [Jordan River, Jordan](#)
- [Succoth](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 4 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 4:19-21

UDB:

¹⁹ Solomon’s workers also made all these things that they later put into the temple:

the golden altar,

the tables on which the priests put the bread to display before God,

²⁰ the pure gold lampstands and the pure gold lamps, in which the priests put oil to burn in front of the very holy place (as God had told Moses that the priests should do),

²¹ the pure gold decorations that resembled flowers,

and the lamps and tongs.

ULB:

¹⁹ Solomon made all the furnishings that were in the house of God, the golden altar also, and the tables on which the bread of the presence was to be placed; ²⁰ the lampstands with their lamps, that were designed to burn before the inner room—these were made of pure gold; ²¹ and the flowers, the lamps, and the tongs, of gold, pure gold.

translationNotes

Solomon made

The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. AT: “Solomon’s workers made” (See: [Metonymy](#))

all the furnishings

This refers to all of the bowls and tools that were used in the house of God.

the tables on which the bread of the presence was to be placed

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the tables on which the priests were to place the bread of the presence” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the bread of the presence

This is a reference to the 12 loaves of bread that were placed in front of the altar. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 2:4](#).

that were designed to burn before the inner room

This can be stated in active form. AT: “to burn before the inner room” or “in which the priests put oil to burn in front of the inner room” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the inner room

This is another name for “the holy of holies” or “the very holy place.”

the flowers, the lamps

The “flowers” and “lamps” were part of the lampstands.

the tongs

This is a tool made from two sticks of wood or metal connected at one end and used for picking up objects.

translationWords

- [gold, golden](#)
- [altar, altars](#)
- [bread](#)
- [lampstand, lampstands](#)
- [lamp, lamps](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 4 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 4:22

UDB:

²² The workers also made the pure gold wick trimmers and bowls for sprinkling, and dishes and incense burners,
the gold doors of the temple,
the gold inner doors leading to the very holy place,

ULB:

²² Also the lamp trimmers, basins, spoons, and incense burners were all made of pure gold. As for the entrance into the house, its inner doors into the most holy place and the doors of the house, that is, of the temple, were made of gold.

translationNotes

Also the lamp trimmers ... were all made of pure gold

This can be stated in active form. AT: “The workers also made the lamp trimmers ... out of pure gold” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

lamp trimmers

These would have been used to trim the wicks of the lamps.

its inner doors ... were made of gold

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the workers made its inner doors ... out of gold” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [incense, incenses](#)
- [holy place](#)
- [temple](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 4 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 05 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of King Solomon continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Moving the contents of the tent

Everything from the tent was moved into the new temple. This too was done in a special way. (See: [temple](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 05:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 5:1

UDB:

¹ After Solomon’s workers had finished building the temple, Solomon put in the temple storerooms everything that his father David had dedicated to Yahweh—all the silver and gold and all the other things that were used at the temple.

ULB:

¹ When all the work that Solomon did for the house of Yahweh was completed, Solomon brought in the things that David, his father, had set apart for this purpose, including the silver, the gold, and all the furnishings—he placed them into the treasuries of the house of God.

translationNotes

When all the work that Solomon did for the house of Yahweh was completed, Solomon brought

The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. This can be stated in active form. AT: “When Solomon’s workers completed all of the work for the house of Yahweh, they brought” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

treasuries

“storerooms.” This is an area where things are kept or stored.

translationWords

- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh’s house](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [silver](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 05 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 5 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 5:2-3

UDB:

² Then King Solomon summoned to Jerusalem all the elders of Israel, all the leaders of the tribes and of the families. He wanted them to join in bringing to the temple Yahweh's sacred chest from Mount Zion, where it was in the part of the city called the city of David. ³ So all the leaders of Israel gathered together with the king, during the Festival of Shelters, in the seventh month.

ULB:

² Then Solomon assembled the elders of Israel, all the heads of the tribes, and the leaders of the families of the people of Israel, in Jerusalem, to bring up the ark of the covenant of Yahweh from the city of David, that is, Zion. ³ All the men of Israel assembled before the king at the feast, which was in the seventh month.

translationNotes

assembled the elders of Israel

“called together the leaders of Israel”

all the heads of the tribes

Here “heads” is a metaphor for the most important part of something. AT: “all the leaders of the tribes” (See: [Metaphor](#))

All the men of Israel

This may refer either 1) to the people whom Solomon called to Jerusalem and who are listed in 5:2 or 2) generally to those who traveled to Jerusalem for the feast, not necessarily to every male person who lived in Israel. (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

at the feast, which was in the seventh month

This is the Festival of Shelters which is on the fifteenth day of the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is near the beginning of October on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [elder, elders](#)
- [head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded](#)

- Israel, Israelites
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- family, families
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Jerusalem
- ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh
- Yahweh
- city of David
- Zion, Mount Zion
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- feast, feasts, feasting

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 05 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 5 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 5:4-6

UDB:

⁴ When they had all arrived, the descendants of Levi lifted up the sacred chest, ⁵ and they carried it and the sacred tent and the sacred things that were inside it. The priests, who were also descended from Levi, carried them. ⁶ King Solomon and many of the other people of Israel who had gathered there walked in front of the sacred chest. And they sacrificed a huge amount of sheep and bulls. No one was able to count them because there were very many.

ULB:

⁴ All the elders of Israel came, and the Levites took up the ark. ⁵ They brought up the ark, the tent of meeting, and all the holy furnishings that were in the tent. The priests who were of the tribe of Levi brought these things up. ⁶ King Solomon and all the assembly of Israel came together before the ark, sacrificing sheep and oxen that could not be counted.

translationNotes

furnishings

This refers to all of the bowls and tools that were used in the house of God. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 4:19](#)

all the assembly of Israel

Here “all” is a generalization meaning very many Israelites. (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

sacrificing sheep and oxen that could not be counted

This is an exaggeration that emphasizes the great number of animals that were sacrificed. This can be stated in active form. AT: “sacrificing more sheep and oxen than anyone could count” or “sacrificing very many sheep and oxen” (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical](#)
- [tent of meeting](#)
- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings](#)
- [ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)
-

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 05 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 5 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 5:7-8

UDB:

⁷ The priests then brought the sacred chest into the very holy place, into the inner room of the temple, and they placed it under the wings of the figures of winged creatures. ⁸ The wings of those figures spread out over the sacred chest and over the poles by which it was carried.

ULB:

⁷ The priests brought in the ark of the covenant of Yahweh to its place, into the inner room of the house, to the most holy place, under the wings of the cherubim. ⁸ For the cherubim spread out their wings over the place of the ark, and they covered the ark and the poles by which it was carried.

translationNotes

into the inner room of the house, to the most holy place, under

“into the inner room of the house—that is, to the most holy place—under”

poles by which it was carried

This can be stated in active form. AT: “poles by which the priests carried it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [cherub, cherubim, cherubs](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 05 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 5 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 5:9-10

UDB:

⁹ The poles were very long, with the result that they could be seen by people who were standing in the entrance to the very holy place, but they could not be seen by anyone standing outside the temple. Those poles are still there. ¹⁰ The only things that were inside the sacred chest were the two stone tablets that Moses had put there at Mount Sinai, where Yahweh had made a covenant with the Israelites after they came out of Egypt.

ULB:

⁹ The poles were so long that their ends were seen from the holy place in front of the inner room, but they could not be seen from outside. They are there to this day. ¹⁰ There was nothing in the ark except the two tablets that Moses had put there at Horeb, when Yahweh made a covenant with the people of Israel, when they came out of Egypt.

translationNotes

their ends were seen ... they could not be seen

This can be stated in active form. AT: “people could see their ends ... people could not see them”

to this day

This means the day on which the writer wrote.

translationWords

- [holy place](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Horeb](#)
- [covenant, covenants, new covenant](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 05 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 5 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 5:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ Then the priests left the holy place in the temple. All the priests who were there set themselves apart to serve the priestly duties, without concern for which group they were from. ¹² All the descendants of Levi who were musicians—Asaph, Heman, Jeduthun, their sons and their other relatives—stood on the east side of the altar. They were wearing linen clothes, and they were playing cymbals, harps, and lyres. There were 120 other priests who were blowing trumpets.

ULB:

¹¹ It came about that the priests came out of the holy place. All the priests who were present had consecrated themselves to Yahweh, not ordering themselves according to their divisions. ¹² Also the Levites who were the singers, all of them, including Asaph, Heman, Jeduthun, and their sons and brothers, clothed in fine linen and playing cymbals, harps, and lyres, stood at the east end of the altar. With them were 120 priests blowing trumpets.

translationNotes

It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way of doing this, you could consider using it here.

Asaph, Heman, Jeduthun

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

sons and brothers

“sons and other relatives”

cymbals

two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

120 priests

“one hundred and twenty priests” (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)
- [brother, brothers](#)
- [harp, harps, harpist, harpists](#)
- [lute, lyre, lyres](#)
- [altar, altars](#)
- [trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 05 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 5 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 5:13-14

UDB:

¹³ The men blowing trumpets, those playing the cymbals and other musical instruments, and the singers, made music together, praising Yahweh and singing this song:

”Yahweh is good to us;
he faithfully loves us forever.”

Then suddenly the temple was filled with a cloud. ¹⁴ The glory of Yahweh filled the temple, with the result that the priests were not able to continue doing their work.

ULB:

¹³ It came about that the trumpeters and singers made music together, making one sound to be heard for praising and thanking Yahweh. They raised their voices with the trumpets and cymbals and other instruments, and they praised Yahweh. They sang, “For he is good, for his covenant loyalty endures forever.” Then the house, the house of Yahweh, was filled with a cloud. ¹⁴ The priests could not stand in order to serve because of the cloud, for the glory of Yahweh filled his house.

translationNotes

making one sound to be heard for praising and thanking Yahweh

This can be stated in active form. AT: “making one sound as they praised and thanked Yahweh” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

raised their voices

This is an idiom. AT: “sang loudly” (See: [Idiom](#))

for his covenant loyalty endures forever

The abstract noun “covenant loyalty” can be stated as “faithful.” AT: “for he is faithful forever” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Then the house, the house of Yahweh, was filled with a cloud

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Then a cloud filled the house of Yahweh” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy](#)
- [covenant, covenants, new covenant](#)
- [eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice](#)
- [glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 05 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 5 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 06 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of King Solomon continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Temple dedication

Solomon dedicated the temple with a prayer asking God to honor the temple. It was common to dedicate something important to God when it was completed. (See: [temple](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 06:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 6:1-3

UDB:

¹ Then Solomon prayed, "Yahweh, you said that you would live in a dark cloud. ² But now I have built a glorious temple for you to live in forever!"

³ Then while all the people stood there, Solomon turned toward the people and asked God to bless them.

ULB:

¹ Then Solomon said, "Yahweh has said that he would live in thick darkness, ² but I have built you a lofty residence, a place for you to live in forever." ³ Then the king turned around and blessed all the assembly of Israel, while all the assembly of Israel was standing.

translationNotes

Yahweh has said that he

Solomon speaks to Yahweh as if he were speaking to someone else to show that he respects Yahweh. AT: "Yahweh, you have said that you" (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

in thick darkness

Here the word "thick" shows that the darkness is extreme. Yahweh spoke of not allowing sinful people to see him as if he were to live in darkness. AT: "in great darkness" (See: [Metaphor](#))

I have built you a lofty residence

Solomon speaks of commanding the people to build the temple and telling them how to do it as if he himself had built it. AT: "I and your people have built you a lofty residence" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

a lofty residence

a magnificent house, appropriate for someone who is very important

while all the assembly of Israel was standing

The phrase "all the assembly" is a generalization. It does not mean that every person of Israel was standing, but that all of the people who were gathered there were standing. AT: "while the people of Israel there were standing" (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

translationWords

- Solomon
- Yahweh
- darkness
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- bless, blessed, blessing
- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled
- Israel, Israelites

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 6 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 6:4-6

UDB:

⁴ He said to them,

”Let us praise Yahweh, the God to whom we Israelites belong, who has caused to happen what he promised to my father David. What he said to David was this:

⁵ ’From the time that I brought my people out of Egypt, I have never chosen a city in Israel in which a temple should be built for people to worship me there. Nor did I choose anyone to be the leader of my Israelite people. ⁶ But now I have chosen Jerusalem to be the place for people to worship me, and I have chosen you, David, to rule my Israelite people.”

ULB:

⁴ He said, ”May Yahweh, the God of Israel, be praised, who spoke to David my father, and has fulfilled it with his own hands, saying, ⁵ ’Since the day that I brought my people out of the land of Egypt, I chose no city out of all the tribes of Israel in which to build a house, in order for my name to be there. Neither did I choose any man to be prince over my people Israel. ⁶ However, I have chosen Jerusalem, so that my name might be there, and I have chosen David to be over my people Israel.’

translationNotes

May Yahweh, the God of Israel, be praised

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Praise Yahweh, the God of Israel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

David my father

King Solomon actually was one of King David’s sons.

has fulfilled it

“has caused it to happen.” The word “it” refers to what God had promised. AT: “has ensured that he fulfilled his promises” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

with his own hands

The hand is a metonym for power. AT: “by his own power” (See: [Metonymy](#))

in order for my name to be there

Here the metonym “my name” represents Yahweh’s reputation, and his name being there represents people recognizing his greatness and worshiping him there. AT: “for people to worship me there” (See: [Metonymy](#))

to be prince over my people Israel

Being “prince over people” represents ruling them. AT: “to rule my people Israel” (See: [Metaphor](#))

so that my name might be there

Here the metonym “my name” represents Yahweh’s reputation, and his name being there represents people recognizing his greatness and worshiping him there. AT: “so that people might worship me there” (See: [Metonymy](#))

to be over my people Israel

Being “over” people represents ruling them. AT: “to rule my people Israel” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians](#)
- [tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen](#)
- [name, names, named](#)
- [prince, princes, princess, princesses](#)
- [chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 6 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 6:7-9

UDB:

⁷ Then Solomon said further, "My father David wanted to build a temple for Yahweh, the God to whom we Israelites belong. ⁸ But Yahweh said to him, 'It is good that you wanted to build a house for me. ⁹ However, you are not the one who I want to build the temple, It is one of your own sons who will build it.'

ULB:

⁷ Now it was in the heart of David my father, to build a house for the name of Yahweh, the God of Israel. ⁸ But Yahweh said to David my father, 'In that it was in your heart to build a house for my name, you did well for it to be in your heart. ⁹ Nevertheless, you must not build the house; instead, your son, one who will come from your loins, will build the house for my name.'

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

King Solomon continues speaking to the people at the temple.

it was in the heart of David my father ... it was in your heart ... for it to be in your heart

Here David's heart is spoken of as if it were a container, and what he desired is spoken of as if it were an item in the container. AT: "David my father desired ... you desired ... to desire to do that" (See: [Metaphor](#))

for the name of Yahweh ... for my name

Possible meanings are 1) Yahweh's name represents himself. AT: "for Yahweh ... for me" or 2) Yahweh's name represents his reputation. AT: "for Yahweh's reputation ... for my reputation" (See: [Metonymy](#))

In that it was in your heart

"Because it was in your heart" or "Because you wanted"

one who will come from your loins

"one who will be your own offspring" or "one whom you yourself will father"

translationWords

- [heart, hearts](#)
- [loins](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 6 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 6:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ And Yahweh has done what he promised to do. I have become the king of Israel to rule after my father, and I am ruling the people, as Yahweh promised, and I have arranged for this temple to be built for us to worship Yahweh, the God to whom we Israelites belong. ¹¹ I have put the sacred chest in the temple, in which are the stone tablets showing the covenant that Yahweh made with us Israelite people.”

ULB:

¹⁰ Yahweh has carried out the word that he had said, for I have arisen in the place of David my father, and I sit on the throne of Israel, as Yahweh promised. I have built the house for the name of Yahweh, the God of Israel. ¹¹ I have placed the ark there, in which is Yahweh’s covenant, which he made with the people of Israel.”

translationNotes

has carried out the word that he had said

This is an idiom. AT: “has done exactly what he said he would do” (See: [Idiom](#))

I have arisen in the place of David my father

Height is a metaphor for power. AT: “I have gained the power that David my father had” (See: [Metaphor](#))

I sit on the throne of Israel

The throne is a metonym for the activity of the one who sits on the throne. AT: “I rule over Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

for the name of Yahweh

Possible meanings are 1) Yahweh’s name represents himself. AT: “for Yahweh” or 2) Yahweh’s name represents his reputation. AT: “for the reputation of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

in which is Yahweh’s covenant, which

The stone tablets on which Yahweh had written the terms of the covenant are spoken of as if they were the covenant itself. AT: “in which are the tablets on which Yahweh wrote the terms of the covenant that” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [word, words](#)
- [throne, thrones, enthroned](#)
- [promise, promises, promised](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 6 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 6:12-13**UDB:**

¹² Then Solomon stood in front of the altar that was in front of the people of Israel who had gathered there. He spread out his hands as he began to pray. ¹³ Now His workers had built a bronze platform there for him to stand on, which was two and one-third meters square and one and one-half meters high. They had put it in the outer courtyard. Solomon mounted that platform and then knelt down in front of all the people of Israel who had gathered there, and he spread out his arms toward heaven.

ULB:

¹² Solomon stood before the altar of Yahweh in the presence of all the assembly of Israel, and spread out his hands. ¹³ For he had made a bronze platform, five cubits long, five cubits wide, and three cubits high. He had placed it in the middle of the courtyard. He stood on it and knelt down before all the assembly of Israel, and then he spread out his hands toward the heavens.

translationNotes**in the presence of all the assembly of Israel**

“in front of the people of Israel who had gathered there”

spread out his hands

“raised his hands.” This was to show that he was praying. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

five cubits long, five cubits wide, and three cubits high

You may convert these to modern measures. AT: “two and one-third meters long, two and one-third meters wide, and one and one-half meters high” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

he spread out his hands toward the heavens

Solomon lifted up his hands and held them high as he knelt on the platform to pray. Spreading out his hands toward the heavens was a way of showing that he was praying to Yahweh. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

translationWords

- altar, altars
- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled

- bronze
- court, courts, courtyard, courtyards
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 6 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 6:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ Then he prayed,

”Yahweh, the God to whom we Israelite people belong, there is no God like you in heaven or on the earth. You solemnly promised in your covenant that you would faithfully love us, and that is what you have done for us who earnestly do what you want us to do.

¹⁵ You have done the things that you promised my father David, who served you very well, that you would do. Truly, you promised to do those things for him, and today we see that by your power you have caused it all to happen.

ULB:

¹⁴ He said, ”Yahweh, God of Israel, there is no God like you in the heavens or on the earth, who keeps covenant and steadfast love with your servants who walk before you with all their heart; ¹⁵ you who have kept with your servant David my father, what you promised him. Yes, you spoke with your mouth and have fulfilled it with your hand, as it is today.

translationNotes**on the earth, who keeps covenant and steadfast love with your servants**

This can be stated as a new sentence. AT: “on the earth. You keep your promise to love your servants” or “on the earth. You faithfully love your servants”

walk before you with all their heart

The way a person lives is spoken of as if that person were walking on a path. AT: “live wholeheartedly the way that you want them to” (See: [Metaphor](#))

you who have kept with your servant David my father, what you promised him

“you who have kept your promise to your servant David my father.” To keep a promise is an idiom that means to do what one has promised. AT: “you who have done what you promised your servant David my father” (See: [Idiom](#))

you spoke with your mouth

The phrase “with your mouth” may emphasize that God himself spoke. It was not someone else who made the promise. AT: “you yourself spoke”

and have fulfilled it with your hand

The hand is a metonym for the power of the hand. AT: “and, by your power, have fulfilled what you said” or “and by your power have done what you said” (See: [Metonymy](#))

as it is today

This refers to the day when Solomon was saying this prayer.

translationWords

- [God](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love](#)
- [enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants](#)
- [walk, walks, walked, walking](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 6 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 6:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ So now, Yahweh, the God we Israelites worship Israel, as you promised your servant David, my father, please make sure that he will always have a descendant who will be king of Israel. For you promise you would do this if his descendants were faithful to you. ¹⁷ So now, God of us Israelite people, cause what you promised David, who served you well, to become true.

ULB:

¹⁶ Now then, Yahweh, God of Israel, carry out what you have promised to your servant David my father, when you said, 'You will not fail to have a man in my sight to sit on the throne of Israel, if only your descendants are careful to walk in my law, as you have walked before me.' ¹⁷ Now then, God of Israel, I pray that the promise you made to your servant David will come true.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

King Solomon continues praying.

carry out what you have promised

This is a request. To carry out what one has said is an idiom meaning to do what one has said. AT: "please do what you have promised" (See: [Idiom](#))

You will not fail to have a man

God speaking in terms of David having a man implies that the man would be a descendant of David. This can be stated positively. AT: "you will always have a descendant" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Double Negatives](#))

a man in my sight to sit on the throne of Israel

The phrase "in my sight" here implies that God would choose the man and the man would want to obey God. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

to sit on the throne of Israel

The throne is a metonym for the activity of the one who sits on the throne. AT: "to rule over Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

to walk in my law, as you have walked before me

The way a person behaves is spoken of as if that person were walking on a path. AT: “to obey my law, as you have obeyed me” or “to be faithful to my law as you have been faithful to me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

that the promise you made to your servant David will come true

“that the things that you promised your servant David will happen”

translationWords

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants](#)
- [law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh](#)
- [pray, prayer, prayers, prayed](#)
- [true, truth, truths](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 6 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 6:18-20

UDB:

¹⁸ But, my God, will you really live on earth among us? This temple I have built cannot contain you; not even the universe and heaven itself can contain you. ¹⁹ But Yahweh, my God, please listen to my prayer, while I am pleading with this day and do what I am requesting. ²⁰ Always protect this temple, this place where you said you would be present, in order that you might always hear me when I pray, for I am your servant.

ULB:

¹⁸ But will God actually live with mankind on the earth? Look, the entire universe and heaven itself cannot contain you—how much less can this temple that I have built! ¹⁹ Yet please respect this prayer of your servant and his request, Yahweh my God; listen to the cry and prayer that your servant prays before you. ²⁰ May your eyes be open toward this temple day and night, the place where you promised to put your name. May you listen to the prayer your servant prays toward this place.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

King Solomon continues praying.

But will God actually live with mankind on the earth?

Possible meanings of this question are 1) Solomon is asking a real question and expecting an answer or 2) the question is rhetorical and Solomon is emphasizing that God is too big and mighty to live on earth. AT: “But it surely cannot be that God will actually live on the earth!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

But will God

Here Solomon speaks about God in the third person to show his great respect for God. It can be stated in the second person. AT: “But will you” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

Look

Here “Look” indicates that he is about to say something important.

the entire universe and heaven itself cannot contain you

This implies that God is much greater than all the universe and heaven. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 2:6](#). (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

you—how much less can this temple that I have built

“you, so this temple that I have built certainly cannot contain you”

this temple that I have built

Solomon speaks of commanding the people to build the temple and telling them how to do it as if he himself had built it. AT: “this temple that your people have built under my leadership” or “this house that I and your people have built” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

respect this prayer of your servant and his request

The words “prayer” and “request” mean basically the same thing and emphasize that he is sincere as he makes his request. Solomon refers to himself as “your servant” to show that he respects Yahweh. This can be stated in first person. AT: “respect me, your servant, as I make this request” (See: [Doublet](#) and [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

listen to the cry and prayer that your servant prays before you

The words “cry” and “prayer” mean basically the same thing and emphasize that he is sincere as he asks Yahweh to help him. Solomon refers to himself as “your servant” to show that he respects Yahweh. This can be stated in first person. AT: “listen to me, your servant, as I call for you to help me” (See: [Doublet](#) and [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

May your eyes be open toward this temple

The eyes being open is a metonym for watching, and here watching represents protecting. “Please watch over this temple” or “Please protect this temple” (See: [Metaphor](#))

day and night

This is a merism. AT: “all the time” or “continually” (See: [Merism](#))

where you promised to put your name

Possible meanings are 1) Yahweh’s name represents himself. AT: “where you promised to be” or 2) Yahweh’s name represents his reputation. AT: “where you promised to make people know you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the prayer your servant prays toward this place

Solomon refers to himself as “your servant” to show that he respects Yahweh. This can be stated in first person. AT: “the prayer that I, your servant, pray toward this place” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

translationWords

- [temple](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 6 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 6:21

UDB:

²¹ Listen to me when I pray, and listen to your Israelite people when they pray, whether we are here, or even if we just face in this direction. Listen from heaven, where you live; and when you hear us pray, forgive us.

ULB:

²¹ So listen to the requests of your servant and of your people Israel when we pray toward this place. Yes, listen from the place where you live, from the heavens; and when you listen, forgive.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

King Solomon continues praying.

So listen to the requests of your servant and of your people Israel

Solomon speaks of himself as “your servant” to show that he respects Yahweh. This can be stated in first person. AT: “So listen to my requests and the requests of your people Israel” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

when you listen, forgive

“when you hear our prayers, please forgive our sins”

translationWords

- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 6 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 6:22-23**UDB:**

²² If people accuse someone of doing something wrong to another person, and if they bring him in front of your altar outside this holy temple, and if he says, 'I did not do that; may God punish me if I am not telling the truth,' ²³ then please listen from heaven and decide who is telling the truth. Then punish the person who is guilty as he deserves to be punished, and do good to the other person as a reward for his innocence.

ULB:

²² If a man sins against his neighbor and is required to swear an oath, and if he comes and swears an oath before your altar in this house, ²³ listen from the heavens and act. Judge your servants, condemning the guilty and bringing what he has done upon his own head. Declare the innocent not guilty and give to him according to his righteousness.

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

King Solomon continues praying.

is required to swear an oath

This can be stated in active form. AT: "someone requires him to swear an oath" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

this house

This refers to the temple.

bringing what he has done upon his own head

To bring someone's conduct on him represents punishing him for his bad conduct. AT: "punishing him as he deserves" (See: [Metaphor](#))

upon his own head

Here the "head" refers to the whole person. AT: "on him" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

give to him according to his righteousness

"give him what he deserves because he is innocent"

translationWords

- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- neighbor, neighbors, neighborhood, neighboring
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- altar, altars
- judge, judges, judgment, judgments
- head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded
- declare, declares, declared, declaring, declaration, declarations
- innocent
- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 6 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 6:24-25

UDB:

²⁴ And suppose that your Israelite people are defeated by their enemies because they sinned against you, and forced to go to some distant country. Suppose further that they turn away from their sinful behavior and face in the direction of this temple and acknowledge that you have justly punished them; and suppose that they beg you to forgive them. ²⁵ Then please listen to them from heaven and forgive your them for the sins that they have committed, and bring them back to this land that you gave to our ancestors.

ULB:

²⁴ When your people Israel are defeated by an enemy because they have sinned against you, if they turn back to you, confess your name, pray, and request forgiveness before you in this temple— ²⁵ then please listen from the heavens and forgive the sin of your people Israel; bring them back to the land that you gave to them and to their ancestors.

translationNotes

When your people Israel are defeated by an enemy

This can be stated in active form. AT: “When an enemy defeats your people Israel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

because they have sinned against you

“because your people Israel have sinned against you”

if they turn back to you

Here “turn back to you” represents submitting again to God. AT: “if they submit to you again” (See: [Metaphor](#))

confess your name

Possible meanings are 1) “confess that they have sinned against you” or 2) “praise you” or 3) “say that they will obey you from now on.”

request forgiveness before you

The abstract noun “forgiveness” can be translated as a verb. AT: “ask you to forgive them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

please listen from the heavens

To “listen” is an idiom for responding to prayer. AT: “please honor their prayer” or “please answer their prayer” (See: [Idiom](#))

bring them back to the land that you gave to them and to their ancestors

This implies that when their enemies defeated them, God’s people will have gone to live in other lands. AT: “bring them back to their own land” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies](#)
- [turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back](#)
- [confess, confessed, confesses, confession](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 6 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 6:26-27**UDB:**

²⁶ When you do not allow any rain to fall because the people have sinned against you—then, if they stop acting sinfully and humbly pray to you, you who are present in this place, ²⁷ then listen from heaven and forgive the sins of your people. Teach them the right way to conduct their lives. Then send rain on the land that you gave to your people forever.

ULB:

²⁶ When the skies are shut up and there is no rain because the people have sinned against you—if they pray toward this place, confess your name, and turn from their sin when you have afflicted them—²⁷ then listen in heaven and forgive the sin of your servants and of your people Israel, when you direct them to the good way in which they should walk. Send rain on your land, which you have given to your people as an inheritance.

translationNotes**When the skies are shut up and there is no rain**

The sky is spoken of as if it were a building in which God stores the rain, and when God does not want it to rain he closes the door to the building. AT: “When you do not allow rain to fall from the skies” (See: [Metaphor](#))

confess your name

Possible meanings are 1) “confess that they have sinned against you” or 2) “praise you” or 3) “say that they will obey you from now on.”

turn from their sin

Here “turn from” is a metaphor for stopping doing it. AT: “stop committing their sins” or “stop acting sinfully” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the good way in which they should walk

The way a person lives is spoken of as if that person were walking on a path. AT: “the good way that they should live” (See: [Metaphor](#))

your land, which you have given to your people as an inheritance

The land is spoken of as if it were an inheritance because God wanted them to possess it forever. AT: “your land, which you have given to your people to own forever” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [confess, confessed, confesses, confession](#)
- [afflicted, afflict, afflicted, afflicting, affliction, afflictions](#)
- [walk, walks, walked, walking](#)
- [send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 6 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 6:28-31

UDB:

²⁸ And when the people of this land experience famines, or if there is a plague or mildew or locusts or grasshoppers, or when their enemies surround any of their cities in order to attack them—if any of these disaster happens to them—²⁹ and then if your Israelite people earnestly plead, or if even just one person does so—if they stretch out their hands toward this temple and pray to you because they know the weakness and sorrow in their own hearts—³⁰ then listen from your home in heaven and forgive them. You alone know what each person is thinking, so reward each person according to everything that he does. ³¹ Do this in order that they might honor you and conduct their lives as you want them to, all the time that they live in this land that you gave to our ancestors.

ULB:

²⁸ Suppose there is famine in the land, or suppose that there is disease, blight or mildew, locusts or caterpillars; or suppose that its enemies attack the city gates in their land, or that there is any plague or sickness—²⁹ and suppose then that prayers and requests are made by a person or by all your people Israel—each knowing the plague and sorrow in his own heart as he spreads out his hands toward this temple. ³⁰ Then listen from heaven, the place where you live; forgive, and reward every person for all his ways; you know his heart, because you and you only know the hearts of human beings. ³¹ Do this so that they may fear you, so that they may walk in your ways all the days that they live on the land that you gave to our ancestors.

translationNotes

blight or mildew

These are agricultural terms that refer to the death of crops from either too little or too much rain, respectively.

locusts or caterpillars

A “locust” is a type of grasshopper that causes destruction by eating crops. The word “caterpillar” refers to an early growth stage of the locust.

prayers and requests are made by a person or by all your people Israel

This can be stated in active form. AT: “a person, or all your people Israel, prays and makes requests” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

prayers and requests

The words “prayers” and “requests” mean basically the same thing and emphasize that the person is sincere as he makes his requests. (See: [Doublet](#))

knowing the plague and sorrow in his own heart

Here “plague” is a metaphor for sin, and sin and sorrow are spoken of as being in people’s hearts. AT: “knowing the sin and sorrow in his own heart” (See: [Metaphor](#))

he spreads out his hands toward this temple

This was a way of showing that they were praying to the God of the temple. See how you translated “spread out his hands” in [2 Chronicles 6:12](#). (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

for all his ways

Here “his ways” represents the person’s behavior. AT: “for what he has done” (See: [Metaphor](#))

so that they may walk in your ways

Here “walk in your ways” represents living and behaving the way God wants. AT: “so that they may live as you want them to” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [famine, famines](#)
- [locust, locusts](#)
- [gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways](#)
- [plague, plagues](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned](#)
- [know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge](#)
- [fear, fears, afraid](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 6 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 6:32-33

UDB:

³² There will be some foreigners who do not belong to your Israelite people who have come here from countries far away because they have heard that you are very great and powerful. If they turn toward this temple and pray, ³³ then from your home in heaven please listen to their prayer and do for them what they request you to do. Do that in order that all the people groups in the world will honor and obey you, as your people of Israel do. And do this so that they will know that you are present in this temple that I have built.

ULB:

³² As for the foreigner who does not belong to your people Israel, but who—because of your great name, your mighty hand, and your outstretched arm—comes and prays toward this house, ³³ then please listen from heaven, the place where you live, and do all that the foreigner asks of you, so that all the people of the earth may know your name and fear you, as do your own people Israel, and that they might know that this house I have built is called by your name.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

King Solomon continues praying.

who—because of your great name, your mighty hand, and your outstretched arm—comes

It is implied that the foreigners come because they hear about God's greatness. AT: "who hears about your great name, your mighty hand, and your outstretched arm—if he comes" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

your great name

Here God's name represents his reputation. AT: "your great reputation" or "your greatness" (See: [Metonymy](#))

your mighty hand, and your outstretched arm

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and refer to God's power. (See: [Doublet](#) and [Metonymy](#))

prays toward this house

Praying toward Yahweh's temple shows that one is praying to Yahweh. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

may know your name

Here God's name represents his reputation. AT: "may know your reputation" or "may know your greatness" (See: [Metonymy](#))

as do your own people Israel

"as your own people Israel know your name and fear you"

this house I have built is called by your name

The phrase "is called by your name" shows that God possesses and owns the house. This can be stated in active form. AT: "you own this house that I have built" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

this house I have built

Solomon speaks of commanding the people to build the temple and telling them how to do it as if he himself had built it. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 6:18](#). AT: "this house that your people have built under my leadership" or "this house that I and your people have built" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

translationWords

- [alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners](#)
- [might, mighty, mightier, mightily](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [fear, fears, afraid](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 6 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 6:34-35**UDB:**

³⁴ When you send your people to go and attack their enemies, if they pray to you, no matter where they are, and if they turn toward this city that you have chosen and toward this temple that I have caused to be built to honor you, ³⁵ then will you please listen from heaven to their prayers. Listen to what they plead for you to do, and give them help.

ULB:

³⁴ Suppose that your people go out to battle against their enemies, by whatever way you may send them, and suppose that they pray to you toward this city that you have chosen, and toward the house that I have built for your name. ³⁵ Then listen from the heavens to their prayer, their request, and help their cause.

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

King Solomon continues praying.

Suppose that your people go out ... suppose that they pray

When Solomon was speaking, these hypothetical situations had not happened, but Solomon knew that they might happen in the future. Use the form in your language for talking about events that have not happened but might happen in the future. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

they pray to you toward this city ... and toward the house

Praying toward Jerusalem and the temple shows that they are praying to Yahweh. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

the house that I have built

Solomon speaks of commanding the people to build the temple and telling them how to do it as if he himself had built it. AT: “this house that your people have built under my leadership” or “this house that I and your people have built” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

for your name

Possible meanings are 1) Yahweh’s name represents himself. AT: “for you” or 2) Yahweh’s name represents his reputation. AT: “for your reputation” (See: [Metonymy](#))

to their prayer, their request

The abstract nouns “prayer” and “request” can be stated as verbs. AT: “to what they request when they pray to you” (See: [Doublet](#))

help their cause

This refers to helping them fight against their enemies.

translationWords

- [people of God, my people](#)
- [pray, prayer, prayers, prayed](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 6 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 6:36-39

UDB:

³⁶ It is true that everyone sins. So when your people sin against you, and you become angry with them, you might allow their enemies to capture them and take them to their countries, even to countries that are far away. ³⁷ When that happens, while they are in those distant countries, if they say ‘We have sinned; we have done things that are wrong and have done things that are very wicked,’ ³⁸ suppose that they repent very sincerely and pray facing this land that you gave their ancestors, and facing this city that you chose, and facing this temple that I have built for you to be present in. ³⁹ Then from your home in heaven listen to their prayer, and listen to them while they plead for your help, and do what they ask you to do, and forgive your people who have sinned against you.

ULB:

³⁶ Suppose they sin against you—since there is no one who does not sin—and suppose that you are angry with them and hand them over to the enemy, so that the enemy carries them away and takes them as captives to their land, whether distant or near. ³⁷ Then suppose they realize they are in the land where they have been exiled, and suppose that they repent and seek favor from you in the land of their captivity. Suppose that they say, ‘We have acted perversely and sinned. We have behaved wickedly.’ ³⁸ Suppose that they return to you with all their heart and with all their soul in the land of their captivity, where they took them as captives, and suppose that they pray toward their land, which you gave to their ancestors, and toward the city that you chose, and toward the house that I have built for your name. ³⁹ Then listen from the heavens, the place where you live, to their prayer and to their requests, and help their cause. Forgive your people, who have sinned against you.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

King Solomon continues praying.

Suppose they sin ... suppose that you are angry ... suppose they realize ... suppose that they repent ... Suppose that they say ... Suppose that they return ... suppose that they pray

When Solomon was speaking, these hypothetical situations had not happened, but Solomon knew that they might happen in the future. Use the form in your language for talking about events that have not happened but might happen in the future. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

hand them over to the enemy

Here “hand them over to the enemy” represents allowing the enemy to capture them. (See: [Metaphor](#))

so that the enemy carries them away

Here “carries them away” represents forcing them to leave their own country. AT: “so that the enemy forces them to leave” (See: [Metaphor](#))

where they have been exiled

This can be stated in active form. AT: “where their enemies have taken them as exiles” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

seek favor from you

“beg you to be merciful to them”

We have acted perversely and sinned. We have behaved wickedly

These two sentences mean the same thing. Together they emphasize how bad the people’s actions were. (See: [Parallelism](#))

acted perversely and sinned

The words mean basically the same thing and emphasize how badly the people sinned. (See: [Doublet](#))

they return to you

Here “return to you” represents submitting to Yahweh again. AT: “they submit to you again” (See: [Metaphor](#))

with all their heart and with all their soul

The idioms “with all their heart” means “completely” and “with all their soul” means “with all their being.” These two phrases have similar meanings. AT: “completely” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Doublet](#))

where they took them as captives

“where their enemies took them as captives”

that they pray toward their land

This refers to Israel. Praying toward Israel would show that they were praying to Yahweh, the God of Israel. AT: “that they pray facing their land” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

toward the city that you chose

This refers to Jerusalem.

the house that I have built

Solomon speaks of commanding the people to build the temple and telling them how to do it as if he himself had built it. AT: “the house that your people have built under my leadership” or “the house that I and your people have built” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

for your name

Possible meanings are 1) Yahweh’s name represents himself. AT: “for you” or 2) Yahweh’s name represents his reputation. AT: “for your reputation” (See: [Metonymy](#))

to their prayer and to their requests

The words “prayer” and “requests” mean basically the same thing and emphasize that the people are sincere as they make their requests. AT: “their requests” (See: [Doublet](#))

translationWords

- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [anger, angered, angry](#)
- [captive, captives, captivate, captivated, captivity](#)
- [exile, exiles, exiled](#)
- [repent, repents, repented, repentance](#)
- [favor, favors, favorable, favoritism](#)
- [perverse, perversely, perversion, perversions, perversities, pervert, perverts, perverted, perverting](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [soul, souls](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 6 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 6:40-42**UDB:**

⁴⁰ Now, my God, look at us as we pray to you in this place, and please listen to us.

⁴¹ Yahweh our God, come and stay in this place with the sacred chest,
the chest that shows that you are powerful.

Yahweh God, cause your priests to know clearly that you have rescued them.

Cause us your people to rejoice because of all the good things that you do for us.

⁴² Yahweh God, do not reject me, the king whom you have appointed to be the king of Israel;
do not forget how faithfully were to David, your servant, because of your covenant with him.”

ULB:

⁴⁰ Now, my God, I beg you, let your eyes be open, and let your ears be attentive to the prayer that is made in this place. ⁴¹ Now then arise, Yahweh God, to your resting place, you and the ark of your strength. Let your priests, Yahweh God, be clothed with salvation, and let your saints rejoice in your goodness. ⁴² Yahweh God, do not turn the face of your anointed away from you. Keep in mind your acts of covenant loyalty for David, your servant.”

translationNotes**Now**

Here the word “now” is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

let your eyes be open

The eyes being open is a metonym for seeing. Here it represents looking attentively. AT: “please pay attention to us” or “please look at us” (See: [Metonymy](#))

let your ears be attentive to the prayer

The ears being attentive is a metonym for listening attentively. AT: “please listen to the prayer” (See: [Metonymy](#))

to the prayer that is made in this place

This can be expressed in active form. AT: “to the prayer that we make in this place” or “to us as we pray to you in this place” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

arise, Yahweh God, to your resting place

This pictures God as if he were sitting on his throne, and asks that he will get up from his throne and come to this place. AT: “arise, Yahweh God, and come to your resting place” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the ark of your strength

“the ark, which is a symbol of your power”

Let your priests ... be clothed with salvation

The abstract noun “salvation” can be translated with the verb “to save.” Possible meanings are 1) being clothed with salvation is a metaphor for experiencing salvation. AT: “Let your priests ... know that you have saved them” or 2) being clothed with salvation is a metaphor for demonstrating salvation. AT: “Let your priests ... demonstrate how you save people” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

do not turn the face of your anointed away from you

Turning the face of someone away represents rejecting him. AT: “do not reject your anointed one” (See: [Metaphor](#))

your anointed

“your anointed one.” Being anointed is a metonym for being chosen by God. King Solomon may have been speaking specifically about himself. This can be stated in active form. AT: “the one you anointed” or “me, the one you chose to be king” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Keep in mind your acts of covenant loyalty for David, your servant

The phrase “your acts” can be expressed with the phrase “what you have done.” AT: “Remember what you have done for David, your servant, because of your covenant loyalty”

Keep in mind

“Remember”

translationWords

- [God](#)
- [raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose](#)
- [rest, rests, rested, resting, restless](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)

- clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed
- save, saves, saved, safe, salvation
- saint, saints
- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing
- good, goodness
- turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back
- face, faces, faced, facing, facial, facedown
- anoint, anointed, anointing
- mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love
- David
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 6 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 07 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of King Solomon continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Solomon's dream

God appeared again to Solomon in a dream and said the temple was acceptable and he honored it with his presence. He would remain as long as Israel obeyed him. If they worshiped other gods and idols he would let their enemies destroy the temple. (See: [temple](#) and [god](#), [false god](#), [gods](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idols](#), [idolater](#), [idolaters](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 07:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 7:1-3

UDB:

¹ When Solomon finished praying, fire came down from the sky and burned up the animals that the people had sacrificed, as well as the other offerings. And the power and light of Yahweh filled the temple. ² The light was extremely bright, with the result that the priests could not enter the temple of Yahweh. ³ When all the Israelite people who were there saw the fire coming down and the light of Yahweh above the temple, they prostrated themselves with their faces touching the stone pavement. They worshiped and thanked Yahweh, saying,

‘Yahweh is always good to us;
he will love us forever, as he promised to do.’

ULB:

¹ Now when Solomon had finished praying, fire came down from heaven and consumed the burnt offerings and sacrifices, and the glory of Yahweh filled the house. ² The priests could not enter the house of Yahweh, because his glory filled his house. ³ When all the people of Israel saw the fire come down and the glory of Yahweh over the house, they bowed down with their faces to the ground on the stone pavement and worshiped and gave thanks to Yahweh. They said, “For he is good, for his covenant loyalty endures forever.”

translationNotes

the house

“Yahweh’s house” or “the temple”

they bowed down with their faces to the ground on the stone pavement

This is a position of humility and worship. AT: “they lay down on the ground with their faces touching the stone pavement” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

his covenant loyalty endures forever

The abstract noun “covenant loyalty” can be expressed with the adjective “loyal” and the verb “promise.” AT: “God will always be loyal to us because of his covenant” or “God will always faithfully do for us what he promised” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

translationWords

- [Solomon](#)

- pray, prayer, prayers, prayed
- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- consume, consumes, consumed, consuming
- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies
- Yahweh
- priest, priests, priesthood
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- worship
- bow, bows, bowed, bowing, bow down, bows down, bowed down, bowing down
- good, goodness
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love
- eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 07 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 7 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 7:4-6

UDB:

⁴⁻⁵ Then the king and all the people who were there dedicated the temple to Yahweh by offering more sacrifices to him. King Solomon offered twenty-two thousand cattle and 120,000 sheep and goats to be sacrificed. ⁶ The priests stood in their positions, and the other descendants of Levi stood in their positions holding the musical instruments to praise Yahweh, instruments that King David had ordered to be made for praising Yahweh and thanking him. They sang, “He faithfully loves us forever.” Opposite the other descendants of Levi the priests stood, blowing their trumpets, while all the Israelite people were standing and listening.

ULB:

⁴ So the king and all the people offered sacrifices to Yahweh. ⁵ King Solomon offered a sacrifice of twenty-two thousand oxen and 120,000 sheep and goats. So the king and all the people dedicated the house of God. ⁶ The priests stood, each standing where they serve; the Levites also with instruments of music of Yahweh, which David the king had made to give thanks to Yahweh in the song, “For his covenant faithfulness endures for ever.” All the priests sounded trumpets before them, and all Israel stood.

translationNotes

all the people

This generalization refers either 1) to the people whom Solomon called to Jerusalem and who are listed in [2 Chronicles 5:2](#), or 2) to those who traveled to Jerusalem for the feast, not necessarily to every person who lived in Israel. (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

twenty-two thousand oxen

“22,000 oxen” (See: [Numbers](#))

120,000 sheep and goats

“one hundred and twenty thousand sheep and goats” (See: [Numbers](#))

each standing where they serve

“each standing in their appointed place”

the Levites also with instruments of music of Yahweh

The word “stood” is understood from the previous phrase. AT: the Levites also stood with instruments of music of Yahweh” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

For his covenant faithfulness endures for ever

The abstract noun “faithfulness” can be stated as “faithfully” or “faithful.” See how you translated “covenant faithfulness” in [2 Chronicles 7:3](#). AT: “God will always be faithful to his covenant with us” or “God will always faithfully love us” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

all Israel

This generalization refers to those who were at the feast in Jerusalem, not necessarily to every person who lived in Israel. (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

translationWords

- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)
- [ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)
- [goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids](#)
- [dedicate, dedicates, dedicated, dedication](#)
- [serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh’s house](#)
- [covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love](#)
- [eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever](#)
- [trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 07 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 7 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 7:7

UDB:

⁷ Solomon dedicated the middle part of the courtyard in front of the temple. Then he presented offerings to be completely burned there along with the fat of the animals to be sacrificed to maintain fellowship with Yahweh. The priests burned them there in the courtyard because in addition to those things there were offerings of flour, with the result that there was not enough space on the bronze altar to burn all those sacrifices.

ULB:

⁷ Solomon set apart the middle of the courtyard in front of the house of Yahweh. There he offered the burnt offerings and the fat of the fellowship offerings, because the bronze altar that he had made was not able to hold the burnt offerings, the grain offerings, and the fat.

translationNotes

the bronze altar that he had made

The author speaks of Solomon commanding someone to make the bronze altar and telling him how to do it as if Solomon himself had made it. AT: “the bronze altar that he had commanded someone to make” or “the bronze altar that he had caused to be made” (See: [Metonymy](#))

was not able to hold the burnt offerings, the grain offerings, and the fat

This was because there were so many offerings. AT: “was not able to hold the large amount of burnt offerings, grain offerings, and fat” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [set apart](#)
- [court, courts, courtyard, courtyards](#)
- [burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire](#)
- [fellowship offering, fellowship offerings](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [grain offering, grain offerings](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 07 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 7 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 7:8-10

UDB:

⁸ Solomon and the other people celebrated the Festival of Shelters for seven days. There was a huge group of people who celebrated with him. Some of them came from as far away as Lebohamath in the far north and from the border of Egypt in the far south. ⁹ On the eighth day they gathered again to worship Yahweh. They had celebrated the dedication of the altar for seven days and the Festival of Shelters for seven days. ¹⁰ Then on the next day Solomon sent them to their homes. They were very joyful because of all the good things that Yahweh had done for David and Solomon and for all his Israelite people.

ULB:

⁸ So Solomon held the festival at that time for seven days, and all Israel with him, a very great assembly, from Lebo Hamath to the brook of Egypt. ⁹ On the eighth day they held a solemn assembly, for they kept the dedication of the altar for seven days, and the feast for seven days. ¹⁰ On the twenty-third day of the seventh month, Solomon sent the people away to their homes with glad and joyful hearts because of the goodness that Yahweh had shown to David, Solomon, and Israel, his people.

translationNotes

all Israel with him

This generalization refers to those who were at the feast in Jerusalem, not necessarily to every person who lived in Israel. (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

from Lebo Hamath to the brook of Egypt

Lebo Hamath was north of Israel, and the brook of Egypt was south of Israel. These are used together to emphasize that people from every part of Israel were at the festival. AT: “from Lebo Hamath in the north to the brook of Egypt in the south” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Merism](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

the eighth day

The word “eighth” is the ordinal form of “8.” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

a solemn assembly

This was a special religious gathering.

they kept the dedication of the altar

Here “kept the dedication” is an idiom meaning “celebrated the dedication.” (See: [Idiom](#))

the twenty-third day of the seventh month

This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. The twenty-third day is near the middle of October on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

with glad and joyful hearts

The words “glad” and “joyful” mean basically the same thing. Together they emphasize the intensity of joy. AT: “with very glad hearts” or “and they were very joyful” (See: [Doublet](#))

because of the goodness that Yahweh had shown

“because Yahweh had shown wonderful goodness” or “because Yahweh had been so good”

Israel, his people

“Israel, God’s people.” The phrase “his people” emphasizes God’s faithfulness to Israel. (See: [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#))

translationWords

- [festival, festivals](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled](#)
- [Hamath, Hamathites, Lebo Hamath](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians](#)
- [altar, altars](#)
- [feast, feasts, feasting](#)
- [good, goodness](#)
- [David](#)
- [Solomon](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 07 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 7 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 7:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ In this way, Solomon's workers finished building the temple and Solomon's palace. And Solomon finished doing everything else that he had planned to do. ¹² Then Yahweh appeared to him one night in a dream and said to him, "I have heard your prayer, and I have chosen this temple to be the place where my people will offer sacrifices to me.

ULB:

¹¹ Thus Solomon finished the house of Yahweh and his own house. Everything that came into Solomon's heart to make in the house of Yahweh and in his own house, he successfully carried out. ¹² Yahweh appeared to Solomon by night and said to him, "I have heard your prayer, and I have chosen this place for myself as a house of sacrifice.

translationNotes

Solomon finished the house of Yahweh and his own house

The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. AT: "the workers whom Solomon commanded finished the house of Yahweh and Solomon's own house" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Everything that came into Solomon's heart to make

The heart is spoken of as if it were a container, and desires are spoken of as if they came into the heart. AT: "Everything that Solomon desired to make" (See: [Metaphor](#))

he successfully carried out

This is an idiom. AT: "he successfully finished" or "he caused to be done successfully" (See: [Idiom](#))

by night

"at night" or "one night"

a house of sacrifice

"the house where people will offer sacrifices to me"

translationWords

- [heart, hearts](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 07 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 7 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 7:13-15

UDB:

¹³ When I prevent any rain from falling, or when I command locusts to eat all the crops, or when I send a plague among my people, ¹⁴ then if the people who belong to me, are sorry for their sins and stop doing them, and if they plead with me for me to forgive, then I will indeed listen from heaven. I will forgive them for having sinned, and I will cause them to prosper again. ¹⁵ I will listen to them when they pray to me in this place.

ULB:

¹³ Suppose that I shut up the heavens so that there is no rain, or if I command the locust to devour the land, or if I send disease among my people, ¹⁴ then if my people, who are called by my name, will humble themselves, pray, seek my face, and turn from their wicked ways, I will hear from heaven, forgive their sin, and heal their land. ¹⁵ Now my eyes will be open and my ears attentive to the prayers that are made in this place.

translationNotes

Suppose that I shut up the heavens so that there is no rain

Here “heavens” refers to the sky, and is spoken of as if it were a building in which God stores the rain. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 6:26](#). AT: “Suppose that I do not allow the rain to fall from the skies” (See: [Metaphor](#))

devour the land

The word “land” represents the plants and crops on the land. (See: [Metonymy](#))

if I send disease among my people

Here “send disease” represents causing diseases. AT: “if I cause my people to have diseases” (See: [Metaphor](#))

who are called by my name

Here being called by God’s name is an idiom meaning belonging to God. AT: “who belong to me” (See: [Idiom](#))

seek my face

Here God’s face represents his acceptance of them. Possible meanings are “seek my face” represents 1) urgently asking him for forgiveness. AT: “beg me to forgive them” or 2) strongly wanting to please him. AT: “choose to please me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

turn from their wicked ways

Here “turn from” is a metaphor meaning to stop doing something, and “ways” represent behavior. AT: “stop their wicked behavior” or “stop doing wicked things” (See: [Metaphor](#))

heal their land

Here land that does not produce much is spoken of as though it were sick. AT: “make their land good again” or “make their land produce good crops” (See: [Personification](#))

my eyes will be open

The eyes being open is a metonym for seeing. Here it represents looking attentively. AT: “I will pay attention to you” or “I will watch you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

my ears attentive to the prayers

The ears being attentive is a metonym for listening attentively. AT: “I will listen to the prayers” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the prayers that are made in this place

This can be expressed in active form. AT: “to the prayers that you make in this place” or “to you as you pray to me in this place” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [devour, devours, devoured, devouring](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)
- [call, calls, calling, called](#)
- [name, names, named](#)
- [humble, humbles, humbled, humility](#)
- [face, faces, faced, facing, facial, facedown](#)
- [turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)

- [2 Chronicles 07 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 7 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 7:16-18

UDB:

¹⁶ I have decided to be present in this temple, and I have set apart it for myself. I will protect it for all time.

¹⁷ And as for you, if you obey me as David, your father, did, and if you do all that I command you to do, and if you obey all my laws and decrees, ¹⁸ I will make sure that your descendants will always be kings, which is what I promised to David your father, when I told him, ‘Persons from your descendants will always be the kings of Israel.’

ULB:

¹⁶ For I have now chosen and set apart this house that my name may be there forever. My eyes and my heart will be there every day. ¹⁷ As for you, if you walk before me as David your father walked, obeying all that I have commanded you and keeping my statutes and my decrees, ¹⁸ then I will establish the throne of your kingdom, as I said in a covenant with David your father, when I said, ‘A descendant of yours will never fail to be ruler in Israel.’

translationNotes

that my name may be there forever

Possible meanings are 1) God’s name represents himself. AT: “that I may be there forever” or 2) God’s name represents Yahweh’s reputation, and his name being there represents people worshipping him there. AT: “for people to worship me there forever” (See: [Metonymy](#))

My eyes and my heart will be there every day

Here “My eyes” represents God’s careful attention, and “my heart” represents his love. These being at his temple implies that he will protect his temple. AT: “I will watch and protect it forever” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

As for you

Here “you” refers to King Solomon.

if you walk before me as David your father walked

Here walking is a metaphor for living. Walking before God represents living in obedience to him. AT: “If you obey me as David your father did” (See: [Metaphor](#))

David your father

Solomon was one of David's sons.

keeping my statutes and my decrees

“obeying my statutes and my decrees”

I will establish the throne of your kingdom

Here the throne represents ruling. Establishing the throne of Solomon's kingdom represents causing Solomon to have descendants who will rule over Israel. AT: “I will make descendants of yours rule over your kingdom” (See: [Metonymy](#))

A descendant of yours will never fail to be ruler in Israel

This can be stated positively. AT: “One of your descendants will always be ruler in Israel” or “Descendants of yours will always rule in Israel”

translationWords

- [set apart](#)
- [eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [statute, statutes](#)
- [decree, decrees, decreed](#)
- [kingdom, kingdoms](#)
- [covenant, covenants, new covenant](#)
- [descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 07 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 7 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 7:19-20

UDB:

¹⁹ What will I do to you Israelites when you stop worshiping me? What will I do when you disobey the decrees and commands I have given to you? And what will I do when you start worshipping other gods? ²⁰ This is what I will do: I will cause you to be driven away from this land that I have given to you, and I will reject the temple that I have set apart for myself. I will make people from all the other people groups laugh about what happened to house where Yahweh was worshiped.

ULB:

¹⁹ But if you turn away, and forsake my statutes and my commandments that I have placed before you, and if you go worship other gods and bow down to them, ²⁰ then I will uproot them from out of my ground that I have given them. This house that I have set apart for my name, I will cast away from before me, and I will make it a proverb and a joke among all the peoples.

translationNotes

But if you turn away

Here “turn away” from God is a metaphor meaning to stop worshiping him. AT: “But if you stop worshiping me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

you turn away

Possible meanings are that the word “you” refers 1) to all the people of Israel, or 2) to Solomon and his descendants.

my statutes and my commandments

Here the words “commandments” and “statutes” mean basically the same thing and emphasize all that Yahweh has commanded. (See: [Doublet](#))

I will uproot them from out of my ground that I have given them

The word “them” refers to the people of Israel. God speaks of making his people leave his land as if they were plants that he would pull up by their roots out of the soil. AT: “I will make them leave the land I have given them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

This house

This refers to the temple.

that I have set apart for my name

Possible meanings are 1) Yahweh's name represents himself. AT: "that I have set apart for myself" or 2) Yahweh's name represents his reputation. AT: "that I have set apart for my reputation" (See: [Metonymy](#))

I will cast away from before me

God speaks of rejecting his temple as if he were to throw it far away from himself. AT: "I will reject it" or "I will ignore it" (See: [Metaphor](#))

I will make it a proverb and a joke among all the peoples

"I will cause all the peoples to make proverbs and jokes about it" or "because of what I do to it, all the nations will mock and ridicule it"

translationWords

- [turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back](#)
- [forsake, forsakes, forsaken, forsook](#)
- [statute, statutes](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [worship](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [proverb, proverbs](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 07 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 7 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 7:21-22

UDB:

²¹ Although this temple is now so magnificent, when that happens, all the people who pass by will be appalled, and they will say, ‘Why has Yahweh done terrible things like this to this country and to this temple?’ ²² And others will reply, ‘It happened because they rejected Yahweh, the God to whom their ancestors belonged, the one who brought their ancestors out of Egypt, and they have chosen to worship other gods and try to please them. And that is why Yahweh has caused them to experience all these disasters.’”

ULB:

²¹ Even though this temple is so lofty now, everyone who passes by it will be shocked and will hiss. They will ask, ‘Why has Yahweh done this to this land and to this house?’ ²² Others will answer, ‘Because they forsook Yahweh, their God, who had brought their ancestors out of the land of Egypt, and they laid hold of other gods and bowed down to them and worshiped them. That is why Yahweh has brought all this disaster on them.’”

translationNotes

will be shocked

“will be amazed”

will hiss

This is how they would show that they are shocked by what happened to the temple (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

they forsook Yahweh

“they were unfaithful to Yahweh” or “they did not obey Yahweh”

who had brought their ancestors out of the land of Egypt

This phrase tells why they should have worshiped God. (See: [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#))

they laid hold of other gods

Here “laid hold of” represents choosing to be loyal to them. AT: “they chose to be loyal to other gods” (See: [Metaphor](#))

bowed down to them and worshiped them

These two phrases mean the same thing. The phrase “bowed down to them” describes the posture that people used in worship. (See: [Parallelism](#))

translationWords

- [temple](#)
- [forsake, forsakes, forsaken, forsook](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians](#)
- [bow, bows, bowed, bowing, bow down, bows down, bowed down, bowing down](#)
- [worship](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 07 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 7 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 08 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of King Solomon continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Solomon's victories

Solomon achieved many victory when he was king. This chapter records many of these victories. Israel is at its height of power when Solomon was king.

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 08:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 8:1-2

UDB:

¹ Solomon's workers took twenty years to build the temple and his palace. ² Then his workers rebuilt the cities that King Hiram had given back to him, and Solomon sent Israelites to live in those cities.

ULB:

¹ It came about at the end of twenty years, during which Solomon had built the house of Yahweh and his own house, ² that Solomon rebuilt the towns that Hiram had given to him, and he settled the people of Israel in them.

translationNotes

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way of doing this, you could consider using it here.

at the end of twenty years

“after 20 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Solomon had built the house of Yahweh and his own house

The author writes of Solomon commanding the people to build the temple and palace and telling them how to do it as if he himself had built them. AT: “Solomon caused the house of Yahweh and his own house to be built” or “Solomon directed the building of the temple and his house” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Hiram

Hiram was the king of Tyre. See how you translated his name in [2 Chronicles 2:11](#). AT: “Hiram, the king of Tyre” or “King Hiram” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Solomon rebuilt the towns that Hiram had given to him

The author speaks of Solomon commanding the people to rebuild the towns as if he himself had rebuilt them. AT: “Solomon caused the towns that Hiram had given to him to be rebuilt” or “Solomon commanded and the people rebuilt the towns that Hiram had given to him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [Solomon](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 08 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 8 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 8:3-4

UDB:

³ Solomon's army then went to the town of Hamathzobah and captured it. ⁴ They also rebuilt walls around the city of Tadmor in the wilderness, and in the region of Hamath, for all the towns where they kept supplies.

ULB:

³ Solomon attacked Hamathzobah and defeated it. ⁴ He built Tadmor in the wilderness, and all the store cities, which he built in Hamath.

translationNotes

Solomon attacked Hamathzobah

Solomon represents his whole fighting army. AT: "Solomon's army attacked the town of Hamathzobah" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

He built Tadmor in the wilderness

Tadmor was a city north of Israel, in modern-day Syria. The author writes of Solomon commanding the people to build Tadmor as if Solomon himself built it. AT: "Solomon caused the town of Tadmor in the wilderness to be rebuilt" or "Solomon commanded, and the people built the town of Tadmor in the wilderness" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Tadmor

Tadmor was a city north of Israel, in modern-day Syria. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

store cities

"storage cities" or "supply cities." These are cities where the government stored food or supplies.

Hamath

Hamath was a region north of Israel, in modern-day Syria. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- [desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 08 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 8 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 8:5-6

UDB:

⁵ They rebuilt the cities of Upper Beth Horon and Lower Beth Horon, and built walls around them with gates and bars for the gates. ⁶ They also rebuilt the city of Baalath and all the cities where supplies were kept, and the cities where Solomon's chariots and horses were kept. Solomon's workers built whatever he wanted them to build, in Jerusalem and in Lebanon, and in other places in the area that he ruled.

ULB:

⁵ Also he built Beth Horon the Upper and Beth Horon the Lower, cities fortified with walls, gates, and bars. ⁶ He built Baalath and all the store cities that he possessed, and all the cities for his chariots and the cities for his horsemen, and whatever he wished to build for his pleasure in Jerusalem, in Lebanon, and in all the lands under his rule.

translationNotes

Beth Horon the Upper and Beth Horon the Lower

These were two cities in Judah. The upper city was on top of a hill and the lower city was in a valley. AT: "Higher Beth Horon and Lower Beth Horon" or "Beth Horon of the Hill and Beth Horon of the Valley" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Baalath

This was a city in Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

all the lands under his rule

"all the lands that he ruled"

translationWords

- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess
- chariot, chariots, charioteers
- horseman, horsemen
- Jerusalem
- Lebanon
- rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 08 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 8 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 8:7-8

UDB:

⁷ Solomon forced people from many other groups who were not Israelites to work for him as if they were slaves. They were people from the Heth, Amor, Periz, Hiv, and Jebus people groups. ⁸ They were descendants of groups whom the Israelites had not completely destroyed. Solomon forced them to become his laborers, and they are still that at this present time.

ULB:

⁷ As for all the people who were left of the Hittites, the Amorites, the Perizzites, the Hivites, and the Jebusites, who did not belong to Israel, ⁸ their descendants who were left after them in the land, whom the people of Israel had not destroyed—Solomon made them into forced laborers, which they are to this day.

translationNotes

their descendants who were left after them in the land

“after those people died, their descendants who remained in the land”

forced laborers

“slaves”

which they are to this day

This phrase adds information about the descendants of those that Solomon had made into forced laborers. AT: “and their descendants are still forced laborers even now” (See: [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#))

to this day

This refers to the time when the book of 2 Chronicles was written. See how you translated it in [2 Chronicles 5:9](#).

translationWords

- [Hittite, Hittites](#)
- [Amorite, Amorites](#)
- [Perizzite](#)
- [Hivite, Hivites](#)

- [Jebus, Jebusite, Jebusites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants](#)
- [labor, labors, labored, laborer, laborers](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 08 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 8 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 8:9-10

UDB:

⁹ But Solomon did not force Israelites to work for him. Israelites became his soldiers and commanders of his chariots and his chariot drivers. ¹⁰ They were also King Solomon's chief officials. There were 250 of them, and they supervised the workers.

ULB:

⁹ However, Solomon made no forced laborers of the people of Israel. Instead, they became his soldiers, his commanders, his officers, and commanders of his chariot forces and his horsemen. ¹⁰ These were also the chief officers managing the supervisors who belonged to King Solomon, 250 of them, who supervised the people who did the work.

translationNotes

Solomon made no forced laborers of the people of Israel

“Solomon did not make any of the people of Israel become slaves”

250

“two hundred fifty” (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [Solomon](#)
- [commander, commanders](#)
- [chariot, chariots, charioteers](#)
- [horseman, horsemen](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 08 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 8 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 8:11

UDB:

¹¹ Solomon brought his wife, who was the daughter of the king of Egypt, to the place that his workers had built for her in the place outside Jerusalem called the city of David. He said, “I do not want my wife to live in the palace that my father King David’s workers built, because the sacred chest was in that palace for a while, and any place where the sacred chest has been is holy.”

ULB:

¹¹ Solomon brought the daughter of Pharaoh out of the city of David to the house that he had built for her, for he said, “My wife must not live in the house of David king of Israel, because wherever the ark of Yahweh has come is holy.”

translationNotes

the daughter of Pharaoh

“his wife, the daughter of Pharaoh”

to the house that he had built for her

The author writes about Solomon having his workers build a house for his wife as if he himself had built it. AT: “the house that he had his workers build for her” or “to the house he had commanded his workers to build for her” (See: [Metonymy](#))

David king of Israel

David was Solomon’s father and had been king before Solomon.

because wherever the ark of Yahweh has come is holy

It can be stated that the ark had been brought into King David’s house. AT: “because the ark of Yahweh was brought into that house, and wherever the ark of Yahweh has come is holy” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [city of David](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 08 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 8 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 8:12-13

UDB:

¹² On the altar that Solomon's workers had built in front of the entrance to the temple, Solomon brought many offerings that were to be completely burned. ¹³ He did that obeying what sacrifices Moses had declared should be made every day, on the Sabbath days, to celebrate each day on which there was a new moon, and on the three other festivals that were celebrated each year: the Festival of Bread with No Yeast, the Festival of Harvest, and the Festival of Shelters.

ULB:

¹² Then Solomon offered burnt offerings to Yahweh on his altar that he had built in front of the portico. ¹³ He offered sacrifices just as the daily schedule required; he offered them, following the directions found in the commandment of Moses, on the Sabbath days, the new moons, and on the set festivals three times every year: the Festival of Unleavened Bread, the Festival of Weeks, and the Festival of Shelters.

translationNotes

his altar that he had built

The author writes about Solomon having his workers build the altar as if he himself had built it. AT: "on Yahweh's altar that Solomon had his workers build" or "the Yahweh's altar that he had commanded his workers to build" (See: [Metonymy](#))

his altar

"Yahweh's altar" or "the altar of Yahweh"

the portico

"the temple porch" or "the entrance to the temple." This was a covered porch supported by columns, attached to the front of the temple.

the daily schedule required

"as was required each day"

following the directions

Here "following the directions" represents obeying them. AT: "obeying the directions" (See: [Metaphor](#))

the directions found in the commandment of Moses

“what Moses had commanded them”

the set festivals three times every year

“the three festivals that they were to celebrate every year”

the Festival of Shelters

“the Festival of Tents.” This is a festival to celebrate God’s provision for his people. When the people of Israel wandered in the desert, they lived in temporary shelters. Each year when they harvested their crops, they stayed in temporary shelters in their gardens. In both situations, God provided for them.

translationWords

- [burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire](#)
- [altar, altars](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [new moon, new moons](#)
- [festival, festivals](#)
- [unleavened bread](#)
- [Pentecost, Festival of Weeks](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 08 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 8 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 8:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ Obeying what his father David had commanded, Solomon appointed the groups of priests for their work, and he appointed the descendants of Levi to lead the people while they sang to praise Yahweh, and while they assisted the priests in their daily work. He also appointed groups of them to guard all the gates, because that was also what David, God's servant, had commanded. ¹⁵ The priests and other descendants of Levi obeyed completely everything that the king commanded, including the order to take care of the storerooms.

ULB:

¹⁴ In keeping with the decrees of his father David, Solomon appointed the divisions of the priests to their work, and the Levites to their positions, in order to praise God and to serve before the priests, as the daily schedule required. He also appointed the gatekeepers by their divisions to every gate, for David, the man of God, had also commanded this. ¹⁵ These people did not deviate from the commands of the king to the priests and Levites concerning any matter, or concerning the storerooms.

translationNotes

In keeping with the decrees of his father David

“According to the decrees of his father David” or “As his father David had decreed”

He also appointed the gatekeepers by their divisions to every gate

“He also appointed groups of gatekeepers to each gate”

gatekeepers

These were Levites who guarded the gates and only let inside those who had permission to go inside.

These people did not deviate from the commands

Here “deviate from the commands” represents to do something different from what was commanded. It can be stated positively. AT: “These people carefully obeyed the commands” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [decree, decrees, decreed](#)
- [appoint, appoints, appointed](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical](#)
- [praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy](#)
- [serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 08 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 8 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 8:16

UDB:

¹⁶ They did all the work of building the temple that Solomon told them to do, until it was all completed. In the way they finished building the temple.

ULB:

¹⁶ All the work ordered by Solomon was completed, from the day the foundation of the house of Yahweh was laid until it was finished. The house of Yahweh was completed.

translationNotes

All the work ordered by Solomon was completed

This can be stated in active form. AT: "They completed all the work that Solomon had ordered" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

from the day the foundation of the house of Yahweh was laid

This can be stated in active form. AT: "from the day they laid the foundation of the house of Yahweh" or "from the day they built the foundation of the house of Yahweh" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

until it was finished

This can be stated in active form. AT: "until they finished building the temple" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

The house of Yahweh was completed

This can be stated in active form. AT: "The house of Yahweh was complete" or "They completed building the house of Yahweh" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [found, founded, founder, foundation, foundations](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 08 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 8 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 8:17-18

UDB:

¹⁷ Then some of Solomon's men went to the cities of Ezion Geber and Elath on the coast of the Sea of Reeds, next to a region that belonged to the Edom people group. ¹⁸ King Hiram sent him from the city of Tyre some ships that were commanded by his officers. They were men who were experienced sailors. These men went in the ships with Solomon's men to the region of Ophir and brought back about fifteen metric tons of gold, which they delivered to King Solomon.

ULB:

¹⁷ Then Solomon went to Ezion Geber and then to Elath on the coast, in the land of Edom. ¹⁸ Hiram sent him ships commanded by his own officers, men who knew the sea, and with the servants of Solomon they went to Ophir and they took from there 450 talents of gold and brought it to King Solomon.

translationNotes

Ezion Geber and then to Elath on the coast

These are towns along the Sea of Reeds. They had ports where people who had ships could stop. AT: "the towns of Ezion Geber and Elath, on the coast of the Sea of Reeds" (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Ophir

This is the name of a place. Its location is not known. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

450 talents of gold

"four hundred and fifty talents of gold." You may convert this to a modern measure. AT: "about sixteen thousand kilograms of gold" or "about fifteen metric tons of gold" (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Weight](#))

translationWords

- [Edom, Edomite, Edomites, Idumea](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 08 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 8 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 09 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of King Solomon ends.

Special concepts in this chapter

Solomon's fame

Solomon was famous outside of Israel because of his wisdom and tremendous wealth. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 09:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 9:1-2

UDB:

¹ The queen who ruled the Sheba area in Arabia heard that Solomon had become famous, so she traveled to Jerusalem to ask him questions that were difficult to answer. She came with a large group of servants, and she brought camels that were loaded with spices, and valuable gems. When she arrived, she shared her thoughts with him. ² Solomon answered all her questions. He explained everything that she asked about, even things that were very difficult.

ULB:

¹ When the queen of Sheba heard of Solomon's fame, she came to Jerusalem to test him with hard questions. She came with a very long caravan, with camels loaded with spices, much gold, and many precious gemstones. When she had come to Solomon, she told him all that was in her heart. ² Solomon answered her all her questions; nothing was too difficult for Solomon; there was no question that he did not answer.

translationNotes

She came with a very long caravan

“a very large group of servants” or “a very long line of servants”

all that was in her heart

This is a generalization. AT: “everything she wanted to know” (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

there was no question that he did not answer

This can be stated positively. AT: “he answered every question” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

translationWords

- [queen, queens](#)
- [Sheba](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [test, tests, tested](#)
- [camel, camels](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 9 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 9:3-4

UDB:

³ The queen realized that Solomon was very wise. She saw his palace, ⁴ she saw the food that was served on his table every day, she saw where his officials lived, their uniforms, the servants who served the food and wine, and the sacrifices that he took to the temple to be offered. She was extremely amazed.

ULB:

³ When the queen of Sheba saw Solomon's wisdom and the palace that he had built, ⁴ the food on his table, the seating of his servants, the work of his servants and their clothing, also his cupbearers and their clothing, and the burnt offerings he made at ^[1] the house of Yahweh, and there was no more breath in her.

9:4 ^[1]Some scholars suggest an alternative reading of the phrase *the burnt offerings he made at* to say, *the ascent by which he went up to*.

translationNotes

When the queen of Sheba saw Solomon's wisdom and the palace that he had built

Here "saw Solomon's wisdom" represents realizing that Solomon was very wise. AT: "When the queen of Sheba realized how wise Solomon was, and when she saw the palace that he had built" (See: [Metaphor](#))

the palace that he had built

The author writes about Solomon having his workers build his palace as if he himself had built it. AT: "the palace that Solomon had his workers build" or "the palace that he had commanded his workers to build" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the seating of his servants

Possible meanings are 1) where his servants lived or 2) how his servants sat around the table.

his cupbearers

"his wine servers." These were servants who tasted the king's wine to make sure that there was no poison in it. If it was safe to drink the wine, they would give it to the king.

there was no more breath in her

This is an idiom. AT: “she was completely amazed” (See: [Idiom](#))

translationWords

- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [spirit, spirits, spiritual](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 9 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 9:5-6

UDB:

⁵ She said to the king, "Everything that I heard in my own country about you and about how wise you are is true! ⁶ But I did not believe it was true until I came here and saw it myself. You are extremely wise and rich, even more than what people told me.

ULB:

⁵ She said to the king, "It is true, the report that I heard in my own land of your words and your wisdom. ⁶ I did not believe what I heard until I came here, and now my eyes have seen it. Not half was told me about your wisdom and wealth! You have exceeded the fame that I heard about.

translationNotes

I heard in my own land

"I heard while I was in my own land"

your words and your wisdom

Here the word "wisdom" can describe the word "words." AT: "your wise words" (See: [Hendiadys](#))

now my eyes have seen it

The phrase "my eyes" emphasizes that she herself saw it. AT: "now I have seen it for myself" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Not half was told me about your wisdom and wealth

This can be stated in active form. AT: "They did not tell me about even half of your wisdom and wealth" or "You are much more wise and wealthy than what they told me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- true, truth, truths
- report, reports, reported
- word, words
- believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 9 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 9:7-8

UDB:

⁷ The men who work for you are very fortunate! Your servants who are constantly standing in front of you and listening to the wise things that you say are also fortunate! ⁸ I praise Yahweh your God, who has shown that he is pleased with you by appointing you to be the king of Israel for him. God has always loved the Israelite people, and he desires to assist them forever, so he has appointed you to be their king, in order that you will rule them fairly and righteously.”

ULB:

⁷ How blessed are your people, and how blessed are your servants who constantly stand before you, because they hear your wisdom. ^[1] ⁸ Blessed be Yahweh your God, who has taken pleasure in you, who placed you on his throne, to be king for Yahweh your God. Because your God loved Israel, in order to establish them forever, he had made you king over them, for you to do justice and righteousness!”

9:7 ^[1]Some versions have, *How blessed are your wives* , assuming that the text should read as in 1 Kings 10:8.

translationNotes

How blessed are your people

This is an exclamation that shows her amazement. AT: “Your people are greatly blessed” (See: [Exclamations](#))

how blessed are your servants who constantly stand before you

This is an exclamation that shows her amazement. AT: “your servants who constantly stand before you are greatly blessed” (See: [Exclamations](#))

they hear your wisdom

Hear “wisdom” represents the wise things that he says. AT: “they hear the wise things that you say” (See: [Metonymy](#))

who has taken pleasure in you, who placed you on his throne

These phrases tell why people should praise Yahweh. AT: “because he has taken pleasure in you and placed you on his throne” (See: [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#))

who has taken pleasure in you

“who is pleased with you”

who placed you on his throne, to be king for Yahweh your God

The idea of being on Yahweh’s throne represents having the authority to rule as Yahweh does. Being king “for Yahweh” means to represent Yahweh as king. AT: “who gave you authority to rule as he does, to represent Yahweh your God as king” (See: [Metonymy](#))

in order to establish them forever

Possible meanings are 1) “establish” represents helping them in general. AT: “in order to help them forever” or 2) “establish” represents making them strong as a nation. AT: “in order to make them a nation forever” (See: [Metaphor](#))

for you to do justice and righteousness

The abstract nouns “justice” and “righteousness” can be expressed with the words “fairly” and “righteously.” AT: “for you to rule fairly and righteously” or “for you to do what is just and right” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

translationWords

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [throne, thrones, enthroned](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever](#)
- [just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification](#)
- [righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 9 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 9:9

UDB:

⁹ Then the queen gave to Solomon about four metric tons of gold and a large amount of spices and gemstones. Never had King Solomon received more spices than the queen gave him at that time.

ULB:

⁹ She gave the king 120 talents of gold and a large amount of spices and precious stones. No greater amount of spices as these that the queen of Sheba gave to King Solomon was ever given to him again.

translationNotes

120 talents

“one hundred and twenty talents.” A talent is a unit of weight equal to about 33 kilograms. You may convert this to a modern measure. AT: “about four thousand kilograms of gold” or “about four metric tons of gold” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Weight](#))

No greater amount of spices ... was ever given to him again

The verb “was ever given” can be expressed in active form. AT: “No one ever gave more spices than the queen of Sheba gave to King Solomon” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 9 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 9:10

UDB:

¹⁰⁻¹² King Solomon gave to the queen from Sheba everything that she wanted. He gave her more than she had given to him. Then she and those who came with her returned to her own land.

The men of Hiram worked with the men of Solomon to bring gold from Ophir. They also brought a large amount of algum wood. The wood was used to make steps for the house of Yahweh, and they also used the wood to make harps and lyres for those who played music. No one in all the land of Judah had ever seen anything like the quality of the algum wood that was used to make the steps and the instruments.

ULB:

¹⁰ The servants of Hiram and the servants of Solomon, who brought gold from Ophir, also brought algum wood and precious stones. ¹¹ With the algum wood, the king made steps for the house of Yahweh and for his house, as well as harps and lyres for the musicians. No wood like this had been seen before in the land of Judah. ¹² King Solomon gave to the queen of Sheba everything she desired and whatever she asked for; he gave her more than what she had brought to the king. So she left and went back to her own land, she and her servants.

translationNotes

Hiram

Hiram was the king of Tyre. See how you translated his name in [2 Chronicles 2:11](#). AT: “Hiram, the king of Tyre” or “King Hiram” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ophir

This is the name of a place. Its location is not known. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 8:18](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

algum wood

Algum is a kind of tree that grows in Lebanon. King Hiram sent this kind of wood to Solomon. See how you translated it in [2 Chronicles 2:8](#).

the king made steps ... well as harps and lyres

The author speaks of the king having his workers make these things as if he himself had made them. AT: “the king had his workers make the steps .. as well as harps and lyres” or “the king’s workers made steps ... well as harps and lyres” (See: [Metonymy](#))

No wood like this had been seen before in the land of Judah

This can be stated in active form. AT: “No one had seen wood like this before in the land of Judah”
(See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [harp, harps, harpist, harpists](#)
- [lute, lyre, lyres](#)
- [Judah](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 9 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 9:13-14

UDB:

¹³ Each year there was brought to Solomon about twenty-two metric tons of gold. That was in addition to the taxes paid to him by the merchants and traders. ¹⁴ Also, the kings of Arabia and the governors of the districts in Israel brought gold and silver to Solomon.

ULB:

¹³ Now the weight of gold that came to Solomon in one year was 666 talents of gold, ¹⁴ besides the gold that the traders and merchants brought. All the kings of Arabia and the governors in the country also brought gold and silver to Solomon.

translationNotes

in one year

Possible meanings are 1) this refers to each year or 2) this refers to a particular year.

666 talents of gold

A talent is a unit of weight equal to about 33 kilograms. You may convert this to a modern measure. AT: “about twenty-two thousand kilograms of gold” or “about twenty-two metric tons of gold” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

666

“six hundred and sixty-six” (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [gold, golden](#)
- [Arabia, Arabian, Arabians](#)
- [govern, government, governments, governor, governors, proconsul, proconsuls](#)
- [silver](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 9 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 9:15-16

UDB:

¹⁵ King Solomon's workers took this gold and hammered it into thin sheets and covered two hundred large shields with those thin sheets of gold; they put about six and one-half kilograms of gold on each shield. ¹⁶ His workers made three hundred smaller shields. They covered each of them with one and three-quarters kilograms of gold. Then the king put those shields in the House of the Forest of Lebanon.

ULB:

¹⁵ King Solomon made two hundred large shields of beaten gold. Six hundred shekels of gold went into each one. ¹⁶ He also made three hundred shields of beaten gold. Three minas of gold went into each shield; the king put them into the House of the Forest of Lebanon.

translationNotes

King Solomon made

The author writes about Solomon having his workers make the shields as if he himself had made them. AT: "King Solomon had his workers make" or "King Solomon's workers made" (See: [Metonymy](#))

two hundred large shields

"200 large shields" (See: [Numbers](#))

beaten gold

"gold that people had beaten into thin sheets"

Six hundred shekels of gold went into each one

Here the phrase "went into" represents being made with. Possible meanings are 1) the shields were covered with sheets of gold. AT: "They covered each shield with six hundred shekels of gold" or 2) the shields were made of gold. AT: "They made each shield out of six hundred shekels of gold"

Six hundred shekels of gold

A shekel is a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams. You may convert this to a modern measure. AT: "Six and one half kilograms of gold" (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

Six hundred shekels

The word “shekels” does not appear here in the Hebrew text. Some modern versions assume instead the unit called bekah, which was equivalent to only a half shekel. Any version making this assumption would signal a metric equivalent of about three kilograms.

He also made

The author writes about Solomon having his workers make the shields as if he himself had made them. AT: “King Solomon had his workers also make” or “His workers also made”(See: [Metonymy](#))

three hundred shields

“300 shields” (See: [Numbers](#))

Three minas of gold went into each shield

Here the phrase “went into” represents being made with. Possible meanings are 1) the shields were covered with sheets of gold. AT: “They covered each shield with three minas of gold” or 2) the shields were made of gold. AT: “They made each shield out of three minas of gold”

Three minas of gold

A mina is about 600 grams. You may convert this to a modern measure. AT: “One and three-quarters kilograms of gold” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

the king put them

The author writes about Solomon having his workers put the shields in the palace as if he himself had put them there. AT: “King Solomon had his workers put them” or “King Solomon’s workers put them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the House of the Forest of Lebanon

Solomon’s palace was built of trees from Lebanon. Possible meanings are 1) this was the name of a large room in the palace. AT: “the Hall of the Forest of Lebanon” or 2) this was the name of his whole palace. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- [Lebanon](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 9 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 9:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ His workers also made for him a large throne. Part of it was covered with ivory and part of it was covered with very fine gold. ¹⁸ There were six steps in front of the throne. There was a gold footstool that was attached to the throne. At each side of the throne there was an armrest, and alongside each armrest there was a statue of a lion.

ULB:

¹⁷ Then the king made a great throne of ivory and overlaid it with the finest gold. ¹⁸ There were six steps to the throne, and a footstool was attached to the throne. On each side of the throne there were armrests with two lions standing beside each of them.

translationNotes**the king made a great throne**

The author speaks of commanding his workers to build the throne as if he himself had built it. AT: “the king had his workers make a great throne” or “the king’s workers made” (See: [Metonymy](#))

a great throne of ivory

“a great throne decorated with ivory”

ivory

Ivory is the hard, white substance from the tusks or teeth of large animals, such as the elephant, walrus, or hippopotamus. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

two lions

These were statues. AT: “two statues of lions” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)
- [throne, thrones, enthroned](#)
- [footstool](#)
- [lions, lion, lioness, lionesses](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 9 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 9:19-21

UDB:

¹⁹ So there were twelve statues of lions. No throne like that had ever existed in any other kingdom. ²⁰ All of Solomon's cups were made of gold, and all the various dishes in the House of the Forest of Lebanon were made of gold. They did not make things from silver, because during the years that Solomon ruled, silver was not considered to be valuable. ²¹ The king had a fleet of ships capable of sailing far out on the ocean. It sailed along with Hiram's merchant fleet. Every three years the fleet brought gold, silver, ivory, apes, and baboons.

ULB:

¹⁹ Twelve lions stood on the steps, one on each side of each of the six steps. There was no throne like it in any other kingdom. ²⁰ All King Solomon's drinking cups were gold, and all the drinking cups in the House of the Forest of Lebanon were of pure gold. None were silver because silver was not considered valuable in Solomon's days. ²¹ The king had at sea a fleet of oceangoing ships, along with the fleet of Hiram. Once every three years the fleet brought gold, silver, and ivory, as well as apes and baboons.

translationNotes

the House of the Forest of Lebanon

Solomon's palace was built of trees from Lebanon. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 9:16](#). Possible meanings are 1) this was the name of a large room in the palace. AT: "the Hall of the Forest of Lebanon" or 2) this was the name of his whole palace. AT: "the Palace of the Forest of Lebanon" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

silver was not considered valuable in Solomon's days

Silver was so common in Solomon's days that if a king wanted to show his wealth, he would not do it by making things out of silver. Instead he would use gold, which was less common and more valuable. This can be stated in active form. AT: "people did not value silver so much" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

in Solomon's days

Here "Solomon's days" refers to the time when Solomon ruled. AT: "when Solomon ruled" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

a fleet of oceangoing ships

"a group of ships that travel on the ocean"

along with the fleet of Hiram

“along with Hiram’s fleet of ships”

apes and baboons

It is not certain whether the word translated as “apes” here refers to apes, baboons, or monkeys. It is not certain whether the word translated as “baboons” here refers to baboons or peacocks. This can be translated more generally as “animals from far away” or “animals from Africa.” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

translationWords

- [kingdom, kingdoms](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 9 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 9:22-24

UDB:

²² King Solomon became richer and wiser than any other king on the earth. ²³ Kings from all over the world wanted to come and listen to the wise things that Solomon said, things that God had put into his mind. ²⁴ All the people who came to him brought presents: things made from silver or gold; they also brought robes, weapons, spices, horses, and mules. The merchants continued to do this every year.

ULB:

²² So King Solomon exceeded all the kings of the world in riches and in wisdom. ²³ All the kings of the earth sought the presence of Solomon in order to hear his wisdom, which God had put in his heart. ²⁴ Those who visited brought tribute, vessels of silver and of gold, clothes, armor, and spices, as well as horses and mules, year after year.

translationNotes

All the kings of the earth

The word “all” here is a generalization. AT: “Kings from around the world” (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

sought the presence of Solomon

The presence of a person is a metonym for being able to speak and listen to the person. AT: “wanted to visit Solomon” or “came to visit Solomon” (See: [Metonymy](#))

to hear his wisdom, which God had put in his heart

The heart is a metonym for what a person thinks, and here it is spoken of as if it were a container. The abstract noun “wisdom” is a metonym for the wise things a person thinks or says. AT: “to hear how wise God had enabled him to be” or “to hear him speak the wise words that God had enabled him to speak” (See: [Metonymy](#))

which God had put in his heart

God putting wisdom in Solomon’s heart represents God making Solomon wise. AT: “which God had given him” or “because God had made him wise” (See: [Metaphor](#))

year after year

This is an idiom. AT: “every year” (See: [Idiom](#))

translationWords

- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [God](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [tribute](#)
- [horse, horses, warhorse, warhorses, horseback](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 9 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 9:25-26

UDB:

²⁵ Solomon had four thousand stalls for his horses and chariots, and twelve thousand men who rode horses. Solomon put some of them in Jerusalem and some of them in other cities where he kept his chariots. ²⁶ Solomon ruled over all the kings in the area from the Euphrates River in the northeast, to the region of Philistia in the west, and to the border of Egypt in the south.

ULB:

²⁵ Solomon had four thousand stalls for horses and chariots, and twelve thousand horsemen, which he stationed in the chariot cities and with himself in Jerusalem. ²⁶ He ruled over all the kings from the Euphrates River to the land of the Philistines, and to the border of Egypt.

translationNotes

four thousand stalls ... twelve thousand horsemen

“4,000 stalls ... 12,000 horsemen” (See: [Numbers](#))

stalls

This is a small enclosure where horses are kept.

translationWords

- [chariot, chariots, charioteers](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled](#)
- [Euphrates River, the River](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 9 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 9:27-28

UDB:

²⁷ During the years that Solomon was king, he caused silver to become as common in Jerusalem as stone; and he caused cedar trees in the foothills of Judah to become as plentiful as sycamore fig trees. ²⁸ Solomon's agents brought horses to the land of Judah from Egypt and from many other lands.

ULB:

²⁷ The king had silver in Jerusalem, as much as the stones on the ground. He made cedar wood to be as abundant as the sycamore fig trees that are in the lowlands. ²⁸ They brought horses for Solomon from Egypt and from all the lands.

translationNotes

as much as the stones on the ground

This is an exaggeration to emphasize that there was such a great amount of silver. (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

They brought horses for Solomon from Egypt and from all the lands

The word "they" may refer to Solomon's merchants. However this sentence is not about what the merchants did, but about where Solomon's horses came from. AT: "Horses were brought to Solomon from Egypt and from all the lands" or "Solomon's horses were from Egypt and all the lands"

from all the lands

The word "all" is a generalization. AT: "from many other places" or "from many other countries" (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

translationWords

- [cedar, cedars, cedarwood](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 9 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 9:29-31

UDB:

²⁹ Lists of all the other things that Solomon did are written in the scrolls written by the prophet Nathan, and by the prophet Ahijah from the city of Shiloh, and in the scroll in which was written the visions of the prophet Iddo (a scroll in which Iddo's visions about Jeroboam son of Nebat were also written). ³⁰ Solomon ruled in Jerusalem over all of Israel for forty years. ³¹ Then Solomon died; they buried him in the part of Jerusalem called 'the city of David.' And his son Rehoboam became the next king.

ULB:

²⁹ As for the other matters concerning Solomon, first and last, are they not written in The History of Nathan the Prophet, in The Prophecy of Ahijah the Shilonite, and in The Visions of Iddo the Seer (which also had information about Jeroboam son of Nebat)? ³⁰ Solomon reigned in Jerusalem over all Israel for forty years. ³¹ He slept with his ancestors and the people buried him in the city of David his father. Rehoboam, his son, became king in his place.

translationNotes

first and last

The phrase "first and last" represents the whole time of Solomon's reign. AT: "from the beginning to the end of his reign" (See: [Merism](#))

are they not written ... (which also had information about Jeroboam son of Nebat)?

The author uses the question to remind the readers that other people had written about Solomon. It can be expressed in active form AT: "they are written ... (which also had information about Jeroboam son of Nebat.)" or "people have written about them ... (which also had information about Jeroboam son of Nebat)." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

The History of Nathan the Prophet ... The Prophecy of Ahijah the Shilonite ... The Visions of Iddo the Seer

These are the names of some writings that existed when 2 Chronicles was written, but they do not exist now.

Ahijah the Shilonite

This is a prophet from Shiloh who predicted that the nation of Israel would be divided into two kingdoms.

Shilonite

This is the name of a people group from the town of Shiloh. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

He slept with his ancestors

This was a polite way to tell about him dying. AT: “He died” (See: [Euphemism](#))

translationWords

- [Solomon](#)
- [written](#)
- [Nathan](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Ahijah](#)
- [Shiloh](#)
- [vision, visions, envision](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [bury, buries, buried, burying, burial](#)
- [city of David](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 9 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 10 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This begins a section on King Rehoboam. (2 Chronicles 10-12)

Special concepts in this chapter

Rehoboam's taxes

The people asked Solomon's son, Rehoboam, to reduce the heavy taxes and the forced labor Solomon had demanded but Rehoboam refused. He lacked the wisdom to follow the advice of the men who had been councilors of his father Solomon. So the ten northern tribes broke off and made Jeroboam their king. They were called "Israel" and Rehoboam's kingdom was called Judah. This will cause confusion between the northern kingdom of Israel and the whole nation of Israel. (See: [wise](#), [wisdom](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

The people use the metaphor of a yoke to complain about the high taxes and forced labor Solomon demanded from the people. They said, "Your father made our yoke difficult." (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 10:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 10:1-2

UDB:

¹ All the people of northern Israel went to the city Shechem in order to appoint Rehoboam to be their king. So Rehoboam also went there. ² Now Jeroboam son of Nebat had fled to Egypt to escape from King Solomon. While he was in Egypt he heard about the people wanting to appoint Rehoboam to be their king, and so he returned to Israel from Egypt.

ULB:

¹ Rehoboam went to Shechem, for all Israel was coming to Shechem to make him king. ² When Jeroboam the son of Nebat heard this (for he was in Egypt, where he had fled from King Solomon), he returned from Egypt.

translationNotes

all Israel was coming

Here “Israel” is a metonym for the men of Israel. The word “all” is a generalization. AT: “the men of Israel were coming” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

Jeroboam ... Nebat

These are the names of men. See how you translated these names in [2 Chronicles 9:29](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- [Rehoboam](#)
- [Shechem](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)
- [Solomon](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 10:3-5**UDB:**

³ So the leaders of the northern tribes summoned Jeroboam, and he went with them to talk to Rehoboam. They said to Rehoboam, ⁴ “Your father Solomon forced us to work very hard, but if you charge us fewer taxes than we were paying to him, and if you make us work not so much we will serve you faithfully.”

⁵ He replied, “Come back three days from now, and I will give you my answer.” So those leaders and Jeroboam left.

ULB:

³ So they sent and called him, and Jeroboam and all Israel came; they spoke to Rehoboam and said, ⁴ “Your father made our yoke difficult. Now therefore, make your father’s hard work easier, and lighten the heavy yoke that he put on us, and we will serve you.” ⁵ Rehoboam said to them, “Come again to me after three days.” So the people left.

translationNotes**they sent and called him**

“the men of Israel sent for Jeroboam”

Jeroboam and all Israel came

“Jeroboam and all Israel came to Rehoboam”

all Israel came

Here “Israel” is a metonym for the men of Israel. The word “all” is a generalization. AT: “the men of Israel came” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

made our yoke difficult

A difficult yoke is a metaphor for very difficult labor and cruel treatment. AT: “treated us cruelly” or “forced us to work very hard” (See: [Metaphor](#))

make your father’s hard work easier, and lighten the heavy yoke that he put on us

These two phrases mean the same thing. The yoke metaphor emphasizes the fact that Solomon had treated them harshly. AT: “make the hard work that your father gave us easier, and do not treat us as harshly as he did” (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metaphor](#))

after three days

“after 3 days” (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out](#)
- [call, calls, calling, called](#)
- [yoke, yokes, yoked](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 10:6-7

UDB:

⁶ Then King Rehoboam consulted his older men who had advised his father Solomon while he was still alive. He asked them, “What shall I say to answer these men?”

⁷ They replied, “If you will be kind to these people and do things that will please them, and if you say kind things to them when you answer them, they will always serve you.”

ULB:

⁶ King Rehoboam consulted with the old men who had stood before Solomon his father while he was alive; he said, “How would you advise me to bring an answer to these people?” ⁷ They spoke to him and said, “If you are good to this people and please them, and say good words to them, then they will always be your servants.”

translationNotes

the old men who had stood before Solomon

To “stand before” is an idiom for serving the king in his presence. AT: “the old men who counseled Solomon” or “the old men who attended to Solomon” (See: [Idiom](#))

to bring an answer to these people

“to answer these people” or “to reply to these people”

translationWords

- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [good, goodness](#)
- [enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 10:8-9

UDB:

⁸ But he did not agree with what the older men advised him to do. Instead, he consulted the younger men who had grown up with him, who were now his advisors. ⁹ He said to them, “What do you say that I should answer the men who are asking me to reduce the work and taxes that my father required from them?”

ULB:

⁸ But Rehoboam ignored the advice of the old men that they had given him, and consulted with the young men who had grown up with him, who stood before him. ⁹ He said to them, “What advice do you give me, so that we may answer the people who spoke to me and said, ‘Lighten the yoke that your father put on us?’”

translationNotes

Rehoboam ignored the advice

“Rehoboam did not follow the advice”

who had grown up with him, who stood before him

“who were his long-time friends, and who advised him”

Lighten the yoke that your father put on us

To “lighten the yoke” is a metaphor that represents easing the burden. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 10:4](#). AT: “Do not treat us as cruelly as your father did” or “Do not force us to work as hard as your father did” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 10:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ The young men who had grown up with him replied, "Those men have said that your father forced them to work very hard for him, so they want you to reduce the work and taxes that your father required from them. But this is what you should tell them: 'My little finger is thicker than my father's waist.' ¹¹ My father required you people to work hard and pay high taxes, but I will make the loads you carry even heavier. My father whipped you with leather whips, but I will whip you with scorpions."

ULB:

¹⁰ The young men who had grown up with Rehoboam spoke to him, saying, "This is how you should speak to the people who told you that your father Solomon made their yoke heavy, but that you must make it lighter. This is what you should say to them, 'My little finger is thicker than my father's waist. ¹¹ So now, although my father burdened you with a heavy yoke, I will add to your yoke. My father punished you with whips, but I will punish you with scorpions.'"

translationNotes

made their yoke heavy

A heavy yoke is a metaphor for very difficult labor and cruel treatment. This metaphor is continued in verses 10 and 11. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 10:04](#). AT: "treated them cruelly" or "forced them to work very hard" (See: [Metaphor](#))

My little finger is thicker than my father's waist

This metaphor means that Rehoboam is more cruel and intimidating than his father. AT: "I rule much more harshly than my father ever did" or "I am much harsher than my father" (See: [Metaphor](#))

I will add to your yoke

"I will make your yoke heavier." A yoke is a metaphor for labor. AT: "I will force you to work harder" (See: [Metaphor](#))

I will punish you with scorpions

Possible meanings are that 1) "scorpions" is a metaphor for any kind of painful punishment. AT: "I will punish you much more harshly" or 2) "scorpions" is a metaphor for whips with sharp metal barbs at the end. AT: "I will punish you with whips that have sharp pieces of metal at the ends" (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [punish, punishes, punished, punishing, punishment, unpunished](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 10:12-14**UDB:**

¹² Three days later, Jeroboam and all the leaders came to King Rehoboam again, as he had instructed them to do. ¹³ The king ignored the advice of the older men and spoke harshly to the Israelite leaders. ¹⁴ He told them what the younger men had advised. He said, “My father put heavy burdens of work and taxes on you, but I will put heavier burdens on you. It was as though he beat you with whips, but I will beat you with scorpions!”

ULB:

¹² So Jeroboam and all the people came to Rehoboam on the third day, as the king said, “Come back to me on the third day.” ¹³ Rehoboam spoke to them harshly, ignoring the advice of the old men. ¹⁴ He spoke to them following the advice of the young men, saying, “My father made your yoke heavy, but I will add to it. My father punished you with whips, but I will punish you with scorpions.”

translationNotes**on the third day**

“after three days” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

made your yoke heavy, but I will add to it

A heavy yoke is a metaphor for very difficult labor and cruel treatment. AT: “treated you cruelly, but I will be more cruel” or “forced you to work very hard, but I will make you work harder” (See: [Metaphor](#))

I will punish you with scorpions

Possible meanings are that 1) “scorpions” is a metaphor for any kind of painful punishment. AT: “I will punish you much more harshly” or 2) “scorpions” is a metaphor for whips with sharp metal barbs at the end. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 10:11](#). AT: “I will punish you with whips that have sharp pieces of metal at the ends” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [Jeroboam](#)
- [day, days](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 10:15**UDB:**

¹⁵ So the king did not pay any attention to the people's leaders. All this happened in order that what Yahweh wanted would occur, what he had told the prophet Ahijah about Jeroboam becoming king of the ten tribes out of the twelve.

ULB:

¹⁵ So the king did not listen to the people, for it was a turn in events brought about by God, that Yahweh might carry out his word that Ahijah the Shilonite had spoken to Jeroboam son of Nebat.

translationNotes**So the king did not listen to the people**

Here "listen to the people" represents not care about what they said or about actually doing what they asked. AT: "So the king did not do what the people had asked him to do" or "So the king ignored the people" (See: [Metonymy](#))

it was a turn in events brought about by God

This is an idiom and can be stated in active form. AT: "God caused things to happen like this" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

that Yahweh might carry out his word ... Nebat

"that Yahweh might do according to the message that he told Ahijah the Shilonite to tell Jeroboam son of Nebat" or "that Yahweh might do what he had said he would do when he told Ahijah the Shilonite to give a message to Jeroboam son of Nebat"

that Yahweh might carry out his word

The idiom "carry out his word" means to do what he had said he would do. (See: [Idiom](#))

his word that Ahijah the Shilonite had spoken to Jeroboam son of Nebat

This refers to the message that God gave Ahijah to tell Jeroboam.

Ahijah the Shilonite ... Jeroboam son of Nebat

See how you translated these names in [2 Chronicles 9:29](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [word, words](#)
- [Ahijah](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 10:16

UDB:

¹⁶ When the Israelite leaders realized that the king did not pay any attention to what they said, they shouted,

”We do not want anything to do with this descendant of King David!

We will not pay attention to what this grandson of Jesse says!

You people of Israel, let us go home!

As for this descendant of David, he can look after his family himself!”

So the Israelite leaders returned to their homes.

ULB:

¹⁶ When all Israel saw that the king did not listen to them, the people answered him and said, “What share do we have in David? We have no inheritance in the son of Jesse! Each of you should go back to his tent, Israel. Now see to your own house, David.” So all Israel returned to their tents.

translationNotes

all Israel

Here “Israel” is a metonym for the men of Israel. The word “all” is a generalization. AT: “the men of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

the king did not listen to them

Here “listen to the people” represents not caring about what they said or about actually doing what they asked. AT: “the king did not do what they had asked him to do” or “the king ignored them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

What share do we have in David? We have no inheritance in the son of Jesse

The people use this question and statement to imply that since they do not belong to David’s family, they are not obligated to support David’s grandson, King Rehoboam. AT: “We have no share in David. We will not have anything to do with the descendants of the son of Jesse” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

What share do we have in David?

Having a share in someone represents being his descendants and receiving the good things that descendants receive. AT: “We do not belong to the family of David” (See: [Metonymy](#))

We have no inheritance in the son of Jesse

“Son of Jesse” here is a metonym for David, a son of Jesse. Having an inheritance in someone represents being his descendants and receiving the good things that descendants receive. AT: “We will not receive any inheritance from the son of Jesse” or “We will have nothing to do with the his descendants” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Each of you should go back to his tent

“Tent” here is a metonym representing people’s homes. AT: “Go to your homes, people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Now see to your own house, David

Here “see to” is an idiom meaning to take care of something, and “house” is a metonym for David’s lineage of power and prestige. AT: “Now take care of your own kingdom, descendant of David” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [David](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)
- [Jesse](#)
- [tent, tents, tentmakers](#)
- [house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 10:17-19**UDB:**

¹⁷ And after that, the only Israelite people whom Rehoboam ruled over were those who lived in the territory of the tribe of Judah, in the countryside and in the cities, towns, and villages.

¹⁸ Then King Rehoboam went with Adoniram to talk to the Israelite people. Adoniram was the man who supervised all the men who were forced to work for Rehoboam. But the Israelite people killed him by throwing stones at him. When that happened, King Rehoboam quickly got in his chariot and escaped to Jerusalem. ¹⁹ Ever since that time, the people of the northern tribes of Israel have been rebelling against the descendants of King David.

ULB:

¹⁷ But as for the people of Israel who lived in the cities of Judah, Rehoboam reigned over them. ¹⁸ Then King Rehoboam sent Adoniram, who was over the forced laborers, but the people of Israel stoned him to death with stones. King Rehoboam fled quickly in his chariot to Jerusalem. ¹⁹ So Israel has been in rebellion against the house of David to this day.

translationNotes**Adoniram**

Adoniram is the name of a man. In the Hebrew text of this sentence, his name was written as Adoram. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

who was over the forced laborers

Being over people represents having authority to tell them what to do. AT: “who was in charge of the forced laborers” (See: [Metaphor](#))

stoned him to death with stones

“killed Adoniram by stoning him”

against the house of David

Here “the house of David” represents the kings who were descendants of David. AT: “against the kings descended from David” (See: [Metonymy](#))

to this day

This refers to the general time when the author wrote this book. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 5:9](#). AT: “even now”

translationWords

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [reign, reigns, reigned, reigning](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)
- [stone, stones, stoning](#)
- [die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly](#)
- [chariot, chariots, charioteers](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness](#)
- [house of David](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 11 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The section on King Rehoboam continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Strengthening their defenses

Rehoboam strengthened the defenses of Judah. Without the help of the northern tribes, the kingdom of Judah did not really have much power to defend itself from outside attacks. Therefore, Rehoboam felt it necessary to strengthen Judah's military defenses.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Israel

When the author speaks about Israel, he is now referring almost exclusively to the northern kingdom of Israel and not the united nation of Israel.

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 11:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 11:1

UDB:

¹ When Rehoboam arrived in Jerusalem, he gathered 180,000 of the best soldiers from the tribes of Judah and Benjamin. He wanted them to fight against the northern tribes of Israel and defeat them, in order that he could rule all twelve tribes again.

ULB:

¹ When Rehoboam arrived in Jerusalem, he assembled the house of Judah and Benjamin, 180,000 chosen men who were soldiers, to fight against Israel, to restore the kingdom to Rehoboam.

translationNotes

the house of Judah and Benjamin

Here “house” is a metonym that represents a tribe or descendants and refers specifically to the soldiers from the tribes of Judah and Benjamin. AT: “all the soldiers from the tribes of Judah and Benjamin” (See: [Metonymy](#))

180,000 chosen men

“one hundred and eighty thousand chosen men” (See: [Numbers](#))

chosen men who were soldiers

“choice men who were soldiers.” The phrase “chosen men” is an idiom that refers to elite soldiers who were skilled in battle. AT: “of the best soldiers” (See: [Idiom](#))

translationWords

- [Rehoboam](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [restore, restores, restored, restoration](#)
- [kingdom, kingdoms](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 11:2-4

UDB:

² But Yahweh spoke to the prophet Shemaiah and said this to him: ³ "Go and tell this to Solomon's son Rehoboam, the king of Judah, and to all the Israelite people of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin: ⁴ 'Yahweh says that you must not go to fight against the people of Israel; it is as though they are your own relatives. All of you must go home. What has happened is what Yahweh wanted to happen.'" So Shemaiah went and told that to them, and they all paid attention to what Yahweh had commanded them to do; they did not attack Jeroboam and his soldiers.

ULB:

² But the word of Yahweh came to Shemaiah the man of God, saying, ³ "Say to Rehoboam son of Solomon, king of Judah, and to all Israel in Judah and Benjamin, ⁴ 'Yahweh says this, "You must not attack or make war against your brothers. Everyone must return to his own house, for I have caused this to happen."'" So they obeyed the words of Yahweh and turned back from attacking Jeroboam.

translationNotes

the word of Yahweh came ... saying

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. AT: "Yahweh spoke this message ... and he said" or "Yahweh spoke these words ... and he said" (See: [Idiom](#))

Shemaiah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the man of God

The expression "man of God" is a respectful way of referring to a prophet of Yahweh. AT: "the man who belongs to God" or "the prophet of God"

all Israel in Judah and Benjamin

Here the word "Israel" refers to the Israelite people who live in the tribes of Judah and Benjamin. AT: "all of the Israelites in the tribes of Judah and Benjamin" (See: [Metonymy](#))

your brothers

This is a reference to the ten northern tribes. By calling them "brothers," Yahweh emphasizes the family relationship between all of the tribes.

translationWords

- word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures
- God
- Solomon
- brother, brothers
- Jeroboam

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 11:5-10

UDB:

⁵ Rehoboam lived in Jerusalem, and his workers built walls around several of the cities and towns in Judah to protect them against enemy attacks. ⁶ In the area that belonged to the tribes of Judah and Benjamin they built walls around Bethlehem, Etam, Tekoa, ⁷ Beth Zur, Soko, Adullam, ⁸ Gath, Mareshah, ⁹ Adoraim, Lachish, Azekah, ¹⁰ Zorah, Aijalon, and Hebron.

ULB:

⁵ Rehoboam lived in Jerusalem and built cities in Judah for defense. ⁶ He built Bethlehem, Etam, Tekoa, ⁷ Beth Zur, Soko, Adullam, ⁸ Gath, Mareshah, Ziph, ⁹ Adoraim, Lachish, Azekah, ¹⁰ Zorah, Aijalon, and Hebron. These are fortified cities in Judah and Benjamin.

translationNotes

Rehoboam lived in Jerusalem and built cities

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Rehoboam build these cities. AT: “Rehoboam lived in Jerusalem and had his workers build cities” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Etam, Tekoa ... Zorah, Aijalon

All of the names in this list refer to cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- [Bethlehem, Ephrathah](#)
- [Hebron](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 11:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ He also appointed an army commander in each of those cities and towns, and gave them supplies of food, olive oil, and wine. ¹² He put shields and spears in all the cities and made them well-protected. So he continued to control the tribes of Judah and Benjamin.

ULB:

¹¹ He fortified the fortresses and put commanders in them, with stores of food, oil, and wine. ¹² He put shields and spears in all the cities and made them very strong. So Judah and Benjamin belonged to him.

translationNotes

He fortified the fortresses

Here the word “fortresses” refers to fortified cities. That Rehoboam “fortified the fortresses” means that he built up and strengthened the defenses of these fortified cities. AT: “He strengthened the defenses of the fortified cities” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

made them very strong

“made the cities very strong”

Judah and Benjamin belonged to him

Rehoboam was in control of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin.

translationWords

- [stronghold, strongholds, fortifications, fortified, fortress, fortresses](#)
- [commander, commanders](#)
- [oil](#)
- [wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine](#)
- [spear, spears, spearmen](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 11:13-15

UDB:

¹³ The priests and other descendants of Levi throughout Israel supported Rehoboam. ¹⁴ The descendants of Levi abandoned their property and their pastureland, and they came to Jerusalem and to other places in Judah, because Jeroboam and his sons would not allow them to do the work of priests of Yahweh. ¹⁵ Instead, Jeroboam appointed the priests that he wanted to work at the altars he commanded to be built on the hills all around the cities, to offer sacrifices to the idols that he commanded to be made that resembled goats and calves.

ULB:

¹³ The priests and the Levites who were in all Israel went over to him from within their borders. ¹⁴ For the Levites left their pasturelands and property in order to come to Judah and Jerusalem, for Jeroboam and his sons had driven them away, so that they could no longer perform priestly duties for Yahweh. ¹⁵ Jeroboam appointed for himself priests for the high places and the goat and calf idols he had made.

translationNotes

The priests and the Levites ... went over to him from within their borders

Possible meanings are 1) “The priests and Levites ... supported Rehoboam from within their borders” or 2) “The priests and Levites ... traveled from within their borders to join Rehoboam.”

pasturelands

lands used for animals

Jeroboam and his sons had driven them away

To “drive away” is an idiom that means to forcefully cause someone to leave. AT: “Jeroboam and his sons had forced them to leave” (See: [Idiom](#))

the goat and calf idols he had made

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Jeroboam make these idols. AT: “the goat idols and calf idols that he had his craftsmen make” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- priest, priests, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- Yahweh
- appoint, appoints, appointed
- high place, high places
- goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 11:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ And people from every tribe in Israel who wanted to worship Yahweh, the God to whom the Israelites belonged, went with the descendants of Levi to Jerusalem to offer sacrifices to Yahweh, the God whom their ancestors worshiped. ¹⁷ They caused the kingdom of Judah to be strong, and for three years they were happy that Solomon's son Rehoboam was the king. During that time they conducted their lives righteously as David and Solomon had done previously.

ULB:

¹⁶ People from all the tribes of Israel came after them, those who set their hearts to seek Yahweh, the God of Israel; they came to Jerusalem to sacrifice to Yahweh, the God of their fathers. ¹⁷ So they strengthened the kingdom of Judah and made Rehoboam son of Solomon strong during three years, and they walked for three years in the way of David and Solomon.

translationNotes

People ... came after them

“People ... followed the Levites” or “People ... came to Jerusalem after the Levites”

those who set their hearts to seek Yahweh

Here the word “hearts” represents the thoughts and desires. The idiom “set their hearts” means to determine to do something. AT: “those who had determined to seek Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

to seek Yahweh

Worshiping Yahweh is spoken of as if the person were seeking Yahweh. AT: “to worship Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

made Rehoboam son of Solomon strong

The people supporting Rehoboam as king is spoken of as if they made Rehoboam strong. AT: “supported Rehoboam son of Solomon as king” (See: [Metaphor](#))

they walked for three years in the way of David and Solomon

Here a person's actions and lifestyle are spoken of as if the person were walking along a path. AT: “they followed the example of David and Solomon for three years” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings](#)
- [ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather](#)
- [David](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 11:18-19

UDB:

¹⁸ Rehoboam married Mahalath. She was the daughter of David's son Jerimoth, and her mother was Abihail, the daughter of Eliab and granddaughter of Jesse. ¹⁹ Rehoboam and Mahalath had three sons: Jeush, Shemariah, and Zaham.

ULB:

¹⁸ Rehoboam took a wife for himself: Mahalath, the daughter of Jerimoth, David's son, and of Abihail, the daughter of Eliab, Jesse's son. ¹⁹ She bore him sons: Jeush, Shemariah, and Zaham.

translationNotes

Mahalath ... Abihail

These are the names of women. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jerimoth ... Eliab ... Jeush, Shemariah, and Zaham

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- [Jesse](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 11:20-21**UDB:**

²⁰ Later Rehoboam married Maacah, the daughter of Absalom, and they had four sons: Abijah, Attai, Ziza, and Shelomith. ²¹ Rehoboam loved Maacah more than he loved any other of his wives and slave wives. Altogether he had eighteen wives and sixty slave wives, and twenty-eight sons and sixty daughters.

ULB:

²⁰ After Mahalath, Rehoboam took Maacah, Absalom's daughter; she bore him Abijah, Attai, Ziza, and Shelomith. ²¹ Rehoboam loved Maacah, Absalom's daughter, more than all his other wives and his concubines (he took eighteen wives and sixty concubines, and became the father of twenty-eight sons and sixty daughters).

translationNotes**Mahalath ... Maacah**

These are the names of women. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Rehoboam took Maacah

This idiom means that he married her. AT: "Rehoboam married Maacah" (See: [Idiom](#))

Abijah, Attai, Ziza, and Shelomith

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

eighteen wives and sixty concubines ... twenty-eight sons and sixty daughters

"18 wives and 60 concubines ... 28 sons and 60 daughters" (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [Absalom](#)
- [love, loves, loving, loved](#)
- [concubine, concubines](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 11:22-23

UDB:

²² Rehoboam appointed his son Abijah to be the leader of his older and younger brothers, because he wanted to appoint Abijah to be the next king. ²³ He very wisely sent some of his other sons to other cities in the areas of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin, and to other cities that had walls around them. He gave them plenty of supplies and many wives.

ULB:

²² Rehoboam appointed Abijah son of Maacah to be chief, a leader among his brothers; he had the thought of making him king. ²³ Rehoboam ruled wisely; he scattered all his sons throughout all the land of Judah and Benjamin to every fortified city. He also gave them food in abundance and looked for many wives for them.

translationNotes

he had the thought of making him king

“he had thought of making Abijah king”

he scattered all his sons throughout all the land of Judah and Benjamin to every fortified city

“he sent all his sons throughout all the land to every fortified city of Judah and Benjamin”

translationWords

- chief, chiefs
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled
- wise, wisdom

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 12 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter ends the section on King Rehoboam.

Special concepts in this chapter

Worshiping Yahweh

The safety of Israel and Judah was dependent upon the people worshiping Yahweh and not upon their military power. Because Rehoboam deserted the worship of God, God allowed the king of Egypt to take all of the wealth Solomon stored up.

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 12:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 12:1

UDB:

¹ After Rehoboam had obtained complete control of his kingdom, he and all the other people in Judah stopped obeying the laws of Yahweh.

ULB:

¹ It came about, when Rehoboam's reign was established and he was strong, that he abandoned the law of Yahweh—and all Israel with him.

translationNotes

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

when Rehoboam's reign was established

This can be translated in active form. AT: “when Rehoboam had established his reign” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

all Israel with him

Here the words “all Israel” refer specifically to the people of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin, over which Rehoboam was king. The verb may be supplied from the previous phrase. AT: “all the Israelite people whom he ruled also abandoned the law of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

translationWords

- [Rehoboam](#)
- [reign, reigns, reigned, reigning](#)
- [law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 12:2-4

UDB:

² As a result, after Rehoboam had been king for almost five years, Yahweh sent Shishak, the king of Egypt, with his army to attack Jerusalem. ³ He brought with his army twelve hundred chariots and sixty thousand soldiers who rode horses and a very large number of troops from two regions in Libya, and from Ethiopia. ⁴ They captured many of the cities in Judah that had walls around them, and they came as far as Jerusalem.

ULB:

² It happened in the fifth year of King Rehoboam, that Shishak, king of Egypt, came up against Jerusalem, because the people had been unfaithful to Yahweh. ³ He came with twelve hundred chariots and sixty thousand horsemen. Soldiers without number came with him from Egypt: Libyans, Sukkites, and Cushites. ⁴ He captured the fortified cities that belonged to Judah and came to Jerusalem.

translationNotes

It happened

This phrase is used here to mark where the action starts. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

in the fifth year of King Rehoboam

This refers to the fifth year of Rehoboam's reign as king. AT: "in the fifth year that Rehoboam was king" or "in year five of King Rehoboam's reign" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Shishak, king of Egypt, came up against Jerusalem

"Shishak, king of Egypt" here is a metonym for Shishak along with the Egyptian army. AT: "Shishak, king of Egypt, and his army with him, came up against Jerusalem" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Shishak

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

came up against

This is an idiom that means marched against or attacked. AT: "came to attack" (See: [Idiom](#))

twelve hundred chariots and sixty thousand horsemen

“1,200 chariots and 60,000 horsemen” (See: [Numbers](#))

Soldiers without number

This exaggeration means that there were more soldiers than a person could easily count. AT: “Many soldiers” (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

Libyans, Sukkites, and Cushites

These are people from Libya, Sukki, and Ethiopia. The location of Sukki is uncertain, but it may be a region in Libya. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Translate Unknowns](#))

translationWords

- [Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness](#)
- [chariot, chariots, charioteers](#)
- [horseman, horsemen](#)
- [Ethiopia, Ethiopian](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 12:5-6

UDB:

⁵ Then the prophet Shemaiah came to Rehoboam and the other leaders of Judah who had gathered in Jerusalem because they were afraid of the army of Shishak. Shemaiah said to them, “Yahweh says this: ‘You have abandoned me; so now I am abandoning you, to allow you to be captured by the army of Shishak.’”

⁶ Then the king and the other Israelite leaders humbled themselves and said, “What Yahweh is doing to us is just.”

ULB:

⁵ Now Shemaiah the prophet came to Rehoboam and to the leaders of Judah who had gathered together to Jerusalem because of Shishak. Shemaiah said to them, “This is what Yahweh says: You have forsaken me, so I have also given you over into Shishak’s hand.” ⁶ Then the princes of Israel and the king humbled themselves and said, “Yahweh is righteous.”

translationNotes

Shemaiah

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this word in [2 Chronicles 11:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

so I have also given you over into Shishak’s hand

Here the word “hand” represents power. Yahweh speaks of enabling Shishak’s army to defeat the king and the others in Jerusalem as if he were placing them into Shishak’s hand. AT: “so I have enabled Shishak to defeat you” or “so I have given you to Shishak as captives” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- forsake, forsakes, forsaken, forsook
- prince, princes, princess, princesses
- humble, humbles, humbled, humility
- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 12:7-8

UDB:

⁷ When Yahweh realized that they had humbled themselves, he gave this message to Shemaiah: "Because they have humbled themselves, I will not allow them to be destroyed. Instead, I will soon rescue them. I will not use Shishak's army to completely destroy the people of Jerusalem, ⁸ but they will conquer Jerusalem and force the people there to do what Shishak wants them to do. As a result, the people of Jerusalem will learn that it is better to serve me than to serve the kings of other countries."

ULB:

⁷ When Yahweh saw that they had humbled themselves, the word of Yahweh came to Shemaiah, saying, "They have humbled themselves. I will not ruin them; I will rescue them to some extent, and my anger will not pour out on Jerusalem by means of Shishak's hand. ⁸ Nevertheless, they will be his servants, so that they may understand what it is to serve me and to serve the rulers of the other countries."

translationNotes

they had humbled themselves

"the princes of Israel and the king had humbled themselves"

the word of Yahweh came ... saying

This is an idiom that is used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. AT: "Yahweh spoke this message ... and he said" or "Yahweh spoke these words ... and he said" (See: [Idiom](#))

I will rescue them to some extent

Possible meanings are 1) Yahweh will permit Shishak to attack Jerusalem and cause trouble for the people, but he will rescue them from total destruction or 2) the words "to some extent" can be translated as soon, meaning that Yahweh will rescue the people of Jerusalem before Shishak can completely destroy the city.

my anger will not pour out on Jerusalem

Yahweh speaks of his anger as if it were a liquid, and of expressing his anger as if he were to pour out that liquid. AT: "I will not express my anger against Jerusalem" or "Jerusalem will not suffer the effects of my anger" (See: [Metaphor](#))

by means of Shishak's hand

Here the word "hand" represents Shishak himself. AT: "by means of Shishak" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

translationWords

- word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures
- ruin, ruins, ruined
- anger, angered, angry
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 12:9-10

UDB:

⁹ When Shishak's army attacked Jerusalem, they took away the valuable things that were in the temple of Yahweh and in the king's palace. They took everything that was valuable, including the gold shields that Solomon's workers had made. ¹⁰ So King Rehoboam's workers made bronze shields to be used instead of the gold ones, and gave the bronze shields to the commanders of the men who guarded the entrance to the his palace.

ULB:

⁹ So Shishak, king of Egypt came up against Jerusalem and took away the treasures in the house of Yahweh, and the treasures in the king's house. He took everything away; he also took the shields of gold that Solomon had made. ¹⁰ King Rehoboam made shields of bronze in their place and entrusted them into the hands of the commanders of the guard, who guarded the doors to the king's house.

translationNotes

Shishak, king of Egypt came up against Jerusalem

“Shishak, king of Egypt” here is a metonym for Shishak along with the Egyptian army. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 12:2](#). AT: “Shishak, king of Egypt, and his army with him, came up against Jerusalem” (See: [Metonymy](#))

came up against

This is an idiom that means marched against or attacked. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 12:2](#). AT: “came to attack” (See: [Idiom](#))

the house of Yahweh

Here the word “house” represents the temple. AT: “the temple of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the shields of gold that Solomon had made

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Solomon make these shields. AT: “the shields of gold that Solomon had his craftsmen make” (See: [Metonymy](#))

King Rehoboam made shields of bronze

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people helped Rehoboam make these shields. AT: “King Rehoboam had his craftsmen make shields of bronze” (See: [Metonymy](#))

in their place

“in place of the shields of gold”

entrusted them into the hands of the commanders

Here the word “hands” represents care or responsibility. AT: “made them the responsibility of the commanders” (See: [Metonymy](#))

who guarded the doors to the king’s house

Here the word “doors” represents the entrance. AT: “who guarded the entrance to the king’s house” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [house of God, Yahweh’s house](#)
- [shield, shields, shielded](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [commander, commanders](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 12:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ After that, whenever the king went to the temple, the guards went with him, carrying those bronze shields. Then when the king left, they would return the shields to the guards' room.

¹² Because Rehoboam humbled himself, Yahweh stopped being angry with him, and did not get rid of him. Instead, he caused good things to happen in Judah.

ULB:

¹¹ It happened that whenever the king entered the house of Yahweh, the guards would carry them; then they would bring them back into the guardhouse. ¹² When Rehoboam humbled himself, Yahweh's anger turned away from him, so as not to destroy him completely; besides, there was still some good to be found in Judah.

translationNotes

It happened that

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

the guards would carry them

“the guards would carry the shields”

Yahweh's anger turned away from him, so as not to destroy him completely

Yahweh no longer being angry with Rehoboam is spoken of as if Yahweh's anger were a person who turned away from Rehoboam. AT: “Yahweh was no longer angry with him and so did not destroy him completely” (See: [Personification](#))

besides

“in addition”

translationWords

- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 12:13-14

UDB:

¹³ King Rehoboam again obtained complete control in Jerusalem, and continued to be the king of Judah. He was forty-one years old when he became the king. He ruled for seventeen years in Jerusalem, which is the city that Yahweh had chosen from all the tribes in Israel to be the place in which people were to worship him. ¹⁴ Rehoboam's mother's name was Naamah. She was from the Ammon people group. Rehoboam did evil things because he did not try to find out what Yahweh wanted him to do.

ULB:

¹³ So King Rehoboam made his kingship strong in Jerusalem, and thus he reigned. Rehoboam was forty-one years old when he began to reign, and he reigned for seventeen years in Jerusalem, the city that Yahweh had chosen from all the tribes of Israel so that he might put his name there. His mother's name was Naamah the Ammonite woman. ¹⁴ He did what was evil, because he did not fix his heart to seek Yahweh.

translationNotes

forty-one years old ... seventeen years

“41 years old ... 17 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

so that he might put his name there

Possible meanings for the phrase “put his name” are 1) a metonym for “dwell.” AT: “so that he might dwell there” or 2) an idiom that refers to ownership. AT: “so that it might belong to him” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

Naamah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

he did not fix his heart to seek Yahweh

Here the word “heart” represents the thoughts and desires. The idiom “fix his heart” means to determine to do something. AT: “he was not committed to seeking Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

to seek Yahweh

Worshiping Yahweh is spoken of as if the person were seeking Yahweh. AT: “to worship Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [reign, reigns, reigned, reigning](#)
- [tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [name, names, named](#)
- [Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 12:15-16

UDB:

¹⁵ An account of all the things that Rehoboam did while he was the king, and lists of the members of his family, are in the scrolls written by the prophets Shemaiah and Iddo. The armies of Rehoboam and Jeroboam were constantly fighting each other. ¹⁶ When Rehoboam died, he was buried in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David. Then his son Abijah became the king.

ULB:

¹⁵ As for the other matters concerning Rehoboam, first and last, are they not written in the writings of Shemaiah the prophet and of Iddo the seer, which also have records of genealogies and the constant wars between Rehoboam and Jeroboam? ¹⁶ Rehoboam slept with his ancestors and was buried in the city of David; Abijah his son became king in his place.

translationNotes

first and last

“from beginning to end.” These two words form a merism and refer to everything that Rehoboam did from the beginning of his reign to the end of his reign. AT: “everything that he did” (See: [Merism](#))

are they not written ... Jeroboam?

This can be expressed in active form and assumes that the answer is positive. The question is rhetorical and is used for emphasis. It can be translated as a statement. AT: “they are written ... Jeroboam.” or “you can read about them ... Jeroboam.” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

Shemaiah ... Iddo ... Abijah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the constant wars between Rehoboam and Jeroboam

The names of the kings represent the armies that they led. AT: “the wars in which Rehoboam’s army and Jeroboam’s army constantly engaged” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Rehoboam slept with his ancestors

Rehoboam dying is spoken of as if he had fallen asleep. AT: “Rehoboam died” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

was buried in the city of David

This can be stated in active form. AT: “people buried him in the city of David” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

became king in his place

The phrase “in his place” is a metaphor meaning “instead of him.” AT: “became king instead of Rehoboam” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [bury, buries, buried, burying, burial](#)
- [city of David](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 13 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Trust

Trusting in God, King Abijah of Judah was able to overcome the army of Israel even though it was twice as big as his army. (See: [trust](#), [trusts](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 13:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 13:1-3

UDB:

¹ When Jeroboam had been ruling Israel for almost eighteen years, Abijah became the king of Judah. ² He ruled in Jerusalem for three years. His mother was Micaiah, the daughter of Uriel from the city of Gibeah.

There was a war between the armies of Abijah and Jeroboam. ³ Abijah went into the battle, taking 400,000 of his capable soldiers, and Jeroboam prepared to fight them, taking 800,000 of his capable troops.

ULB:

¹ In the eighteenth year of King Jeroboam, Abijah began to reign over Judah. ² He ruled for three years in Jerusalem; his mother's name was Macaiah, the daughter of Uriel of Gibeah. There was war between Abijah and Jeroboam. ³ Abijah went into battle with an army of strong, courageous soldiers, 400,000 chosen men. Jeroboam placed battle lines against him with 800,000 chosen men, strong, courageous soldiers.

translationNotes

In the eighteenth year of King Jeroboam

This refers to the eighteenth year of Jeroboam's reign as king. AT: "In the eighteenth year that Jeroboam was king" or "in year 18 of King Jeroboam's reign" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Macaiah, the daughter of Uriel of Gibeah

"Macaiah" is the name of a woman. "Uriel" is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

There was war between Abijah and Jeroboam

The names of the kings represent the armies that they led. AT: "There was war between the army of Abijah and the army of Jeroboam" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

400,000 chosen men ... 800,000 chosen men

"Four hundred thousand chosen men ... eight hundred thousand chosen men." The phrase "chosen men" is an idiom that refers to elite soldiers who were skilled in battle. AT: "400,000 skilled men ... 800,000 skilled men" (See: [Numbers](#) and [Idiom](#))

translationWords

- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- Jeroboam
- reign, reigns, reigned, reigning
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled
- Jerusalem
- name, names, named
- Abijah
- chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 13:4-5

UDB:

⁴ Abijah stood on the top of Mount Zemaraim, which is in the hill country that belonged to the tribe of Ephraim, and he shouted, "Jeroboam and all you other people of Israel, listen to me! ⁵ You certainly know that Yahweh, whom we Israelites are to worship, made a covenant with David by which he promised that his descendants would always rule over Israel.

ULB:

⁴ Abijah stood on Mount Zemaraim, which is in the hill country of Ephraim, and said, "Listen to me, Jeroboam and all Israel! ⁵ Do you not know that Yahweh, the God of Israel, gave the rule over Israel to David forever, to him and to his sons by a formal covenant?"

translationNotes

Mount Zemaraim

(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Do you not know ... by a formal covenant?

Abijah asks this rhetorical question to emphasize the positive answer that it anticipates. The question can be translated as a statement. AT: "You know very well ... by a formal covenant." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

translationWords

- Ephraim, Ephraimite, Ephraimites
- kingdom of Israel
- Yahweh
- God
- David
- eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever
- covenant, covenants, new covenant

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 13:6-7

UDB:

⁶ But Jeroboam, who was only an official of David's son King Solomon, rebelled against his king. ⁷ And when Solomon's son Rehoboam became king and was still young and inexperienced, a group of worthless scoundrels gathered around you and rebelled against him.

ULB:

⁶ Yet Jeroboam son of Nebat, the servant of Solomon son of David, rose up and rebelled against his master. ⁷ Worthless men, base fellows, gathered to him. They came against Rehoboam son of Solomon, when Rehoboam was young and inexperienced and could not withstand them.

translationNotes

base fellows

“wicked men” or “evil men”

gathered to him

“joined with Jeroboam”

translationWords

- [enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose](#)
- [rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness](#)
- [lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs](#)
- [worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless](#)
- [Rehoboam](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 13:8-9

UDB:

⁸ And now you are planning to fight against the kingdom that Yahweh established to be governed by David's descendants. It is true that you have a huge army, and you and your soldiers have brought with you the golden statues of calves that Jeroboam's workers made to be your gods. ⁹ But you drove out the priests that Yahweh appointed, men who are descendants of Aaron the first high priest. You also drove out the descendants of Levi, and you appointed the priests that you wanted, like the people of other countries do. And so one may even come to set himself apart for the work of a priest, even sacrificing a young bull and seven rams as a sign of his ordination and his dedication to become a priest. But what kind of priest is he? He is consecrated to serve idols that are not gods at all!

ULB:

⁸ So now you plan to resist the kingdom of Yahweh that is held within the hand of the descendants of David, because you are a large army, and you have the golden calves that Jeroboam made to be your gods. ⁹ But did you not drive out the priests of Yahweh, the descendants of Aaron, and the Levites, and make priests of your own in the same way as the people of other lands do? Whoever comes to serve as a priest, sacrificing a young bullock and seven rams, he becomes a priest of what are not gods.

translationNotes

the kingdom of Yahweh

This is a reference to a united Israel as it existed in the time of David and Solomon. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

that is held within the hand of the descendants of David

Here the word "hand" represents authority and possession. Abijah is claiming that only the descendants of David have the rightful authority to rule Yahweh's kingdom. This can be stated in active form. AT: "that the descendants of David hold within their hand" or "which only the descendants of David have the authority to rule" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

the golden calves that Jeroboam made

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that Jeroboam had others make the golden calves. AT: "the golden calves that Jeroboam had his craftsmen make" (See: [Metonymy](#))

But did you not drive out ... as the people of other lands do?

Abijah asks this rhetorical question to rebuke the people and to emphasize the positive answer that it anticipates. The question can be translated as a statement. AT: “But you drive out ... as the people of other lands do.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Whoever comes to serve as a priest

“Anyone who comes to serve as a priest”

a priest of what are not gods

The phrase “what are not gods” refers to the golden calves that Jeroboam had his craftsmen make. Although the priests served them as if they were gods, they were not really gods. AT: “a priest of idols that are not really gods” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [might, mighty, mightier, mightily](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of](#)
- [descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants](#)
- [David](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical](#)
- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 13:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ As for us, Yahweh is our God, and we have not abandoned him. Our priests who serve Yahweh are descendants of Aaron, and the descendants of Levi assist them. ¹¹ Every morning and every evening they present to Yahweh offerings to be completely burned on the altar, and they burn fragrant incense. Each week they place on the sacred table the bread to display before Yahweh, and each morning they light the lamps that are on the gold lampstand. We are obeying what Yahweh our God requires us to do. But you have abandoned him; you no longer worship him.

ULB:

¹⁰ But as for us, Yahweh is our God, and we have not forsaken him. We have priests, descendants of Aaron, serving Yahweh, and the Levites, who are at their work. ¹¹ Every morning and evening they burn for Yahweh burnt offerings and sweet incense. They also arrange the bread of the presence on the pure table; they also tend the lampstand of gold with its lamps, for them to burn every evening. We keep the commandments of Yahweh, our God, but you have forsaken him.

translationNotes**as for us**

The word “us” refers to the people of the southern kingdom of Judah.

who are at their work

The word “work” can be translated with a verb. AT: “who are working” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

the bread of the presence

The “bread of the presence” refers to twelve loaves of bread that the priests placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God and as a symbol of God’s presence.

they also tend the lampstand

“they also take care of the lampstand”

for them to burn every evening

“so that the lamps burn every evening” or “and light the lamps every evening”

translationWords

- forsake, forsakes, forsaken, forsook
- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- works, deeds, work, acts
- incense, incenses
- bread
- lampstand, lampstands
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 13:12

UDB:

¹² Yahweh is with us; he is our leader. The priests whom he has appointed will blow their trumpets to signal that we are ready to fight a battle against you. You Israelite men, do not fight against Yahweh, the God to whom your ancestors belonged, because you will not be successful against him.”

ULB:

¹² See, God is with us at our head, and his priests are here with the trumpets to sound an alarm against you. People of Israel, do not fight against Yahweh, the God of your ancestors, for you will not succeed.”

translationNotes

God is with us at our head

Here the front of the army is spoken of as if it were the head. Abijah is saying that God is the one who is leading the army of Judah in battle. AT: “God is with us as our leader” (See: [Metaphor](#))

do not fight against Yahweh

Since Yahweh is leading the army of Judah, Abijah speaks of the army of Israel fighting against the army of Judah as if they were fighting against Yahweh himself. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [God](#)
- [head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded](#)
- [trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 13:13-15

UDB:

¹³ While he was speaking, Jeroboam sent some of his troops around the army of Judah. So while the soldiers who were with Jeroboam were in front of the army of Judah, the other soldiers of Israel were behind the army of Judah. ¹⁴ When the soldiers of Judah turned and saw that they were going to be attacked from the front and from the rear, they cried out to Yahweh. The priests blew their trumpets, ¹⁵ and the men of Judah shouted a loud battle cry. Then Yahweh enabled Abijah and the army of Judah to defeat Jeroboam and the army of Israel.

ULB:

¹³ But Jeroboam prepared an ambush behind them; his army was in front of Judah, and the ambush was behind them. ¹⁴ When Judah looked back, behold, the fighting was both in front of them and behind them. They cried out to Yahweh, and the priests blew the trumpets. ¹⁵ Then the men of Judah gave a shout; as they shouted, it came about that God struck Jeroboam and all Israel before Abijah and Judah.

translationNotes

an ambush behind them

“a surprise attack behind the army of Judah”

the ambush was behind them

“the soldiers who were to attack them by surprise were behind them”

When Judah looked back

Here “Judah” represents the soldiers in the army of Judah. AT: “When the soldiers of Judah looked back” (See: [Metonymy](#))

behold

The word “behold” here shows that the soldiers were surprised by what they saw.

the fighting was both in front of them and behind them

The word “fighting” can be translated as a verb. AT: “the army of Israel was fighting them from the front and from the back” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

God struck Jeroboam and all Israel before Abijah and Judah

God enabling the army of Judah to defeat Jeroboam and the army of Israel is spoken of as if God struck Jeroboam and Israel. AT: “God enabled Abijah and the army of Judah to defeat Jeroboam and all Israel” (See: [Metaphor](#))

all Israel

Here the word “Israel” refers to the army. AT: “the entire army of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [Jeroboam](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [Abijah](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 13:16-18

UDB:

¹⁶ The soldiers of Israel fled from the soldiers of Judah, and God enabled the army of Judah to defeat them. ¹⁷ Abijah and his troops struck the capable soldiers of Israel and killed 500,000 of them, the best soldiers there were in Israel.

¹⁸ So the soldiers of Israel were defeated, and the soldiers of Judah won the battle because they trusted in Yahweh, the God to whom their ancestors belonged.

ULB:

¹⁶ The people of Israel fled before Judah, and God gave them into the hand of Judah. ¹⁷ Abijah and his army killed them with great slaughter; 500,000 chosen men of Israel fell dead. ¹⁸ In this way, the people of Israel were subdued at that time; the people of Judah won because they relied on Yahweh, the God of their ancestors.

translationNotes

fled before Judah

Here the word “Judah” represents the army of Judah. AT: “fled before the army of Judah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

God gave them into the hand of Judah

Here the word “hand” represents power. God enabling the army of Judah to defeat the army of Israel is spoken of as if God had put the army of Israel in the hand of the army of Judah. AT: “God enabled Judah to defeat the people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

killed them with great slaughter

This idiom means that they thoroughly defeated them, or that they killed very many of the soldiers. AT: “thoroughly defeated them” or “slaughtered many of their soldiers” (See: [Idiom](#))

500,000 chosen men

“five hundred thousand chosen men.” The phrase “chosen men” is an idiom that refers to elite soldiers who were skilled in battle. AT: “500,000 of the best soldiers” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Idiom](#))

the people of Israel were subdued

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the army of Judah subdued the people of Israel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- slaughter, slaughters, slaughtered, slaughtering
- chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 13:19-22

UDB:

¹⁹ Abijah's army pursued the army of Jeroboam, and they captured from the people of Israel the cities of Bethel, Jeshanah, and Ephron, and the surrounding villages. ²⁰ During the remaining time that Abijah ruled, Jeroboam did not become powerful again. Then Yahweh caused him to become very ill, and he died.

²¹ But Abijah became more powerful. He married fourteen wives and had twenty-two sons and sixteen daughters.

²² An account of the other things that Abijah did while he was the was king, including what he said and what he did, is in the scroll written by the prophet Iddo.

ULB:

¹⁹ Abijah pursued Jeroboam; he took cities from him: Bethel with its villages, Jeshanah with its villages, and Ephron with its villages. ²⁰ Jeroboam never recovered power again during the days of Abijah; Yahweh struck him, and he died. ²¹ But Abijah became powerful; he took fourteen wives for himself and became the father of twenty-two sons and sixteen daughters. ²² The rest of Abijah's deeds, his behavior, and words are written in the history of the prophet Iddo.

translationNotes

pursued

“chased after”

Jeshanah ... Ephron

These are the names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Yahweh struck him, and he died

Yahweh causing Jeroboam to die is spoken of as if Yahweh struck Jeroboam. It is possible that this refers to Yahweh causing Jeroboam to become ill. AT: “Yahweh caused Jeroboam to die” or “Yahweh caused Jeroboam to become ill, and he died” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

he took fourteen wives for himself

The idiom “took ... wives” means that he married. AT: “he married fourteen women” (See: [Idiom](#))

fourteen wives ... twenty-two sons and sixteen daughters

“14 wives ... 22 sons and 16 daughters” (See: [Numbers](#))

his behavior, and words

“his behavior, and his sayings” or “his behavior, and the things that he said”

are written in the history of the prophet Iddo

This can be stated in active form. AT: “are in the history that the prophet Iddo wrote” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [Bethel](#)
- [power, powers](#)
- [die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 14 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins the section about King Asa. (2 Chronicles 14-16)

Special concepts in this chapter

Trust

Trusting in Yahweh, Asa was able to defeat million men of the army of Nubia. Trust in Yahweh is more important than military might. (See: [trust](#), [trusts](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 14:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 14:1-4**UDB:**

¹ When Abijah died, he was buried in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David. His son Asa became the king. While Asa was ruling, there was peace in Judah for ten years.

² Asa did things that Yahweh his God considers to be right and good. ³ His workers got rid of the altars to worship foreign gods that were at the hilltops where the idols were worshiped. They smashed the stone pillars and cut down the poles that were there for the goddess Asherah. ⁴ Asa commanded the people of Judah to worship only Yahweh, the God whom their ancestors worshiped, and to seek his will and obey his commands.

ULB:

¹ Abijah slept with his ancestors, and they buried him in the city of David. Asa, his son, became king in his place. In his days the land was quiet ten years. ² Asa did what was good and right in the eyes of Yahweh his God, ³ for he took away the foreign altars and the high places. He broke down the stone pillars and cut down the Asherah poles. ⁴ He commanded Judah to seek Yahweh, the God of their ancestors, and to carry out the law and the commandments.

translationNotes**Abijah slept with his ancestors**

Abijah dying is spoken of as if he had fallen asleep. AT: “Abijah died” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

they buried him

“people buried him”

became king in his place

The phrase “in his place” is a metaphor meaning “instead of him.” AT: “became king instead of Abijah” (See: [Metaphor](#))

In his days

“During his reign”

the land was quiet ten years

There being no war is spoken of as if the land were quiet. AT: “there was peace in the land for ten years” or “there was no war in the land for ten years” (See: [Metaphor](#))

what was good and right in the eyes of Yahweh his God

The word “eyes” here represents seeing, and seeing represents judgment. Yahweh saw and approved of Asa’s actions. AT: “what Yahweh judged to be good and right” or “what Yahweh considered to be good and right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

He broke down the stone pillars and cut down the Asherah poles

Since Asa was king, he may have told his officials to do these things. AT: “He had his people break down the stone pillars and cut down the Asherah poles” (See: [Metonymy](#))

He commanded Judah to seek Yahweh

Here the word “Judah” represents the people of Judah. Worshiping Yahweh is spoken of as if it were seeking him. AT: “He commanded the people of Judah to worship Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [Abijah](#)
- [bury, buries, buried, burying, burial](#)
- [city of David](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [altar, altars](#)
- [high place, high places](#)
- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [column, columns, pillar, pillars](#)
- [Asherah, Asherah pole, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth, Ashtoreths](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 14:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ His workers destroyed all the places where idols were worshiped on the hilltops, and the altars for burning incense to idols, in every town in Judah. As a result, there was peace while Asa ruled the kingdom of Judah. ⁶ His workers built cities and constructed walls around them. No army attacked Judah during those years, because Yahweh enabled them to have peace.

ULB:

⁵ Also he took away the high places and the incense altars from all the cities of Judah. The kingdom had rest under him. ⁶ He built fortified cities in Judah, for the land was quiet, and he had no war in those years, because Yahweh had given him peace.

translationNotes**he took away the high places ... He built fortified cities**

Since Asa was king, he may have told his officials to do these things. AT: “he had his people take away the high places ... He had his workers build fortified cities” (See: [Metonymy](#))

The kingdom had rest under him

There being no war is spoken of as if the kingdom had rest. AT: “The kingdom had peace under him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

under him

“under his reign.” A king ruling a kingdom is spoken of as if the king is over the kingdom or the kingdom is under the king. AT: “during his reign” or “while he was king” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the land was quiet

There being no war is spoken of as if the land were quiet. AT: “there was peace in the land” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [high place, high places](#)
- [incense, incenses](#)
- [altar, altars](#)
- [Judah](#)

- [kingdom, kingdoms](#)
- [peace, peaceful, peacefully, peaceable, peacemakers](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 14:7-8

UDB:

⁷ Asa said to the people of Judah, “We should protect these towns by building walls around them, with watchtowers and gates that have bars. This country still belongs to us because we have requested Yahweh our God to help us. We requested him for his help, and he has given us peace in our entire country.” So they built buildings and succeeded in what they did.

⁸ Asa had an army of 300,000 men from Judah. They all carried large shields and spears. He also had 280,000 men from the tribe of Benjamin in his army. They also carried shields, and also bows and arrows. They were all brave soldiers.

ULB:

⁷ For Asa said to Judah, “Let us build these cities and make walls around them, and towers, gates, and bars; the land is still ours because we have sought Yahweh our God. We have sought him, and he has given us peace on every side.” So they built and succeeded. ⁸ Asa had an army that carried shields and spears; from Judah he had 300,000 men, and from Benjamin, 280,000 men who carried shields and drew bows. All of these were mighty men.

translationNotes

Asa said to Judah

Here “Judah” refers to the people of Judah. AT: “Asa said to the people of Judah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

peace on every side

“peace all around.” This means that Judah was at peace with all of the surrounding nations.

So they built

The ellipsis may be supplied from the context. AT: “So they built the cities” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

300,000 men ... 280,000 men

“three hundred thousand men ... two hundred and eighty thousand men” (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [Asa](#)
- [watchtower, watchtowers, tower](#)
- [gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways](#)

- [seek, seeks, seeking, sought](#)
- [shield, shields, shielded](#)
- [spear, spears, spearmen](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites](#)
- [bow and arrow, bows and arrows](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 14:9-11

UDB:

⁹ Zerah, a man from Ethiopia, attacked Judah with an army of one million men and three hundred chariots. He came to Mareshah, southwest of Jerusalem. ¹⁰ Asa went with his army to fight against them, and both armies took their positions in the Zephathah Valley.

¹¹ Then Asa cried out to Yahweh his God, saying, “Yahweh, there is no one like you who can help those who have very little power to resist large armies. We have come to fight against this huge army. Yahweh, you are our God; do not allow anyone to defeat you.”

ULB:

⁹ Zerah the Cushite came against them with an army of one million soldiers and three hundred chariots; he came to Mareshah. ¹⁰ Then Asa went out to meet him, and they set the battle lines in order in the Valley of Zephathah at Mareshah. ¹¹ Asa cried to Yahweh, his God, and said, “Yahweh, there is no one but you to help one who has no strength when he is facing many. Help us, Yahweh our God, for we rely on you, and in your name we have come against this vast number. Yahweh, you are our God; do not let man defeat you.”

translationNotes

Zerah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

one million soldiers and three hundred chariots

“1,000,000 soldiers and 300 chariots” (See: [Numbers](#))

Mareshah ... the Valley of Zephathah

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Asa went out to meet him

Here “Asa” represents both the king and the army that he led into battle. It is implicit that he went out to meet him in battle. AT: “Asa led his army out to meet him in battle” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

in your name

Here “name” represents Yahweh’s authority. AT: “on your behalf” or “by your authority” (See: [Metonymy](#))

do not let man defeat you

Since the army of Judah is fighting in Yahweh's name, Asa speaks of Zerah defeating Judah as if Zerah were to defeat Yahweh himself. AT: "do not let man defeat your people" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [Ethiopia, Ethiopian](#)
- [chariot, chariots, charioteers](#)
- [name, names, named](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 14:12-13**UDB:**

¹² Then Yahweh enabled Asa and the army of Judah to defeat the army from Ethiopia. They fled, ¹³ and Asa and his army pursued them to the southwest as far as Gerar. A huge number of the soldiers from Ethiopia were killed, with the result that those who were not killed were unable to fight anymore. They were completely defeated by Yahweh and his army, and the men of Judah carried away a great amount of their possessions.

ULB:

¹² So Yahweh struck the Cushites before Asa and Judah; the Cushites fled. ¹³ Asa and the soldiers with him pursued them to Gerar. So many Cushites fell that they could not recover, for they were completely destroyed before Yahweh and his army. The army carried away very much plunder.

translationNotes**Yahweh struck the Cushites before Asa and Judah**

God enabling the army of Judah to defeat the Cushites is spoken of as if God struck the Cushites. AT: "God enabled Asa and the army of Judah to defeat the Cushites" (See: [Metaphor](#))

So many Cushites fell that they could not recover

Possible meanings are 1) "So many Cushites died that the army could not recover" or 2) "So many Cushites died that there were none who remained alive."

So many Cushites fell

Here to "fall" is a euphemism for dying in battle. AT: "So many Cushites died" (See: [Euphemism](#))

for they were completely destroyed before Yahweh and his army

This can be stated in active form. AT: "for Yahweh's army completely destroyed them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [Gerar](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 14:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ The men of Judah were able to destroy the villages near to the city of Gerar because Yahweh had caused the people there to become terrified and unable to fight. The army of Judah took away all the valuable things from those villages. ¹⁵ They also attacked the places where the local people who took care of domestic animals had set up their tents, and they took away large flocks and herds of sheep and goats and camels. Then they returned to Jerusalem.

ULB:

¹⁴ The army destroyed all the villages around Gerar, for terror of Yahweh had come on the inhabitants. The army plundered all the villages, and there was much booty in them. ¹⁵ The army also destroyed the tent settlements of the shepherding nomads; they carried away sheep in abundance, as well as camels, and then they returned to Jerusalem.

translationNotes

for terror of Yahweh had come on the inhabitants

The inhabitants of the villages being terrified is spoken of as if terror were an object that came upon them. Possible meanings are 1) “terror of Yahweh” refers to terror from Yahweh. AT: “for Yahweh had caused the inhabitants to be terrified” or 2) “terror of Yahweh” refers to being terrified of Yahweh. AT: “for the inhabitants were terrified of Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [terror, terrorize, terrorized, terrors, terrify, terrified, terrifying](#)
- [shepherd, shepherds, shepherded, shepherding](#)
- [ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)
- [camel, camels](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 15 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The section about King Asa continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Promise

The people promise to serve the Lord. This is something they will ultimately fail to do. (See: [promise, promises, promised](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Idiom

The phrase “seek Yahweh” means “wanting to believe and obey Yahweh.” This is a common way to describe proper worship of Yahweh. It is possible the meaning of this idiom is about a desire to properly worship. (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 15:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 15:1-2

UDB:

¹ The Spirit of God came on Azariah son of Oded. ² Azariah went to talk with Asa and said to him, "Asa and all you men of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin, listen to me. Yahweh is with you whenever you are with him. If you request him to help you, he will help you, but if you abandon him, he will abandon you."

ULB:

¹ The Spirit of God came on Azariah son of Oded. ² He went out to meet Asa and said to him, "Listen to me, Asa, and all Judah and Benjamin: Yahweh is with you, while you are with him. If you seek him, he will be found by you; but if you forsake him, he will forsake you."

translationNotes

The Spirit of God came on Azariah

This is an idiom which means that the spirit of God influenced Azariah and enabled him to prophesy. AT: "The Spirit of God gave Azariah the ability to prophesy" (See: [Idiom](#))

Oded

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

he will be found by you

This can be stated in active form. AT: "you will find him" or "he will permit you to find him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)
- [Azariah](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [seek, seeks, seeking, sought](#)
- [forsake, forsakes, forsaken, forsook](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 15:3-5

UDB:

³ For many years the Israelite people did not have the true God, and they did not have priests or God's laws. ⁴ But when they experienced trouble, they turned to Yahweh, our God, and requested him to help them. And he helped them. ⁵ At that time, people were not safe when they traveled, because all the people who lived in those countries were experiencing many difficulties.

ULB:

³ Now for a long period, Israel was without the true God, without a teaching priest, and without the law. ⁴ But when in their distress they turned to Yahweh, the God of Israel, and sought him, he was found by them. ⁵ In those times there was no peace for him who traveled away, nor for him who traveled to here; instead, great troubles were on all the inhabitants of the lands.

translationNotes

Israel was without the true God

Here "Israel" refers to the people of Israel. This refers to a time when the people of Israel did not worship the true God. AT: "The people of Israel did not worship the true God" (See: [Metonymy](#))

without a teaching priest

"without a priest who taught them"

he was found by them

This can be stated in active form. AT: "they found him" or "he permitted them to find him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

for him who traveled away, nor for him who traveled to here

This phrase is an idiom that refers to a person who travels anywhere away from home. AT: "for the person who traveled anywhere" (See: [Idiom](#))

great troubles were on all the inhabitants of the lands

The people experiencing great troubles is spoken of as if those troubles were objects that were on the people. AT: "all the inhabitants of the lands experienced great troubles" (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- Israel, Israelites
- true, truth, truths
- God
- priest, priests, priesthood
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back
- Israel, Israelites
- peace, peaceful, peacefully, peaceable, peacemakers
- trouble, troubles, troubled, troubling, troublemaker, troublesome

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 15:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ The people of various nations were crushed by armies of other nations, and people in some cities were crushed by armies from other cities, because God was allowing them to experience many difficulties. ⁷ But you people, you must be strong and do not become discouraged, because God will reward you for what you do to please him.”

ULB:

⁶ They were broken in pieces, nation against nation, and city against city, for God troubled them with all kinds of suffering. ⁷ But be strong, and do not let your hands be weak, for your work will be rewarded.”

translationNotes**They were broken in pieces, nation against nation, and city against city**

The word “they” refers to the words “nation” and “city.” Conquering one another is spoken of as if they were breaking each other into pieces. AT: “Nations and cities destroyed each other, nations fighting nations, cities fighting cities” (See: [Metaphor](#))

They were broken in pieces, nation against nation, and city against city

Here “nation” and “city” are metonyms for the people who live there. You may also supply a connecting word to clarify the relationship between these two phrases. AT: “Nations and cities destroyed each other, as the people of one nation fought against the people of another nation, and the people of one city fought against the people of another city” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Connecting Words](#))

do not let your hands be weak

Here the word “hands” represents the people who work. AT: “do not become weak as you work” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

for your work will be rewarded

This can be stated in active form. Yahweh is the implied subject. AT: “for Yahweh will reward your work” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- nation, nations
- trouble, troubles, troubled, troubling, troublemaker, troublesome
- suffer, suffers, suffered, suffering, sufferings
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- works, deeds, work, acts
- reward, rewards, rewarded, rewarding, rewarder

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 15:8-9

UDB:

⁸ Asa was encouraged when he heard what Azariah son of Oded, prophesied. Asa commanded his workers to remove all the detestable idols from everywhere in the tribes of Judah and Benjamin, and from the towns that his soldiers had captured in the hills of the tribe of Ephraim. Asa's workers repaired the altar where people offered sacrifices to Yahweh that was in front of the entrance to the temple in Jerusalem. ⁹ He gathered together all the people of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin and many people had come from the tribes of Ephraim, Manasseh, and Simeon who were living among them. He was able to do that because many people had left those tribes in Israel, when they realized that Yahweh was helping him.

ULB:

⁸ When Asa heard these words, the prophecy of Oded the prophet, he took courage and drove away the disgusting things from all the land of Judah and Benjamin, and from the cities that he had captured from the hill country of Ephraim, and he rebuilt Yahweh's altar, which was in front of the portico of Yahweh's house. ⁹ He gathered all Judah and Benjamin, and those who stayed with them—people from of Ephraim and Manasseh, and from Simeon. For they came from Israel to him in great numbers, when they saw that Yahweh his God was with him.

translationNotes

When Asa heard these words, the prophecy of Oded the prophet

“When Asa heard the words that Oded the prophet spoke” or “When Asa heard the prophecy of Oded the prophet.” The phrase “the prophecy of Oded the prophet” defines “these words.”

the prophecy of Oded the prophet

Many versions, including the UDB, make this passage read, “the prophecy of Azariah, the son of Oded the prophet.” They do this in order to make the sense agree with [2 Chronicles 15:1](#). Translators will probably want to do the same in their versions.

drove away the disgusting things

The words “the disgusting things” refers to idols. Having his people remove or destroy the idols is spoken of as if it were driving them away. AT: “got rid of the disgusting idols” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Metaphor](#))

He gathered all Judah and Benjamin

Here the word “all” is a generalization. The phrase means that David assembled people from all over Judah and Benjamin. AT: “He gathered together people from all over Judah and Benjamin” (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

For they came from Israel

“For people from of Ephraim, Manasseh, and Simeon came from Israel”

translationWords

- [word, words](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite, Ephraimites](#)
- [altar, altars](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh’s house](#)
- [Manasseh](#)
- [Simeon](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 15:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ After Asa had been ruling for almost fifteen years, in the third month of that year, those people gathered in Jerusalem. ¹¹ At that time they sacrificed to Yahweh seven hundred bulls and seven thousand sheep and goats, from the animals that they had captured when they defeated the army of Ethiopia.

ULB:

¹⁰ So they gathered together at Jerusalem in the third month, in the fifteenth year of Asa's reign. ¹¹ They sacrificed to Yahweh in that day some of the plunder that they had brought: seven hundred oxen and seven thousand sheep and goats.

translationNotes**So they gathered together**

“They” here refers to the tribes of Judah and Israel that were with Asa.

the third month

This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#))

third ... fifteenth

(See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

some of the plunder that they had brought

This refers to the plunder that they had taken from the villages around Gerar in [2 Chronicles 14:14](#).

seven hundred ... seven thousand

“700 ... 7,000” (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [year, years](#)
- [reign, reigns, reigned, reigning](#)

- [sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings](#)
- [ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)
- [goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 15:12-13

UDB:

¹² They solemnly made an agreement to worship very sincerely Yahweh, the God whom our ancestors worshiped. ¹³ They promised to execute all those who would not worship Yahweh, including those who were important and who were not important, both men and women.

ULB:

¹² They entered into a covenant to seek Yahweh, the God of their ancestors, with all their heart and with all their soul. ¹³ They agreed that whoever refused to seek Yahweh, the God of Israel, should be put to death, whether the person was small or great, whether man or woman.

translationNotes

with all their heart and with all their soul

Together, these two phrases form an idiomatic expression that refers to a person's entire being. AT: "with all their beings" or "wholeheartedly" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Doublet](#))

be put to death

This can be stated in active form. AT: "should die" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

whether the person was small or great

Possible meanings are 1) a person's importance within the community is spoken of as if the person were small or great. AT: "whether the person was important or not" or 2) a young person is spoken of as if he were small and an old person is spoken of as if he were great. AT: "whether the person was young or old" (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [covenant, covenants, new covenant](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [soul, souls](#)
- [die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 15:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ They shouted and blew trumpets and other horns while they solemnly promised to do that. ¹⁵ All the people who were living in Judah were happy to promise to do that because they had solemnly promised to do it very sincerely. They eagerly asked Yahweh to guide them, and he helped them. So he enabled them to have peace throughout their country.

ULB:

¹⁴ They swore to Yahweh with a loud voice, with shouting, and with trumpets and horns. ¹⁵ All Judah rejoiced at the oath, for they had sworn with all their heart, and they sought God with their whole desire, and he was found by them. Yahweh gave them peace all around them.

translationNotes

All Judah rejoiced

Here the word “all” is a generalization. The phrase means that people from all over Judah rejoiced. AT: “People all over Judah rejoiced” (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

with all their heart

The idiom “with all their heart” means “with complete devotion.” AT: “with complete devotion” or “wholeheartedly” (See: [Idiom](#))

he was found by them

This can be stated in active form. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 15:4](#). AT: “they found him” or “he permitted them to find him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by](#)
- [joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing](#)
- [peace, peaceful, peacefully, peaceable, peacemakers](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 15:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ King Asa's grandmother Maacah had made a disgusting pole for worshiping the goddess Asherah. So Asa commanded his workers to cut down that pole, chop it into pieces, and burn it in the Kidron Valley. He did not allow Maacah to continue to influence the people because she was the mother of the previous king. ¹⁷ Although Asa's workers did not get rid of places where people worshiped idols, and those high places remained on the hills throughout Asa's reign. But still, Asa was determined to do what pleased Yahweh all during the years that he was alive.

ULB:

¹⁶ He also removed Maacah, his grandmother, from being queen, because she had made a disgusting figure out of an Asherah pole. Asa cut down the disgusting figure, ground it to dust and burned it at the brook Kidron. ¹⁷ But the high places were not taken out of Israel. Nevertheless, Asa's heart was completely devoted all his days.

translationNotes

a disgusting figure

This phrase refers to an idol.

Asa cut down the disgusting figure, ground it ... and burned it

Since Asa was king, he may have told his officials to cut down the figure. AT: "Asa made his workers cut down the disgusting figure, grind it ... and burn it" (See: [Metonymy](#))

But the high places were not taken out of Israel

This can be stated in active form. AT: "But Asa did not command the people to take the high places out of Israel" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Asa's heart was completely devoted

The heart represents the person. AT: "Asa was completely devoted" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

all his days

This refers to the whole period of time that Asa lived. AT: "the whole time that he lived" or "throughout his whole life" (See: [Idiom](#))

translationWords

- [queen, queens](#)
- [Asherah, Asherah pole, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth, Ashtoreths](#)
- [high place, high places](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 15:18-19

UDB:

¹⁸ He ordered his workers to bring into God's temple all the silver and gold and other valuable items that he and his father had dedicated to God.

¹⁹ There were no more wars in Judah until Asa had been ruling Judah almost thirty-five years.

ULB:

¹⁸ He brought into the house of God the silver and gold and the utensils that he and his father had dedicated for that purpose. ¹⁹ There was no more war until the thirty-fifth year of Asa's reign.

translationNotes

the house of God

Here the word "house" represents the temple. AT: "the temple of God" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the thirty-fifth year

"year 35" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [silver](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [reign, reigns, reigned, reigning](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 16 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The section about King Asa is completed in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Asa did not trust Yahweh

When Baasha was building Ramah to blockade him, Asa asked the king of Aram to help him instead of trusting God to help him. This was sinful because he disobeyed Yahweh. (See: [trust](#), [trusts](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#) and [sin](#), [sins](#), [sinned](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 16:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 16:1**UDB:**

¹ When Asa had been ruling Judah for almost thirty-six years, King Baasha of Israel went with his army to attack Judah. They captured the town of Ramah north of Jerusalem and started to build a wall around it, in order to prevent any people from entering or leaving the area in Judah that King Asa ruled.

ULB:

¹ In the thirty-sixth year of Asa's reign, Baasha, king of Israel, acted aggressively against Judah and built up Ramah, so that he might not allow anyone to leave or enter into the land of Asa, king of Judah.

translationNotes**the thirty-sixth year**

“year 36” (See: [Numbers](#))

built up Ramah

It is implied that the army of Baasha first captured Ramah. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. AT: “captured and fortified Ramah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

so that he might not allow anyone to

“so that no one could”

translationWords

- [Asa](#)
- [reign, reigns, reigned, reigning](#)
- [Baasha](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [Ramah](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 16:2-3

UDB:

² So Asa told his workers to take all the silver and gold that was in the storerooms of the temple and in his own palace, and take and give it to Ben Hadad, the king of Aram, who was ruling in Damascus. He sent him a message, saying, ³ “I want there to be a peace treaty between me and you, like there was between my father and your father. Look, I am sending you much silver and gold. So please cancel the treaty that you have made with Baasha, the king of Israel, in order that he will take his soldiers away from attacking mine, because he will be afraid of your army.”

ULB:

² Then Asa brought the silver and gold out of the storerooms in the house of Yahweh and of the king’s house, and sent it to Ben Hadad king of Aram, who lived in Damascus. He said, ³ “Let there be a covenant between me and you, as there was between my father and your father. Look, I have sent to you silver and gold. Break your covenant with Baasha, king of Israel, so that he may leave me alone.”

translationNotes

Then Asa brought the silver ... of the king’s house, and sent it

Asa would have had his workers gather the gold and silver for him. AT: “Then Asa told his workers to take the silver ... of the king’s house, and to take it” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Ben Hadad

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

He said

This means he spoke by means of his servants. Asa told his servants what to say to Ben Hadad and they did. The meaning of this can be made clear. AT: “Asa told his servants to say to Ben Hadad” or “Through his servants, Asa said to Ben Hadad” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Let there be a covenant between me and you ... between my father and your father

A covenant being between two people represents those two people having a covenant with each other. AT: “Let us have a covenant with each other ... with my father and your father” or “Let us make a peace treaty ... with my father and your father” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Look

This adds emphasis to what follows and validates what was just said. AT: “As proof that I want a treaty with you”

Break your covenant with Baasha, king of Israel

Breaking a covenant represents canceling it and not doing what one has promised to do. AT: “Cancel your covenant with Baasha king of Israel” or “Do not be loyal to Baasha king of Israel as you promised in your covenant with him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Break your covenant with Baasha, king of Israel

Asa wanted Ben Hadad to attack Israel. Ben Hadad could only do that if he broke his covenant with the king of Israel. The meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: “Break your covenant with Baasha, king of Israel, and attack Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

leave me alone

This is an idiom. Here Asa speaks of himself to represent himself along with his army. AT: “not attack me” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

translationWords

- [silver](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [storehouse, storehouses](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh’s house](#)
- [Aram, Aramean, Arameans, Aramaic](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 16:4-6**UDB:**

⁴ Ben Hadad agreed to do what King Asa suggested. He sent the commanders of his armies with their soldiers to attack some of the towns in Israel. They captured Ijon, Dan, Abel Maim, and all the cities in the tribe of Naphtali where supplies were kept. ⁵ When Baasha heard about that, he commanded his troops to stop fortifying Ramah. ⁶ Then King Asa gathered all the men of Judah, and they took away from Ramah all the stones and timber that Baasha's men had been using to build the wall around that town. They took those materials to the cities of Geba and Mizpah north of Jerusalem and built walls around them.

ULB:

⁴ Ben Hadad listened to King Asa and sent the commanders of his armies against the cities of Israel. They attacked Ijon, Dan, Abel Maim, and all the storage cities of Naphtali. ⁵ It came about that when Baasha heard this, he stopped building up Ramah, and let his work cease. ⁶ Then Asa the king took all Judah with him. They carried away the stones and timbers of Ramah with which Baasha had been building up the city. Then King Asa used that building material to build up Geba and Mizpah.

translationNotes**sent the commanders of his armies against the cities**

Here Asa's armies are represented by their commanders. AT: "sent his armies to attack the cities" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Ijon, Dan, Abel Maim

These are the names of cities in Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

he stopped building up Ramah, and let his work cease

Here Asa represents himself and his army. "his work" refers to other work that his workers were doing in Ramah. AT: "he commanded his army to stop fortifying Ramah and doing other work there" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

took all Judah

This refers to all the men who live in Judah. AT: "took all the men of Judah" (See: [Metonymy](#))

timbers

Timbers are large pieces of wood used to build houses or walls.

Baasha had been

Here “Baasha” refers to his workers. AT: “Baasha’s workers had been” (See: [Metonymy](#))

building up ... to build up

“fortifying ... to fortify”

Then King Asa used

Here “King Asa” represents his workers. AT: “Then King Asa had his workers use” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Geba

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- [send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out](#)
- [commander, commanders](#)
- [Dan](#)
- [Naphtali](#)
- [Ramah](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [Mizpah](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 16:7-8

UDB:

⁷ At that time the prophet Hanani went to King Asa and said to him, "Because you relied on the king of Aram and not on Yahweh our God, the army of the king of Aram has escaped from you. ⁸ Remember that the huge armies from Ethiopia were very powerful. But when you relied on Yahweh, he enabled your army to defeat them.

ULB:

⁷ At that time Hanani the seer went to Asa, king of Judah, and said to him, "Because you have relied on the king of Aram, and have not relied on Yahweh your God, the army of the king of Aram has escaped out of your hand. ⁸ Were not the Cushites and the Libyans a huge army, with very many chariots and horsemen? Yet, because you relied on Yahweh, he gave you victory over them.

translationNotes

Hanani

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

out of your hand

Here the king's "hand" refers to his control. This means that his army was unable to conquer the king of Aram's army. AT: "from you" or "from your control" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Were not the Cushites and the Libyans a huge army, with very many chariots and horsemen?

Hanani uses this rhetorical question to remind Asa of a previous victory. This can be written as a statement. AT: "The Cushites and the Libyans were a huge army, with very many chariots and horsemen." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Libyans

These are people from Libya. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

he gave you victory

This means that king Asa's army was able to defeat the opposing army. AT: "he gave your army victory" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

translationWords

- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- Yahweh
- God
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- Ethiopia, Ethiopian
- chariot, chariots, charioteers
- horseman, horsemen

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 16:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ That happened because Yahweh sees what is happening all over the earth, and he strengthens those who completely trust him. You have done a very foolish thing, so from now on other armies will be fighting your army.”

¹⁰ Asa was very angry with the prophet because of what the prophet had said. So he commanded his officials to put Hanani in prison. At that same time, he started to treat some of his people very cruelly.

ULB:

⁹ For the eyes of Yahweh run everywhere throughout the whole earth, so that he might show himself strong on behalf of those whose hearts are perfect toward him. But you have acted foolishly in this matter. From now on, you will have war.” ¹⁰ Then Asa was angry with the seer; he put him into prison, for he was angry with him over this matter. At the same time, Asa oppressed some of the people.

translationNotes**the eyes of Yahweh run everywhere throughout the whole earth**

This speaks of Yahweh seeing everything that happens everywhere as if his eyes were a person that ran all over the earth. AT: “Yahweh sees what is happening all over the earth” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Personification](#))

so that he might show himself strong on behalf of

This means that Yahweh shows people that he is strong by protecting his people. AT: “and Yahweh protects with his strength” or “so that he may show his strength by protecting” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

those whose hearts are perfect toward him

This speaks of a people’s will and desires as their “hearts.” To be “perfect toward” something means to be completely devoted to that person or thing. AT: “those who are completely committed to following him” or “those who are completely devoted to following him” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

translationWords

- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)

- perfect, perfected, perfecter, perfection, perfectly
- fool, fools, foolish, folly
- prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons, imprison, imprisons, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonments
- anger, angered, angry
- oppress, oppresses, oppressed, oppressing, oppression, oppressive, oppressor, oppressors
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 16:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ All the things that Asa did while he was ruling, from the time he started to rule until he died, are written in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel. ¹² When Asa had been ruling for almost thirty-nine years, he was afflicted with a disease in his feet. The disease was very severe, but in spite of that, he did not request help from Yahweh. Instead he sought help only from doctors.

ULB:

¹¹ Behold, the deeds of Asa, from first to last, behold, they are written in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel. ¹² In the thirty-ninth year of his reign, Asa was afflicted with a disease in his feet. Though his disease was very severe, he did not seek help from Yahweh, but only from the physicians.

translationNotes

from first to last

This is an idiom. AT: “from the first thing that he did to the last thing that he did” or “everything he did” (See: [Idiom](#))

the book of the kings of Judah and Israel

This is a book that no longer exists.

the thirty-ninth year

“year 39” (See: [Numbers](#))

Asa was afflicted with a disease in his feet

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Asa had a disease in his feet” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- works, deeds, work, acts
- written
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- Judah
- Israel, Israelites
- Yahweh

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 16:13-14

UDB:

¹³ Asa had been ruling for about forty-one years when he died. ¹⁴ People buried him in the tomb that his workers had made for him in the part of Jerusalem called “the city of David.” They laid his corpse on a bed covered with spices and various perfumes that had been mixed together. They also lit a huge fire to honor him.

ULB:

¹³ So Asa slept with his ancestors, dying in the forty-first year of his reign. ¹⁴ They buried him in his own tomb, which he had dug out for himself in the city of David. They laid him on a bier that was filled with sweet odors and various kinds of spices prepared by skilled perfumers. Then they made a very great fire in his honor.

translationNotes

Asa slept with his ancestors, dying in

The phrase “slept with his ancestors” is a euphemism for dying. AT: “Asa died during” (See: [Euphemism](#))

in the forty-first year of his reign

“in year 41 of his reign” or “when he reigned almost 41 years” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Numbers](#))

which he had dug out for himself

Asa would have had his workers prepare his tomb for him. AT: “which his workers had dug out for him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

bier

A bier is a table on which a dead body is placed at a funeral.

sweet odors and various kinds of spices prepared by skilled perfumers

Putting plants that smell good with the dead body was one of the burial customs of the people of Israel. AT: “sweet smelling plants prepared by people skilled in this custom” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

prepared by skilled perfumers

This can be stated in active form. AT: “that skilled perfumers had prepared” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- bury, buries, buried, burying, burial
- grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs, burial place
- city of David
- fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots
- honor, honors

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 17 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins the story of King Jehoshaphat.

Special concepts in this chapter

Trust in Yahweh

Jehoshaphat trusted and obeyed God. Because of this, God made him strong. (See: [trust](#), [trusts](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 17:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 17:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Then Asa's son Jehoshaphat became the king of Judah, and he enabled his army to become very strong, with the result that they could resist attacks from the army of Israel. ² He put soldiers in all the cities in Judah around which they had built walls, and he put soldiers in other places in Judah and in the towns in the tribe of Ephraim that soldiers of his father Asa had captured.

ULB:

¹ Jehoshaphat son of Asa became king in his place. Jehoshaphat strengthened himself against Israel. ² He placed forces in all the fortified cities of Judah, and set garrisons in the land of Judah and in the cities of Ephraim, which Asa his father had captured.

translationNotes**in his place**

“after his father”

strengthened himself against Israel

Jehoshaphat prepared the army for battle. AT: “prepared the army to be able to battle Israel” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

He placed forces

“He places soldiers”

garrisons

“military encampments.” These are set up for the people's protection.

translationWords

- Jehoshaphat
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- kingdom of Israel
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Ephraim, Ephraimite, Ephraimites
- Asa

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 17:3-4

UDB:

³ Yahweh helped Jehoshaphat because in his earlier years, when he first began his rule, he did the things that pleased Yahweh just as his ancestor King David had done. Jehoshaphat did not worship Baal. ⁴ Instead, he sought advice from the God whom his father had worshiped, and he obeyed God's commands and he did not do the evil things that the kings of Israel kept doing.

ULB:

³ Yahweh was with Jehoshaphat because he walked in the first ways of his father David, and did not seek the Baals. ^[1] ⁴ Instead, he relied on the God of his father, and walked in his commandments, not after the behavior of Israel.

17:3 ^[1]Some ancient copies do not have *David* , and some modern versions leave it out.

translationNotes

Yahweh was with Jehoshaphat

Here “was with” is an idiom. AT: “God supported him” or “God helped him” (See: [Idiom](#))

walked in the first ways of his father

Here the way a person lives and conducts himself is spoken of as if it were walking. For most of David's life he lived righteously and followed Yahweh closely. AT: “lived in the first ways of his father David” or “lived righteously as has father David had done in his earlier years” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

did not seek the Baals

This means that he did not worship the Baal idols in order to seek help from them. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

walked in

The word “walked” is used here as an idiom. AT: “followed” (See: [Idiom](#))

not after the behavior of Israel

“and did not behave in the ways of the people of Israel.” This refers to how most of the people of Israel did not follow Yahweh. AT: “and did not follow the evil practices that were common in Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [walk, walks, walked, walking](#)
- [David](#)
- [Baal](#)
- [God](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 17:5-6

UDB:

⁵ Yahweh enabled him to completely control his kingdom. All the people of Judah brought gifts to him, with the result that he became very rich and was greatly honored. ⁶ He was completely devoted to doing what pleased Yahweh. His workers got rid of the places on hilltops where idols were worshiped and the places where poles were set up and used to worship the goddess Asherah all throughout Judah.

ULB:

⁵ So Yahweh established the rule in his hand; all Judah brought tribute to Jehoshaphat. He had riches and honor in abundance. ⁶ His heart was committed to Yahweh's ways. He also removed the high places and the Asherah poles from Judah.

translationNotes

Yahweh established the rule in his hand

The phrase "his hand" represents Jehoshaphat's control. AT: "Yahweh enabled him to completely control his kingdom" (See: [Metonymy](#))

honor in abundance

The word "honor" may be expressed as a verb. AT: "was greatly honored" or "the people greatly honored him" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

His heart

Here the king is represented by his "heart" to emphasize his will and desires. AT: "He" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

translationWords

- rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- tribute
- honor, honors
- heart, hearts
- high place, high places
- Asherah, Asherah pole, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth, Ashtoreths

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 17:7-9

UDB:

⁷ When he had been ruling Judah for almost three years, he sent some of his officials—Ben-Hail, Obadiah, Zechariah, Nethanel, and Micaiah—to teach the people in various cities in Judah. ⁸ With them he sent several descendants of Levi—Shemaiah, Nethaniah, Zebadiah, Asahel, Shemiramoth, Jehonathan, Adonijah, Tobijah, and Tob-Adonijah, along with two priests, Elishama and Jehoram. ⁹ They took with them a scroll on which was written the laws of Yahweh and they taught them to the people in all the towns throughout Judah.

ULB:

⁷ In the third year of his reign he sent his officials Ben-Hail, Obadiah, Zechariah, Nethanel, and Micaiah, to teach in the cities of Judah. ⁸ With them were Levites: Shemaiah, Nethaniah, Zebadiah, Asahel, Shemiramoth, Jehonathan, Adonijah, Tobijah, and Tob-Adonijah; and with them were the priests Elishama and Jehoram. ⁹ They taught in Judah, having the book of the law of Yahweh with them. They went about throughout all the cities of Judah and taught among the people.

translationNotes

the third

“year 3” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Ben-Hail, Obadiah, Zechariah, Nethanel, and Micaiah ... Shemaiah, Nethaniah, Zebadiah, Asahel, Shemiramoth, Jehonathan, Adonijah, Tobijah, and Tob-Adonijah ... Elishama and Jehoram

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- year, years
- reign, reigns, reigned, reigning
- send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- priest, priests, priesthood
- law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)

- [2 Chronicles 17 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 17:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ The people in all the kingdoms surrounding Judah became very afraid of what Yahweh might do to punish them if they fought against Judah, so they did not try to fight Jehoshaphat's army. ¹¹ Some people from Philistia brought gifts to Jehoshaphat, and they also brought to him the silver that he demanded that they pay to him. Some Arabs brought to him 7,700 rams and 7,700 goats.

ULB:

¹⁰ Terror of Yahweh fell on all the kingdoms of the lands that were around Judah, so that they made no war against Jehoshaphat. ¹¹ Some of the Philistines brought Jehoshaphat presents, and silver as tribute. Arabians also brought him flocks, 7,700 rams, and 7,700 goats.

translationNotes

Terror of Yahweh fell on all the kingdoms of the lands

The word “terror” can be expressed with the adjective “afraid.” Also, this speaks of the people becoming afraid as if the terror were something that fell upon them. AT: “The people in all the kingdoms surrounding Judah became very afraid of what Yahweh might do to punish them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Metaphor](#))

against Jehoshaphat

Here Jehoshaphat represents his army. AT: “against Jehoshaphat’s army” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

7,700 rams, and 7,700 goats

The number can also be written as seven thousand seven hundred. This is a description of the flocks that the Arabians brought Jehoshaphat. (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [Philistines](#)
- [silver](#)
- [tribute](#)
- [Arabia, Arabian, Arabians](#)
- [flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds](#)
- [ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)
- [goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 17:12-13

UDB:

¹² Jehoshaphat continued to become more powerful. His workers built forts and places to store supplies in various towns in Judah. ¹³ Then they put large amounts of supplies in those storehouses. Jehoshaphat also placed in Jerusalem soldiers who were experienced.

ULB:

¹² Jehoshaphat became very powerful. He built fortresses and store cities in Judah. ¹³ He had many supplies in the cities of Judah, and soldiers—strong, mighty men—in Jerusalem.

translationNotes

He built fortresses and store cities

Jehoshaphat did not build these things himself, rather he commanded his workers to build them. AT: “His workers built fortresses and store cities” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [power, powers](#)
- [stronghold, strongholds, fortifications, fortified, fortress, fortresses](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 17:14-16**UDB:**

¹⁴ The leaders and numbers from each tribe were as follows:

From the tribe of Judah, Adnah was the leader of the soldiers, and he commanded 300,000 soldiers.

¹⁵ His assistant was Jehohanan, who commanded 280,000 soldiers.

¹⁶ Next was Zicri's son Amasiah, who volunteered to serve Yahweh in this way; he commanded 200,000 courageous soldiers.

ULB:

¹⁴ These were their divisions listed by the name of their fathers' houses: From Judah, the commanders of thousands; Adnah the commander, and with him 300,000 fighting men; ¹⁵ next to him Jehohanan the commander, and with him 280,000 men; ¹⁶ next to him Amasiah son of Zichri, who willingly offered to serve Yahweh; and with him 200,000 fighting men.

translationNotes**These were their divisions listed by the name of their fathers' houses**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "The divisions by the name of their fathers' houses were as follows:" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the commanders of thousands

The phrase "commander of thousands" is probably an official title for a military officer. Possible meanings are 1) the word "thousands" represent the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders led. AT: "the commanders of 1,000 soldiers" or 2) the word translated as "thousands" does not represent an exact number, but is the name of a large military division. AT: "the commanders of large military divisions" (See: [Numbers](#))

Adnah ... Jehohanan ... Amasiah son of Zichri

(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

300,000 ... 280,000 ... 200,000

"three hundred thousand ... two hundred and eighty thousand ... two hundred thousand" (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather
- house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers
- commander, commanders
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- Yahweh

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 17:17-19**UDB:**

¹⁷ From the tribe of Benjamin, Eliada, who was a brave soldier, was the leader of the soldiers; he commanded 200,000 men who had bows, arrows, and shields.

¹⁸ Next was Jehozabad, who commanded 180,000 men who had weapons for fighting battles.

¹⁹ Those were the soldiers who served the king in Jerusalem, in addition to the men whom the king had placed in the other cities in Judah that had walls around them.

ULB:

¹⁷ From Benjamin: Eliada a powerful man of courage, and with him 200,000 armed with bows and shields; ¹⁸ next to him Jehozabad, and with him 180,000 ready prepared for war. ¹⁹ These were those who served the king, besides those whom the king put in the fortified cities throughout all Judah.

translationNotes**Eliada ... Jehozabad**

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

200,000 ... 180,000

“two hundred thousand ... one hundred and eighty thousand.” Both of these numbers refer to men. AT: “200,000 men ... 180,000 men” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

besides those

“in addition to”

translationWords

- [Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites](#)
- [bow and arrow, bows and arrows](#)
- [shield, shields, shielded](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 18 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of Jehoshaphat as king continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

The will of God is accomplished, even when people try to avoid it. Ahab tried to disguise himself to hide from the soldiers of Aram but an arrow still hit and killed him. (See: [will of God](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 18:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 18:1-3

UDB:

¹ Jehoshaphat became very wealthy and was greatly honored. But then he arranged for one of his family to marry someone from the family of King Ahab of Israel. ² Several years later, he went down from Jerusalem to Samaria to visit Ahab. Ahab welcomed him, and the people who had come with him by slaughtering many sheep and cattle for a feast. ³ Then he asked Jehoshaphat, “Will you and your army go with my army to attack the city of Ramoth in the region of Gilead?” Jehoshaphat replied, “My soldiers and I are at your orders. We will go to war when you tell us to go.”

ULB:

¹ Now Jehoshaphat had great riches and honor; he allied himself with Ahab by having one of his family marry his daughter. ² After some years, he went down to Ahab in Samaria. Ahab killed many sheep and oxen for him and the people who were with him. Ahab also persuaded him to attack Ramoth Gilead with him. ³ Ahab, king of Israel, said to Jehoshaphat, king of Judah, “Will you go with me to Ramoth Gilead?” Jehoshaphat answered him, “I am like you, and my people are like your people. We will be with you in the war.”

translationNotes

Now Jehoshaphat had great riches and honor; he allied himself with Ahab

The word “now” is used here to mark background information. This happened before Ahab went down to Samaria. (See: [Background Information](#))

he allied himself with Ahab

“he aligned himself with Ahab” or “he made himself a friend of Ahab”

Ahab killed many sheep and oxen for him and the people

This means that he had these animals slaughtered to prepare a feast for the people. Also, Ahab himself would not have prepared the animals, but rather would have commanded his workers to do it. AT: “Ahab commanded his workers to slaughter many sheep and oxen for a feast for Jehoshaphat and the people” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Will you go with me to Ramoth Gilead

Here Ahab is requesting for Jehoshaphat to join him with his army to make war against Ramoth Gilead. This can be written explicitly. Also, in this question each of the kings represents themselves accompanied by their armies. AT: “Will you and your army go with my army to attack the city of Ramoth in the region of Gilead” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

I am like you, and my people are like your people

Jehoshaphat is stating his allegiance to Ahab. AT: “I offer myself and my soldiers to you to use in any way you want” (See: [Idiom](#))

translationWords

- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [honor, honors](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)
-
- [Ramoth](#)
- [Gilead, Gileadite, Gileadites](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Judah](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 18:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ Then he added, “But we should ask Yahweh first, to find out what he wants us to do.”

⁵ So the king of Israel gathered all his four hundred prophets and asked them, “Should we go to fight the people of Ramoth, or should we not?”

They replied, “Yes, go and attack them because God will enable your army to defeat them.”

ULB:

⁴ Jehoshaphat said to the king of Israel, “Please first seek the word of Yahweh for your answer.”

⁵ Then the king of Israel gathered the prophets together, four hundred men, and said to them, “Should we go to Ramoth Gilead to battle, or should I not?” They said, “Attack, for God will give it into the hand of the king.”

translationNotes**king of Israel**

This refers to King Ahab.

four hundred men

“400 men” (See: [Numbers](#))

should I not

Here about refers to himself accompanied by his army as himself. AT: “should we not” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

will give it into the hand of the king

Here the king’s “hand” refers to his control. This means that God will enable them to defeat the people at Ramoth Gilead. AT: “will enable your army to defeat them” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [God](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 18:6-8

UDB:

⁶ But Jehoshaphat asked, “Is there no prophet of Yahweh here whom we can ask?”

⁷ The king of Israel replied, “There is still one man here, whom we can ask to find out what Yahweh wants, His name is Micaiah son of Imlah. But I hate him because he never says that anything good about me. He always predicts that bad things will happen to me.”

Jehoshaphat replied, “King Ahab, you should not say that!”

⁸ So the king of Israel told one of his officials to summon Micaiah immediately.

ULB:

⁶ But Jehoshaphat said, “Is there not here still another prophet of Yahweh with whom we might seek advice?” ⁷ The king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat, “There is still one man by whom we may seek the advice of Yahweh, Micaiah son of Imlah, but I hate him because he never prophesies good concerning me, but always evil.” But Jehoshaphat said, “The king should not say that.” ⁸ Then the king of Israel called an officer and said, “Quickly bring Micaiah son of Imlah.”

translationNotes

Micaiah son of Imlah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 18:9-11

UDB:

⁹ Now the king of Israel and the king of Judah were sitting there on thrones, wearing their royal robes. They were sitting by the gate of Samaria, and all the prophets were busy saying words of prophecy to them.

¹⁰ One of them whose name was Zedekiah son of Kenaanah, had made from iron something that resembled the horns of a bull. He proclaimed to Ahab, “This is what Yahweh says: ‘With horns like these, your army will keep attacking the army of Aram like a bull attacks another animal, until you completely destroy them.’” ¹¹ All the other prophets of Ahab agreed. They said, “Yes! If you attack Ramoth in Gilead, you will be successful, because Yahweh will enable you to defeat them.”

ULB:

⁹ Now Ahab the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat the king of Judah were sitting each on a throne, clothed in their robes, in an open place at the entrance of the gate of Samaria, and all the prophets were prophesying before them. ¹⁰ Zedekiah son of Kenaanah made himself horns of iron and said, “Yahweh says this: With these you will push the Arameans until they are consumed.” ¹¹ All the prophets prophesied the same, saying, “Attack Ramoth Gilead and win, for Yahweh has given it into the hand of the king.”

translationNotes

Kenaanah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

horns of iron

This is a reference to the horns of a bull but they made of metal.

you will push the Arameans until they are consumed

The prophet’s actions are a symbolic metaphor that illustrates the way that Ahab would defeat the Arameans. Ahab’s army will win with great strength, as a bull attacks another animal. AT: “With horns like these, your army will keep attacking the army of Aram like a bull attacks another animal, until you completely destroy them” (See: [Symbolic Action](#) and [Metaphor](#))

until they are consumed

This can be stated in active form. AT: “until you consume them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

has given it into the hand of the king

Here the king's "hand" refers to his control. This means that God will enable them to defeat the people at Ramoth Gilead. AT: "has allowed the king to capture it" or "will allow your armies to capture it" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [Ahab](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [throne, thrones, enthroned](#)
- [clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed](#)
- [gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways](#)
- [Zedekiah](#)
- [Aram, Aramean, Arameans, Aramaic](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 18:12-14

UDB:

¹² The messenger who went to summon Micaiah said to him, “Listen to me! All the other prophets are predicting the same thing. You had better do as they are doing!”

¹³ But Micaiah said, “As surely as Yahweh lives, I will tell him only what he tells me to say.”

¹⁴ When Micaiah arrived, the king of Israel asked him, “Should we go to attack Ramoth, or not?” Micaiah replied, “Sure, go! Yahweh will enable your army to defeat them!”

ULB:

¹² The messenger who went to call Micaiah spoke to him, saying, “Now look, the words of the prophets declare good things to the king with one mouth. Please let your word be like the word of one of them and say good things.” ¹³ Micaiah replied, “As Yahweh lives, it is what God says that I will say.” ¹⁴ When he came to the king, the king said to him, “Micaiah, should we go to Ramoth Gilead for battle, or not?” Micaiah answered him, “Attack and be victorious! For it will be a great victory.”

translationNotes

Micaiah

Translate this man’s name the same as in [2 Chronicles 17:7](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Now look

“Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

the words of the prophets declare good things to the king with one mouth

The prophets all saying the same thing is spoken of as if they all spoke with the same mouth. The phrase “the words of the prophets” represents the message that the prophets declare. AT: “the prophets all declare the same good things to the king” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

let your word be like the word of one of them

Here the word “them” refers to “the words of the prophets.” AT: “let what you say agree with what they have said” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

As Yahweh lives

“as surely as Yahweh is alive.” The people use this expression to show that what they say next is certainly true. This is a way of making a solemn promise. AT: “I solemnly swear” (See: [Idiom](#))

or not

The understood information may be supplied. AT: “or should we not go” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

should we go

The word “we” refers to Ahab, Jehoshaphat, and their armies but not to Micaiah. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive “We”](#))

translationWords

- messenger, messengers
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- God
- Ramoth
- Gilead, Gileadite, Gileadites

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 18:15-16

UDB:

¹⁵ But King Ahab wished to appear reverent toward Yahweh in front of Jehoshaphat. He said to Micaiah, “I keep telling you to say only what Yahweh tells you to say!”

¹⁶ Then Micaiah replied, “The truth is that in a vision I saw all the troops of Israel scattered on the mountains. They seemed to be like sheep that did not have a shepherd. And Yahweh said, ‘Their master has been killed. So tell them all to go home peacefully.’”

ULB:

¹⁵ Then the king said to him, “How many times must I require you to swear to tell me nothing but the truth in the name of Yahweh?” ¹⁶ So Micaiah said, “I saw all Israel scattered on the mountains, like sheep who have no shepherd, and Yahweh said, ‘These have no shepherd. Let every man return to his house in peace.’”

translationNotes

How many times must I require ... in the name of Yahweh?

Ahab asks this question out of frustration to rebuke Micaiah. AT: “Many times I have required ... in the name of Yahweh.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

in the name of Yahweh

Here the word “name” refers to authority. AT: “as the representative of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

I saw all Israel

Here “all Israel” refers to the army of Israel. AT: “I saw the entire army of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

like sheep who have no shepherd

The people of the army are compared to sheep that have no one to lead them because their shepherd, the king, has died. (See: [Simile](#))

These have no shepherd

Yahweh speaks of the king as if he were a shepherd. Just like a shepherd is responsible to care for and protect his sheep, the king is responsible to lead and protect his people. AT: “These people no longer have a leader” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- true, truth, truths
- Israel, Israelites
- shepherd, shepherds, shepherded, shepherding
- peace, peaceful, peacefully, peaceable, peacemakers

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 18:17-18

UDB:

¹⁷ Ahab turned to Jehoshaphat and said, "I told you that Micaiah never says anything good will happen to me! He only predicts bad things for me."

¹⁸ But Micaiah continued, saying, "Listen to what Yahweh showed to me! In a vision I saw Yahweh sitting on his throne, with all the armies of heaven standing around him, on his right side and on his left side.

ULB:

¹⁷ So the king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat, "Did I not tell you that he would not prophesy good concerning me, but only disaster?" ¹⁸ Then Micaiah said, "Therefore all of you should hear the word of Yahweh: I saw Yahweh sitting on his throne, and all the host of heaven were standing on his right hand and on his left.

translationNotes

Did I not tell you ... but only disaster?

Ahab asks this question to emphasize that he had spoken the truth about Micaiah. AT: "I told you ... but only disaster!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

on his right hand and on his left

This means that they were standing beside him on his left side and his right side. AT: "by his right side and by his left side" (See: [Idiom](#))

on his left

This implies his left hand. AT: "on his left hand" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- Jehoshaphat
- throne, thrones, enthroned
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- right hand

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 18:19

UDB:

¹⁹ And Yahweh said, ‘Who can persuade Ahab, the king of Israel, to go to fight against the people of Ramoth, in order that he may be killed there?’

Some suggested one thing, and others suggested something else.

ULB:

¹⁹ Yahweh said, ‘Who will entice Ahab, king of Israel, so that he may go up and fall at Ramoth Gilead?’ One said this and another that.

translationNotes

entice

This means to attract someone by offering something appealing.

fall at Ramoth Gilead

Ahab dying in battle is spoken of as if he will fall. AT: “die at Ramoth Gilead” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

One said this and another that

This indicates that there was more than one opinion. The words “One ... and another” refer to two or more angels in the heavenly host who were responding to Yahweh’s question in the previous verse.

translationWords

- [Ahab](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 18:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ Finally one spirit forward and said, 'I can do it!'

Yahweh asked him, 'How will you do it?'

²¹ The spirit replied, 'I will go and inspire all of Ahab's prophets to tell lies.' Yahweh said, 'You will be successful; go and do it!'

ULB:

²⁰ Then a spirit came forward and it stood before Yahweh and said, 'I will entice him.' Yahweh said to him, 'How?' ²¹ The spirit replied, 'I will go out and I will become a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets.' Yahweh replied, 'You will entice him, and you will also be successful. Go now and do so.'

translationNotes

become a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets

Here the word "spirit" refers to the attitudes of the prophets and the words "the mouth" represents what they will say. AT: "cause all his prophets to speak lies" (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [spirit, spirits, spiritual](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 18:22

UDB:

²² So now I tell you that Yahweh has caused your prophets to lie to you. Yahweh has decided that something terrible will happen to you.”

ULB:

²² Now see, Yahweh has put a lying spirit in the mouth of these prophets of yours, and Yahweh has decreed disaster for you.”

translationNotes

Now see

“Indeed.” The word “see” here adds emphasis to what follows.

has put a lying spirit in the mouth of these prophets of yours

Here the word “spirit” refers to the attitudes of the prophets and the words “the mouth” represents what they will say. AT: “has caused your prophets to speak lies” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [decree, decrees, decreed](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 18:23-24**UDB:**

²³ Then Zedekiah walked over to Micaiah and slapped him on his face. He said, “Do you think that Yahweh’s spirit left me in order to speak to you?”

²⁴ Micaiah replied, “You will find out for yourself to which of us Yahweh’s spirit has truly spoken on the day when you go into a room of some house to hide from the Aramean soldiers!”

ULB:

²³ Then Zedekiah son of Kenaanah, came up, slapped Micaiah on the cheek, and said, “Which way did the Spirit of Yahweh take to go from me to speak to you?” ²⁴ Micaiah said, “Look, you will know that on that day, when you run into some inner room to hide.”

translationNotes**Kenaanah**

Translate this man’s name the same as in [2 Chronicles 18:10](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Which way did the Spirit of Yahweh take to go from me to speak to you?

Zedekiah asks this sarcastic question to insult and rebuke Micaiah. AT: “Do not think that Yahweh’s Spirit left me to speak to you!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Look

“Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

you will know that

“you will know the answer to your question.” If Zedekiah’s rhetorical question is translated as a statement, this phrase may be translated to supply implicit information. AT: “you will know that the Spirit of Yahweh has spoken to me” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [Zedekiah](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 18:25-27**UDB:**

²⁵ King Ahab commanded his soldiers, "Arrest Micaiah and take him to Amon, the governor of this city, and to my son Joash. ²⁶ Tell them that I have commanded that they should put this man in prison and give him only bread and water. Do not give him anything else to eat until I return safely from the battle!"

²⁷ Micaiah replied, "If you return safely, it will be clear that it was not Yahweh who told me what to say to you!" Then he said to all those who were standing there, "Do not forget what I have said to King Ahab!"

ULB:

²⁵ The king of Israel said to some servants, "You people seize Micaiah and take him to Amon, the governor of the city, and to Joash, my son. ²⁶ You people will say to him, "The king says: Put this man in prison and feed him with only a little bread and only a little water, until I return safely."

²⁷ Then Micaiah said, "If you return safely, then Yahweh has not spoken by me." Then he added, "Listen to this, all you people."

translationNotes**king of Israel**

This refers to Ahab.

Amon

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

If you return safely

This describes something that would not happen. Yahweh had already told Micaiah that the king would not return safely. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

translationWords

- [enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants](#)
- [govern, government, governments, governor, governors, proconsul, proconsuls](#)
- [Joash](#)
- [prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons, imprison, imprisons, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonments](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 18:28-30**UDB:**

²⁸ So the king of Israel and the king of Judah led their armies to Ramoth in Gilead. ²⁹ King Ahab said to Jehoshaphat, “I will put on different clothes, in order that no one will recognize that I am the king. But you should wear your royal robe.” So the king of Israel disguised himself, and they both went into the battle.

³⁰ The king of Aram had told his soldiers who were driving the chariots, “Attack only the king of Israel! Do not attack anyone else.”

ULB:

²⁸ So Ahab, the king of Israel, and Jehoshaphat, the king of Judah, went up against Ramoth Gilead.

²⁹ The king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat, “I will disguise myself and go into the battle, but you put on your royal robes.” So the king of Israel disguised himself, and they went into the battle.

³⁰ Now the king of Aram had commanded the captains of his chariots, saying, “Do not attack the unimportant or the important soldiers. Instead, attack only the king of Israel.”

translationNotes**Ahab, the king of Israel, and Jehoshaphat, the king of Judah, went up against**

Here the kings represent themselves accompanied by their armies. AT: “Ahab, the king of Israel, and Jehoshaphat, the king of Judah led their armies up against” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

went up against

“fought against”

Ramoth Gilead

Translate the name of this place as you did in [2 Chronicles 18:2](#) (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

disguise

This means to change the usual appearance so as not to be identified.

Do not attack the unimportant or the important soldiers

By mentioning both “the unimportant” and “the important soldiers,” the king meant all soldiers. AT: “Do not attack any of the soldiers” (See: [Merism](#))

translationWords

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [royal, royalty](#)
- [Aram, Aramean, Arameans, Aramaic](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [chariot, chariots, charioteers](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 18:31-32

UDB:

³¹ So when the soldiers who were driving the Aramean chariots saw Jehoshaphat wearing the royal robes, they thought, “He must be the king of Israel!” ³² So they turned to attack him. But when Jehoshaphat cried out, Yahweh helped him, and they realized that he was not the king of Israel. And God caused them to stop pursuing him.

ULB:

³¹ It came about that when the captains of the chariots saw Jehoshaphat they said, “That is the king of Israel.” They turned around to attack him, but Jehoshaphat cried out, and Yahweh helped him. God turned them away from him. ³² It came about that when the commanders of the chariots saw that it was not the king of Israel, they turned back from pursuing him.

translationNotes

That is the king of Israel

Jehoshaphat was wrongly identified as the king of Israel because Ahab had insisted that he wear kingly robes.

God turned them away from him

“God caused them to stop pursuing him”

It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 18:33-34

UDB:

³³ But one Aramean soldier shot an arrow at Ahab, without knowing who he was. The arrow struck Ahab between the places where the parts of his armor joined together. Ahab told the driver of his chariot, "Turn the chariot around and take me out of here! I have been severely wounded!" ³⁴ The battle continued all the day. Ahab was sitting propped up in his chariot, facing the Aramean soldiers. And late in the afternoon, when the sun was setting, he died.

ULB:

³³ But a certain man drew his bow at random and shot the king of Israel between the joints of his armor. Then Ahab said to the driver of his chariot, "Turn around and carry me out of the battle, for I am badly wounded." ³⁴ The battle grew worse that day, and the king of Israel was held up in his chariot facing the Arameans until the evening. About the time that the sun was going down, he died.

translationNotes

drew his bow at random

Possible meanings are 1) he took aim to shoot a soldier without knowing that it was Ahab or 2) he drew his bow to shoot without any specific target in mind.

between the joints of his armor

This is a place where two pieces of armor meet and is susceptible to arrows and swords.

the king of Israel was held up in his chariot

This can be stated in active form. AT: "someone held the king of Israel up in his chariot" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- bow and arrow, bows and arrows
- armor, armory
- Aram, Aramean, Arameans, Aramaic
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 19 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of Jehoshaphat as king continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Levite judges

Jehoshaphat appointed many Levites to be judges and told them to be very fair. (See: [appoint](#), [appoints](#), [appointed](#) and [judge](#), [judges](#), [judgment](#), [judgments](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 19:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 19:1-3

UDB:

¹ When King Jehoshaphat returned safely to his palace in Jerusalem, ² the prophet Jehu son of the prophet Hanani, went out of the city to meet the king, and said to him, "It was not right for you to help a wicked man and to love those who hate Yahweh. Because of what you have done, Yahweh is angry with you. ³ But you have done some good things; you got rid of the poles in this country for worshiping the goddess Asherah, and you have been determined to do what pleases God."

ULB:

¹ Jehoshaphat the king of Judah safely returned to his house in Jerusalem. ² Then Jehu son of Hanani, the seer, went out to meet him and said to King Jehoshaphat, "Should you be helping the wicked? Should you be loving those who hate Yahweh? For this deed, anger from Yahweh is on you. ³ However, there is some good to be found in you, in that you have taken the Asherah poles out of the land, and you have fixed your heart to seek God."

translationNotes

Hanani, the seer

"Hanani" is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 16:7](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

went out to meet him

Here the word "him" refers to Jehoshaphat.

Should you be helping the wicked? Should you be loving those who hate Yahweh?

These questions expect negative answers to make the point that Jehoshaphat should not have helped Ahab. AT: "You should not help the wicked! You should not love those who hate Yahweh!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

the wicked

This refers to wicked people in general. AT: "wicked people" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

anger from Yahweh is on you

The abstract noun "anger" can be translated using the word "angry." This phrase can be expressed in active form. AT: "Yahweh is angry with you" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

there is some good to be found in you

The abstract noun “good” can be translated as an adjective. This phrase can be expressed in active form. AT: “you have done some good things” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

you have taken the Asherah poles out of the land

Since Jehoshaphat was king, he may have told his officials to do these things for him. AT: “you have had your people take the Asherah poles out of the land” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Asherah poles

See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 14:3](#).

fixed your heart

Here the heart represents the will. Jehoshaphat’s will is spoken of as being fixed or immovable, which means having an unchanging intention to seek God. AT: “firmly decided” (See: [Idiom](#))

seek God

Wanting to do what pleases God is spoken of as if Jehoshaphat were seeking him. AT: “do what pleases God” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- Jehoshaphat
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- Jerusalem
- Jehu
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- Yahweh
- works, deeds, work, acts
- Asherah, Asherah pole, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth, Ashtoreths
- heart, hearts
- seek, seeks, seeking, sought
- God

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19 General Notes](#)

- 2 Chronicles 19 translationQuestions

2 Chronicles 19:4-5

UDB:

⁴ Jehoshaphat lived in Jerusalem. But one time, like he had done once previously, he went out among all the people in the country, from the city of Beersheba in the far south to the hill country of the tribe of Ephraim in the far north, and he convinced them to return to worshipping Yahweh, the God whom their ancestors worshiped. ⁵ He appointed judges throughout Judah, in each of the cities that had walls around them.

ULB:

⁴ Jehoshaphat lived in Jerusalem; and he went out again among the people from Beersheba to the hill country of Ephraim and brought them back to Yahweh, the God of their fathers. ⁵ He placed judges in the land throughout all the fortified cities of Judah, city by city.

translationNotes

from Beersheba to the hill country of Ephraim

This is a merism that means the whole land over which Jehoshaphat reigned, from the most southern part to the most northern part, and is intended to include the whole land in between. AT: “of all the land of Judah” (See: [Merism](#))

brought them back to Yahweh

The author speaks of Jehoshaphat’s leading the people back to serving Yahweh as if he were carrying them back to where they were at an earlier time. AT: “convinced them to return to Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

fathers

“ancestors” or “forefathers”

fortified cities

cities with walls around them for protection

city by city

“for every city”

translationWords

- [Beersheba](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite, Ephraimites](#)
- [ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather](#)
- [judge, judges](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 19:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ He told them, "Make your decisions carefully, because you are judging cases not in order to please people, but to please Yahweh. And he will be watching you whenever you make a decision. ⁷ So now revere Yahweh and judge cases carefully and do not forget that Yahweh our God never acts unjustly, and that he never does what people want because they offer him money."

ULB:

⁶ He said to the judges, "Consider what you should do, because you are not judging for man, but for Yahweh; he is with you in the act of judging. ⁷ Now then, let the fear of Yahweh be upon you. Be careful when you judge, for there is no iniquity with Yahweh our God, nor is there any favoritism or bribe taking."

translationNotes**He said to the judges**

"Jehoshaphat said to the judges"

he is with you

Possible meanings are 1) Yahweh was aware of what the judges decided or 2) Yahweh would hold the judges accountable for their decisions or 3) Yahweh would help and guide them in their decisions. (See: [Idiom](#))

let the fear of Yahweh be upon you

This can be expressed in active form. AT: "you should remember to fear Yahweh when you judge"

there is no iniquity with Yahweh our God, nor is there any favoritism or bribe taking

The abstract nouns "iniquity," "favoritism," and "bribe" can be translated using the verbs "sin," "favor," and "bribe." AT: "Yahweh our God will not sin or favor one person over another in judgment or be bribed" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

translationWords

- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)
- [fear, fears, afraid](#)
- [iniquity, iniquities](#)

- favor, favors, favorable, favoritism
- bribe, bribes, bribed, bribery

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 19:8-9

UDB:

⁸ In Jerusalem, Jehoshaphat also appointed some priests and other descendants of Levi and some leaders of Israelite families to be judges. He told them to do what Yahweh's laws said was right when they settled disputes. Those men lived in Jerusalem. ⁹ He told them this: "You must always do your work faithfully, honoring Yahweh.

ULB:

⁸ Moreover, in Jerusalem Jehoshaphat appointed some of the Levites and the priests, and some of the heads of the ancestral houses of Israel, for carrying out judgment for Yahweh, and for the sake of disputes. They lived in Jerusalem. ⁹ He instructed them, saying, "You must serve in reverence for Yahweh, faithfully, and with your whole heart.

translationNotes

heads of the ancestral houses

Here "heads" is a metaphor for the most important part, and "houses" represents families. AT: "leaders of the ancient families" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

for carrying out judgment for Yahweh

The abstract noun "judgment" can be translated using the verb "to judge." AT: "for judging the people for Yahweh" or "for judging on Yahweh's behalf" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

for the sake of disputes

"for settling disputes" or "for resolving arguments"

You must serve in reverence for Yahweh

The abstract noun "reverence" can be translated as a verb. AT: "You must serve while fearing Yahweh" or "You must serve while respecting Yahweh" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

with your whole heart

Here "heart" represents the whole person. AT: "with your whole being" (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [appoint, appoints, appointed](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)
- [faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness](#)
- [perfect, perfected, perfecter, perfection, perfectly](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 19:10

UDB:

¹⁰ In every dispute that your fellow Israelites who live in the cities want you to settle, you must warn them to not sin against Yahweh by telling lies during the trial—regardless of whether the trial is about murder, or about various laws, or about various royal decrees. If you do not warn them, God will punish you. Do this so that he does not become angry with you or your fellow Israelites.

ULB:

¹⁰ Whenever any dispute comes to you from your brothers who live in their cities, whether concerning bloodshed, whether about laws and commands, statutes or decrees, you must warn them, so they do not become guilty before Yahweh, or anger will come toward you and toward your brothers. You shall do this and you will not be guilty.

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Jehoshaphat continues to instruct some of the Levites and the priests, and some of the heads of the ancestral houses of Israel, who he appointed to be judges.

General Information:

The words “you” and “your” in this verse refers to those persons Jehoshaphat appointed to be judges.

Whenever any dispute comes to you from your brothers who live in their cities

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Whenever your brothers who live in their cities bring you a dispute” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

from your brothers

Here “brothers” is a general reference to fellow Israelites.

bloodshed

Here the killing of people is spoken of as shedding their blood, where “blood” represents their lives. AT: “the killing of people” or “murder” (See: [Metonymy](#))

anger will come toward you and toward your brothers

The abstract noun “anger” can be expressed as the adjective “angry.” This can be stated in active form. AT: “God will be angry with you and your brothers” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [brother, brothers](#)
- [bloodshed](#)
- [law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [statute, statutes](#)
- [decree, decrees, decreed](#)
- [guilt, guilty](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 19:11

UDB:

¹¹ Amariah, the high priest, will supervise you in any matter that Yahweh is concerned about, and Zebadiah son of Ishmael, the leader of the tribe of Judah, will supervise you in any matter that I am concerned about. And the descendants of Levi will assist you. Act courageously, and I pray that Yahweh will help those who do their work well.”

ULB:

¹¹ See, Amariah the chief priest is over you in all the matters of Yahweh. Zebadiah son of Ishmael, the leader of the house of Judah, is in charge of all the matters of the king. Also, the Levites will be officers serving you. Be strong and obey your instructions, and may Yahweh be with those who are good.”

translationNotes

Connecting Statement:

Jehoshaphat continues to instruct some of the Levites and the priests, and some of the heads of the ancestral houses of Israel, who he appointed to be judges.

General Information:

The words “you” and “your” in this verse refers to those persons Jehoshaphat appointed to be judges.

See

The word “See” here adds emphasis to what follows.

Amariah ... Zebadiah ... Ishmael

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

is over you

“is in charge of you”

of all the matters of the king

Here Jehoshaphat speaks of himself in the third person. This can be translated in the first person. AT: “of all my royal matters” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

translationWords

- [chief priests](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 20 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of King Jehoshaphat is completed in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Deliverance and trust

God rescues those who trust him. An enormous army came against Jehoshaphat but God promised that he would defeat them without Judah having to fight. Then the enemy fought among themselves and when the army of Judah arrived there were dead bodies. (See: [trust](#), [trusts](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#) and [promise](#), [promises](#), [promised](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 20:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 20:1-2

UDB:

¹ Later armies from Moab and Ammon and some soldiers from region of Meun, near Edom, came to fight against Jehoshaphat's army.

² Some men came and told Jehoshaphat, "A huge army is coming to attack your army. They are coming from the region of Edom, from the other side of the Dead Sea. They have already come to Hazon Tamar!" Another name for that place is Engedi.

ULB:

¹ It came about after this, that the people of Moab and Ammon, and with them some Meunites came against Jehoshaphat to do battle. ^[1] ² Then some came who told Jehoshaphat, saying, "A large multitude is coming against you from beyond the Dead Sea, from Edom. See, they are in Hazon Tamar," that is, Engedi. ^[2]

20:1 ^[1]The reading *some Meunites* represents a correction to the Hebrew text, which reads, *some Ammonites* . It is thought that *Meunites* was original, and that a copyist changed it to *some Ammonites* . But this last reading makes no sense, because Ammonites have already been mentioned in this verse. However, different versions deal with this problem in different ways.

20:2 ^[2]Instead of *Edom* , some ancient and modern versions read, *Aram* .

translationNotes

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Meunites

This was a people group from the region of Meun which was near Edom, east of the Jordan River. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

came against Jehoshaphat to do battle

Here "Jehoshaphat" represents himself and his army. AT: "came against Jehoshaphat's army to do battle" or "came to fight against Jehoshaphat and his army" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

See, they are in Hazezon Tamar

The word “see” is used here as an idiom to add emphasis to what is said next. They could not see the army in Hazezon Tamar from where they were speaking. AT: “They are already in Hazezon Tamar” (See: [Idiom](#))

Hazezon Tamar

This is the name of a place. It is another name for Engedi. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- [Moab, Moabite, Moabites](#)
- [Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Salt Sea, Dead Sea](#)
- [En Gedi](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:3-4

UDB:

³ Jehoshaphat became very afraid, so he decided to ask Yahweh what he should do. He also proclaimed that all the people of Judah should fast. ⁴ The people of Judah gathered together to request Yahweh to help them. They came to Jerusalem from every town in Judah to seek help from Yahweh.

ULB:

³ Jehoshaphat became afraid and set himself to seek Yahweh. He proclaimed a fast throughout all Judah. ⁴ Judah gathered together to seek Yahweh; they came to seek Yahweh from all the cities of Judah.

translationNotes

set himself to seek

This is an idiom. AT: “determined himself to seek” or “devoted himself to seek” (See: [Idiom](#))

to seek Yahweh

This speaks of seeking Yahweh’s advice as if he were looking for Yahweh. AT: “to seek Yahweh’s advice” (See: [Metonymy](#))

He proclaimed a fast

The word “fast” can be expressed as a verb. AT: “He proclaimed that all the people should fast” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Judah gathered

This refers to the people of Judah. AT: “The people of Judah gathered” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- fear, fears, afraid
- Yahweh
- proclaim, proclaims, proclaimed, proclaiming, proclamation, proclamations
- fast, fasts, fasted, fasting, fastings
- Judah

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:5-7

UDB:

⁵ Then Jehoshaphat stood up in front of the people of Judah in front of the new courtyard of the temple, ⁶ and he prayed this:

”Yahweh, the God whom our ancestors belonged to, you rule from heaven. You rule over all the kings and nations on earth. You can do anything; no one can successfully oppose you. ⁷ Our God, you drove out the people who lived in this land while your Israelite people advanced into it, and you certainly gave it to us who are descendants of Abraham, so that the land would belong to us forever.

ULB:

⁵ Jehoshaphat stood in the assembly of Judah and Jerusalem, at the house of Yahweh, in front of the new courtyard. ⁶ He said, ”Yahweh, the God of our ancestors, are you not God in heaven? Are you not the ruler over all the kingdoms of the nations? Power and might are in your hand, so no one is able to resist you. ⁷ Our God, did you not drive out the inhabitants of this land before your people Israel, and give it forever to the descendants of Abraham?

translationNotes

of Judah and Jerusalem

This refers to the people from these places. AT: “of the people from Judah and Jerusalem” (See: [Metonymy](#))

are you not God in heaven? Are you not the ruler over all the kingdoms of the nations?

Jehoshaphat uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that God is in heaven and his authority over all things. This question can be written as statement. AT: “you are indeed God in heaven and the ruler over all the kings of the earth.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Power and might are in your hand

The words “Power” and “might” mean basically the same thing and emphasize the greatness of Yahweh’s power. The word “hand” refers to possession. AT: “You possess great power” or “You have great power and might” (See: [Doublet](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

Our God, did you not drive out the inhabitants of this land ... to the descendants of Abraham?

Jehoshaphat uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that God drove their enemies from their land and gave it to the Israelites. This question can be written as statement. AT: “It was you who

drove out those who lived in this land for the sake of your people Israel and who gave it permanently to the descendants of Abraham.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

translationWords

- [assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh’s house](#)
- [court, courts, courtyard, courtyards](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [nation, nations](#)
- [hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of](#)
- [eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever](#)
- [descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:8-9

UDB:

⁸ Our ancestors lived here and built a temple at which to worship you. At that time they prayed:
⁹ ‘If we experience disasters, either from our enemies attacking us, or from disease or hunger, we will assemble at this temple in your presence, for you agreed to be present here. We will plead with you because of the things we are suffering, and you will hear us and will rescue us.’

ULB:

⁸ They lived in it and built you a holy place in it for your name, saying, ⁹ ‘If disaster comes on us—the sword, judgment, or disease, or famine—we will stand before this house, and before you (for your name is in this house), and we will cry to you in our affliction, and you will hear us and save us.’ ^[1]

20:9 ^[1]Instead of *judgment*, some ancient and modern versions read *flood*.

translationNotes

for your name

Here Yahweh is represented by his “name.” AT: “for you” or “to honor you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the sword

The “sword” represents war. AT: “war” or “battle” (See: [Metonymy](#))

before this house

This refers to the temple.

your name is in this house

Here Yahweh’s presence is represented by his “name.” AT: “your presence is here in this house” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

translationWords

- [holy place](#)
- [name, names, named](#)
- [sword, swords, swordsmen](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)
- [afflicted, afflict, afflicted, afflicting, affliction, afflictions](#)
- [save, saves, saved, safe, salvation](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ You would not allow our Israelite ancestors to enter the countries of Ammon, Moab, or Edom when they were traveling from Egypt to Canaan. So our ancestors turned away from those areas and did not attack the people there and did not destroy them. But now they are coming here to attack us. ¹¹ We did good things for them. But now look at how they are repaying us by trying to drive out us from the land that you gave to our ancestors to belong to them and their descendants forever!

ULB:

¹⁰ See now, here are the people of Ammon, Moab, and Mount Seir whom you would not let Israel invade when they came out of the land of Egypt; instead, Israel turned away from them and did not destroy them. ¹¹ See how they are rewarding us; they are coming to drive us out of your land that you have given us to inherit.

translationNotes

Mount Seir

This was a place where the Edomites lived. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

See how they are rewarding us; they are coming to drive us out of your land

Here Jehoshaphat speaks of the ironic situation. AT: “This is how they ‘repay’ us for the mercy we showed to them; they are coming to drive us out of your land” (See: [Irony](#))

See how

The word “see” here is used as an idiom to emphasize what is said next. (See: [Idiom](#))

translationWords

- [Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites](#)
- [Moab, Moabite, Moabites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:12-13

UDB:

¹² So, our God, please punish them. We cannot defeat the enormous army that is coming to attack us. We do not know what to do, but we are depending on you to help us.”

¹³ All the men of Judah and their wives, children, and babies were standing there in the presence of Yahweh while Jehoshaphat prayed.

ULB:

¹² Our God, will you not judge them? For we have no power against this great army that is coming against us. We do not know what to do, but our eyes are on you.” ¹³ All Judah stood before Yahweh, with their little ones, wives, and children.

translationNotes

will you not judge them?

This rhetorical question is used as a request. This question can be written as a statement. AT: “please judge them.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

our eyes are on you

Here the people are represented by their “eyes” to emphasize that they are directing their attention to God. AT: “we are looking to you for help” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

translationWords

- [God](#)
- [power, powers](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ Then the Spirit of Yahweh came upon Jahaziel son of Zechariah, who was son of Benaiah, who was son of Jeiel, who was son of Mattaniah. He was a descendant of Levi and a descendant of Asaph. He stood up in front of the whole group that was gathered there, ¹⁵ and said, "King Jehoshaphat and all you who live in Jerusalem and in other places in Judah, listen! This is what Yahweh says to you: 'Do not be afraid or discouraged because of this huge army that is coming to attack you, because it is not you who will win this battle. It is God who will win it.

ULB:

¹⁴ Then in the middle of the assembly, the Spirit of Yahweh came on Jahaziel, son of Zechariah, son of Benaiah, son of Jeiel, son of Mattaniah, the Levite, one of the sons of Asaph. ¹⁵ Jahaziel said, "Listen, all Judah and you inhabitants of Jerusalem, and King Jehoshaphat. This is what Yahweh says to you, 'Do not fear; do not be discouraged because of this great army, for the battle does not belong to you, but to God.

translationNotes

the Spirit of Yahweh came on

This is an idiom which means that the spirit of God influenced Jahaziel and enabled him to prophesy. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 15:1](#) (See: [Idiom](#))

Jahaziel ... Zechariah ... Benaiah ... Jeiel ... Mattaniah ... Asaph

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

all Judah and you inhabitants of Jerusalem

Here "Judah" refers to the people who live there. AT: "all you who live in Judah and Jerusalem" (See: [Metonymy](#))

for the battle does not belong to you, but to God

This means that God is in control of the battle and of what happens.

translationWords

- [assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled](#)
- [spirit, spirits, spiritual](#)

- [Zechariah \(OT\)](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ Tomorrow march down toward them. They will be climbing up through the pass of Ziz north of En Gedi. You will meet them at the end of the gorge near wilderness of Jeruel. ¹⁷ But you will not need to fight this battle. You soldiers from Jerusalem and other places in Judah, just take your positions, and then stand still and watch what will happen. You will see Yahweh rescue you. Do not be afraid or discouraged. March toward them tomorrow, and Yahweh will be with you.”

ULB:

¹⁶ You must go down against them tomorrow. See, they are coming up by way of the pass of Ziz. You will find them at the end of the valley, before the wilderness of Jeruel. ¹⁷ You will not need to fight in this battle. Stand in your positions, stand still, and see the rescue of Yahweh with you, Judah and Jerusalem. Do not fear nor be discouraged. Go out against them tomorrow, for Yahweh is with you.”

translationNotes

go down against ... Go out against

This is an idiom that means to go and meet the enemy army for battle. AT: “march against ... March out against” or “Go to battle against ... Go to battle against” (See: [Idiom](#))

See, they are

“Indeed, they are.” The word “See” is used here as an idiom to draw attention to what is said next. The people cannot currently see the enemy army. AT: “They are” (See: [Idiom](#))

pass of Ziz

This is a narrow valley between two mountains southeast of Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the rescue of Yahweh with you

The word “rescue” can be expressed as a verb. AT: “Yahweh rescue you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Judah and Jerusalem

Here these places represent the people from them. AT: “people of Judah and Jerusalem” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:18-19

UDB:

¹⁸ Jehoshaphat prostrated himself with his face touching the ground, and all the people of Jerusalem and other places in Judah who were there knelt down to worship Yahweh. ¹⁹ Then some descendants of Levi who were descendants of Kohath and Korah stood up and loudly praised Yahweh, the God whom the Israelites belonged to.

ULB:

¹⁸ Jehoshaphat bowed his head with his face to the ground. All Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem fell down before Yahweh, worshiping him. ¹⁹ The Levites, those of the descendants of the Kohathites and Korahites, stood up to praise Yahweh, the God of Israel, with a very loud voice.

translationNotes

bowed his head with his face to the ground ... fell down before Yahweh

These acts of worship that express humility and submission to God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

All Judah

Here “Judah” refers to the people from Judah. AT: “All the people of Judah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Kohathites and Korahites

These are the names of people groups descending from Kohath and Korah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

with a very loud voice

This speaks of all the people praising Yahweh as if they together had one voice. AT: “with very loud voices” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [bow, bows, bowed, bowing, bow down, bows down, bowed down, bowing down](#)
- [worship](#)
- [descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants](#)
- [praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ Early the next morning the army left to go to the desert near the town of Tekoa. While they were leaving, Jehoshaphat stood up and said to them, “You people of Jerusalem and other places in Judah, listen to me! Trust in Yahweh our God; if you do that, you will be strong. Trust in what his prophets have said; if you do that, you will be successful.” ²¹ Then, after consulting with the people’s leaders, Jehoshaphat assigned some persons to sign praise of Yahweh for his greatness, and for these individuals to lead the entire army to the enemy. They were singing,

”Thank Yahweh,
because he faithfully loves us forever.”

ULB:

²⁰ Early in the morning they arose and went out into the wilderness of Tekoa. As they went out, Jehoshaphat stood and said, “Listen to me, Judah, and you inhabitants of Jerusalem! Trust in Yahweh your God, and you will be supported. Trust in his prophets, and you will succeed.” ²¹ After he consulted with the people, he appointed those who sang to Yahweh and who praised him for his majestic splendor as they went out before the army, saying, “Give thanks to Yahweh, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.”

translationNotes

Tekoa

Translate the name of this city the same as in [2 Chronicles 11:6](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

you will be supported

This can be stated in active form. AT: “he will support you” or “he will help you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Trust in his prophets, and you will succeed

“If you trust in Yahweh’s prophets, then you will succeed”

his covenant faithfulness endures forever

The abstract noun “faithfulness” can be stated as “faithfully” or “faithful.” See how you translated “covenant faithfulness” in [2 Chronicles 7:3](#). AT: “he faithfully loves us forever” or “he is always faithful to his covenant with us” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

translationWords

- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- appoint, appoints, appointed
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies
- covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love
- eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:22-23

UDB:

²² While they began to sing and praise Yahweh, Yahweh caused some enemy soldiers to unexpectedly attack the others from Ammon and Moab and Edom. They defeated the others in their army. ²³ Then the soldiers from Ammon and Moab attacked the soldiers from Edom and completely annihilated them. After they finished slaughtering the men from Edom, they slaughtered each other.

ULB:

²² When they began to sing and to praise, Yahweh set men in ambush against the people of Ammon, Moab, and Mount Seir, who were coming against Judah. They were defeated. ²³ For the people of Ammon and Moab rose to fight the inhabitants of Mount Seir, in order to completely kill them and destroy them. When they had finished with the inhabitants of Mount Seir, they all helped to destroy each other.

translationNotes

to sing and to praise

They were singing to Yahweh. AT: “to sing and to praise Yahweh” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Yahweh set men

This means that Yahweh caused some of the enemy soldiers to ambush other enemy soldiers. AT: “Yahweh set some enemy soldiers” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ambush

a surprise attack

Mount Seir

Translate the name of this place the same as in [2 Chronicles 20:10](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

They were defeated

This can be stated in active form. AT: “They defeated them” or “They defeated those they had ambushed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to completely kill them and destroy them

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. The second intensifies the first. AT: “to completely annihilate them” (See: [Doublet](#))

When they had finished with

This refers to after they had destroyed them. AT: “When they had finished killing” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites](#)
- [Moab, Moabite, Moabites](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:24

UDB:

²⁴ When the soldiers from Judah came to the place where they could look down over the wilderness, they looked toward that huge army of their enemies, and they saw only corpses lying on the ground. No one had survived.

ULB:

²⁴ When Judah came to a place overlooking the wilderness, they looked out on the army. Behold, they were dead, fallen to the ground; none had escaped.

translationNotes

Behold, they were dead

The word “behold” is used here to mark a surprising event.

they were dead, fallen to the ground

The phrase “fallen to the ground” is an idiomatic way to say that “they were dead.” AT: “they were all dead on the ground” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Doublet](#))

translationWords

- [Judah](#)
- [desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses](#)
- [die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:25-26

UDB:

²⁵ So Jehoshaphat and his soldiers went to take the possessions of their enemies, and they saw that there was a lot of equipment and clothing and other valuable things; there was more than they could carry away. There were very many things, with the result that it took three days for them to collect them all. ²⁶ The following day they gathered in Berakah Valley and praised Yahweh there. That is why that valley is still called Berakah, which means praise.

ULB:

²⁵ When Jehoshaphat and his people came to take plunder from them, they found among them abundant goods, clothing, and valuable articles, which they took for themselves, more than they could carry away. It took them three days to carry off the plunder, there was so much of it. ^[1] ²⁶ On the fourth day they assembled in the Valley of Berakah. There they praised Yahweh, so the name of that place is the “Valley of Berakah” to this day.

20:25 ^[1] Instead of *among them*, some ancient and modern versions read *cattle*. Instead of *clothing*, some ancient and modern versions read *dead bodies*.

translationNotes

the fourth day

“day 4” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Valley of Berakah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

to this day

This means the day on which the writer wrote. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 5:9](#).

translationWords

- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:27-28**UDB:**

²⁷ Then while Jehoshaphat led them, all the soldiers who were from Jerusalem and other places in Judah returned to Jerusalem. They were happy because Yahweh had enabled them to defeat their enemies. ²⁸ When they arrived at Jerusalem, they went to the temple, playing harps, lutes, and trumpets.

ULB:

²⁷ Then they returned, every man of Judah and Jerusalem, and Jehoshaphat in their lead, to go again to Jerusalem with joy, for Yahweh had made them rejoice over their enemies. ²⁸ They came to Jerusalem and to the house of Yahweh with lyres, harps, and trumpets.

translationNotes**every man of Judah and Jerusalem**

This is a reference to every man in the army. AT: “every soldier of Judah and Jerusalem” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Jehoshaphat in their lead

“with Jehoshaphat leading them.” The phrase “in their lead” is an idiom. King Jehoshaphat was in front of the whole army as they went back to Jerusalem. (See: [Idiom](#))

rejoice over their enemies

They rejoiced because their enemies had been defeated. AT: “rejoice over their enemies’ defeat” or “rejoice because their enemies had been destroyed” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing](#)
- [joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing](#)
- [lute, lyre, lyres](#)
- [harp, harps, harpist, harpists](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:29-30

UDB:

²⁹ People in the kingdoms of the nearby countries became very afraid when they heard how Yahweh had fought against the enemies of the Israelites. ³⁰ Then there was peace in the kingdom that Jehoshaphat ruled, because God had enabled him to have peace throughout the country.

ULB:

²⁹ The terror of God was on all the kingdoms of the nations when they heard that Yahweh had fought against Israel's enemies. ³⁰ So Jehoshaphat's kingdom was quiet, for his God gave him peace all around him.

translationNotes

The terror of God was on all the kingdoms of the nations

The word "terror" can be expressed with the verb "feared." AT: "All the kingdoms of the nations greatly feared God"

kingdoms of the nations

"kingdoms in the nearby nations"

Jehoshaphat's kingdom was quiet

This speaks of the kingdom having peace as the kingdom being quiet. AT: "Jehoshaphat's kingdom was at peace"

translationWords

- [God](#)
- [nation, nations](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [kingdom, kingdoms](#)
- [peace, peaceful, peacefully, peaceable, peacemakers](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:31-33

UDB:

³¹ Jehoshaphat continued to rule Judah. He was thirty-five years old when he became king of Judah, and he ruled in Jerusalem for twenty-five years. His mother's name was Azubah, the daughter of Shilhi. ³² He did things that were pleasing to Yahweh, like his father Asa had done, and he did not stop doing those things. ³³ But he did not get rid of the places where idols were worshiped on the hills in the countryside, and most of the people still not erious about obeying the God whom their ancestors had worshiped.

ULB:

³¹ Jehoshaphat reigned over Judah: He was thirty-five years old when he began to reign, and he reigned in Jerusalem for twenty-five years. His mother's name was Azubah, the daughter of Shilhi. ³² He walked in the ways of Asa, his father; he did not turn away from them; he did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh. ³³ However, the high places were not taken away. The people still had not directed their hearts to the God of their ancestors.

translationNotes

thirty-five years old ... twenty-five years

“35 years old ... 25 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Azubah, the daughter of Shilhi

“Azubah” was the name of Jehoshaphat's mother. Shilhi was the name of Azubah's father. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

He walked in the ways of Asa, his father; he did not turn away from them

This means that he lived in a way that pleased Yahweh as his father had done. Here “walking” is an idiom for the way a person lives and behaves. AT: “He did things that were pleasing to Yahweh, like his father Asa had done, and he did not stop doing those things” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Idiom](#))

he did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

The eyes here represent seeing, and seeing represents judgment. Yahweh saw and approved of Jehoshaphat's actions. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 14:2](#). AT: “he did what Yahweh judged to be right” or “he did what Yahweh considered to be right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the high places were not taken away

This can be stated in active form. AT: “he did not get rid of the high places” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

The people still had not directed their hearts to the God

This means that the people did not desire to obey God and were not devoted to him. Here people’s “hearts” represent their will and their desires. AT: “The people were still not devoted to the God” or “The people still were not committed to following the God” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [reign, reigns, reigned, reigning](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back](#)
- [high place, high places](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:34

UDB:

³⁴ A record of the other things that Jehoshaphat did while he ruled, from the beginning until he died, is in the scrolls written by the prophet Jehu son of Hanani. They are also in the scroll on which was written a record of the activities of the kings of Israel.

ULB:

³⁴ As for the other matters concerning Jehoshaphat, first and last, behold, they are written in the history of Jehu son of Hanani, which is recorded in the book of the kings of Israel.

translationNotes

first and last

These two opposites are given to refer to everything concerning Jehoshaphat during his reign as king. AT: “from the beginning of his reign until he died” (See: [Merism](#))

behold

“indeed.” The word is used here to add emphasis to the important information that follows.

they are written in ... which is recorded in

This can be stated in active form. AT: “they are in ... which is in” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Hanani

Translate this man’s name as you did in [2 Chronicles 16:7](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the history of Jehu son of Hanani

This is a historical account that was written by Jehu.

the book of the kings of Israel

This is a book that no longer exists. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 16:11](#).

translationWords

- [Jehu](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 20:35-37

UDB:

³⁵ Later, Jehoshaphat made a treaty with Ahaziah, the king of Israel, who was a very wicked king. ³⁶ They agreed that their workers would build a fleet of ships to use to buy and sell things with other countries. After those ships were built at Ezion Geber, ³⁷ Eliezer son of Dodavahu of the city of Mareshah, prophesied against Jehoshaphat. He said, “You have made an alliance with Ahaziah, who is a wicked king. Therefore, Yahweh will destroy the ships that your workers have made.” And the ships were wrecked, and were never able to sail to other countries.

ULB:

³⁵ After this Jehoshaphat, king of Judah, allied himself with Ahaziah, king of Israel, who committed much wickedness. ³⁶ He allied himself with him to build ships to go to Tarshish. They built the ships at Ezion Geber. ³⁷ Then Eliezer son of Dodavahu of Mareshah, prophesied against Jehoshaphat; he said, “Because you have allied yourself with Ahaziah, Yahweh has destroyed your projects.” The ships were wrecked so that they were not able to sail.

translationNotes

ships

These are ships capable of traveling on large bodies of water.

Tarshish

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

They built the ships

Jehoshaphat and Ahaziah did not build the ships, rather, their workers built them. AT: “Their workers built the ships” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Ezion Geber

Translate the name of this place as you did in [2 Chronicles 8:17](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Eliezer ... Dodavahu

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Mareshah

Translate this man’s name as you did in [2 Chronicles 11:08](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

The ships were wrecked so that

This can be stated in active form. AT: “The ships became ruined and” or “The ships wrecked so that” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

they were not able to sail

“no one was able to sail them”

translationWords

- [Ahaziah](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 21 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Evil

Doing evil causes the country to decline. Jehoshaphat's son was evil. Edom and Libna successfully revolted against him, the Arabs plundered him and he died of an intestinal disease. (See: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Simile

The author compares worship of Baal to being a prostitute: “to act like a prostitute.” Idolatry by the people of God is often pictured as prostitution. (See: [Simile](#) and [people of God, my people](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 21:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 21:1-3

UDB:

¹ Then Jehoshaphat died and was buried where his ancestors were buried in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David. His son Jehoram became the next king of Judah. ² Jehoram's younger brothers were Azariah, Jehiel, Zechariah, Azariah, Michael, and Shephatiah. ³ Before Jehoshaphat died, he had given them large gifts of silver and gold and other valuable things. He also appointed them to rule various cities in Judah that had walls around them. But he appointed Jehoram to be the king of Judah, because Jehoram was his oldest son.

ULB:

¹ Jehoshaphat slept with his ancestors and was buried with them in the city of David; Jehoram, his son, became king in his place. ² Jehoram had brothers, sons of Jehoshaphat: Azariah, Jehiel, Zechariah, Azariahu, Michael, and Shephatiah. All these were sons of Jehoshaphat, king of Israel. ³ Their father had given them large gifts of silver, gold, and other precious things, and also fortified cities in Judah, but he gave the throne to Jehoram, because he was his firstborn.

translationNotes

slept with his ancestors

Jehoshaphat dying is spoken of as if he had fallen asleep. AT: "died" (See: [Euphemism](#))

city of David

This is the city of Jerusalem. (See: [Idiom](#))

Azariah, Jehiel, Zechariah, Azariahu, Michael, and Shephatiah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jehoshaphat, king of Israel

The southern kingdom was technically called "Judah," but the writer of this book apparently wanted to make the point that the southern kingdom was, in its obedience to God, the true Israel.

large gifts

"gifts of large amounts"

gave the throne to Jehoram

Jehoshaphat decided that Jehoram should be the king after he died. Here “throne” is a metonym for ruling as king. AT: “made Jehoram king after him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [David](#)
- [Jehoram, Joram](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)
- [Azariah](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [silver](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [Judah](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 21:4-5

UDB:

⁴ After Jehoram was completely in control of his father's kingdom, he caused all of his younger brothers to be killed, along with some of the leaders of the nation. ⁵ Jehoram was thirty-two years old when he became the king, and he ruled in Jerusalem for eight years.

ULB:

⁴ Now when Jehoram had risen up over his father's kingdom and had firmly established himself as king, he killed all his brothers with the sword, and also various other leaders of Israel. ⁵ Jehoram was thirty-two years old when he began to reign, and he reigned for eight years in Jerusalem.

translationNotes

risen up over his father's kingdom

To "rise up over" something is an idiom that means to control it. AT: "taken complete control over his father's kingdom" (See: [Idiom](#))

he killed all his brothers with the sword

Jehoram probably did not kill them personally, but had other people do it for him. AT: "he caused all of his younger brothers to be killed" (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [kingdom, kingdoms](#)
- [sword, swords, swordsmen](#)
- [reign, reigns, reigned, reigning](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 21:6-7

UDB:

⁶ But he did many of the evil things that the kings of Israel had done. He did many things that Yahweh said were evil, things that the family of Ahab had done, because he married one of Ahab's daughters. ⁷ However, because of the covenant that Yahweh had made with King David, Yahweh did not want to get rid of the descendants Judah.

ULB:

⁶ He walked in the ways of the kings of Israel, as the house of Ahab was doing, for he had Ahab's daughter as his wife, and he did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh. ⁷ However, Yahweh did not wish to destroy the house of David, because of the covenant that he had made with David; he had promised that he would always give life to him and his descendants.

translationNotes

walked in the ways

This is an idiom that means he followed their example. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 20:32](#). AT: "followed the example" (See: [Idiom](#))

the house of Ahab was doing

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. In this case it refers to the descendants of Ahab. AT: "the descendants of Ahab were doing" (See: [Metonymy](#))

he had Ahab's daughter as his wife

"he had married a daughter of Ahab"

in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents his judgment or evaluation. AT: "as Yahweh judged" (See: [Metaphor](#))

the house of David

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. In this case it refers to the kingdom of Judah. See how you translated this in [Jeremiah 3:18](#). AT: "the kingdom of Judah" or "the people of Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

he had promised that he would always give life to him and his descendants

“he had promised that David’s descendants would always be the ones who ruled Judah.” This was the covenant that Yahweh made with David.

always give life to him and his descendants

“always cause him and his descendants to live” or “never destroy him and his descendants”

translationWords

- [house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [covenant, covenants, new covenant](#)
- [promise, promises, promised](#)
- [descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 21:8-10

UDB:

⁸ While Jehoram was ruling, the people in the region of Edom rebelled against the king of Judah and appointed their own king. ⁹ So Jehoram and his officers and his men in chariots went to Edom. There, the army of Edom surrounded them. However, Jerhoram and his army attacked them and broke free from them; then they escaped during the night. ¹⁰ But the king of Judah was never able to regain control of Edom, and Edom is still not controlled by Judah. The people in the city of Libnah between Judah and Philistia also rebelled against Judah. Those things happened because Jehoram stopped obeying Yahweh, the God whom his ancestors belonged to.

ULB:

⁸ In Jehoram's days, Edom revolted from the control of Judah, and they set a king over themselves. ⁹ Then Jehoram crossed over with his commanders and all his chariots. It was night when he rose up and fought against the Edomites who had surrounded him and his chariot commanders. ¹⁰ So Edom has been in rebellion from the control of Judah to this present day. Libnah also revolted at the same time from his control, because Jehoram had forsaken Yahweh, the God of his ancestors.

translationNotes

In Jehoram's days

“While Jehoram was king”

from the control of Judah

“against Judah's control”

set a king over themselves

The word “set” is a metonym for choosing, and the words “over themselves” is a metonym for “to rule them.” AT: “chose a king to rule over them” (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

crossed over

“crossed the border into Edom” or “went to Edom”

It was night when he rose up ... surrounded him and his chariot commanders

It may be helpful to reorder this sentence and to add implicit information. AT: “The Edomites surrounded him and his chariot commanders, but Jehoram and his army fought against them and escaped during the night” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

to this present day

This refers to the time when the book of 2 Chronicles was written. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 5:9](#).

Libnah

This was a town in Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- [Edom, Edomite, Edomites, Idumea](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [commander, commanders](#)
- [chariot, chariots, charioteers](#)
- [forsake, forsakes, forsaken, forsook](#)
- [God](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 21:11

UDB:

¹¹ On the hilltops in Judah he had also built high places, where they worshiped idols. He caused the people of Judah to stray away from Yahweh by worshiping foreign gods.

ULB:

¹¹ In addition, Jehoram had also built high places in the mountains of Judah and he made the inhabitants of Jerusalem to live like prostitutes, and he led Judah astray.

translationNotes

Jehoram had also built high places

Other people helped Jehoram build these high places all over the mountains of Judah. AT: "Jehoram and the people had also built high places" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

he made the inhabitants of Jerusalem to live like prostitutes

Jehoram caused the people to serve idols instead of Yahweh. People who serve other gods in order to receive something from them are spoken of as spiritual prostitutes. AT: "he caused the people of Jerusalem to leave Yahweh and serve other gods, as prostitutes serve men who are not their husbands" (See: [Metaphor](#))

he led Judah astray

Not following Yahweh is spoken of as not following the correct path. AT: "he caused Judah to no longer follow Yahweh" (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [high place, high places](#)
- [prostitute, prostituted, prostitutes, harlot, whored](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 21:12-15

UDB:

¹² One day, Jehoram received a letter from the prophet Elijah. Elijah had written this:

”This is what Yahweh, the God whom your ancestor King David worshiped, says: ‘You have not done things that please me like your father Jehoshaphat did or what King Asa did. ¹³ Instead, you have continually done the evil things that the kings of Israel have done. You have encouraged the people in Jerusalem and other places in Judah to stop worshiping Yahweh and to be unfaithful to him. And you have killed your brothers, men who were better than you are.’

ULB:

¹² A letter from the prophet Elijah came to Jehoram. It said, ”This is what Yahweh, the God of David, your ancestor, says: Because you have not walked in the ways of Jehoshaphat, your father, nor in the ways of Asa, king of Judah, ¹³ but have walked in the ways of the kings of Israel, and have made Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem to act like a prostitute, as the house of Ahab did—and because you have also killed your brothers in your father’s family with the sword, men who were better than yourself— ¹⁴ see, Yahweh will strike with a great plague your people, your children, your wives, and all your possessions. ¹⁵ You yourself will have much sickness because of a disease in your intestines, until your intestines fall out because of the sickness, day after day.”

translationNotes

A letter from the prophet Elijah came to Jehoram

“Jehoram received a letter from the prophet Elijah” or “The prophet Elijah sent a letter to Jehoram”

walked in the ways

This is an idiom that means he followed their example. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 20:32](#). AT: “followed the example” (See: [Idiom](#))

act like a prostitute

Jehoram caused the people to serve idols instead of Yahweh. People who serve other gods in order to receive something from them are spoken of as spiritual prostitutes. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 21:11](#). AT: “leave Yahweh and serve other gods, as a prostitute serves men who are not her husband” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the house of Ahab

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. In this case it refers to the descendants of Ahab. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 21:6](#). AT: “the descendants of Ahab” (See: [Metonymy](#))

see

This tells Jehoram to pay attention to the message that follows.

strike with a great plague

“cause a great plague to happen to”

You yourself

The use of the reflexive “yourself” emphasizes that this is a personal judgment on Jehoram. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

until your intestines fall out because of the sickness

Possible meanings are 1) his intestines will literally fall out or 2) this is a metaphor that describes intestinal problems that will result in his death. AT: “until this disease causes your death” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [Elijah](#)
- [David](#)
- [walk, walks, walked, walking](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [Asa](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [sword, swords, swordsmen](#)
- [plague, plagues](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 21:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ Then Yahweh stirred up some men from the Philistia people group and some Arabs who lived near the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, where people from Ethiopia had settled, to come against Jehoram. ¹⁷ Their army invaded Judah and took away from Jerusalem all the valuable things that they found in the king's palace; they also took away his sons and wives. His youngest son, Jehoahaz, was the only one of his sons whom they did not take away.

ULB:

¹⁶ Yahweh stirred up against Jehoram the spirit of the Philistines and of the Arabians who were near the Cushites. ¹⁷ They attacked Judah, invaded it, and carried away all the wealth that was found in the king's house. They also carried away his sons and his wives. No son was left to him except Jehoahaz, his youngest son.

translationNotes

stirred up against Jehoram the spirit of the Philistines and of the Arabians

Stirring the spirit is a metonym for making someone want to act. Here “spirit” is singular and refers to the Philistines as a group and to the Arabians as a group. AT: “provoked against Jehoram the Philistines and the Arabians” (See: [Metonymy](#))

against Jehoram

Here Jehoram refers to Jehoram and the people of Judah that he ruled. AT: “against Jehoram and the people of Judah” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

the spirit of the Philistines and of the Arabians who were near the Cushites

The Philistines and the Arabians were two different nations. The Arabians lived southeast of Judah near the Cushites, and the Philistines lived west of Judah. These nations were stirred up separately. This can be made explicit. AT: “the spirit of the Philistines and the spirit of the Arabians who were near the Cushites” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

No son was left to him except Jehoahaz, his youngest son

“They took away all of his sons except Jehoahaz, his youngest son” or “The only son they left to him was Jehoahaz, his youngest son”

Jehoahaz, his youngest son

This same son is called “Ahaziah” in [2 Chronicles 22:01](#).

translationWords

- [spirit, spirits, spiritual](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Arabia, Arabian, Arabians](#)
- [Ethiopia, Ethiopian](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 21:18-20**UDB:**

¹⁸ After that happened, Yahweh caused Jehoram to be afflicted with an intestinal disease that no doctor could cure. ¹⁹ About two years later, while he had great pain, he died because of that disease. The people of Judah had made bonfires to honor his ancestors when they died, but they did not make a bonfire for Jehoram.

²⁰ Jehoram was thirty-two years old when he became the king, and he ruled in Jerusalem for eight years. No one regretted it when he died. His corpse was buried in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David, but he was not buried where the other kings of Judah had been buried.

ULB:

¹⁸ After all this, Yahweh struck him in his intestines with an incurable disease. ¹⁹ It came about in due time, at the end of two years, that his intestines fell out because of his sickness, and that he died of severe disease. His people made no fire in his honor as they had done for his ancestors. ²⁰ He had begun to reign when he was thirty-two years old; he reigned in Jerusalem for eight years, and he died unlamented. They buried him in the city of David, but not in the royal tombs.

translationNotes**Yahweh struck him in his intestines with an incurable disease**

Here “struck” is an idiom that means Yahweh caused him to be sick. AT: “Yahweh caused him to suffer from an incurable disease in his intestines” (See: [Idiom](#))

It came about

This phrase marks an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

in due time

This is an idiom that refers to a set or appointed time. AT: “in the proper time” or “when the time was right” (See: [Idiom](#))

made no fire in his honor as they had done for his ancestors

The custom of the Israelites was to make a bonfire to honor the king who had died. They did not do this for Jehoram to express their contempt for him. This can be stated explicitly. AT: “did not make a bonfire to honor him as they normally did to honor kings when they died” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

he died unlamented

“no one was sad that he died”

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly](#)
- [honor, honors](#)
- [reign, reigns, reigned, reigning](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [David](#)
- [grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs, burial place](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 22 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is the beginning of the story of Queen Athaliah.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

The author compares Athaliah's evil deeds to Ahab's family's evil lives: "walked in the ways of the house of Ahab." Ahab is pictured as the epitome of evil. (See: [Metaphor](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) and [works](#), [deeds](#), [work](#), [acts](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 22:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 22:1-3

UDB:

¹ The people of Jerusalem appointed Jehoram's youngest son Ahaziah to be their king, because the men from Philistia who had invaded Judah with some Arabs had killed all of Jehoram's other sons. So Ahaziah started to rule Judah.

² Ahaziah was twenty-two years old when he became king. He ruled in Jerusalem for one year. His mother's name was Athaliah, a granddaughter of King Omri of Israel.

³ King Ahab conducted his life just like the members of Ahab's family had done, because his mother encouraged him to do things that are wrong.

ULB:

¹ The inhabitants of Jerusalem made Ahaziah, Jehoram's youngest son, king in his place, for the band of men that came with the Arabians into the camp had killed all his older sons. So Ahaziah son of Jehoram, king of Judah, became king. ² Ahaziah was twenty-two years old when he began to reign; he reigned for one year in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Athaliah; she was the daughter of Omri. ³ He also walked in the ways of the house of Ahab for his mother was his advisor in doing wicked things.

translationNotes

for the band of men ... had killed all his older sons

This is background information about the events of [2 Chronicles 21:16-17](#). Ahaziah was called "Jehoahaz" in that earlier account. It is possible he changed his name when he became king. (See: [Background Information](#))

all his older sons

"all Jehoram's older sons"

twenty-two years old

"22 years old" (See: [Numbers](#))

Athaliah

This is the name of Ahaziah's mother. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

He also walked in the ways

Here “walked in the ways” is an idiom that means he followed Ahab’s example. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 20:32](#). AT: “He also followed the example” (See: [Idiom](#))

the house of Ahab

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. In this case it refers to the descendants of Ahab. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 21:6](#). AT: “the descendants of Ahab” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Ahaziah](#)
- [Jehoram, Joram](#)
- [Arabia, Arabian, Arabians](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Athaliah](#)
- [Omri](#)
- [house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 22:4-5

UDB:

⁴ He did many things that Yahweh said were evil, like the descendants of Ahab had done, because after Ahaziah's father died, they became his advisors. And Ahaziah died as a result of heeding their bad advice. ⁵ Before he died, he did what they encourage him to do by going with Joram son of King Ahab of Israel, to fight against the army of Hazael, the king of Aram, at Ramoth Gilead. Joram was wounded there by the Arameans.

ULB:

⁴ Ahaziah did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh, as the house of Ahab was doing, for they were his advisors after the death of his father, to his destruction. ⁵ He also followed their advice; he went with Joram son of Ahab, king of Israel, to fight against Hazael, king of Aram, at Ramoth Gilead. The Arameans wounded Joram.

translationNotes

in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents his judgment or evaluation. AT: “as Yahweh judged” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the house of Ahab was doing

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. In this case it refers to the descendants of Ahab. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 21:6](#). AT: “the descendants of Ahab were doing” (See: [Metonymy](#))

they were his advisors

“descendants of Ahab advised him”

to his destruction

“and this caused his destruction”

He also followed their advice; he went

“He also followed their advice and went” or “He also followed their advice to go”

to fight against Hazael, king of Aram

The reader should understand that Hazael did not fight alone, but that he took his army with him.

AT: “to fight against Hazael, king of Aram, and his army” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Hazael

This is a man’s name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly](#)
- [Joram](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Aram, Aramean, Arameans, Aramaic](#)
- [Ramoth](#)
- [Gilead, Gileadite, Gileadites](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 22:6

UDB:

⁶ After he was wounded, Joram went back to the city of Jezreel to recover from his battle wounds. Then King Ahaziah went down to Jezreel to see Joram son of King Ahab, because he had been wounded.

ULB:

⁶ Joram returned to be healed in Jezreel of the wounds that they had given him at Ramah, when he fought against Hazael, king of Aram. So Ahaziah son of Jehoram, king of Judah, went down to Jezreel to see Joram son of Ahab, because Joram had been wounded.

translationNotes

of the wounds that they had given him

“from the wounds that he received at the battle”

went down to Jezreel

Jezreel was lower in elevation than Jerusalem.

translationWords

- [Jezreel, Jezreelite](#)
- [Ramah](#)
- [Jehoram, Joram](#)
- [Judah](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 22:7-8

UDB:

⁷ God caused Ahaziah to die as a result of his going to visit Joram. When Ahaziah arrived, he went with Joram to meet Jehu son of Nimshi, whom Yahweh had appointed to kill all the descendants of Ahab. ⁸ While Jehu and the men who were with him were killing Ahab's descendants, they found the leaders of Judah and the sons of Ahaziah's relatives who had been working for Ahaziah, and they killed all of them also.

ULB:

⁷ Now the destruction of Ahaziah was brought about by God through Ahaziah's visit to Joram. When he had arrived, he went with Jehoram to attack Jehu son of Nimshi, whom Yahweh had chosen to destroy the house of Ahab. ⁸ It came about, when Jehu was carrying out God's judgment on the house of Ahab, that he found the leaders of Judah and the sons of Ahaziah's brothers serving Ahaziah. Jehu killed them.

translationNotes

Now the destruction of Ahaziah was brought about by God

The abstract noun "destruction" can be stated as an action. This can be stated in active form. AT: "God caused Ahaziah to die" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

visit to Joram ... went with Jehoram

"Joram" and "Jehoram" are two names for the same person.

Nimshi

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

carrying out God's judgment on the house of Ahab

This refers to killing the descendants of Ahab. AT: "killing all the descendants of Ahab as God had commanded"

the house of Ahab

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. In this case it refers to the descendants of Ahab. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 21:6](#). AT: “the descendants of Ahab” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the sons of Ahaziah’s brothers

Possible meanings are 1) Ahaziah’s nephews or 2) the sons of Ahaziah’s relatives .

translationWords

- [God](#)
- [Jehoram, Joram](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)
- [serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 22:9**UDB:**

⁹ Then Jehu went to find Ahaziah, and his soldiers found Ahaziah while he was hiding in the city of Samaria. They brought him to Jehu and executed him. Then they buried his corpse, because they said, “He deserves to be buried, because he was a descendant of Jehoshaphat, who tried hard to please Yahweh.” After that, there were no descendants of Ahaziah who were powerful enough to become the kings of Judah.

ULB:

⁹ Jehu looked for Ahaziah; they caught him hiding in Samaria, brought him to Jehu, and killed him. Then they buried him, for they said, “He is a son of Jehoshaphat, who sought Yahweh with all his heart.” So the house of Ahaziah had no more power to rule the kingdom.

translationNotes**they caught him ... killed him**

“they caught Ahaziah ... killed Ahaziah”

they buried him, for they said, “He is a son of Jehoshaphat, who sought Yahweh with all his heart.”

They honored him enough to bury his body because he was the descendant of Jehoshaphat, who was a good king. This can be stated explicitly. AT: they buried his corpse, because they said, “He deserves to be buried, because he was a descendant of Jehoshaphat, who tried hard to please Yahweh.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the house of Ahaziah had no more power to rule the kingdom

Here “house of Ahaziah” is a metonym that refers to Ahaziah’s descendants. Here “power to rule” is a metonym for a king. Since all the adult descendants of Ahaziah were dead, there was no one left to rule Judah. (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [bury, buries, buried, burying, burial](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [kingdom, kingdoms](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 22:10-12

UDB:

¹⁰ When Athaliah, the mother of Ahaziah, saw that her son had been killed, she commanded that all the members of Ahaziah's family who might become king must be executed. ¹¹ But Jehosheba, the daughter of King Jehoram, took Joash, Ahaziah's very young son, away from the other sons of the king who were about to be murdered, and she hid him and his nursemaid in a bedroom in the temple. Because Jehosheba, who was the daughter of King Jehoram and the wife of the high priest Jehoiada, was Ahaziah's sister, she was able to hide the child, with the result that Athaliah could not kill him. ¹² He remained hidden there for six years while Athaliah ruled Judah.

ULB:

¹⁰ Now when Athaliah, the mother of Ahaziah, saw that her son was dead, she arose and killed all the royal children in the house of Judah. ¹¹ But Jehosheba, ^[1] a daughter of the king, secretly took Joash son of Ahaziah away from the king's sons who were about to be killed. She put him and his nurse into a bedroom. So Jehosheba, a daughter of King Jehoram, the wife of Jehoiada the priest (for she was the sister of Ahaziah), hid him from Athaliah, so that Athaliah did not kill him. ¹² He was with them, hidden in the house of God for six years, while Athaliah reigned over the land.

22:11 ^[1]Jehosheba may be spelled *Jehoshaba* in some versions.

translationNotes

she arose and killed all the royal children

Here the writer speaks of Athaliah as if she killed the children herself, but the reader should understand that she would have ordered her servants to kill them. AT: "she commanded her servants to kill all the royal children" (See: [Metonymy](#))

all the royal children

This refers only to the males, because they could become king. Verse 11 confirms that the sons were the ones who were killed. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the house of Judah

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. In this case, it refers to the kingdom of Judah. AT: "Judah" or "the kingdom of Judah" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Jehosheba, a daughter of the king ... a daughter of King Jehoram

Here “the king” refers to Jehoram, the father of Ahaziah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

his nurse

This refers to a person who cares for a child, not to a medical person.

into a bedroom

Verse 12 makes it clear that this bedroom was located in the temple. Jehosheba could access that room because she was married to Jehoiada who was a priest.

Jehoiada

This is a man’s name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

He was with them

“Joash was with Jehosheba and Jehoiada”

translationWords

- [Athaliah](#)
- [die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh’s house](#)
- [reign, reigns, reigned, reigning](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 23 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The chapter ends the story of Queen Athaliah and begins the story of King Joash.

Special concepts in this chapter

Having a king

The high priest organized a coup and made seven-year-old Joash king. Athaliah objected, so the chief priest had her killed. This was an attempt by the priests to fulfill the covenant God made with David. (See: [high priest](#), [priest](#), [priests](#), [priesthood fulfill](#), [fulfilled](#) and [covenant](#), [covenants](#), [new covenant](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 23:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 23:1-3

UDB:

¹ The next year, Jehoiada decided that it was necessary to do something. So he made an agreement with the army commanders of groups of one hundred soldiers: Azariah son of Jeroham, Ishmael son of Jehohanan, Azariah son of Obed, Maaseiah son of Adaiah, and Elishaphat son of Zicri. ² They went throughout Judah and gathered the descendants of Levi and the leaders of Israelite families from all the cities. When they came to Jerusalem, ³ the whole group went to the temple and made an agreement with the young king there. Jehoiada said to them, "This is the son of the previous king of Judah. So he is the one who must rule, like Yahweh promised that the descendants of King David must do.

ULB:

¹ In the seventh year, Jehoiada showed his strength and entered into a covenant with the commanders of hundreds, Azariah son of Jeroham, Ishmael son of Jehohanan, Azariah son of Obed, Maaseiah son of Adaiah, and Elishaphat son of Zichri. ² They went about in Judah and gathered the Levites from all the cities of Judah, as well as the heads of the ancestral houses of Israel, and they came to Jerusalem. ³ All the assembly made a covenant with the king in the house of God. Jehoiada said to them, "See, the king's son will reign, as Yahweh has said concerning the descendants of David.

translationNotes

General Information:

Throughout chapter 23, Joash is referred to as "the king." It may be helpful to your readers to occasionally add "King Joash" or "Joash the king" to make his identity explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Jehoiada

the chief priest who served in the temple and was faithful to God. He was an advisor to Joash. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

showed his strength

He decided it was time to challenge Athaliah's rule and reveal that Joash was alive and ready to be king. AT: "decided to act"

the commanders of hundreds

The phrase “commander of hundreds” is probably an official title for a military officer. Possible meanings are 1) the word “hundreds” represents the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders led. AT: “the commanders of 100 soldiers” or 2) the word translated as “hundreds” does not represent an exact number, but is the name of a military division. AT: “the commanders of military divisions” (See: [Numbers](#))

entered into a covenant

“made an agreement”

Azariah ... Ishmael ... Azariah ... Maaseiah ... Elishaphat

These five men were the commanders of hundreds of soldiers. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jeroham ... Jehohanan ... Obed ... Adaiah ... Zichri

These are men’s names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the heads of the ancestral houses of Israel

Here “heads” is a metaphor for the most important part. And “houses” represents the families. AT: “leaders of the founding families of Israel” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

the king’s son

Here, “king” refers to Joash’s father. AT: “Joash, the son of the king”

translationWords

- [covenant, covenants, new covenant](#)
- [commander, commanders](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical](#)
- [head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded](#)
- [house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers](#)
- [assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh’s house](#)
- [reign, reigns, reigned, reigning](#)
- [descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants](#)
- [David](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 23:4-5

UDB:

⁴ So this is what you must do: One-third of you priests and other descendants of Levi who are starting to work on the Sabbath day must guard the temple doors. ⁵ One-third of you must guard the king's palace, and one-third of you must guard the Foundation Gate. All the other people will be in the courtyard outside the temple.

ULB:

⁴ This is what you must do: A third of you priests and Levites who come to serve on the Sabbath will be guards at the doors. ⁵ Another third will be at the king's house, and the other third will be at the Foundation Gate. All the people will be in the courtyard of the house of Yahweh.

translationNotes

A third ... Another third ... the other third

“One-third ... Another one-third ... the other one-third” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

will be guards at the doors

“will be guards at the temple doors”

the Foundation Gate

This gate may have also been called the “Middle Gate” or the “Sur Gate.” It was apparently an inner gate that was near the king's palace.

All the people

This is a generalization that refers to all the people who are present. AT: “All the other people who are present” (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

translationWords

- [serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [found, founded, founder, foundation, foundations](#)
- [gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways](#)
- [court, courts, courtyard, courtyards](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 23:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ Only the priests and the descendants of Levi who work there are allowed to enter the temple, because they are set apart for that work. All the others must remain in the courtyard, obeying what Yahweh has commanded. ⁷ You descendants of Levi must stand around the young king, each of you with your weapon in your hand. You must kill anyone else who tries to enter the temple. And stay close to the king, wherever he goes.”

ULB:

⁶ Allow no one to come into the house of Yahweh, except for the priests and the Levites who are serving. They may enter because they are consecrated. But all the other people must obey the commands of Yahweh. ⁷ The Levites must surround the king on all sides, every man with his weapons in his hand. Whoever comes into the house, let him be killed. Stay with the king when he comes in and when he goes out.”

translationNotes**Allow no one to come into the house of Yahweh**

“Do not allow anyone to come into the house of Yahweh”

But all the other people must obey the commands of Yahweh

It may be helpful to state that command. AT: “All the others must remain in the courtyard, obeying what Yahweh has commanded” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

The Levites must surround the king on all sides

“The Levites must surround the king on all sides in order to protect him”

all sides, every man with his weapons in his hand

“all sides, and every temple guard should have his weapons and be ready to fight”

Whoever comes into the house, let him be killed

This did not include the temple guards and the priests. This can be stated explicitly and in active form. AT: “You must kill anyone except the temple guards and the priests who come into the temple” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

when he comes in and when he goes out

Possible meanings are 1) “at all times” or 2) “wherever he goes.” (See: [Idiom](#))

translationWords

- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 23:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ So the descendants of Levi and all the men of Judah did what Jehoiada had told them. He did not allow anyone to go home after he finished his work on that day. Each commander took his men, the ones who were finishing their work on that Sabbath day and those who were starting their work on that day. ⁹ Then Jehoiada gave each of the commanders the spears and the large and small shields that had been put there in the temple by King David.

ULB:

⁸ So the Levites and all Judah served in every way in the manner in which Jehoiada the priest commanded. Each one took his men, those who were to come in to serve on the Sabbath, and those who were to leave off serving on the Sabbath, for Jehoiada the priest had not dismissed any of their divisions. ⁹ Then Jehoiada the priest brought to the commanders spears and small and large shields that had been King David's that were in the house of God.

translationNotes**all Judah**

This is a generalization to refer to all the people of Judah who were present in the courtyard that day. (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

served in every way in the manner in which Jehoiada the priest commanded

“did exactly what Jehoiada the priest commanded” or “obeyed everything that Jehoiada the priest commanded”

Each one took his men ... any of their divisions

The priests and guards served in divisions, with each group working for two weeks. This refers to the point in time when two divisions were present—the one ending their service and the one starting their service. Thus there were twice as many men as usual.

were to leave off serving on the Sabbath

“were finishing their work on that Sabbath day”

translationWords

- [Judah](#)

- [serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice](#)
- [shield, shields, shielded](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 23:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ He commanded all the guards to stand in their positions, each with his sword in his hand, all around the king—near the altar and near the temple, from the north side to the south side.

¹¹ Then Jehoiada and his sons brought Joash out. They put a crown on his head and gave him a scroll on which were written the rules that the kings needed to obey, and they proclaimed that he was now the king. They anointed him with olive oil and shouted, “We desire that the king will live for many years!”

ULB:

¹⁰ Jehoiada placed all the soldiers, each man with his weapon in his hand, from the right side of the temple to the left side of the temple, along by the altar and the temple, surrounding the king.

¹¹ Then they brought out the king’s son, put the crown on him, and gave him the covenant decrees. Then they made him king, and Jehoiada and his sons anointed him. Then they said, “Long live the king.”

translationNotes**General Information:**

Throughout chapter 23, Joash is referred to as “the king.” It may be helpful to your readers to occasionally add “King Joash” or “Joash the king” to make his identity explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

with his weapon in his hand

This means they were ready to fight. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 23:7](#).

the king’s son

Here “king” refers to Joash’s father. AT: “Joash, the son of the king”

put the crown on him

This is a symbolic act to show that they are making him king. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

gave him the covenant decrees

The symbolic act of giving him a scroll with the decrees shows that they expect him to obey them. It is unclear if these decrees were a portion of the law of Moses, or a separate set of rules for kings to obey. AT: “presented to him the covenant decrees that he should obey” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

anointed him

This was a symbolic act to show that he was chosen by God to be the king. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Long live the king

“May the king live a long life”

translationWords

- [temple](#)
- [altar, altars](#)
- [crown, crowns, crowned](#)
- [decree, decrees, decreed](#)
- [anoint, anointed, anointing](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 23:12-13

UDB:

¹² When Athaliah heard the noise being made by the people running toward the king and cheering, she ran to the temple. ¹³ She saw the young king there standing alongside the pillar at the entrance of the temple, which is the place at the temple where the kings usually stood. The army commanders and trumpet players were standing beside the king, and all the people of Judah were rejoicing and blowing trumpets, and singers with their musical instruments were leading the people while they praised God. Then Athaliah tore her robes and started screaming, “You are committing treason!”

ULB:

¹² When Athaliah heard the noise of the people running and praising the king, she came to the people in the house of Yahweh, ¹³ and she looked, and, behold, the king was standing by his pillar at the entrance, and the commanders and the trumpeters were by the king. All the people of the land were rejoicing and blowing trumpets, and the singers were playing musical instruments and leading the singing of praise. Then Athaliah tore her clothes and shouted, “Treason! Treason!”

translationNotes

behold

This alerts the reader that the following information is very important.

standing by his pillar at the entrance

The relationship between the king and this particular pillar at the temple entrance is unclear.

All the people of the land

This is a generalization to show that many people participated in the event. AT: “A very large number of the people of the land” (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

Athaliah tore her clothes

This was a symbolic action to show her great distress. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Treason! Treason!

Treason is acting to overthrow the government. Athaliah had killed the legitimate heirs of the king and made herself ruler in [2 Chronicles 22:10-11](#). She was angry that Joash became king in her place. The exclamation is repeated for emphasis. AT: “You are committing treason!”

translationWords

- [Athaliah](#)
- [praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [column, columns, pillar, pillars](#)
- [joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing](#)
- [trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 23:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ Jehoiada the high priest said to the army commanders, “Kill her, but do not kill her at the temple of Yahweh!” Then he said to them, “Bring Athaliah out between your ranks and kill anyone who tries to follow her!” ¹⁵ She tried to flee, but they seized her as she reached the Horse Gate, before the palace, and they killed her there.

ULB:

¹⁴ Then Jehoiada the priest brought out the commanders of hundreds who were over the army and said to them, “Bring her out between the ranks; anyone who follows her, let him be killed with the sword.” For the priest had said, “Do not kill her in the house of Yahweh.” ¹⁵ So they seized her as she went into the entrance of the Horse Gate of the king’s house, and there they killed her.

translationNotes

Jehoiada

Translate this man’s name as in [2 Chronicles 22:11](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the commanders of hundreds

The phrase “commander of hundreds” is probably an official title for a military officer. Possible meanings are 1) the word “hundreds” represents the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders led. AT: “the commanders of 100 soldiers” or 2) the word translated as “hundreds” does not represent an exact number, but is the name of a military division. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 23:1](#). AT: “the commanders of military divisions” (See: [Numbers](#))

who were over the army

“who were leaders in the army”

Bring her out between the ranks

Possible meanings are 1) “Surround her and bring her out of the temple courtyard” or 2) “Remove her from the people in the temple courtyard”

anyone who follows her, let him be killed with the sword

This can be stated in active form. It is implied that people who followed her would be trying to help her. AT: “Use your sword to kill anyone who comes to help her” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

For the priest had said

“For Jehoiada the priest had said”

as she went into the entrance of the Horse Gate of the king’s house

Some versions have “and took her to the Horse Gate near the entrance of the kings’ house”

the king’s house

“the royal palace”

translationWords

- [sword, swords, swordsmen](#)
- [horse, horses, warhorse, warhorses, horseback](#)
- [gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 23:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ Then Jehoiada made an agreement that he and the king and all the other people would be Yahweh's people. ¹⁷ Then all the people who were there went to the temple of Baal and tore it down. They smashed the altars of Baal. They also killed Mattan, the priest of Baal, in front of those altars.

ULB:

¹⁶ Then Jehoiada made a covenant between himself, all the people, and the king, that they should be Yahweh's people. ¹⁷ So all the people went to the house of Baal and tore it down. They smashed Baal's altars and his images to pieces, and they killed Mattan, the priest of Baal, in front of those altars.

translationNotes

General Information:

Throughout chapter 23, Joash is referred to as “the king.” It may be helpful to your readers to occasionally add “King Joash” or “Joash the king” to make his identity explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

all the people went to the house of Baal

This is a generalization that means a large group of the people did this. AT: “a very large group of the people went to the temple of Baal” (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

Mattan

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- [covenant, covenants, new covenant](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)
- [Baal](#)
- [altar, altars](#)
- [image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 23:18-19**UDB:**

¹⁸ Then Jehoiada appointed the priests, who were also descended from Levi, to take care of the temple. They were part of the group to whom King David had given various work at the temple, to sacrifice the animals that were to be completely burned on the altar, doing what was written in the laws that Moses had given to them. He also told them to rejoice and sing, which was also what David had commanded. ¹⁹ He also put gatekeepers at the gates of the temple in order that anyone who was unacceptable to God would not be allowed to enter.

ULB:

¹⁸ Jehoiada appointed officers for the house of Yahweh under the hand of the priests, who were Levites, whom David had assigned to the house of Yahweh, to offer the burnt offerings to Yahweh, as it was written in the law of Moses, together with rejoicing and singing, as David had given direction. ¹⁹ Jehoiada set guards at the gates of the house of Yahweh, so that no one that was unclean in any way should enter.

translationNotes**under the hand of the priests**

Here “hand” represents control. AT: “under the direction of the priests” (See: [Metonymy](#))

so that no one that was unclean in any way should enter

A person who is not acceptable for God’s purposes is spoken of as if they were physically unclean. AT: “so that no one that was unacceptable to God in any way should enter” (See: [Metaphor](#))

so that no one that was unclean in any way should enter

This can be stated in positive form. AT: “to make sure that only those who are clean could enter” or “to make sure only those who are acceptable to God could enter” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical](#)
- [David](#)
- [burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire](#)
- [law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh](#)
- [clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 23:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ Jehoiada took with him the army commanders, the important men, the leaders and many others, and brought the king down from the temple. They went into the palace through the Upper Gate, and put the king on his throne. ²¹ Then all the people of Judah rejoiced. And there was quiet throughout the city, because Athaliah had been killed.

ULB:

²⁰ Jehoiada took with him the commanders of hundreds, the noblemen, the governors of the people, and all the people of the land. He brought down the king from the house of Yahweh; the people came through the Upper Gate to the king's house and sat the king on the throne of the kingdom. ^[1]
²¹ So all the people of the land rejoiced, and the city was quiet. As for Athaliah, they had killed her with the sword.

23:20 ^[1]Some modern versions have, *they brought down the king* .

translationNotes

the commanders of hundreds

The phrase “commander of hundreds” is probably an official title for a military officer. Possible meanings are 1) the word “hundreds” represents the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders led. AT: “the commanders of 100 soldiers” or 2) the word translated as “hundreds” does not represent an exact number, but is the name of a military division. AT: “the commanders of military divisions” See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 23:1](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

all the people of the land

This is a generalization that means he took very many people with him. AT: “a very large group of the people of Israel” (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

He brought down the king from the house of Yahweh

The temple was built on the highest hill in Jerusalem. AT: “He brought the king down from the temple to the palace”

the throne of the kingdom

“the royal throne”

So all the people of the land

This is generalization to say that most of the people rejoiced. (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

the city was quiet

Here “the city” represents the people of the city, and “quiet” represents peace, since no one opposed Joash after Athaliah died. AT: “the people of the city were at peace” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [commander, commanders](#)
- [noble, nobles, nobleman, noblemen](#)
- [govern, government, governments, governor, governors, proconsul, proconsuls](#)
- [kingdom, kingdoms](#)
- [Athaliah](#)
- [sword, swords, swordsmen](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 24 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of King Joash is completed in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Joash repairs the temple

Joash decided to repair the temple. The Levites collected money from people and gave it to the workmen to repair the temple. This was a sign of worship towards Yahweh. (See: [temple](#) and [sign, signs, proof, reminder](#))

Joash becomes evil

When Joash stopped worshiping Yahweh, he had many troubles. Joash remained loyal to Yahweh as long as the chief priest lived, but when the chief priest died Joash started following other gods. The chief priest's son warned him that he would have trouble, so he had him killed. The army of Aram defeated and plundered him and his servants murdered him. (See: [priest, priests, priesthood](#) and [god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 24:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 24:1-3

UDB:

¹ Joash was seven years old when he became the king of Judah, and he ruled in Jerusalem for forty years. His mother's name was Zibiah; she was from the city of Beersheba. ² Joash did what pleased Yahweh all during the years that Jehoiada was the high priest. ³ Jehoiada chose two women to be Joash's wives. And they bore Joash sons and daughters.

ULB:

¹ Joash was seven years old when he began to reign; he reigned for forty years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Zibiah, of Beersheba. ² Joash did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh all the days of Jehoiada, the priest. ³ Jehoiada took for him two wives, and he became the father of sons and daughters.

translationNotes

began to reign

“became king of Judah”

forty years

“40 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Zibiah

This is a woman's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

The word “eyes” here represents seeing, and seeing represents judgment. Yahweh saw and approved of Joash's actions. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 14:1](#). AT: “what Yahweh judged to be right” or “what Yahweh considered to be right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

all the days of Jehoiada, the priest

This idiom means “as long as Jehoiada, the priest, was alive.” (See: [Idiom](#))

Jehoiada took for him two wives

“Jehoiada chose two wives for Joash”

translationWords

- [Joash](#)
- [reign, reigns, reigned, reigning](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Beersheba](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 24:4-5

UDB:

⁴ Some years later, Joash decided that the temple should be repaired. ⁵ He summoned the priests and other descendants of Levi and said to them, “Go to the cities of Judah and collect from the people the tax money that they are required to pay each year, and use that money to pay for repairing the temple. Do it immediately.” But the descendants of Levi did not do it immediately.

ULB:

⁴ It came about after this, that Joash decided to restore the house of Yahweh. ⁵ He gathered together the priests and the Levites, and he said to them, “Go out every year to the cities of Judah and gather from all Israel money to repair the house of your God. Make sure that you start right away.” The Levites did nothing at first.

translationNotes

It came about after this

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

right away

“immediately”

The Levites did nothing at first

It may be helpful to add “but” to show that the Levites did not obey. AT: “But the Levites did not do it immediately”

translationWords

- restore, restores, restored, restoration
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- Judah
- Israel, Israelites
- house of God, Yahweh’s house

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 24:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ So the king summoned Jehoiada and said to him, “Why have you not required the descendants of Levi to bring to Jerusalem from various places in Judah the annual tax that Moses said that the people of Judah must pay, for taking care of the sacred tent?”

⁷ The temple needed to be repaired because the sons of that wicked woman Athaliah had entered into the temple and had wrecked some of the things, and had also used some of the sacred items that were in it for the worship of Baal.

ULB:

⁶ So the king called for Jehoiada the high priest and said to him, “Why have you not required the Levites to bring in from Judah and Jerusalem the tax levied by Moses the servant of Yahweh and by the assembly of Israel for the tent of the covenant decrees?” ⁷ For the sons of Athaliah, that wicked woman, had broken up the house of God and had given all the holy things of the house of Yahweh to the Baals.

translationNotes**Why have you not required the Levites ... covenant decrees?**

King Joash asks this rhetorical question to accuse Jehoiada of not doing his duty. It can be translated as a statement. AT: “You have neglected your duty. I told you to require the Levites ... covenant decrees, but you have not done it.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

for the tent of the covenant decrees

Although it refers to the temple that Solomon built, it is a reminder that this tax has been collected since the time of Moses and the “tent of meeting.”

holy things

This refers to the items used for worship in the temple.

to the Baals

“to people to use for the worship of idols of Baal”

translationWords

- [high priest](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [tax, taxes, taxed, taxation, taxpayers](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants](#)
- [assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled](#)
- [tent, tents, tentmakers](#)
- [covenant, covenants, new covenant](#)
- [decree, decrees, decreed](#)
- [Athaliah](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [Baal](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 24:8-10

UDB:

⁸ So, obeying what the king commanded, the descendants of Levi made a chest and placed it outside the temple, at one of the entrances. ⁹ Then the king sent letters everywhere in Judah, requesting everyone to bring their tax money to the temple, as Moses had required the Israelite people to do when they were in the wilderness. ¹⁰ All the officials and the other people agreed, and they brought their contributions gladly. They put the money into the chest until it was full.

ULB:

⁸ So the king commanded, and they made a chest and placed it outside at the entrance to the house of Yahweh. ⁹ Then they made a proclamation through Judah and Jerusalem, for the people to bring in for Yahweh the tax that Moses the servant of God levied on Israel in the wilderness. ¹⁰ All the leaders and all the people rejoiced and brought money in and put it into the chest until they finished filling it.

translationNotes

a chest

a large wooden box

they made a proclamation

“they proclaimed” or “they announced”

All the leaders and all the people

This is a generalization. Some people probably did not respond this way. (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

translationWords

- [proclaim, proclaims, proclaimed, proclaiming, proclamation, proclamations](#)
- [desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 24:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ Whenever the descendants of Levi brought the chest to the king's officials, and they saw that there was a lot of money in it, the king's secretary and the assistant to the high priest would take all the money from the chest and then put the chest back in its place. They did this frequently, and they collected a huge amount of money. ¹² The king and Jehoiada gave the money to the men who were supervising the work of repairing the temple. Those men hired stoneworkers and carpenters to repair the temple. They also hired men who worked with iron and bronze to repair the things in the temple that were broken.

ULB:

¹¹ It happened that whenever the chest was brought to the king's officials by the hand of the Levites, and whenever they saw that there was much money in it, the king's scribe and the high priest's official would come, empty the chest, and take it and carry it back to its place. They did this day after day, gathering large amounts of money. ¹² The king and Jehoiada gave the money to those who did the work of serving in the house of Yahweh. These men hired stonemasons and carpenters to restore the house of Yahweh, and also those who worked in iron and bronze.

translationNotes**It happened that whenever**

This phrase introduces a new, recurring action. If your language has a way to note this, you may use it here.

take it and carry it back to its place

“take the chest and carry it back to its place”

stonemasons and carpenters

“men who built with stone and men who built with wood”

those who worked in iron and bronze

“men who made things from iron and bronze”

translationWords

- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly

- [scribe, scribes](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 24:13-14

UDB:

¹³ The men who did the repair work worked hard, and the work of repairing the temple progressed. They rebuilt the temple to make it as it was originally, and they made it stronger. ¹⁴ When they had finished the repair work, they brought to the king and to Jehoiada the money that they had not used for the repairs. That money was used to make things to use for performing the sacrifices that were to be completely burned on the altar, and to make bowls and other gold and silver things for the temple. As long as Joash lived, the people continually brought to the temple sacrifices that were to be completely burned on the altar.

ULB:

¹³ So the workmen labored, and the work of repairing went forward in their hands; they set up the house of God in its original design and strengthened it. ¹⁴ When they finished, they brought the rest of the money to the king and Jehoiada. This money was used to make furnishings for the house of Yahweh, utensils with which to serve and make offerings—spoons and utensils of gold and silver. They offered burnt offerings in the house of Yahweh continually for all the days of Jehoiada.

translationNotes

went forward in their hands

Here the word “forward” represents progress, and the word “hands” represents their control. AT: “made progress under their supervision” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the rest of the money

This is money that was collected in the chest but not needed for repairs.

furnishings

This refers to the “utensils” and “spoons” listed later in the verse.

for all the days of Jehoiada

This idiom refers to the lifespan of Jehoiada. AT: “for as long as Jehoiada lived” or “throughout the lifetime of Jehoiada” (See: [Idiom](#))

translationWords

- [labor, labors, labored, laborer, laborers](#)

- house of God, Yahweh's house
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- gold, golden
- silver
- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 24:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ Jehoiada became very old. He died when he was 130 years old. ¹⁶ He was buried where the kings had been buried, in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David. He was buried there because of the good things that he had done in Judah for God and for God's temple.

ULB:

¹⁵ Jehoiada grew old and was full of days, and then he died; he was 130 years old when he died. ¹⁶ They buried him in the city of David among the kings, because he had done good in Israel, toward God, and to God's house.

translationNotes**grew old and was full of days**

These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize how long he lived. AT: "became very old" (See: [Doublet](#))

was full of days

This idiom means he lived a long time. (See: [Idiom](#))

130 years old

"one hundred and thirty years old" (See: [Numbers](#))

among the kings

"among the tombs of the kings" or "among the graves of the kings"

because he had done good in Israel, toward God, and to God's house

The nominal adjective "good" can be translated as an adjective. AT: "because he had done good things in Judah for God and for God's temple" (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

translationWords

- [die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly](#)
- [bury, buries, buried, burying, burial](#)
- [city of David](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 24:17-19

UDB:

¹⁷ After Jehoiada died, the leaders of Judah went to Joash, bowed in front of him, and persuaded him to do what they wanted. ¹⁸ So they and the other people stopped worshiping at the temple, and they started worshiping the poles dedicated to the goddess Asherah and other idols. Because they were doing those sinful things, God was very angry with the people of Jerusalem and with the people in other places in Judah. ¹⁹ Although Yahweh sent prophets to persuade them to return to him, and although the prophets testified about the evil things that they had done, the people would not pay attention.

ULB:

¹⁷ Now after the death of Jehoiada, the leaders of Judah came and did honor to the king. Then the king listened to them. ¹⁸ They forsook the house of Yahweh, the God of their ancestors, and worshiped the Asherah gods and the idols. God's anger came on Judah and Jerusalem for this wrongdoing of theirs. ¹⁹ Yet he sent prophets to them to bring them again to himself, Yahweh; the prophets testified against the people, but they refused to listen.

translationNotes

did honor to the king

“gave honor to King Joash” or “honored the king”

Then the king listened to them

The following verse indicates that they wanted the king to serve idols instead of Yahweh, and he agreed. AT: “Then they persuaded the king to do what they wanted” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

God's anger came on Judah and Jerusalem

God's anger is spoken of as something that covered over Judah and Jerusalem. Here the words “Judah” and “Jerusalem” are metonyms for the people who lived there. AT: “God became very angry with the people of Judah and Jerusalem” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

this wrongdoing of theirs

“their sin”

Yet he sent

Here the word “yet” indicates a contrast between God’s anger and his sending of the prophets to give them a chance to repent and avoid judgment.

to himself, Yahweh

The reflexive pronoun emphasizes that Yahweh was the one to whom they should turn. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

they refused to listen

“the people refused to obey”

translationWords

- Judah
- honor, honors
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- forsake, forsakes, forsaken, forsook
- God
- worship
- Asherah, Asherah pole, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth, Ashtoreths
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry
- anger, angered, angry
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 24:20-22

UDB:

²⁰ Then God's Spirit came upon Zechariah son of Jehoiada the high priest. He stood up front of the people and said, "This is what God says: Why are you violating Yahweh's commandments? You will not be able prosper if you do that. Since you have stopped obeying Yahweh, he will stop taking care of you."

²¹ But the people planned to kill Zechariah. And the king permitted them to kill him. They killed him by throwing stones at him in the temple courtyard. ²² King Joash forgot about how Zechariah's father Jehoiada had been kind to him. So he commanded them to kill Jehoiada's son Zechariah, who said as he was dying, "I hope that Yahweh will see what you are doing to me and punish you for doing it."

ULB:

²⁰ The Spirit of God came on Zechariah son of Jehoiada, the priest; Zechariah stood above the people and said to them, "God says this: Why do you transgress the commandments of Yahweh, so that you cannot prosper? Since you have forsaken Yahweh, he has also forsaken you." ²¹ But they plotted against him; at the king's command, they stoned him with stones in the courtyard of the house of Yahweh. ²² In this manner, Joash, the king, ignored the kindness that Jehoiada, Zechariah's father, had done to him. Instead, he killed Jehoiada's son. When Zechariah was dying, he said, "May Yahweh see this and call you to account."

translationNotes

The Spirit of God came on Zechariah

This is an idiom which means that the Spirit of God influenced Zechariah and enabled him to prophesy. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 15:1](#). (See: [Idiom](#))

Zechariah son of Jehoiada

This was not the same man as Zechariah son of Berechiah who wrote the Book of Zechariah.

Why do you transgress the commandments of Yahweh, so that you cannot prosper?

Zechariah asked this rhetorical question to rebuke the people. It can be translated as a statement. AT: "You are transgressing the commandments of Yahweh, so that is why you cannot prosper." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ignored the kindness that Jehoiada, Zechariah's father, had done to him

Joash did not pay attention to the way that Jehoiada, Zechariah's father, had been kind to Joash.

call you to account

“make you pay for the wrong you have done”

translationWords

- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)
- [transgress, transgresses, transgression](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [forsake, forsakes, forsaken, forsook](#)
- [stone, stones, stoning](#)
- [court, courts, courtyard, courtyards](#)
- [Joash](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 24:23-24**UDB:**

²³ Near the end of that year , the army of Aram marched to attack the army of Joash. They invaded Judah and attacked Jerusalem and killed all the leaders of the people. They seized many valuable things and sent them to their king in Damascus, their capital city. ²⁴ The army of Aram that came to Judah was very small, but Yahweh allowed them to defeat the large army of Judah, because he was punishing Joash and the other people of Judah for having abandoned him, the God whom their ancestors worshiped.

ULB:

²³ It came about at the end of the year, that the army of Aram came up against Joash. They came to Judah and Jerusalem; they killed all the leaders of the people and sent all the plunder from them to the king of Damascus. ²⁴ Although the army of the Arameans had come with only a few soldiers, Yahweh gave them victory over a very great army, because Judah had forsaken Yahweh, the God of their ancestors. In this way the Arameans brought judgment on Joash.

translationNotes**It came about**

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

sent all the plunder from them

“sent all the plunder from Judah and Jerusalem”

victory over a very great army

“victory over the much larger army of Judah”

In this way the Arameans brought judgment on Joash

This refers to God’s judgment. This can be stated as an action. AT: “In this way God used the Arameans to judge Joash” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [Aram, Aramean, Arameans, Aramaic](#)
- [Judah](#)

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 24:25-26**UDB:**

²⁵ Before the battle ended, Joash was severely wounded. Then his officials decided to kill him for murdering Zechariah son of Jehoiada the high priest. They killed him while he was in his bed. They buried him in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David, but they did not bury him in the place where the other kings had been buried.

²⁶ Those who conspired to kill him were Zabad son of Shimeath, who was a woman from the Ammon people group, and Jehozabad son of Shimrith, who was a woman from the Moab people group.

ULB:

²⁵ By the time that the Arameans had gone, Joash had been severely wounded. His own servants plotted against him because of the murder of the sons of Jehoiada, the priest. They killed him in his bed, and he died; they buried him in the city of David, but not in the tombs of the kings. ²⁶ These were the persons who plotted against him: Zabad son of Shimeath, an Ammonite woman; and Jehozabad son of Shimrith, a Moabite woman.

translationNotes**Joash had been severely wounded**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “they had severely wounded Joash” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

because of the murder of the sons of Jehoiada

“because he had murdered the sons of Jehoiada”

They killed him in his bed

“The servants killed Joash in his bed”

Zabad ... Jehozabad

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Shimeath, an Ammonite woman ... Shimrith, a Moabite woman

“Shimeath, from the country of Ammon ... Shimrith, from the country of Moab.” These are the names of two women. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- [enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants](#)
- [city of David](#)
- [grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs, burial place](#)
- [Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites](#)
- [Moab, Moabite, Moabites](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 24:27**UDB:**

²⁷ An account of the things that were done by the sons of Joash and the many prophecies about Joash and what he did to repair the temple are written in the commentary on the book of the kings of Judah and Israel. Then after Joash died, Amaziah his son became the king.

ULB:

²⁷ Now the accounts about his sons, the important prophecies that were spoken about him, and the rebuilding of the house of God, see, they are written in the commentary on the book of the kings. Amaziah his son became king in his place.

translationNotes**the accounts about his sons**

“the record of what his sons did”

the important prophecies that were spoken about him

“the important things the prophets spoke about him”

see, they are written

Here “see” alerts the reader to pay special attention to the information that follows.

the commentary on the book of the kings

This is a book which no longer exists.

translationWords

- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh’s house](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)
- [Amaziah](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 25 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Worshiping other gods

When Amaziah trusted God he was successful against Edom. But when he started worshiping the idols of Edom he was badly defeated. (See: [trust](#), [trusts](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#) and [god](#), [false god](#), [gods](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idols](#), [idolater](#), [idolaters](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 25:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 25:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Amaziah was twenty-five years old when he became the king of Judah, and he ruled from Jerusalem for twenty-nine years. His mother was Jehoaddan. She was from Jerusalem. ² Amaziah did many things that pleased Yahweh, but he did not want to do them very much.

ULB:

¹ Amaziah was twenty-five years old when he began to reign; he reigned twenty-nine years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Jehoaddan, of Jerusalem. ² He did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh, but not with a whole heart.

translationNotes**twenty-five years ... twenty-nine years**

“25 years ... 29 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Jehoaddan

This is a woman's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

Here the word “eyes” represents sight, and sight represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 14:02](#). AT: “what Yahweh judged to be right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

but not with a whole heart

Here the phrase “whole heart” is an idiom that means “completely.” AT: “but not completely” (See: [Idiom](#))

translationWords

- [Amaziah](#)
- [reign, reigns, reigned, reigning](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [perfect, perfected, perfecter, perfection, perfectly](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 25:3-4

UDB:

³ As soon as he was in complete control of his kingdom, he caused others to execute the officials who had murdered his father. ⁴ But he did not order their sons to be executed; he obeyed what was in the laws that Moses had written. In those laws Yahweh had commanded, “People must not be executed because of what their children have done, and children must not be executed for what their parents have done. People must be executed only for the sins that they themselves have committed.”

ULB:

³ It came about that as soon as his rule was well established, he killed the servants who had murdered his father, the king. ⁴ But he did not put the children of the murderers to death, but acted according to what was written in the law, in the Book of Moses, as Yahweh had commanded, “The fathers must not die for the children, nor must the children die for the fathers. Instead, every person must die for his own sin.”

translationNotes

It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

the Book of Moses

This is a reference to the books of Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, and Deuteronomy.

translationWords

- rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)

- [2 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 25:5-6

UDB:

⁵ Amaziah summoned the men of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin to come to Jerusalem, and there he put them into groups, each clan in a group by themselves. Then he appointed officers to command each group. Some officers commanded one hundred men, and some commanded one thousand men. They counted the men who were at least twenty years old; altogether there were 300,000 men. They were all men who were ready to be in the army, and able to fight well, using spears and shields. ⁶ Amaziah also hired 100,000 capable soldiers from Israel; he paid almost 3,300 kilograms (or about three and one-third metric tons) of silver for them.

ULB:

⁵ Moreover, Amaziah gathered Judah together, and registered them by their ancestors' houses, under commanders of thousands and commanders of hundreds—all of Judah and Benjamin. He numbered them from twenty years old and upward, and found them to be 300,000 chosen men, able to go to war, who could handle spear and shield. ⁶ He hired also 100,000 fighting men from Israel for one hundred talents of silver.

translationNotes

gathered Judah together

Here “Judah” refers to the people who lived in Judah. AT: “gathered the people of Judah together” (See: [Metonymy](#))

registered them ... numbered them

He had someone write their names on an official list.

by their ancestors' houses

Here the word “houses” is a metonym for the families that lived in them. AT: “by their ancestors' families” (See: [Metonymy](#))

commanders of thousands and commanders of hundreds

Possible meanings are 1) these numbers represent the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders led. AT: “commanders of 1,000 soldiers and commanders of 100 soldiers” or 2) the words translated as “thousands” and “hundreds” do not represent exact numbers, but are the names of larger and smaller military divisions. AT: “commanders of large military divisions and commanders of smaller military divisions” See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 1:2](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

all of Judah and Benjamin

Here “Judah” and “Benjamin” refer to the people who lived in the wider kingdom of Judah. AT: “all the people of Judah and Benjamin” (See: [Metonymy](#))

twenty years old and upward

Here numbers that were larger than twenty are spoken of as if they were higher. AT: “20 years old and older” (See: [Metaphor](#))

found them to be

“learned that there were”

300,000 ... 100,000

“three hundred thousand ... one hundred thousand” (See: [Numbers](#))

chosen men

“capable soldiers” or “skilled warriors”

one hundred talents of silver

“100 talents of silver.” You may convert this to a modern measure. AT: “about thirty-three hundred kilograms of silver” or “about 3,300 kilograms of silver” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Weight](#))

translationWords

- [Judah](#)
- [house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [silver](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 25:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ But a prophet came to him and said, "Your Majesty, you must not allow those soldiers from Israel to march with your soldiers, because Yahweh does not help the people of the tribe of Ephraim or from anywhere else in Israel. ⁸ Even if your soldiers go and fight courageously in battles, God will cause your enemies to defeat you; do not forget that God has the power to help armies or to cause them to be defeated."

ULB:

⁷ But a man of God came to him and said, "King, do not let the army of Israel go with you, for Yahweh is not with Israel—none of the people of Ephraim. ⁸ But even if you do go and are courageous and strong in battle, God will throw you down before the enemy, for God has power to help, and power to throw down."

translationNotes**a man of God**

"a prophet of God"

Israel ... the people of Ephraim

These are two names for the same group people.

throw you down before the enemy ... throw down

Here the prophet speaks of military defeat as if the king would be thrown down on the ground. AT: "enable your enemy to defeat you ... defeat" (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [God](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite, Ephraimites](#)
- [power, powers](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 25:9-10

UDB:

⁹ Amaziah asked that prophet, “If I do that, what about 3,300 kilograms of silver that I paid to hire those soldiers from Israel?”

The prophet replied, “Yahweh is able to pay you back more money than you paid to hire those soldiers.”

¹⁰ So Amaziah told those soldiers from Israel to return home. They left to go home, but they were very angry with the king of Judah for not allowing them to stay and fight.

ULB:

⁹ Amaziah said to the man of God, “But what will we do about the one hundred talents that I have given to the army of Israel?” The man of God answered, “Yahweh is able to give you much more than that.” ¹⁰ So Amaziah separated the army that had come to him from Ephraim; he sent them home again. So their anger was greatly kindled against Judah, and they returned home in fierce anger.

translationNotes

about the one hundred talents

You may convert this to a modern measure. AT: “about the thirty-three hundred kilograms of silver” or “about the 3,300 kilograms of silver” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

the army of Israel ... the army that had come to him from Ephraim

These are two ways to describe the same army.

So their anger was greatly kindled

Here the increase in their anger is spoken of as if it were a growing fire inside them. AT: “So their anger began to burn within them like a fire” (See: [Metaphor](#))

in fierce anger

“very angry”

translationWords

- [Amaziah](#)
- [anger, angered, angry](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 25:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ Then Amaziah became brave, and he led his army to the Valley of Salt. There they killed ten thousand soldiers from the Edom people group. ¹² The army of Judah also captured ten thousand other soldiers, took them to the top of a cliff, and threw them all down over the cliff, with the result that their bodies were all smashed to pieces.

ULB:

¹¹ Amaziah took courage and led his people to go out to the Valley of Salt; there he defeated ten thousand men of Seir. ¹² The army of Judah carried away alive another ten thousand. They took them to the top of the cliff and threw them down from there, so that they were all broken in pieces.

translationNotes

took courage

“became brave”

Valley of Salt

This is an area near the Dead Sea.

ten thousand men ... another ten thousand

“10,000 men ... another 10,000 soldiers” (See: [Numbers](#))

so that they were all broken in pieces

This is an exaggeration to emphasize the thoroughness of the slaughter. AT: “so that they were all completely destroyed” (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

translationWords

- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 25:13**UDB:**

¹³ While that was happening, the soldiers from Israel whom Amaziah had sent home raided cities and towns in Judea, from the city of Samaria to the city of Beth Horon. They killed three thousand people and took away a great amount of valuable things.

ULB:

¹³ But the men of the army which Amaziah sent back, so that they should not go with him to battle, attacked the cities of Judah from Samaria to Beth Horon. They struck down three thousand of the people and took much plunder.

translationNotes**the men of the army which Amaziah sent back**

“the men of the army of Israel which Amaziah sent back to Israel”

Beth Horon

This was a village near Jerusalem in Ephraim. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

struck down

Here “struck down” is an idiom that means they killed them. AT: “killed” (See: [Idiom](#))

three thousand of the people

“3,000 people”

took much plunder

“took away a great amount of valuable things”

translationWords

- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 25:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ When Amaziah returned to Jerusalem after his army had slaughtered the soldiers from Edom, he brought the idols that his enemies had worshiped. He set them up to be his own gods. Then he bowed down to worship them and offered sacrifices to them. ¹⁵ Because of that, Yahweh was very angry with Amaziah. He sent a prophet to him, who said, “Why do you worship these foreign gods who were not even able to save their own people when your army attacked them?”

ULB:

¹⁴ Now it came about, after that Amaziah had returned from the slaughter of the Edomites, that he brought the gods of the people of Seir, and set them up to be his own gods. He bowed down before them and burned incense to them. ¹⁵ So Yahweh’s anger was kindled against Amaziah. He sent a prophet to him, who said, “Why have you sought after the gods of a people who did not even save their own people from your hand?”

translationNotes**Now it came about**

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

the slaughter of the Edomites

“slaughtering the Edomites” or “killing the Edomites”

the gods of the people of Seir

“the gods that the people of Seir worshiped”

bowed down ... burned incense

These are symbolic acts of worship. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Yahweh’s anger was kindled against Amaziah

Here the increase in Yahweh’s anger is spoken of as if it were a growing fire. AT: “Yahweh’s anger grew like a fire against Amaziah” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Why have you sought after the gods of a people who did not even save their own people from your hand?

The prophet uses this rhetorical question to rebuke Amaziah for worshiping the powerless gods of the people he had defeated. Here the word “hand” is a metonym for power. The question can be translated as a statement. AT: “You have worshiped the gods of a people that did not even save their own people from your power, King Amaziah.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metonymy](#))

the gods ... who did not even save their own people

This expresses the popular opinion of the day that the gods determined who won battles.

translationWords

- [slaughter, slaughters, slaughtered, slaughtering](#)
- [Edom, Edomite, Edomites, Idumea](#)
- [god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry](#)
- [bow, bows, bowed, bowing, bow down, bows down, bowed down, bowing down](#)
- [incense, incenses](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 25:16

UDB:

¹⁶ While he was still speaking, the king said to him, “We certainly did not appoint you to be one of my advisors. So stop talking! If you say anything more, I will tell my soldiers to kill you!”

So the prophet said, “I know that God has determined to get rid of you, because you have begun to worship idols, and have not heeded my advice.” Then the prophet said nothing more.

ULB:

¹⁶ It came about that as the prophet was speaking with him, the king said to him, “Have we made you an advisor to the king? Stop! Why should you be killed?” Then the prophet stopped and said, “I know that God has decided to destroy you because you have done this deed and have not listened to my advice.”

translationNotes

It came about that

This phrase is used here to mark the next important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

Have we made you an advisor to the king? Stop! Why should you be killed?

The king used these rhetorical questions to rebuke the prophet for speaking against him. The questions can be translated as statements. AT: “We certainly did not appoint you to be one of my advisors. So stop talking! If you say anything more, I will tell my soldiers to kill you!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

you have done this deed

This refers back to Amaziah worshiping the gods of the Edomites in [2 Chronicles 25:14](#).

translationWords

- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 25:17

UDB:

¹⁷ Some time later Amaziah, the king of Judah, consulted his advisors. Then he sent a message to Jehoash, the king of Israel. He wrote, “Come and meet me face to face in battle.”

ULB:

¹⁷ Then Amaziah king of Judah consulted with advisors and sent messengers to Jehoash son of Jehoahaz son of Jehu, king of Israel, saying, “Come, let us meet each other face to face in battle.”

translationNotes

Jehoash ... Jehoahaz

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

meet each other face to face

This idiom means they would both be there in person, rather than communicating through messages or other people. AT: “meet each other in person” (See: [Idiom](#))

translationWords

- [send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out](#)
- [messenger, messengers](#)
- [Jehu](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 25:18-19

UDB:

¹⁸ But Jehoash replied this to King Amaziah: "One time a thistle growing in the mountains in Lebanon sent a message to a cedar tree, saying, 'Give your daughter to my son in order that he can marry her.' But a wild animal in Lebanon came along and trampled the thistle under his feet. ¹⁹ What I mean is that you are saying to yourself that your army has defeated the army of Edom, so you have become very proud. You can be proud of your victory, but you should not fight me. If you do, you will only make trouble for yourself. I will defeat you, and Judah with you."

ULB:

¹⁸ But Jehoash the king of Israel sent messengers back to Amaziah king of Judah, saying, "A thistle that was in Lebanon sent a message to a cedar in Lebanon, saying, 'Give your daughter to my son for a wife,' but a wild beast in Lebanon walked by and trampled down the thistle. ¹⁹ You have said, 'See, I have struck down Edom,' and your heart has lifted you up. Take pride in your victory, but stay at home, for why should you cause yourself trouble and fall, both you and Judah with you?"

translationNotes

A thistle that was in Lebanon ... trampled down the thistle

This message is in the form of a parable. The worthless thistle represents Amaziah, and the cedar represents Jehoash. The trampling of the thistle by the beast expresses that something bad will happen to the thistle, and it will be powerless to stop it. The point of the parable is that Amaziah was foolish to challenge Jehoash. (See: [Parables](#))

thistle

This is a small, worthless plant with small, sharp thorns.

cedar

a very large type of tree

your heart has lifted you up

This is an idiom that means he had become proud. AT: "you have become proud" (See: [Idiom](#))

why should you cause yourself trouble and fall, both you and Judah with you?

Jehoash used this rhetorical question to warn Amaziah not to fight with him. It can be translated as a statement. AT: "you should not cause yourself trouble and fall, both you and Judah with you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

fall

Here “fall” is a euphemism for “die.” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Judah

Here “Judah” is a metonym for the people who lived in Judah. AT: “the people of Judah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [Lebanon](#)
- [beast, beasts](#)
- [proud, proudly, pride, prideful](#)
- [trouble, troubles, troubled, troubling, troublemaker, troublesome](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 25:20-22

UDB:

²⁰ But Amaziah paid no attention to Jehoash's message. This happened because God wanted Jehoash's army to defeat them, because they were worshiping the gods of Edom. ²¹ So Jehoash's army attacked. Their two armies faced each other at the city of Beth Shemesh in Judah. ²² The army of Judah was badly defeated by the army of Israel, and all the soldiers of Judah fled to their homes.

ULB:

²⁰ But Amaziah would not listen, because this event was from God, so he might put the people of Judah into the hand of their enemies, because they had sought advice from the gods of Edom. ²¹ So Jehoash, king of Israel, attacked; he and Amaziah, king of Judah, met each other face to face at Beth Shemesh, which belongs to Judah. ²² Judah was struck down before Israel, and every man fled home.

translationNotes

this event was from God

“God wanted this event to happen”

into the hand of their enemies

Here “hand” refers to power to defeat. AT: “into the power of their enemies” or “so their enemies could defeat them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

met each other face to face

This idiom means they were both at the battle in person, rather than only sending other people to fight. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 25:17](#). AT: “met each other in person” (See: [Idiom](#))

Beth Shemesh, which belongs to Judah

The city of Beth Shemesh was located in Judah.

Judah was struck down before Israel

Here “Judah” and “Israel” are metonyms for the soldiers of Judah and Israel, and “struck down” is an idiom that means “defeated.” This can be stated in active form. AT: “The soldiers of Israel defeated the soldiers of Judah” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

every man

This is a generalization that refers to the soldiers of Judah who survived the battle. AT: “the surviving soldiers of Judah” (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

translationWords

- [God](#)
- [hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of](#)
- [adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies](#)
- [Beth Shemesh](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 25:23-24**UDB:**

²³ King Jehoash's army also captured King Amaziah there. Then he brought Amaziah to Jerusalem, and his soldiers tore down the wall that was around the city, from the Ephraim Gate to the Corner Gate. That was a section that was one-hundred and eighty meters long. ²⁴ His soldiers also carried away the gold, silver, and other valuable objects from the temple that the descendants of Obed Edom had been guarding. They also took away the valuable things in the palace, and they took to Samaria some prisoners whom they had captured.

ULB:

²³ Jehoash, king of Israel, captured Amaziah son of Jehoash son of Ahaziah, king of Judah, at Beth Shemesh. He brought him to Jerusalem and tore down the wall of Jerusalem from the Ephraim Gate to the Corner Gate, four hundred cubits in distance. ²⁴ He took all the gold and silver, all the objects that were found in the house of God with Obed Edom, and the valuable things in the king's house, with hostages also, and returned to Samaria.

translationNotes**four hundred cubits in distance**

A cubit is 46 centimeters. AT: "400 cubits in distance" or "a length of 180 meters" (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Distance](#))

with Obed Edom

Here "Obed Edom" refers to this man's descendants. AT: "under the care of the descendants of Obed Edom" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

the king's house

"the royal palace"

translationWords

- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Amaziah](#)
- [Ahaziah](#)
- [Beth Shemesh](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

- [Ephraim, Ephraimite, Ephraimites](#)
- [gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 25:25-26

UDB:

²⁵ King Jehoash of Israel died, and King Amaziah of Judah lived for fifteen years after that. ²⁶ An account of all the other things that Amaziah did while he was the king of Judah is written in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel.

ULB:

²⁵ Amaziah son of Joash, king of Judah, lived fifteen years after the death of Jehoash, son of Jehoahaz, king of Israel. ²⁶ As for the other matters concerning Amaziah, first and last, behold, are they not written in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel?

translationNotes

As for the other matters ... are they not written in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel?

This rhetorical question is used to remind the reader that what happened to Amaziah is well-known. It can be translated as a statement. AT: “All of the matters concerning Amaziah, behold, are written in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

the other matters concerning Amaziah, first and last

Here the phrase “first and last” refers to those extremes and everything in between. AT: “all the matters concerning Amaziah” (See: [Merism](#))

behold

This alerts the reader to pay special attention to the truth of what follows.

the book of the kings of Judah and Israel

This refers to a book that no longer exists.

translationWords

- [Joash](#)
- [die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 25:27-28**UDB:**

²⁷ From the time that Amaziah started to disobey Yahweh, some men in Jerusalem planned to kill him. He was able to escape to the city of Lachish, but those who wanted to kill him sent another group of people to Lachish and killed him there. ²⁸ They put his corpse on a horse and brought it back to Jerusalem and buried it where his ancestors had been buried in what is called the city of Judah.

ULB:

²⁷ Now from the time that Amaziah turned away from following Yahweh, they began to make a conspiracy against him in Jerusalem. He fled to Lachish, but they sent men after him to Lachish and killed him there. ²⁸ They brought him back on horses and buried him with his ancestors in the city of Judah.

translationNotes**turned away from following Yahweh**

Here “turn away” is an idiom that means he no longer obeyed Yahweh. AT: “stopped obeying Yahweh” or “started to disobey Yahweh” (See: [Idiom](#))

they began to make a conspiracy ... they sent ... They brought

The text does not state to whom “they” refers. Retain the generic “they” in your translation if possible.

make a conspiracy against him

The abstract noun “conspiracy” can be stated as an action. AT: “conspire against him” or “plot against him” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Lachish

a city in Judah (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

brought him back

“brought back his body”

city of Judah

This was another name for Jerusalem, which was also called the city of David.

translationWords

- Amaziah
- turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back
- Yahweh
- horse, horses, warhorse, warhorses, horseback
- bury, buries, buried, burying, burial
- Judah

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 26 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Uzzah the leper

Uzzah was powerful when he followed Yahweh. When he entered the temple to burn incense like a priest, God made him a leper. Lepers could not properly worship Yahweh because they were always unclean. (See: [temple](#), [priest](#), [priests](#), [priesthood](#) and)

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 26:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 26:1-3

UDB:

¹ All the people took Uzziah and made him their king, in the place of his father Amaziah. Uzziah was sixteen years old at that time. ² While he was the king, after his father King Amaziah had died, he had his workers rebuild the city of Elath and brought that city under the protection of Judah.

³ Uzziah ruled in Jerusalem for fifty-two years. His mother was Jecoliah; she was from Jerusalem.

ULB:

¹ All the people of Judah took Uzziah, who was sixteen years old, and made him king in place of his father Amaziah. ² It was he who rebuilt Elath and restored it to Judah. After that the king slept with his ancestors. ³ Uzziah was sixteen years old when he began to reign. He reigned for fifty-two years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Jecoliah; she was from Jerusalem.

translationNotes

All the people of Judah took Uzziah, who was sixteen years old, and made him king in place of his father Amaziah

The word "All" is a generalization. Some people may not have wanted him to be king. AT: "The people of Judah took the 16 year-old Uzziah and made him king after his father, Amaziah" (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

sixteen ... fifty-two

"16 ... 52" (See: [Numbers](#))

It was he who rebuilt Elath

Uzziah did not do this alone. AT: "It was he who ordered Elath to be rebuilt" or "It was he who supervised the rebuilding of Elath" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Elath

a city in Judah (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

restored it to Judah

"returned it to Judah." This means that his army captured the city so that now it belonged to Judah again.

slept with his ancestors

This is a polite way to say he died. (See: [Euphemism](#))

translationWords

- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [Uzziah, Azariah](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)
- [Amaziah](#)
- [restore, restores, restored, restoration](#)
- [reign, reigns, reigned, reigning](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 26:4-5

UDB:

⁴ Uzziah did the things that Yahweh said were good, like his father Amaziah had done. ⁵ He chose to do what pleased God during the time that Zechariah the priest was living. Zechariah taught him to revere God, and as long as Uzziah followed Yahweh, God gave him success in all he did.

ULB:

⁴ He did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh, following the example of his father, Amaziah, in everything. ⁵ He set himself to seek God in the days of Zechariah, who gave him instructions for obeying God. As long as he sought Yahweh, God made him prosper.

translationNotes

what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 14:2](#). AT: “what Yahweh judges to be right” or “what Yahweh considers to be right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

following the example of his father, Amaziah, in everything

This implies that his father had done what was right in God’s eyes. AT: “just as his father, Amaziah, had done” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

in everything

This is a generalization. AT: “in the same way” (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

He set himself to seek God

Here “set himself” is a metaphor for being determined to do something. Seeking God represents choosing to know, worship, and obey him. AT: “He was determined to obey God” (See: [Metaphor](#))

in the days of Zechariah

Here “the days of Zechariah” is a metonym referring to the time period during which Zechariah was priest. AT: “when Zechariah was priest” (See: [Metonymy](#))

As long as he sought Yahweh

“During the whole time that he sought Yahweh”

sought Yahweh

Seeking Yahweh represents choosing to know, worship, and obey him. AT: “chose to obey Yahweh”
(See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [Zechariah \(OT\)](#)
- [obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient](#)
- [prosper, prospered, prospering, prosperity, prosperous](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 26:6-8

UDB:

⁶ Uzziah and his army went to attack the army of Philistia. They tore down the walls of the cities of Gath, Jabneh, and Ashdod. Then they rebuilt the cities near Ashdod and in other places in Philistia. ⁷ God helped them to fight the army of Philistia and the Arabs who lived in the city of Gur Baal, and the descendants of Meun who had come to that area from Edom. ⁸ Even the Ammon people group paid taxes to Uzziah each year. So Uzziah became famous as far as the border of Egypt, because he had become very powerful.

ULB:

⁶ Uzziah went out and fought against the Philistines. He broke down the city walls of Gath, Jabneh, and Ashdod; he built cities in the country of Ashdod and among the Philistines. ⁷ God helped him against the Philistines, against the Arabians who lived in Gurbaal, and against the Meunites. ⁸ The Ammonites paid tribute to Uzziah, and his fame spread, even to the entrance of Egypt, because he was becoming more powerful.

translationNotes

Uzziah went out and fought against the Philistines

Here “Uzziah” represents himself and his army that he led. AT: “Uzziah led his army out to fight against the Philistines” or “Uzziah and his army went out and fought against the Philistines” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

He broke down ... he built cities ... God helped him

Here the pronouns “He” and “him” represent Uzziah and his army. AT: “Uzziah and his army broke down ... they built cities ... God helped them” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Jabneh

This was a town in northern Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the country of Ashdod

“the country surrounding Ashdod” or “near Ashdod”

Gurbaal

This was a town in Arabia. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Meunites

This is likely people who moved to that area from the kingdom of Maon near Mount Seir. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

his fame spread, even to the entrance of Egypt

His fame spreading is a metaphor for people in various places learning about him. AT: “people who lived even as far away as the border of Egypt learned about the things he was doing”

translationWords

- [Philistines](#)
- [Gath, Gittite, Gittites](#)
- [Ashdod, Azotus](#)
- [Arabia, Arabian, Arabians](#)
- [Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites](#)
- [tribute](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians](#)
- [power, powers](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 26:9-10

UDB:

⁹ Uzziah's workers built watchtowers in Jerusalem at the Corner Gate, at the Valley Gate, and at the place where the wall turns, and they placed weapons in those towers. ¹⁰ They also built watchtowers in the wilderness and dug many wells. They did that to provide water for a lot of the king's cattle that were in the foothills and in the plains. Uzziah was very interested in farming, so he also stationed workers to take care of his fields, vineyards in the hills, and in the fertile areas.

ULB:

⁹ In addition, Uzziah built towers in Jerusalem at the Corner Gate, at the Valley Gate, and at the turning of the wall, and fortified them. ¹⁰ He built watchtowers in the wilderness and dug many cisterns, for he had much cattle, in the lowlands as well as in the plains. He had farmers and vine growers in the hill country and in the fruitful fields, for he loved farming.

translationNotes

Uzziah built towers

Here "Uzziah" represents the workers he had commanded to build the towers. AT: "Uzziah had his workers build towers" or "Uzziah's workers built towers" (See: [Metonymy](#))

He built watchtowers ... and dug many cisterns

Uzziah commanded his workers, and they did these things. AT: "He had his workers build watchtowers ... and dig many cisterns" or "They built watchtowers ... and dug many cisterns" (See: [Metonymy](#))

he had much cattle ... He had farmers ... he loved farming

The word "he" refers to Uzziah.

translationWords

- watchtower, watchtowers, tower
- gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways
- desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses
- cistern, cisterns, well, wells
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- vine, vines
- fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful
- love, loves, loving, loved

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 26:11-13

UDB:

¹¹ Uzziah's army was trained for fighting battles. They were in groups that were always ready to go into battles. Jeiel, the king's secretary, and Maaseiah, one of the army officers, counted the men and placed them in groups. Hananiah, one of the king's officials, was their commander. ¹² The total number of the family leaders who led the strongest soldiers in battle was 2,600 in number. ¹³ In the groups that those leaders commanded there was a total of 307,500 well-trained soldiers. It was a very powerful army, ready to fight the king's enemies.

ULB:

¹¹ In addition, Uzziah had an army of fighting men who went out to war in groups which were organized by their number that were counted by Jeiel, the scribe, and Maaseiah, the officer, under the authority of Hananiah, one of the king's commanders. ¹² The whole number of the leaders of the families who led the mighty men was 2,600. ¹³ Under their hand was an army of 307,500 men that made war with mighty power to help the king against the enemy.

translationNotes

Jeiel ... Maaseiah, the officer ... Hananiah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the leaders of the families who led the mighty men

“the family leaders who led the mighty men”

2,600 ... 307,500

“two thousand six hundred ... three hundred seven thousand five hundred” (See: [Numbers](#))

Under their hand was an army

Here “their hand” represents their authority. AT: “Under their authority was an army” or “They commanded an army” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [scribe, scribes](#)
- [authority, authorities](#)
- [commander, commanders](#)

- head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded
- house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers
- might, mighty, mightier, mightily
- power, powers
- adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 26:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ Uzziah gave to each soldier a shield, a spear, a helmet, a vest made of iron plates, a bow and arrows, and a sling for throwing stones. ¹⁵ In Jerusalem his skilled workers made machines to put on the watchtowers and on the corners of the walls, to shoot arrows and to hurl large stones. He became very famous even in distant places, because God helped him very much and enabled him to become very powerful.

ULB:

¹⁴ Uzziah prepared for them—for all the army—shields, spears, helmets, coats of mail, bows, and stones for slinging. ¹⁵ In Jerusalem he built machines that were designed by skillful men to be on the towers and on the battlements to shoot arrows and large stones. His fame spread to distant lands, for he was greatly helped and so he became very powerful.

translationNotes

Uzziah prepared for them

“Uzziah provided for them”

helmets

A helmet is a protective head covering.

coats of mail

This is a covering for the body made of metal links or chains.

he built machines that were designed by skillful men

Here “he built machines” represents Uzziah commanding his workers to build them. AT: “his workers built machines that were designed by skillful men” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the battlements

These were the corners of the city walls where soldiers could fight from.

he was greatly helped

This can be stated in active form. AT: “God greatly helped him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- shield, shields, shielded
- spear, spears, spearmen
- bow and arrow, bows and arrows

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 26:16-18

UDB:

¹⁶ But because Uzziah was very powerful, he became very proud, and that caused him to be punished. He disobeyed what Yahweh his God had commanded. He went into the temple to burn incense on the altar where God had said that only the priests should burn incense. ¹⁷ Azariah, the high priest, and eighty other brave priests followed him into the temple. ¹⁸ They rebuked him and said to him, “Uzziah, it is not right for you to burn incense to Yahweh because you are not set apart to serve as a priest, and only a priest can burn incense to Yahweh. The priests are the descendants of Aaron our first high priest, and you are not one of them! You must leave immediately, because you have disobeyed Yahweh our God, and he will not honor you for what you have done!”

ULB:

¹⁶ But when Uzziah had become powerful, his heart was lifted up so that he acted corruptly; he trespassed against Yahweh, his God, for he went into the house of Yahweh to burn incense on the altar of incense. ¹⁷ Azariah, the priest, went in after him, and with him eighty priests of Yahweh, who were brave men. ¹⁸ They resisted Uzziah, the king, and said to him, “It is not for you, Uzziah, to burn incense to Yahweh, but for the priests, the sons of Aaron, who are consecrated to burn incense. Go out of the holy place, for you have been unfaithful and you will not be honored by Yahweh God.”

translationNotes

his heart was lifted up

Here the heart being lifted up represents pride. AT: “he became proud” (See: [Metaphor](#))

with him eighty priests of Yahweh, who were brave men

The verb “went” is understood from the previous phrase. AT: “with him went eighty priests of Yahweh, who were brave men” or “eighty priests of Yahweh, who were brave men, went with him” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

It is not for you, Uzziah, to burn incense to Yahweh

“It is not right for you, Uzziah, to burn incense to Yahweh” or “Uzziah, you do not have the right to burn incense to Yahweh”

the sons of Aaron

Here “sons” represents descendants. AT: “the descendants of Aaron” (See: [Metonymy](#))

who are consecrated to burn incense

This can be stated in active form. AT: “whom God has consecrated to burn incense” or “whom God has chosen to burn incense”

translationWords

- heart, hearts
- trespass, trespasses, trespassed
- Yahweh
- God
- house of God, Yahweh’s house
- incense, incenses
- Azariah
- priest, priests, priesthood
- Uzziah, Azariah
- Aaron
- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- holy place
- honor, honors

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 26:19-20

UDB:

¹⁹ Now Uzziah was holding in his hand a pan for burning incense, and he became very angry with the priests. While he was expressing his anger, while he stood beside the altar of incense in front of the priests, suddenly spots of leprosy appeared on his forehead. ²⁰ When Azariah the high priest and all the other priests who were there looked at him, they saw the leprosy on his forehead, so they quickly took him outside. And truly the king was eager to leave the temple, because he knew that it was Yahweh who had caused him to have that leprosy, and he did not want it to become worse.

ULB:

¹⁹ Then Uzziah became angry. He was holding a censer in his hand to burn incense. While he was angry with the priests, leprosy broke out on his forehead before the priests in the house of Yahweh, beside the altar of incense. ²⁰ Azariah the chief priest and all the priests looked at him, and, behold, he had become leprous on his forehead. They quickly drove him out of there. Indeed, he hurried to go out, because Yahweh had struck him.

translationNotes

censer

This is a special pan or bowl used for burning incense.

behold, he had become leprous

The word “behold” here shows that the priests were surprised by what they saw.

They quickly drove him out of there

“They quickly forced him out of there” or “They quickly made him leave”

Yahweh had struck him

This speaks of Yahweh making him sick as if Yahweh had hit him. AT: “Yahweh had made him ill” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- anger, angered, angry
- leper, lepers, leprosy, leprous

- altar, altars
- chief priests

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 26:21**UDB:**

²¹ King Uzziah had leprosy until he died. Because he had leprosy, he lived in a house that was not near other houses, and he was not allowed to enter the courtyard of the temple. His son Jotham supervised the palace and ruled the people of Judah.

ULB:

²¹ Uzziah, the king, was a leper to the day of his death and lived in a separate house since he was a leper, for he was cut off from the house of Yahweh. Jotham, his son, was over the king's house and ruled the people of the land.

translationNotes**to the day of his death**

“until he died” or “the rest of his life”

lived in a separate house

This indicates that he lived away from other houses and other people.

he was cut off from the house of Yahweh

Here being “cut off” from Yahweh’s house represents being excluded from the temple. AT: “he was excluded from the house of Yahweh” or “he was not allowed to go to the temple” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Jotham, his son, was over the king's house

Here being over something represents having responsibility or authority for it. AT: “Jotham, his son, was responsible for the king's house” or “Jotham, his son, was in charge of the palace” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the king's house

This refers to the king's palace, which the king was no longer living in.

translationWords

- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- cut off, cuts off, cutting off
- Jotham
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 26:22-23

UDB:

²² A record of all the other things that Uzziah did while he was the king of Judah was written by the prophet Isaiah son of Amoz. ²³ Because Uzziah was a leper, when he died they would not bury him in the royal tombs. Instead, they buried him in a nearby cemetery that the kings owned. Then his son Jotham became the king of Judah.

ULB:

²² The other matters concerning Uzziah, from first to last, were recorded by the prophet Isaiah son of Amoz. ²³ So Uzziah slept with his ancestors; they buried him with his ancestors in a burial ground that belonged to the kings, for they said, "He is a leper." Jotham, his son, became king in his place.

translationNotes

The other matters concerning Uzziah, from first to last, were recorded by the prophet Isaiah son of Amoz

This can be stated in active form. AT: "As for the other matters concerning Uzziah, from first to last, the prophet Isaiah son of Amoz recorded them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

from first to last

This phrase represents the whole time of Uzziah's reign. AT: "from the beginning of his reign to the end of his reign" (See: [Merism](#))

Amoz

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

So Uzziah slept with his ancestors

This is polite way to say that he died. AT: "So Uzziah died" (See: [Euphemism](#))

they buried him with his ancestors

"the people buried him near his ancestors" or "they buried him where his ancestors were buried"

Jotham, his son, became king in his place

"Jotham, his son, became king after Uzziah"

translationWords

- [Isaiah](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs, burial place](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 27 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Trust in Yahweh

Jotham was able to conquer the people of Ammon because he obeyed the Lord. For Yahweh, trust in Yahweh is the key to victory in battle. (See: [trust](#), [trusts](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 27:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 27:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Jotham was twenty-five years old when he became the king of Judah. He ruled from Jerusalem for sixteen years. His mother was Jerushah, the daughter of the priest Zadok. ² Jotham obeyed Yahweh and did what Yahweh approved. He followed the example of his father Uzziah in everything he did. (He did not, however, go into the Temple of Yahweh to burn incense as his father had done.) Yet the people of Judah continued to do the things that showed how sinful they had become.

ULB:

¹ Jotham was twenty-five years old when he began to reign; he reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Jerushah; she was the daughter of Zadok. ² He did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh, following the example of his father, Uzziah, in everything. He also refrained from going into the temple of Yahweh. But the people were still behaving in evil ways.

translationNotes**twenty-five years old ... sixteen years**

“25 years old ... 16 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Jerushah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

He did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

The eyes here represent seeing, and seeing represents judgment. Yahweh saw and approved of Jotham's actions. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 14:2](#). AT: “He did what Yahweh judged to be right” or “He did what Yahweh considered to be right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

in everything

“in everything he did”

translationWords

- [Jotham](#)
- [reign, reigns, reigned, reigning](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Zadok](#)

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Uzziah, Azariah](#)
- [temple](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 27 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 27 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 27:3-4**UDB:**

³ Jotham's workers rebuilt the Upper Gate of the temple, and they did a lot of work to repair the wall near the hill of Ophel. ⁴ They built cities in the hills of Judah, and they built forts and towers for defense in the forests.

ULB:

³ He built the upper gate of the house of Yahweh, and on the hill of Ophel he built much. ⁴ Moreover he built cities in the hill country of Judah, and in the forests he built castles and towers.

translationNotes**He built the upper gate ... he built much ... he built cities ... he built castles and towers**

Since Jotham was king, he may have had his workers build these things. AT: "He had his workers build the upper gate ... he had his workers build many things ... he had his workers build cities ... he had his workers build castles and towers" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the hill of Ophel

This is a hill in Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- [gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [watchtower, watchtowers, tower](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 27 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 27 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 27:5

UDB:

⁵ During the time that he was the king of Judah, his army attacked and defeated the army of the Ammon people group. Then, every year during the next three years, he required them to pay to him about three and one-third metric tons of silver, 2,200 kiloliters of wheat, and 2,200 kiloliters of barley.

ULB:

⁵ He fought also with the king of the people of Ammon and defeated them. In that same year, the people of Ammon gave him one hundred talents of silver, ten thousand measures of wheat, ten thousand measures of barley. The people of Ammon gave him the same in the second and third years.

translationNotes

He fought also with the king of the people of Ammon

You may need to translate so that the reader understands that Jothan led his army to fight. AT: “He also led his army to fight with the king of the people of Ammon” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

with the king of the people of Ammon

You may need to translate so that the reader understands that the king of Ammon led his army to fight. AT: “with the king of Ammon and his army” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

one hundred talents of silver

You may convert this to a modern measure. A “talent” is equivalent to 33 kilograms. AT: “100 talents of silver” or “3,300 kilograms of silver” (See: [Biblical Weight and Numbers](#))

ten thousand measures of wheat

You may convert this to a modern measure. The word translated here as “measure” is “cor” and is equivalent to 220 liters. AT: “10,000 measures of wheat” or “2,200 kiloliters of wheat” (See: [Biblical Volume and Numbers](#))

ten thousand measures of barley

You may convert this to a modern measure. The word translated here as “measure” is “cor” and is equivalent to 220 liters. AT: “10,000 measures of barley” or “2,200 kiloliters of barley” (See: [Biblical Volume and Numbers](#))

in the second and third years

“in the second and third years after he defeated them”

translationWords

- [Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites](#)
- [wheat](#)
- [barley](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 27 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 27 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 27:6-7

UDB:

⁶ Jotham faithfully obeyed Yahweh his God, and as a result he became a very powerful king.

⁷ A record of everything else that Jotham did during the time that he was the king, including the wars that his army fought, is written in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel.

ULB:

⁶ So Jotham became powerful because he walked firmly before Yahweh his God. ⁷ As for the other matters concerning Jotham, all his wars, and his ways, see, they are written in the book of the kings of Israel and Judah.

translationNotes

he walked firmly before Yahweh his God

Jotham's actions and lifestyle are spoken of as if they were a path upon which he walked. That he walked firmly means that he was devoted to living in this way. AT: "he faithfully obeyed Yahweh his God" (See: [Metaphor](#))

his ways

Jotham's actions are spoken of as if they were a path upon which he walked. AT: "the things that he did" (See: [Metaphor](#))

see

"Indeed." The word "see" here adds emphasis to what follows.

they are written in the book

This can be stated in active form. AT: "they are in the book" or "you can read of them in the book" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the book of the kings of Israel and Judah

This is a book that no longer exists.

translationWords

- [Jotham](#)
- [power, powers](#)
- [walk, walks, walked, walking](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 27 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 27 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 27:8-9

UDB:

⁸ After he had ruled Judah for sixteen years, he died when he was forty-one years old. ⁹ He was buried in Jerusalem, and his son Ahaz became the next king of Judah.

ULB:

⁸ He was twenty-five years old when he began to reign; he reigned for sixteen years in Jerusalem. ⁹ Jotham slept with his ancestors, and they buried him in the city of David. Ahaz, his son, became king in his place.

translationNotes

twenty-five years old ... sixteen years

“25 years old ... 16 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Jotham slept with his ancestors

Jotham dying is spoken of as if he had fallen asleep. AT: “Jotham died” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

they buried him

“people buried him”

became king in his place

The phrase “in his place” is a metaphor meaning “instead of him.” AT: “became king instead of Jotham” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [bury, buries, buried, burying, burial](#)
- [city of David](#)
- [Ahaz](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 27 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 27 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 28 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

King Ahaz's idolatry

Judah was defeated by all of the neighboring countries because King Ahaz was worshiping all sorts of foreign gods. (See: [god](#), [false god](#), [gods](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idols](#), [idolater](#), [idolaters](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 28:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 28:1-2

UDB:

¹ Ahaz was twenty years old when he became the king of Judah. He ruled from Jerusalem for sixteen years. His ancestor King David had been a good king, but Ahaz was not like David. He constantly disobeyed Yahweh ² and was as sinful as the kings of Israel had been. He made idols of the god Baal by having craftsmen cast them in metal.

ULB:

¹ Ahaz was twenty years old when he began to reign, and he reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem. He did not do what was right in the eyes of Yahweh, as David his ancestor had done. ² Instead, he walked in the ways of the kings of Israel; he also made cast metal figures for the Baals.

translationNotes

twenty years old ... sixteen years

“20 years old ... 16 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

The eyes here represent seeing, and seeing represents judgment. Yahweh saw and did not approve of Ahaz’s actions. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 14:2](#). AT: “what Yahweh judged to be right” or “what Yahweh considered to be right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

he walked in the ways of the kings of Israel

Walking represents behavior and actions. AT: “he acted the same way that the kings of Israel had acted” or “he did the things that the kings of Israel had done” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [Ahaz](#)
- [reign, reigns, reigned, reigning](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [walk, walks, walked, walking](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures](#)
- [Baal](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 28:3-4**UDB:**

³ He burned incense in the Valley of Ben Hinnom. He even killed some of his own sons in fires as sacrifices. That imitated the disgusting customs that the people groups who previously lived there had done, people whom Yahweh had drive out when the Israelites were advancing through the land. ⁴ He offered sacrifices to idols at the houses built upon hilltops and under every big green tree.

ULB:

³ In addition, he burned incense in the Valley of Ben Hinnom and he caused his children to pass through the fire, according to the idolatrous practices of the people that Yahweh forced out of their land before the people of Israel. ⁴ He sacrificed and burned incense at the high places and on the hills and under every green tree.

translationNotes**the Valley of Ben Hinnom**

This is a valley in Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

before the people of Israel

The people of those nations fled as the people of Israel moved into the land. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: “before the people of Israel who moved into the land” or “as the people of Israel moved into the land” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the high places and on the hills and under every green tree

These are places where the people of the other nations worshiped their false gods.

under every green tree

God wanted his people to offer sacrifices to him in Jerusalem. The word “every” here is an exaggeration to show how determined King Ahaz was to disobey God by offering sacrifices in many other places instead. AT: “under many green trees” or “under many green trees around the country” (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

translationWords

- [incense, incenses](#)

- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Israel, Israelites
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- high place, high places

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 28:5-6

UDB:

⁵ Therefore Yahweh his God allowed his army to be defeated by the army of the king of Aram. They captured many soldiers of Judah and took them as prisoners to Damascus. The army of the king of Israel also defeated the army of Judah and killed very many of their soldiers. ⁶ In one day the army of Remaliah's son, King Pekah of Israel, killed 120,000 fine soldiers in Judah. That happened because the people of Judah had abandoned Yahweh, the God whom their ancestors worshiped.

ULB:

⁵ Therefore Yahweh the God of Ahaz gave him into the hand of the king of Aram. The Arameans defeated him and carried away from him a great crowd of prisoners, bringing them to Damascus. Ahaz was also given into the hand of the king of Israel who defeated him in a great slaughter. ⁶ For Pekah son of Remaliah in one day killed 120,000 soldiers in Judah and all of them were powerful men, because they had forsaken Yahweh the God of their ancestors.

translationNotes

Yahweh the God of Ahaz gave him into the hand of the king of Aram

Here the metonym "hand" represents power. God enabling the army of the king of Aram to defeat Ahaz and his army is spoken of as if God had put Ahaz in the hand of the king of Aram. AT: "Yahweh the God of Ahaz enabled the king of Aram to defeat Ahaz" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

carried away from him

"carried away from Ahaz." Here "him" represents Ahaz's army. AT: "carried away from Ahaz's army" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Ahaz was also given into the hand of the king of Israel who defeated him

Here the metonym "hand" represents power. God enabling the army of the king of Israel to defeat Ahaz and his army is spoken of as if God had put Ahaz in the hand of the king of Israel. This can be stated in active form. AT: "Yahweh also enabled the king of Israel to defeat Ahaz" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Pekah son of Remaliah

This was the king of Israel. Both "Pekah" and "Remaliah" are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

120,000 soldiers

“one hundred twenty thousand soldiers” (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [Ahaz](#)
- [hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of](#)
- [Aram, Aramean, Arameans, Aramaic](#)
- [prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons, imprison, imprisons, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonments](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [slaughter, slaughters, slaughtered, slaughtering](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [forsake, forsakes, forsaken, forsook](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 28:7-8

UDB:

⁷ Zicri, a warrior from the tribe of Ephraim, killed King Ahaz's son Maaseiah, Azrikam, who was in charge of the palace, and Elkanah, the king's assistant. ⁸ The soldiers of Israel captured 200,000 of the people of Judah, including many wives and sons and daughters of the soldiers of Judah. They also seized and took back to Samaria many valuable things.

ULB:

⁷ Zicri, a powerful man from Ephraim, killed Maaseiah the king's son, Azrikam, the official over the palace, and Elkanah, who was next to the king. ⁸ The army of Israel took captive from their relatives 200,000 wives, sons, and daughters. They also took much plunder, which they carried back to Samaria.

translationNotes

Zicri ... Maaseiah ... Azrikam ... Elkanah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

a powerful man

This is an idiom that refers to a mighty warrior. AT: "a mighty warrior" (See: [Idiom](#))

who was next to the king

This idiom means that this man was the king's assistant who was second in command. AT: "who was the king's second in command" (See: [Idiom](#))

The army of Israel took captive from their relatives

"From their own relatives, the army of Israel took captive." The word "their" refers to the army of Israel. The narrator speaks of the people of Judah as the relatives of the people of Israel.

200,000 wives, sons, and daughters

"two hundred thousand wives, sons, and daughters" (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- Ephraim, Ephraimite, Ephraimites
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- palace, palaces
- Israel, Israelites
- Samaria, Samaritan

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 28:9-11

UDB:

⁹ But a prophet of Yahweh, whose name was Oded, was in Samaria. He went out of the city to meet the army as it was returning. He said to them, "Yahweh, the God to whom your ancestors belonged, was angry with the people of Judah, so he has handed them over to you, and you have slaughtered so many in a towering rage. ¹⁰ And now you want to sin by causing men and women from Judah to become your slaves, but you have certainly offended Yahweh, our God, in this matter. ¹¹ So listen to me! Send back to Judah your fellow countrymen whom you have captured, because Yahweh is extremely angry with you for what you did to them."

ULB:

⁹ But a prophet of Yahweh was there, his name was Oded. He went out to meet the army coming into Samaria. He said to them, "Because Yahweh, the God of your ancestors, was angry with Judah, he gave them into your hand. But you have slaughtered them in a rage that reached up to heaven. ¹⁰ Now you intend to keep the men and women of Judah and Jerusalem as your slaves. But are you not guilty of sins of your own against Yahweh your God? ¹¹ Now then, listen to me: Send the prisoners back, those whom you have taken of your own brothers, for Yahweh's fierce wrath is on you."

translationNotes

Oded

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

he gave them into your hand

Here the word "hand" represents power. God enabling the army of Israel to defeat the army of Judah is spoken of as if God had put the army of Judah in the hand of the army of Israel. AT: "God enabled you to defeat them" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

you have slaughtered them in a rage that reached up to heaven

Oded speaks of Yahweh knowing how severely the army of Israel slaughtered the army of Judah as if the rage with which the army of Israel slaughtered them were an object so large that it reached into heaven. That Yahweh knows what they have done implies that he will respond. AT: "you have slaughtered them in such great rage that Yahweh himself has noticed and will take vengeance" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

But are you not guilty of sins of your own against Yahweh your God?

Oded asks this rhetorical question to rebuke the army of Israel and to emphasize the positive answer that the question anticipates. AT: “But you yourselves are guilty of sins of your own against Yahweh your God.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Yahweh’s fierce wrath is on you

Oded speaks of Yahweh being extremely angry with the Israelite army as if Yahweh’s wrath were an object that were upon them. AT: “Yahweh is extremely angry with you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [anger, angered, angry](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants](#)
- [guilt, guilty](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [brother, brothers](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 28:12-13**UDB:**

¹² Then some of the leaders of the tribe of Ephraim—Azariah son of Johanan, Berechiah son of Meshillemoth, Jehizkiah son of Shallum, and Amasa son of Hadlai—rebuked those who were returning from the battle. ¹³ They said to them, “You must not bring those prisoners here! If you do that, Yahweh will consider that we are guilty of sinning. We are already guilty of committing many sins; do you want to cause us to be even more guilty by committing another sin? God is already very angry with us people of Israel!”

ULB:

¹² Then certain leaders of the people of Ephraim—Azariah son of Jehohanan, Berechiah son of Meshillemoth, Jehizkiah son of Shallum, and Amasa son of Hadlai, stood up against those who came back from the war. ¹³ They said to them, “You must not bring the prisoners here, for you intend something that will bring on us sin against Yahweh, to add to our sins and trespasses, for our trespass is great, and there is fierce wrath against Israel.”

translationNotes**Azariah son of Jehohanan, Berechiah son of Meshillemoth, Jehizkiah son of Shallum, and Amasa son of Hadlai**

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

stood up against those who came back from the war

The phrase “stood up against” is an idiom that means to confront or to oppose. AT: “confronted those who came back from the war” or “opposed those who came back from the war” (See: [Idiom](#))

something that will bring on us sin

The leaders speak of doing something that will cause them to be guilty of sin as if it were sin were an object that the action brings upon them. AT: “something that will cause us to be guilty of sinning” (See: [Metaphor](#))

there is fierce wrath against Israel

This phrase implies that it is Yahweh’s fierce wrath that is against Israel. The words “fierce wrath” can be translated with a verbal phrase. AT: “Yahweh is extremely angry with the people of Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

translationWords

- [trespass, trespasses, trespassed](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 28:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ So, while their leaders and others were watching, the soldiers released the prisoners, and also gave back to them the valuable things that they had captured. ¹⁵ The leaders assigned some men to take care of the prisoners. These men took some of the clothes that the soldiers had taken from the people of Judah and gave those clothes to the people who were naked. They also gave to the prisoners sandals and other clothes, as well as things to eat and drink, and they gave them olive oil to rub on their wounds. They gave donkeys to those who were very weak, in order that they could ride on them. Then they led them all to Jericho, the city that had many palm trees. Finally those men returned to Samaria.

ULB:

¹⁴ So the armed men left the prisoners and the plunder before the leaders and all the assembly. ¹⁵ The men who were assigned by name got up and took the prisoners, and clothed all who were naked among them with the plunder. They clothed them and gave them sandals. They gave them food to eat and drink. They treated their wounds and put the weak ones on donkeys. They took them back to their families in Jericho, (called the City of Palms). Then they returned to Samaria.

translationNotes**The men who were assigned by name**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “The men whom the leaders assigned by name” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

sandals

This is a type of shoe.

put the weak ones on donkeys

“put the weak ones who were too weak to walk on donkeys”

translationWords

- [assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled](#)
- [name, names, named](#)
- [sandal, sandals](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)
- [Jericho](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 28:16-18

UDB:

¹⁶ About that time, King Ahaz sent a message to the king of Assyria requesting help. ¹⁷ He did that because the army from the Edom people group had come again and attacked Judah and taken away many of the people of Judah as prisoners. ¹⁸ At the same time, men from Philistia raided towns in the foothills and in the southern Judean wilderness. They captured the cities of Beth Shemesh, Aijalon, and Gederoth, as well as those of Soko, Timnah, and Gimzo with its nearby villages.

ULB:

¹⁶ At that time King Ahaz sent messengers to the kings of Assyria to ask them to help him. ¹⁷ For once again the Edomites had come and attacked Judah, carrying prisoners away. ¹⁸ The Philistines also invaded the cities of the lowlands and of the Negev of Judah. They took Beth Shemesh, Aijalon, Gederoth, Soko with its villages, Timnah with its villages, and also Gimzo with its villages. They went to live in those places.

translationNotes

They took Beth Shemesh

Taking a city is an idiom that means to conquer or to capture the city. AT: “The Philistines captured Beth Shemesh” (See: [Idiom](#))

Beth Shemesh, Aijalon, Gederoth, Soko ... Timnah ... Gimzo

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- [Ahaz](#)
- [messenger, messengers](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrians, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [Edom, Edomite, Edomites, Idumea](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [Negev](#)
- [Beth Shemesh](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#)

- 2 Chronicles 28 translationQuestions

2 Chronicles 28:19-21**UDB:**

¹⁹ Yahweh allowed those things to happen in order to humble King Ahaz, because he had encouraged the people of Judah to do wicked things and had disobeyed Yahweh very much. ²⁰ Tiglath-Pileser, the king of Assyria, sent his army saying that they would help Ahaz, but instead of helping him, they caused him trouble. ²¹ Ahaz's soldiers took some of the valuable things from the temple and from the king's palace and from other leaders of Judah, and sent them to the king of Assyria to pay him to help them, but the king of Assyria refused to help Ahaz.

ULB:

¹⁹ For Yahweh brought Judah low because of Ahaz, king of Israel; for he had acted wickedly in Judah and had sinned against Yahweh very heavily. ²⁰ Tiglath-Pileser, king of Assyria, came to him and troubled him instead of strengthening him. ²¹ For Ahaz plundered the house of Yahweh and the houses of the king and the leaders, to give the valuable things to the kings of Assyria. But doing this did not benefit him.

translationNotes**Yahweh brought Judah low because of Ahaz**

The metonym "Judah" represents the people of Judah. Yahweh humiliating the people is spoken of as if he physically brought Judah low to the ground. AT: "Yahweh humiliated the people of Judah because of Ahaz" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

sinned against Yahweh very heavily

Ahaz sinning very much is spoken of as if sin were a very heavy object. AT: "sinned very greatly against Yahweh" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Tiglath-Pileser

This is Tiglath-Pileser III, also known as Pul. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

troubled him instead of strengthening him

Helping Ahaz against his enemies is spoken of as if it were strengthening Ahaz. AT: "caused him trouble instead of helping him" (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [Ahaz](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [trouble, troubles, troubled, troubling, troublemaker, troublesome](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 28:22-23

UDB:

²² While King Ahaz was experiencing those troubles, he disobeyed Yahweh even more. ²³ He offered sacrifices to the gods that were worshiped in Damascus, whose army had defeated his army. He thought, “The gods that are worshiped by the kings of Aram have helped them, so I will offer sacrifices to those gods in order that they will help me.” But worshiping those gods caused Ahaz and all of Israel to be ruined.

ULB:

²² This same King Ahaz sinned even more against Yahweh in his time of suffering. ²³ For he sacrificed to the gods of Damascus, gods that had defeated him. He said, “Because the gods of the kings of Aram helped them, I will sacrifice to them, so that they might help me.” But they were the ruin of him and of all Israel.

translationNotes

in his time of suffering

“when he was suffering”

the gods of Damascus

The Syrians believed Damascus to be the city where their gods dwelt, much like Yahweh dwelt in Jerusalem. AT: “the gods whom the Syrians worshiped in Damascus” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

gods that had defeated him

This expresses Ahaz’s opinion. Because the Syrians had defeated him and his army, Ahaz attributed his defeat to the gods whom the Syrians worshiped. AT: “gods whom he believed had enabled the Syrian army to defeat him” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

they were the ruin of him and of all Israel

The word “ruin” can be translated with a verb. AT: “those gods ruined him and all Israel” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

all Israel

Here “Israel” represents the southern kingdom of Judah.

translationWords

- [suffer, suffers, suffered, suffering, sufferings](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings](#)
- [god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry](#)
- [Damascus](#)
- [Aram, Aramean, Arameans, Aramaic](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 28:24-25**UDB:**

²⁴ Ahaz gathered all the furnishings that were used in the temple and broke them into pieces. He locked the doors of the temple and set up altars for worshiping idols at every street corner in Jerusalem. ²⁵ In every city in Judah, his workers built houses on the hilltops, and there they burned sacrifices to other gods, and that caused Yahweh, the God whom their ancestors worshiped, to be very angry with them.

ULB:

²⁴ Ahaz gathered together the furnishings of the house of God and cut them to pieces. He shut the doors of the house of Yahweh and he made for himself altars in every corner of Jerusalem. ²⁵ In every city of Judah he made high places to burn sacrifices to other gods. He provoked Yahweh, the God of his ancestors, to anger.

translationNotes**the house of God ... the house of Yahweh**

Here the word “house” represents the temple. AT: “the temple of God ... the temple of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

in every corner of Jerusalem

Possible meanings are 1) the word “corner” refers to street corners, or places where streets intersect. AT: “on every street corner in Jerusalem” or 2) the various parts of Jerusalem are spoken of as if they were the corners of the city. AT: “in every part of Jerusalem” (See: [Metaphor](#))

he made for himself altars ... he made high places to burn sacrifices

Since Ahaz was king, he may have had his workers make these high places. AT: “he had his workers make altars for him ... he had his workers make high places to burn sacrifices” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [house of God, Yahweh’s house](#)
- [altar, altars](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 28:26-27**UDB:**

²⁶ A record of the other things that Ahaz did while he was the king, from when he started to rule until he died, is written in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel. ²⁷ Ahaz died and was buried in Jerusalem, but he was not buried in the tombs where the other kings of Israel had been buried. Then his son Hezekiah became the king.

ULB:

²⁶ Now the rest of his deeds, and all his ways, first and last, see, they are written in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel. ²⁷ Ahaz slept with his ancestors, and they buried him in the city, in Jerusalem, but they did not bring him into the tombs of the kings of Israel. Hezekiah, his son, became king in his place.

translationNotes**all his ways, first and last**

Ahaz's actions are spoken of as if they were a path upon which he walked. The phrase "first and last" refers to those extremes and everything in between. AT: "all that he did from the beginning of his reign to the end of his reign" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Merism](#))

see

"indeed." The word "see" here adds emphasis to what follows.

they are written in the book

This can be stated in active form. AT: "someone has written them in the book" or "you can read of them in the book" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the book of the kings of Judah and Israel

This is a book that no longer exists.

Ahaz slept with his ancestors

Ahaz dying is spoken of as if he had fallen asleep. AT: "Ahaz died" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

they buried him

"people buried him"

became king in his place

The phrase “in his place” is a metaphor meaning “instead of him.” AT: “became king instead of Ahaz” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- works, deeds, work, acts
- written
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- kingdom of Israel
- grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs, burial place
- Hezekiah

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 29 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins the story of King Hezekiah. (2 Chronicles 29-32)

Special concepts in this chapter

Cleansing the temple

King Hezekiah was a great king. He cleaned and rededicated the temple. This was a sign that he wanted the people to return to worshiping Yahweh. (See: [clean](#), [cleans](#), [cleaned](#), [cleanse](#), [cleansed](#), [cleansing](#), [wash](#), [washing](#), [washed](#), [washes](#), [unclean](#), [temple](#) and [sign](#), [signs](#), [proof](#), [reminder](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 29:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 29:1-2

UDB:

¹ Hezekiah was twenty-five years old when he became the king of Judah. He ruled from Jerusalem for twenty-nine years. His mother was Abijah, the daughter of a man whose name was Zechariah. ² Hezekiah did things that Yahweh considered to be right, like his ancestor King David had done.

ULB:

¹ Hezekiah began to reign when he was twenty-five years old; he reigned twenty-nine years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Abijah; she was the daughter of Zechariah. ² He did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh, just as David his father had done.

translationNotes

twenty-five years old ... twenty-nine years

“25 years old ... 29 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Abijah

This is a woman's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

The word “eyes” here represents seeing, and seeing represents judgment. Yahweh saw and approved of Hezekiah's actions. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 14:1](#). AT: “what Yahweh judged to be right” or “what Yahweh considered to be right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [Hezekiah](#)
- [reign, reigns, reigned, reigning](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Zechariah \(OT\)](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 29:3-5

UDB:

³ During the first month of the first year that Hezekiah was ruling Judah, he unlocked the doors of the temple, and his workers repaired them. ⁴ Then he gathered the priests and other descendants of Levi in the courtyard on the east side of the temple, ⁵ and he said to them, "You descendants of Levi, listen to me! Set yourselves apart, and prepare the house of Yahweh so it is a place that honors Yahweh, whom your ancestors worshiped; carry out all the filthiness that is in the holy place.

ULB:

³ In the first year of his reign, in the first month, Hezekiah opened the doors of the house of Yahweh and repaired them. ⁴ He brought in the priests and the Levites, and gathered them together into the courtyard on the east side. ⁵ He said to them, "Listen to me, you Levites! Consecrate yourselves, and consecrate the house of Yahweh, the God of your ancestors, and carry away the filthiness from the holy place.

translationNotes

in the first month

This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of March and the first part April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

the house of Yahweh

Here the word "house" represents the temple. AT: "the temple of Yahweh" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Hezekiah opened the doors ... and repaired them

Since Hezekiah was king, he may have had his workers do these things. AT: "Hezekiah ordered his workers to open the doors ... and to repair them" (See: [Metonymy](#))

on the east side

This refers to the east side of the temple. AT: "on the east side of the temple" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

carry away the filthiness from the holy place

The word “filthiness” refers to things that the people had used to worship other gods. The narrator speaks of these things making the temple unacceptable to Yahweh as if they were physically dirty. AT: “remove the things that defile the holy place” or “remove the things that make the holy place unacceptable to Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [year, years](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh’s house](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical](#)
- [court, courts, courtyard, courtyards](#)
- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)
- [holy place](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 29:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ Our ancestors disobeyed God; they did many things that he says are evil, and they did things that are not pleasing to him. They abandoned this place where Yahweh lives, and they have stopped worshiping him. ⁷ They locked the doors of the temple and extinguished the lamps. They did not burn any incense, and they did not offer any sacrifices that were to be completely burned on the altar in the holy place.

ULB:

⁶ For our ancestors trespassed and did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh our God; they forsook him, turned away their faces from the place where Yahweh lives, and turned their backs on it. ⁷ Also they shut up the doors of the porch and put out the lamps; they did not burn incense or offer burnt offerings in the holy place to the God of Israel.

translationNotes**what was evil in the sight of Yahweh our God**

The word “sight” here represents judgment. Yahweh saw and did not approve of their ancestors’ actions. AT: “what Yahweh our God judged to be evil” or “what Yahweh our God considered to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

turned away their faces from the place where Yahweh lives, and turned their backs on it

These two phrases share similar meanings. The words “faces” and “backs” represent the people who turned so that their faces were away from the temple and their backs were towards it. AT: “turned away from the place where Yahweh lives” (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

turned away their faces from the place where Yahweh lives, and turned their backs on it

Rejecting Yahweh and no longer worshiping him is spoken of as if the people had turned away from the temple. AT: “abandoned Yahweh’s temple and stopped worshiping him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the place where Yahweh lives

This refers to the temple. AT: “the temple where Yahweh lives” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- trespass, trespasses, trespassed
- God
- forsake, forsakes, forsaken, forsook
- incense, incenses
- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- Israel, Israelites

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 29:8-9

UDB:

⁸ Therefore, Yahweh has become very angry with us people of Jerusalem and other places in Judah, and he has caused other people to become frightened and horrified of us. And they ridicule us. You know this very well. ⁹ That is why our fathers have been killed in battles, and our sons and daughters and our wives have been captured and taken to other countries.

ULB:

⁸ Therefore the wrath of Yahweh had fallen on Judah and Jerusalem, and he has made them to be an object of terror, of horror, and of scorn, as you can see with your own eyes. ⁹ This is why our fathers have fallen by the sword, and our sons, our daughters, and our wives are in captivity for this.

translationNotes

the wrath of Yahweh had fallen on Judah and Jerusalem

Here the words “Judah and Jerusalem” refer to the people who live there. Hezekiah speaks of Yahweh being angry with the people and punishing them as if his wrath were an object that fell upon them. AT: “because Yahweh was angry, he had punished the people of Judah and Jerusalem” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

an object of terror, of horror, and of scorn

This can be translated with verbal phrases. AT: “something that terrifies and horrifies people, and something that people scorn” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

as you can see with your own eyes

The phrase “with your own eyes” emphasizes that the people can see this for themselves without others having to tell them about it. AT: “as you can see for yourselves”

our fathers have fallen by the sword

The idiom “fallen by the sword” means to die in battle. The word “sword” represents the soldiers, who used swords as their primary weapons. AT: “our fathers have died in battle” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [wrath, fury](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [sword, swords, swordsmen](#)
- [captive, captives, captivate, captivated, captivity](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 29:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ But now I intend to make a covenant with Yahweh, our God, in order that he will no longer be angry with us. ¹¹ You who are like my sons, do not waste any time. Do immediately what Yahweh wants you to do. Yahweh has chosen you to stand in his presence and offer sacrifices and burn incense.”

ULB:

¹⁰ Now it is in my heart to make a covenant with Yahweh, the God of Israel, so that his fierce anger may turn away from us. ¹¹ My sons, do not be lazy now, for Yahweh has chosen you to stand before him, to worship him, and that you should be his servants and burn incense.”

translationNotes**it is in my heart**

Here the word “heart” represents the thoughts and intentions. Hezekiah speaks of deciding to do something as if that thing were in his heart. AT: “it is my intention” or “I have decided” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

his fierce anger may turn away from us

Hezekiah speaks of Yahweh no longer being angry with them as if Yahweh’s anger were a person who turns away from them AT: “he may no longer be angry with us” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Personification](#))

to stand before him

Possible meanings are 1) “to stand in his presence” or 2) this is an idiom that means to serve a person of high rank. AT: “to serve him” (See: [Idiom](#))

translationWords

- [heart, hearts](#)
- [covenant, covenants, new covenant](#)
- [worship](#)
- [enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 29:12-14**UDB:**

¹² Then these descendants of Levi started to work in the temple.

From the descendants of Kohath there were Mahath the son of Amasai, and Joel the son of Azariah.

From the descendants of Merari there were Kish the son of Abdi, and Azariah the son of Jehallelel.

From the descendants of Gershon there were Joah the son of Zimmah, and Eden the son of Joah.

¹³ From the descendants of Elizaphan there were Shimri and Jeiel.

From the descendants of Asaph there were Zechariah and Mattaniah.

¹⁴ From the descendants of Heman there were Jehiel and Shimei.

From the descendants of Jeduthun there were Shemaiah and Uzziel.

ULB:

¹² Then the Levites arose: Mahath son of Amasai, and Joel son of Azariah, of the people of the Kohathites; and of the people of Merari, Kish son of Abdi, and Azariah son of Jehallelel; and of the Gershonites, Joah son of Zimmah, and Eden son of Joah; ¹³ of the sons of Elizaphan, Shimri and Jeuel; and of the sons of Asaph, Zechariah and Mattaniah; ¹⁴ of the sons of Heman, Jehuel and Shimei; and of the sons of Jeduthun, Shemaiah and Uzziel.

translationNotes**General Information:**

These verses list the names of the Levites who began to do the work that Hezekiah had ordered them to do. These are all men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the Levites arose

Here the word "arose" is an idiom that means that the Levites began to act. AT: "the Levites began to work" (See: [Idiom](#))

translationWords

- [Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [Azariah](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 29:15-17

UDB:

¹⁵ Those men gathered their fellow descendants of Levi and together they prepared themselves for the work of the priesthood. They took all the steps to prepare themselves so they could serve the king in Yahweh's house, because the king was following Yahweh's commands. And the Levites entered the temple to clean it up. ¹⁶ They worked within the temple to purify it. They brought out into the courtyard of the temple everything that they had found in the temple that was not pleasing to Yahweh. Then the descendants of Levi took those things down to the Kidron Valley and burned them there. ¹⁷ The priests and other descendants of Levi started this work on the first day of the first month and finished setting apart for the honor of Yahweh, the courtyard of the temple on the eighth day of that month, and they finished the work of setting the temple apart for the honor of Yahweh, one week later.

ULB:

¹⁵ They gathered their brothers, they consecrated themselves, and they went in, as the king commanded, following the words of Yahweh, to cleanse the house of Yahweh. ¹⁶ The priests went in to the inner part of the house of Yahweh to cleanse it; they brought out all the filth that they found in the temple of Yahweh into the courtyard of the house. The Levites took it to carry it out to the brook Kidron. ¹⁷ Now they began the consecration on the first day of the first month. By the eighth day of the month they reached the porch of Yahweh. Then for eight more days they consecrated the house of Yahweh. On the sixteenth day of the first month they finished.

translationNotes

following the words of Yahweh

This phrase shows that the king gave his command in obedience to the word of Yahweh. AT: "in obedience to the word of Yahweh" or "because of what Yahweh had said"

to cleanse the house of Yahweh

A place that is fit to be used for God's purposes is spoken of as if it were physically clean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

the house of Yahweh ... the courtyard of the house

Here the word "house" represents the temple. AT: "the temple of Yahweh ... the courtyard of the temple" (See: [Metonymy](#))

they brought out all the filth that they found in the temple of Yahweh

The word “filth” refers to things that the people had used to worship other gods. The narrator speaks of these things making the temple unacceptable to Yahweh as if they were physically dirty. AT: “they brought out all the defiled things that they found in the temple of Yahweh” or “they brought out all the things that they found in the temple of Yahweh that made it unacceptable to Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

brook Kidron

A small body of water that flows on the east side of Jerusalem. At times it was used as a trash dump. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the first day of the first month

This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The first day marks the day when Yahweh brought the people out of Egypt. This is near the middle of March on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

the eighth day of the month

This is near the end of March on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

they reached the porch of Yahweh

The phrase “the porch of Yahweh” refers to the porch of the temple. “They reached” means that they began to cleanse this section. AT: “they had begun to cleanse the porch of Yahweh’s temple” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

sixteenth day of the first month

This is near the beginning of April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [brother, brothers](#)
- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh’s house](#)
- [temple](#)

- [court, courts, courtyard, courtyards](#)
- [day, days](#)
- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 29:18-19

UDB:

¹⁸ Then they went to King Hezekiah and reported this: "We have purified all parts of the temple, and the altar where sacrifices are completely burned, and all the items used at the altar, the table on which the priests display the bread before Yahweh, and the things used at that table. ¹⁹ Ahaz ruled over us, he disobeyed what Yahweh had commanded, and he threw away many of the tools and implements from the temple many things that should be there, but now we have brought them back, we dedicated them to Yahweh's service, and then we placed them in front of the altar of Yahweh, where they can be seen."

ULB:

¹⁸ Then they went to Hezekiah, the king, inside the palace and said, "We have cleansed all the house of Yahweh, the altar for burnt offerings with all its implements, and the table of the bread of the presence, with all its implements. ¹⁹ So we have prepared and we have consecrated all the items that King Ahaz removed when he acted unfaithfully during his reign. See, they are in front of the altar of Yahweh."

translationNotes

the bread of the presence

This is a reference to the 12 loaves of bread that were placed in front of the altar. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 2:4](#).

See

"Indeed." The word "see" here adds emphasis to what follows.

translationWords

- [Hezekiah](#)
- [altar, altars](#)
- [burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire](#)
- [bread](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 29:20-21**UDB:**

²⁰ Early the next morning, King Hezekiah gathered together the city officials, and they went to the courtyard of the temple. ²¹ They took with them seven bulls, seven rams, seven male lambs, and seven male goats to be an offering in order that Yahweh would forgive the sins of all the people in the kingdom of Judah, and in order to purify the temple. The king commanded that the priests, who were descendants of Aaron, should offer those animals to be sacrifices to Yahweh on the altar.

ULB:

²⁰ Then Hezekiah the king rose early in the morning and gathered the leaders of the city; he went up to the house of Yahweh. ²¹ They brought seven bulls, seven rams, seven lambs, and seven male goats as a sin offering for the kingdom, for the sanctuary, and for Judah. He commanded the priests, the sons of Aaron, to offer them on the altar of Yahweh.

translationNotes**the house of Yahweh**

The word “house” represents the temple. AT: “the temple of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen](#)
- [ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)
- [goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids](#)
- [sin offering, sin offerings](#)
- [kingdom, kingdoms](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [altar, altars](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 29:22-24

UDB:

²² So first the priests slaughtered those bulls, and took the blood and sprinkled it on the altar. Then they slaughtered the rams and sprinkled their blood on the altar. Then they slaughtered the lambs and sprinkled their blood on the altar. ²³ The goats that were slaughtered to be an offering in order that Yahweh would forgive the sins of the people were brought to the king and the others who were there. Then the king and those who were present laid their hands on those goats. ²⁴ Then the priests slaughtered those goats and splashed their blood on the altar, to atone for the sins of Israel. The priests did that because the king had commanded that offerings that would be completely burned on the altar and other sacrifices should be made for all the people of Israel.

ULB:

²² So they killed the bulls, and the priests received the blood and sprinkled it on the altar. Then they killed the rams and sprinkled their blood on the altar; and they also killed the lambs and sprinkled their blood on the altar. ²³ They brought the male goats for the sin offering before the king and the assembly; they laid their hands on them. ²⁴ The priests killed them, and they made a sin offering with their blood on the altar to make atonement for all Israel, for the king had commanded that a burnt offering and a sin offering should be made for all Israel.

translationNotes

they killed the bulls, and the priests received the blood

“the priests killed the bulls and took the blood”

they laid their hands on them

“the king and people in the assembly laid their hands on them”

that a burnt offering and a sin offering should be made for all Israel

This can be stated in active form. AT: “that the priests should make a burnt offering and a sin offering for all Israel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [blood](#)
- [assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled](#)
- [sin offering, sin offerings](#)
- [atonement, atone, atones, atoned](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 29:25-26

UDB:

²⁵ The king then told the descendants of Levi to stand in the temple with their cymbals, harps, and lyres, obeying what David and his prophets Gad and Nathan had commanded. Those were things that Yahweh had told his prophets that the descendants of Levi should do. ²⁶ So the descendants of Levi went and stood in the temple, and began to play the musical instruments that King David had given to them. And the priests began to blow their trumpets.

ULB:

²⁵ Hezekiah placed the Levites in the house of Yahweh with cymbals, harps, and lyres, arranging them by the command of David, Gad, the king's seer, and Nathan, the prophet, for the command was from Yahweh by means of his prophets. ²⁶ The Levites stood with the instruments of David, and the priests with the trumpets.

translationNotes

the house of Yahweh

The word "house" represents the temple. AT: "the temple of Yahweh" (See: [Metonymy](#))

cymbals

two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 5:12](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

arranging them by the command of David, Gad, the king's seer, and Nathan, the prophet

The word "command" can be translated with a verbal phrase. AT: "arranging the Levites as David, Gad, the king's seer, and Nathan, the prophet had commanded" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

for the command was from Yahweh by means of his prophets

The word "command" can be translated with a verbal phrase. AT: "for Yahweh had commanded this through his prophets" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

translationWords

- [harp, harps, harpist, harpists](#)
- [lute, lyre, lyres](#)
- [David](#)

- [Gad](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Nathan](#)
- [trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 29:27-28

UDB:

²⁷ Then Hezekiah told some of the priests to slaughter the animals that would be completely burned on the altar. When they started to slaughter the animals, the people started to sing to praise Yahweh, while the other descendants of Levi were playing their instruments. ²⁸ All the people who were there bowed to worship Yahweh, while the singers sang and the trumpeters played. They continued to do this until they had finished slaughtering all the animals that would be completely burned.

ULB:

²⁷ Hezekiah commanded them to offer the burnt offering on the altar. When the burnt offering began, the song of Yahweh began also, with the trumpets, together with the instruments of David, king of Israel. ²⁸ All the assembly worshiped, the singers sang, and the trumpeters played; all this continued until the burnt offering was finished.

translationNotes

the song of Yahweh began also

The phrase “the song of Yahweh” refers to people singing a song to Yahweh. AT: “the people began to sing a song to Yahweh also”

until the burnt offering was finished

This can be stated in active form. AT: “until the priests finished offering the burnt offering” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [worship](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 29:29-30

UDB:

²⁹ When they finished making those offerings, the king and all those who were there knelt down and worshiped Yahweh. ³⁰ Then King Hezekiah and his officials commanded the descendants of Levi to praise Yahweh, singing the songs composed by David and Asaph the prophet. So they sang songs joyfully, and bowed their heads to worship.

ULB:

²⁹ When they had finished the offerings, the king and all who were present with him bowed and worshiped. ³⁰ Moreover, Hezekiah, the king, and the leaders commanded the Levites to sing praises to Yahweh with the words of David and of Asaph, the seer. They sang praises with gladness, and they bowed down and worshiped.

translationNotes

When they had finished the offerings

“When the priests had finished the offerings”

bowed and worshiped

The object of worship may be supplied in translation. AT: “bowed and worshiped Yahweh” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings](#)
- [bow, bows, bowed, bowing, bow down, bows down, bowed down, bowing down](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 29:31

UDB:

³¹ Then Hezekiah said, “You have now set yourselves apart for the honor of Yahweh. So come close to the temple and bring animals to be sacrificed, and also bring the other offerings to thank Yahweh for what he has done for you.” Then those who wanted to bring animals to be completely burned on the altar brought them.

ULB:

³¹ Then Hezekiah said, “Now you have consecrated yourselves to Yahweh. Come here and bring sacrifices and thank offerings into the house of Yahweh.” The assembly brought sacrifices and thank offerings, and all who had a willing heart brought burnt offerings.

translationNotes

thank offerings

These were offerings of thanksgiving.

the house of Yahweh

The word “house” represents the temple. AT: “the temple of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

who had a willing heart

Here the word “heart” represents the person who was willing. AT: “who were willing” or “who desired” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

translationWords

- [heart, hearts](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 29:32-33**UDB:**

³² Altogether they brought seventy bulls, one hundred rams, and two hundred male lambs to be completely burned on the altar. ³³ The other animals that they brought were six hundred bulls and three thousand sheep and goats that were set apart for the honor of Yahweh, to be sacrifices.

ULB:

³² The number of the burnt offerings that the assembly brought was seventy bulls, one hundred rams, and two hundred male lambs. All these were for a burnt offering to Yahweh. ³³ The consecrated offerings were six hundred oxen and three thousand sheep.

translationNotes

seventy bulls, one hundred rams, and two hundred male lambs ... six hundred oxen and three thousand sheep

“70 bulls, 100 rams, and 200 male lambs ... 600 oxen and 3,000 sheep” (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire](#)
- [cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen](#)
-
- [ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 29:34

UDB:

³⁴ There were not enough priests to remove the skins from the animals that would be completely burned on the altar. So the descendants of Levi stepped in to help the priests until the work was finished. The Levites were more hard-working and dedicated than the priests were.

ULB:

³⁴ But the priests were too few to skin all the burnt offerings, so their brothers, the Levites, helped them until the work was done, and until the priests could consecrate themselves, for the Levites had been more careful to consecrate themselves than the priests.

translationNotes

to skin all the burnt offerings

“to remove the skins from all the burnt offerings”

until the work was done

This can be stated in active form. AT: “until they had finished the work” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

until the priests could consecrate themselves

Since there were some priests who were already consecrated, this implies that more priests consecrated themselves. AT: “until more of the priests could consecrate themselves” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

had been more careful to consecrate themselves

There were enough Levites to do this work because they had been careful to consecrate themselves. This implies that the reason that there were not enough priests was because the priests were not careful to consecrate themselves.

translationWords

- brother, brothers
- works, deeds, work, acts

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 29:35-36

UDB:

³⁵ In addition to the all the offerings that were completely burned on the altar, the priests burned the fat of the accompanying animals that were sacrificed to maintain good fellowship with Yahweh; there were also offerings of wine.

In this way the worship at the temple began again. ³⁶ And Hezekiah and all the other people of Judah celebrated, because God had enabled them to do all the repair work very quickly.

ULB:

³⁵ In addition, there were very many burnt offerings; they were performed with the fat of the fellowship offerings, and there were drink offerings for every burnt offering. So the service of the house of Yahweh was set in order. ³⁶ Hezekiah rejoiced, and all the people also, because of what God had prepared for the people, for the work had been done quickly.

translationNotes

they were performed with the fat of the fellowship offerings

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the priests performed the burnt offerings with the fat of the fellowship offerings” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the service of the house of Yahweh was set in order

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Hezekiah set the service of the house of Yahweh in order” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the house of Yahweh

The word “house” represents the temple. AT: “the temple of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

was set in order

This idiom means that something is organized. Here it refers to the priestly service beginning in the temple again. AT: “was restored” or “began again” (See: [Idiom](#))

the work had been done quickly

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the people had done the work quickly” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- fellowship offering, fellowship offerings
- drink offering
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 30 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of Hezekiah continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Passover

Hezekiah invited everyone in Judah and in Israel to come to Jerusalem and celebrate the Passover. It had not been celebrated since King Solomon's day. (See: [Passover](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 30:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 30:1

UDB:

¹⁻³ King Hezekiah, his officials, and all the other people who had gathered in Jerusalem wanted to celebrate the Passover festival. But they were not able to celebrate it at the usual time, because many of the priests had still not been able to perform all the rites of purity for themselves, so they were not allowed to do the work of that festival. Also, not everyone had come to Jerusalem to celebrate it. So they decided to celebrate the festival the following month.

ULB:

¹ Hezekiah sent messengers to all Israel and Judah, and also wrote letters to Ephraim and Manasseh, that they should come to the house of Yahweh in Jerusalem, to celebrate the Passover to Yahweh, the God of Israel. ² For the king, his leaders, and all the assembly in Jerusalem had consulted together, deciding to celebrate the Passover in the second month. ³ They could not celebrate at the regular time, because not enough priests had consecrated themselves for the celebration and the people had not gathered together in Jerusalem.

translationNotes

all Israel and Judah

This represents the nation of Israel in general. Earlier the nation had been split into two kingdoms called by these names.

Ephraim and Manasseh

Ephraim and Manasseh were two of the tribes in the northern part of Israel. Here the phrase “Ephraim and Manasseh” refers to the people who belonged to all ten of the northern tribes of Israel. AT: “the northern tribes of Israel” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

deciding to celebrate the Passover in the second month

The Israelites normally celebrated the passover during the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The first month is during the last part of March and the first part of April on Western calendars.

second month

This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [Hezekiah](#)
- [messenger, messengers](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [epistle, letter, letters](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite, Ephraimites](#)
- [Manasseh](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Passover](#)
- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 30:4-5

UDB:

⁴ The king and all the other people who had gathered thought that this was a good plan. ⁵ So they decided to send messages to all the cities and villages in Judah and in Israel, from Beersheba in the far south to Dan in the far north, including places in the tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh, to invite people to come to the temple in Jerusalem to celebrate the Passover to honor Yahweh, the God whom the Israelite people worshiped. Many of the people had not previously celebrated that festival, even though it had been written in the law of Moses that they should do that.

ULB:

⁴ This proposal seemed right in the eyes of the king and of all the assembly. ⁵ So they agreed to make a proclamation throughout all Israel, from Beersheba to Dan, that the people should come to celebrate the Passover to Yahweh, the God of Israel, in Jerusalem. For they had not observed it with large numbers of people according to what was written.

translationNotes

This proposal

This refers to the proposal to celebrate the Passover in the second month instead of in the first month.

in the eyes of the king and of all the assembly

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. AT: “in the judgment of the king and all the assembly” or “to the king and all the assembly” (See: [Metaphor](#))

from Beersheba to Dan

These are the most southern and most northern parts of Israel. By referring to them this way, the writer emphasizes that all of Israel was included. AT: “from Beersheba in the south to Dan in the north” (See: [Idiom](#))

according to what was written

“as it was written that they should do.” It is implied that it was written that they should observe the Passover with large numbers of people. This can be stated in active form. AT: “as Moses had written that they should observe it” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [proclaim, proclaims, proclaimed, proclaiming, proclamation, proclamations](#)
- [Beersheba](#)
- [Dan](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 30:6**UDB:**

⁶ Obeying what the king commanded, messengers went throughout Judah and Israel, taking messages that had been written by the king and his officials. This is what they wrote:

ULB:

⁶ So couriers went with the letters from the king and his leaders throughout all Israel and Judah, by the command of the king. They said, "You people of Israel, turn back to Yahweh, the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Israel, so that he may turn back to the remnant of you who have escaped from the hand of the kings of Assyria."

translationNotes**couriers**

"messengers"

all Israel and Judah

The tribe of Judah was the largest of the tribes of Israel and was in the southern part of Israel. Here the phrase "Israel and Judah" refers to the people who belonged to the southern tribes of Israel. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 30:1](#). AT: "the southern tribes of Israel" (See: [Hendiadys](#))

turn back to Yahweh

Here "turn back to Yahweh" represents submitting to him again. AT: "submit again to Yahweh" (See: [Metaphor](#))

so that he may turn back to the remnant of you

Here "turn back to the remnant" represents protecting the remnant again. AT: "so that he may again protect the remnant of you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

who have escaped from the hand of the kings of Assyria

The word "hand" often represents power or authority. Here it represents the kings' cruel authority to force people to go to other countries. AT: "who have escaped from the power of the kings of Assyria" (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back
- Abraham, Abram
- Isaac
- Israel, Israelite, Israelites, Jacob
- remnant
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrians, Assyrian Empire

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 30:7-9**UDB:**

⁷ Do not act like they did, because what they did caused Yahweh to punish them so severely that other people were horrified when they heard of what he had done. ⁸ Do not be stubborn as our ancestors were. Do what Yahweh desires. Come to Jerusalem to the temple, which he has set apart for his honor forever. Do what pleases Yahweh our God, in order that he will no longer be angry with you. ⁹ If you return to Yahweh, the people who have captured our brothers and sisters and our children will act kindly toward them, and allow them to return to this land. Do not forget that Yahweh our God is kind and merciful. If you return to him, he will no longer reject you.”

ULB:

⁷ Do not be like your ancestors or your brothers, who trespassed against Yahweh, the God of their ancestors, so that he made them an object of horror, as you see. ⁸ Now do not be stubborn, as your ancestors were; instead, give yourselves to Yahweh and come into his holy place, which he has consecrated forever, and worship Yahweh your God, so that his fierce anger may turn away from you. ⁹ For if you turn back to Yahweh, your brothers and children will find compassion before those who led them away as prisoners, and they will come back into this land. For Yahweh your God, is gracious and merciful, and will not turn his face away from you, if you return to him.”

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

This is a continuation of King Hezekiah’s message to the people of Israel.

your brothers

Here “brothers” represents other people of Israel. AT: “your people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

he made them an object of horror

The abstract noun “horror” can be expressed with the words “horrified” or “horrible.” The author writes of what God did to their ancestors in terms of how other people would react when they saw what God did. AT: “he made them something that people would be horrified to see” or “he punished them horribly” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Metonymy](#))

give yourselves to Yahweh

This represents submitting to Yahweh. AT: “submit to Yahweh” or “dedicate yourselves to Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

come into his holy place

Here “his holy place” refers to God’s temple in Jerusalem. AT: “come to his temple in Jerusalem for it is holy” or “come to his temple in Jerusalem” (See: [Metonymy](#))

so that his fierce anger may turn away from you

The author writes of anger as if it were a person that can turn away from people. God’s anger turning away from them represents him no longer being angry with them. AT: “so that he will no longer be angry with you” (See: [Personification](#))

if you turn back to Yahweh

Here “turn back to Yahweh” represents submitting to him again. AT: “if you submit again to Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

your brothers and children will find compassion before those who led them away as prisoners

Here “find compassion” is a metaphor for experiencing compassion. Finding it “before those who led them” means those who led them away will show them compassion. AT: “your brothers and children will experience compassion from those who led them away as prisoners” or “those who led your brothers and children away as prisoners will be kind to them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

will not turn his face away from you

Here “turn his face away from you” represents rejecting them and refusing to protect them. AT: “will not reject you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

if you return to him

Here “return to him” represents submitting to God again. AT: “if you submit again to him” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [brother, brothers](#)
- [trespass, trespasses, trespassed](#)
- [holy place](#)
- [eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever](#)
- [worship](#)
- [compassion, compassionate](#)
- [prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons, imprison, imprisons, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonments](#)

- [grace, gracious](#)
- [mercy, merciful](#)
- [face, faces, faced, facing, facial, facedown](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 30:10-12

UDB:

¹⁰ The messengers went to all the cities in the tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh, as far north as the tribe of Zebulun, and gave them this message, but most of the people there scorned them and ridiculed them. ¹¹ But some of the people of the tribes of Asher, Manasseh, and Zebulun acknowledged their sin and went to Jerusalem. ¹² Also in Judah God made the people want together to obey Yahweh, which is what the king and his officials had told them to do in the message that they sent.

ULB:

¹⁰ So the couriers passed from city to city throughout the regions of Ephraim and Manasseh, all the way to Zebulun, but the people laughed at them and mocked them. ¹¹ However, certain men of Asher and Manasseh and of Zebulun humbled themselves and came to Jerusalem. ¹² The hand of God also came on Judah, to give them one heart, to carry out the command of the king and leaders by the word of Yahweh.

translationNotes

the regions of Ephraim and Manasseh

Ephraim and Manasseh were two of the tribes in the northern part of Israel. Here the phrase “Ephraim and Manasseh” refers to the people who belonged to all ten of the northern tribes of Israel. See how you translated it in [2 Chronicles 30:1](#). AT: “the regions of the northern tribes of Israel” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

all the way to Zebulun

Zebulun was one of the tribes farthest in the north of Israel, but there were three other tribes that reached farther north.

The hand of God also came on Judah

Here “the hand of God” represents his guidance as if he were guiding them with his hand. AT: “God guided the people of Judah” (See: [Metaphor](#))

to give them one heart

Having “one heart” represents being united and agreeing. AT: “causing them to agree” (See: [Metaphor](#))

to carry out the command

Here “carry out the command” is an idiom meaning to do what was commanded. AT: “to obey the command” (See: [Idiom](#))

the command of the king and leaders by the word of Yahweh

The phrase “by the word of Yahweh” shows that the king and leaders gave their command in obedience to the word of Yahweh. AT: “the command that the king and leaders gave them in obedience to the word of Yahweh” or “what the king and the leaders commanded because of what Yahweh had said”

translationWords

- [Zebulun](#)
- [mock, mocks, mocked, mocking, mocker, mockers, mockery, ridicule, ridiculed, scoff at, scoffed at](#)
- [Asher](#)
- [humble, humbles, humbled, humility](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 30:13-15

UDB:

¹³ So a huge crowd of people gathered in Jerusalem in the second month of the year, to celebrate the Festival of Unleavened Bread. ¹⁴ They removed the altars of Baal in Jerusalem and took away the altars for burning incense to honor other gods; they burned them all in the Kidron Valley.

¹⁵ They slaughtered the Passover lambs on the fourteenth day of that month. The priests and the other descendants of Levi who had not performed the rituals to purify themselves, they were ashamed; and they set about to make themselves qualified for the service to Yahweh, and they brought to the temple animals to be completely burned on the altar in the house of Yahweh.

ULB:

¹³ Many people, a very great assembly, gathered in Jerusalem to celebrate the Festival of Unleavened Bread in the second month. ¹⁴ They rose and took away the altars that were in Jerusalem, and all the altars for incense; they threw them into the brook Kidron. ¹⁵ Then they killed the Passover lambs on the fourteenth day of the second month. The priests and Levites were ashamed, so they consecrated themselves and brought burnt offerings into the house of Yahweh.

translationNotes

the second month

This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

They rose and took away the altars

Here “They rose” means that they started to work at taking away the altars. AT: “They began to work and took away the altars” or “They took away the altars”

the altars that were in Jerusalem, and all the altars for incense

These two phrases refer to altars that people had built to false gods.

the brook Kidron

This was a small stream of water in the Kidron Valley. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the fourteenth day of the second month

This is near the beginning of May on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

translationWords

- assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled
- festival, festivals
- unleavened bread
- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose
- incense, incenses
- Passover
- lamb, Lamb of God
- day, days
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- shame, shames, shamed, shameful, shamefully, shameless, shamelessly, ashamed, unashamed
- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- house of God, Yahweh's house

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 30:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ Then they stood in the places that Moses had written in his law that they should stand in. Then the descendants of Levi gave to the priests bowls containing blood of the animals that were being sacrificed, and the priests sprinkled the altar with some of the blood. ¹⁷ Many people in the crowd had not purified themselves, and therefore they were not able to kill the lambs and dedicate them to Yahweh. So it was necessary for the descendants of Levi to kill the lambs for them.

ULB:

¹⁶ They stood in their place by their divisions, following the directions given in the law of Moses, the man of God. The priests sprinkled the blood that they received from the hand of the Levites. ¹⁷ For there were many in the assembly who had not consecrated themselves. Therefore the Levites slaughtered the Passover lambs for everyone who was not purified and could not consecrate their sacrifice to Yahweh.

translationNotes

They stood in their place by their divisions

“They stood in their appointed places”

the blood that they received from the hand of the Levites

This refers to the blood of the lambs that the Levites killed. Here “received from the hand of the Levites” is a metonym for the Levites giving the blood to the priests. AT: “the blood that they received from the Levites” or “the lambs’ blood that the Levites gave to them” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Metonymy](#))

the Passover lambs

“the lambs for the Passover”

translationWords

- law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh
- God
- blood
- receive, receives, received, receiving, receiver
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- consecrate, consecrated, consecration

- [slaughter, slaughters, slaughtered, slaughtering](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 30:18-20

UDB:

¹⁸ Although most of the people who had come from the tribes of Ephraim, Manasseh, and Issachar had not purified themselves, they ate the food of the Passover Festival anyway, ignoring the rules written by Moses. But Hezekiah prayed for them, saying "Yahweh, you always do what is good; I pray that you will forgive everyone ¹⁹ who sincerely wants to honor you, the God whom our ancestors worshiped, even if they have not purified themselves by obeying the sacred laws that you gave to us." ²⁰ And Yahweh heard what Hezekiah prayed; he forgave the people, and did not punish them.

ULB:

¹⁸ For a great many of the people, many of them from Ephraim and Manasseh, Issachar and Zebulun, had not purified themselves, yet they ate the Passover meal, against the written instructions. For Hezekiah had prayed for them, saying, "May the good Yahweh pardon everyone ¹⁹ who sets his heart to seek God, Yahweh, the God of his ancestors, even though he is not purified by the purification standards of the holy place." ²⁰ So Yahweh listened to Hezekiah and healed the people.

translationNotes

Ephraim and Manasseh, Issachar and Zebulun

These are the names of some of the tribes that lived in the northern part of Israel. See how you translated "Zebulun" in [2 Chronicles 30:10](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

against the written instructions

To do something "against" instructions means to do something that is not in obedience to the instructions. If needed, the instructions can be stated clearly. AT: "even though the written instructions said that they must purify themselves first" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the good Yahweh

The word "good" here is a reminder to the people that Yahweh is kind. AT: "Yahweh, who is good" (See: [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#))

everyone who sets his heart to seek God

Here "sets his heart" is a metaphor for being determined to do something, and "to seek God" is a metaphor for knowing, worshiping, and obeying him. AT: "everyone who is determined to obey God" or "everyone who truly wants to honor God" (See: [Metaphor](#))

So Yahweh listened to Hezekiah

This implies that Yahweh responded favorably to Hezekiah. AT: “So Yahweh responded favorably to Hezekiah” or “So Yahweh did what Hezekiah asked” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

healed the people

Here “healed the people” is a metaphor for forgiving the people and not punishing them. AT: “for-gave the people” or “did not punish the people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [Issachar](#)
- [written](#)
- [Hezekiah](#)
- [pray, prayer, prayers, prayed](#)
- [good, goodness](#)
- [forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned](#)
- [cure, cured, heal, heals, healed, healing, healings, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 30:21-22

UDB:

²¹ The Israelite people who were there in Jerusalem celebrated the Festival of Unleavened Bread for seven days. They rejoiced greatly as they celebrated, while the priests and other descendants of Levi sang to Yahweh every day and played musical instruments to praise God.

²² Hezekiah thanked all the descendants of Levi for doing this work for Yahweh, and for very skillfully leading the people who were worshipping. For those seven days the people ate the Passover food and brought offerings to maintain fellowship with Yahweh and praised Yahweh, the God whom their ancestors had worshiped.

ULB:

²¹ The people of Israel who were present in Jerusalem kept the Festival of Unleavened Bread for seven days with great joy. The Levites and the priests praised Yahweh day after day, singing with loud instruments to Yahweh. ²² Hezekiah spoke encouragingly to all the Levites who understood the service of Yahweh. So they ate throughout the festival for the seven days, offering sacrifices of fellowship offerings, and making confession to Yahweh, the God of their ancestors.

translationNotes

kept the Festival of Unleavened Bread

Here “kept the festival” is a idiom meaning to participate in the festival or celebrate the festival. AT: “celebrate the festival” (See: [Idiom](#))

singing with loud instruments to Yahweh

“singing and playing loud musical instruments to Yahweh”

who understood the service of Yahweh

This was the reason that he spoke encouragingly to them. AT: “because they understood the service of Yahweh” or “because they served Yahweh skillfully” (See: [Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding](#))

So they ate throughout the festival

The word “they” refers to the people of Israel.

making confession to Yahweh

Possible meanings are 1) “confession” here refers to saying that God is great. AT: “praising Yahweh” or 2) “confession” here refers to admitting their sins. AT: “confessing their sins to Yahweh”

translationWords

- Israel, Israelites
- Jerusalem
- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing
- praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- fellowship offering, fellowship offerings
- confess, confessed, confesses, confession

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 30:23-24

UDB:

²³ Then the whole group decided to celebrate for seven more days; so they celebrated joyfully for seven more days. ²⁴ King Hezekiah provided one thousand bulls and seven thousand sheep to be slaughtered for the people to eat during the festival, and the officials also gave them one thousand bulls and ten thousand sheep and goats. Many priests set themselves apart for serving Yahweh and to honor him, at this festival.

ULB:

²³ The whole assembly then decided to celebrate for another seven days, and they did so with joy. ²⁴ For Hezekiah king of Judah gave the assembly one thousand bulls and seven thousand sheep as an offering; and the leaders gave to the assembly one thousand bulls and ten thousand sheep and goats. A large number of priests consecrated themselves.

translationNotes

Hezekiah ... gave the assembly ... bulls and ... sheep as an offering

Hezekiah gave the animals to the people as an offering to the Lord for the people to eat.

one thousand bulls ... seven thousand sheep ... one thousand bulls ... ten thousand sheep and goats

“1,000 bulls ... 7,000 sheep ... 1,000 bulls ... 10,000 sheep and goats” (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- Judah, kingdom of Judah
- cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen
- ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins
- goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids
- priest, priests, priesthood

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 30:25-27**UDB:**

²⁵ All the people of Judah rejoiced, including the priests and other descendants of Levi and all the people from Israel who had come, and including some from other countries who were living in Israel and some from other countries who were living in Judah. ²⁶ Everyone in Jerusalem was very joyful, because nothing like this had happened in Jerusalem since the time when David's son Solomon was the king of Israel. ²⁷ The priests and the other descendants of Levi stood up to bless the people, and God heard them, because their prayers reached up to heaven, the holy place where God lives.

ULB:

²⁵ All the assembly of Judah, with the priests and the Levites, and all the people who came together from Israel, as well as the foreigners who came from the land of Israel and those who lived in Judah—they all rejoiced. ²⁶ So there was great joy in Jerusalem, for since the time of Solomon son of David, king of Israel, there had not been anything like it in Jerusalem. ²⁷ Then the priests, the Levites, rose and blessed the people. Their voice was heard, and their prayer went up to heaven, the holy place where God lives.

translationNotes**All the assembly of Judah**

Here “Judah” probably refers to the southern tribes of Israel.

all the people who came together from Israel

Here “Israel” probably refers to the northern tribes of Israel. The people are members of those tribes. They came to Jerusalem, which is in Judah. AT: “all the people who came together from Israel in the north” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the foreigners who came from the land of Israel

Here “the land of Israel” probably refers to the land owned by the northern tribes of Israel. AT: “the foreigners who came from the land of Israel in the north” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

those who lived in Judah

Here “Judah” probably refers to the land owned by the southern tribes of Israel. AT: “the foreigners who lived in Judah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

since the time of Solomon son of David, king of Israel

“since the time when Solomon son of David ruled as king of Israel” or “since the Passover Festival that the people held when Solomon son of David was king of Israel”

there had not been anything like it in Jerusalem

“there had not been any Passover Festival in Jerusalem like this Passover Festival”

Their voice was heard ... their prayer went up to heaven, the holy place where God lives

These two phrases mean the same thing and imply that God responded favorably to their prayer. AT: “God responded favorably to their prayer, which he heard in heaven, the holy place where he lives” or “God, who lives in the holy heaven, heard their prayer” (See: [Parallelism](#))

Their voice was heard

This can be stated in active form. AT: “God heard their voice” or “God heard what they said to him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

their prayer went up to heaven

Their prayer going up to heaven represents God in heaven paying attention to them praying on earth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners
- joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing
- Solomon
- David
- bless, blessed, blessing
- pray, prayer, prayers, prayed
- holy place

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 31 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of King Hezekiah continues in this chapter.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Idiom

To express Hezekiah's desire to please God, the author uses two idioms "to seek God" and "with all his heart." This means that he really wanted to do what God wanted. (See: [Idiom](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 31:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 31:1

UDB:

¹ After the festival ended, the Israelites who were there went to all the cities in Judah and smashed the stones for worshiping idols, and cut down the poles for worshiping the goddess Asherah. They destroyed the high places where idols were worshiped, and the altars of Baal throughout the tribes of Judah and Benjamin, and also in the tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh. After destroying all of them, they returned to their own cities and towns.

ULB:

¹ Now when all this was finished, all the people of Israel who were there went out to the cities of Judah and broke to pieces the stone pillars and they cut down the Asherah poles, and they broke down the high places and the altars in all of Judah and Benjamin, and in Ephraim and Manasseh, until they had destroyed them all. Then all the people of Israel returned, every one to his own possession and his own city.

translationNotes

who were there

“who were in Jerusalem”

to his own possession

Here “possession” means possessions in general. AT: “to his own property” or “to his own home” (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

translationWords

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [column, columns, pillar, pillars](#)
- [Asherah, Asherah pole, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth, Ashtoreths](#)
- [high place, high places](#)
- [altar, altars](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite, Ephraimites](#)
- [Manasseh](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 31:2-3

UDB:

² Hezekiah divided the priests and other descendants of Levi into groups. He appointed some of the groups to offer sacrifices that would be completely burned on the altar and offerings to maintain fellowship with Yahweh. He appointed some groups to do other work at the temple: Some to lead the people in their worship, some to thank Yahweh, and some to sing songs to praise Yahweh at the gates of the temple. ³ The king contributed some of his own funds to buy animals that would be sacrificed in the morning and in the evening of each day, and on the Sabbath days, to celebrate the new moons, and during the other feasts, according to what was written in the laws that Yahweh gave to Moses.

ULB:

² Hezekiah assigned the divisions of the priests and the Levites organized by their divisions, each man assigned to his work, both the priests and the Levites. He assigned them to make the burnt offerings and fellowship offerings, to serve, to give thanks, and to praise at the gates of Yahweh's temple. ³ He also assigned the king's portion for the burnt offerings from his own possessions, that is, for the morning and evening burnt offerings, and the burnt offerings for the Sabbath days, the new moons, and the fixed festivals, as it was written in the law of Yahweh.

translationNotes

Hezekiah assigned the divisions of the priests and the Levites organized by their divisions, each man assigned to his work, both the priests and the Levites

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Hezekiah organized the priests and the Levites into groups. He assigned each priest and Levite to their duties" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

assigned the king's portion for the burnt offerings from his own possessions

Hezekiah took the meat and grain used for the burnt offerings out of his own possessions.

the new moons

This was a festival coinciding with the movement of the moon.

the fixed festivals

This refers to festivals which occur on specific dates.

as it was written in the law of Yahweh

This can be stated in active form. AT: “just as Moses wrote in the law of Yahweh” or “just as Yahweh commanded in his law” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [Hezekiah](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire](#)
- [fellowship offering, fellowship offerings](#)
- [serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice](#)
- [gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways](#)
- [temple](#)
- [possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [new moon, new moons](#)
- [written](#)
- [law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 31:4-5

UDB:

⁴ Hezekiah told the people living in Jerusalem to give to the priests and the other descendants of Levi the portions of meat that should be given to them, in order that they could devote all their time to obeying the laws of Yahweh. ⁵ As soon as he told that to them, they generously gave the first part of their harvest of grain, and the first part of the new wine that they produced, and olive oil and honey, and of the crops that grew in their fields. They brought to the temple a tenth of all their crops.

ULB:

⁴ Moreover, he commanded the people who lived in Jerusalem to give the portion for the priests and the Levites, so that they might concentrate on obeying the law of Yahweh. ⁵ As soon as the command was sent out, the people of Israel generously gave the firstfruits of grain, new wine, oil, honey, and from all their harvest of the field. They brought in a tithe of everything, which was a great quantity.

translationNotes

As soon as the command was sent out

This can be stated in active form. AT: "As soon as the people heard the command" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

a tithe of everything

"a tenth of all their crops"

translationWords

- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient
- Israel, Israelites
- firstfruits
- grain, grains, grainfields
- wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine
- oil
- honey, honeycomb
- harvest, harvests, harvested, harvesting, harvester, harvesters
- tenth, tenths, tithe, tithes

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 31:6-8

UDB:

⁶ The men of Israel and Judah who were living in various cities in Judah also brought a tenth of their cattle and sheep and goats, and a tenth of other things that they had set them apart for the honor of Yahweh their God, and they piled up all those things in heaps. ⁷ They started to do that in the third month and finished doing it in the seventh month. ⁸ When Hezekiah and his officials saw the heaps, they praised Yahweh and requested God to bless the people.

ULB:

⁶ The people of Israel and Judah who lived in the cities of Judah also brought in the tithe of cattle and sheep, and the tithe of the holy things that were set apart to Yahweh their God, and they piled them up in heaps. ⁷ It was in the third month when they began piling up their contribution in heaps, and they finished in the seventh month. ⁸ When Hezekiah and the leaders came and saw the heaps, they blessed Yahweh and his people Israel.

translationNotes

third month

This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

seventh month

This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season, which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [tenth, tenths, tithe, tithes](#)
-
- [ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [God](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 31:9-10

UDB:

⁹ But Hezekiah asked the priests and other descendants of Levi, “What are these heaps of things?”
¹⁰ Then Azariah the high priest, a descendant of Zadok, replied, “Since the time that the people started to bring their offerings to the temple, we have had even more food than we need. This has happened because Yahweh has greatly blessed our fellow Israelites, with the result that all this is left over after we priests and other descendants of Levi took all that we need!”

ULB:

⁹ Then Hezekiah questioned the priests and the Levites about the heaps. ¹⁰ Azariah, the chief priest, of the house of Zadok, answered him and said, “Since the people began to bring the offerings into the house of Yahweh, we have eaten and had enough, and have plenty left over, for Yahweh has blessed his people. What was left over is this large amount here.”

translationNotes

of the house of Zadok

Here “house” represents a family or descendants. AT: “a descendant of Zadok” (See: [Metonymy](#))

What was left over is this large amount here

The chief priest would have been pointing to the large heaps.

translationWords

- [Azariah](#)
- [chief priests](#)
- [house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers](#)
- [Zadok](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh’s house](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 31:11-13

UDB:

¹¹ Then Hezekiah ordered that they should prepare storerooms at the temple to hold these supplies. ¹² Then they brought into the storerooms all the tithes and offerings and things and the things dedicated to Yahweh which the people had brought. One of the descendants of Levi whose name was Konaniah was in charge of those things, and his younger brother Shimei was his assistant. ¹³ Those two men supervised Jehiel, Azaziah, Nahath, Asahel, Jerimoth, Jozabad, Eliel, Ismakiah, Mahath and Benaiah while they did the work. They were appointed by King Hezekiah; Azariah was in charge of everything that was done in the temple.

ULB:

¹¹ Then Hezekiah commanded storerooms to be prepared in the house of Yahweh, and they prepared them. ¹² Then they faithfully brought in the offerings, the tithes and the things that belonged to Yahweh. Konaniah the Levite was the manager in charge of them, and his brother Shimei was second to him. ¹³ Jehiel, Azaziah, Nahath, Asahel, Jerimoth, Jozabad, Eliel, Ismakiah, Mahath, and Benaiah were managers under the hand of Konaniah and Shimei his brother, by appointment of Hezekiah, the king, and Azariah, the official over the house of God.

translationNotes

Hezekiah commanded storerooms to be prepared

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Hezekiah commanded the priests and Levites to prepare storerooms” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Konaniah ... Shimei ... Jehiel, Azaziah, Nahath, Asahel, Jerimoth, Jozabad, Eliel, Ismakiah, Mahath, and Benaiah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

were managers under the hand of Konaniah and Shimei his brother

Here “hand” represents power or control. The phrase “under the hand” is an idiom that means to be under someone’s authority. AT: “were managers whom Konaniah and Shimei his brother supervised” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

the official over the house of God

Here “over” is an idiom that means to be in charge of. AT: “the official in charge of everyone who served in the house of God” (See: [Idiom](#))

translationWords

- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings
- storehouse, storehouses
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- appoint, appoints, appointed
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- house of God, Yahweh's house

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 31:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ Kore son of Imnah, another descendant of Levi, who guarded the east gate of the temple, was in charge of the offerings to God that were made voluntarily. He distributed to the priests and other descendants of Levi the offerings and other things that were dedicated to Yahweh. ¹⁵ Eden, Miniamin, Jeshua, Shemaiah, Amariah and Shecaniah faithfully assisted him in the towns where the priests lived. They distributed those things to the groups of their fellow priests; they distributed them to everyone, including those who were young and those who were old.

ULB:

¹⁴ Kore son of Imnah the Levite, the porter at the east gate, was over the free will offerings of God, in charge of distributing the offerings to Yahweh and the most holy offerings. ¹⁵ Under him were Eden, Miniamin, Jeshua, Shemaiah, Amariah, and Shecaniah, in the cities of the priests. They filled offices of trust, in order to give these offerings to their brothers division by division, to both the important and the unimportant.

translationNotes**Kore son of Imnah ... Eden, Miniamin, Jeshua, Shemaiah, Amariah, and Shecaniah**

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the porter at the east gate

“the gatekeeper at the east gate of the temple”

Under him were Eden ... in the cities of the priests

Here “under” is an idiom that means to be under someone’s authority. AT: “Eden ... assisted Kore in the cities of the priests” (See: [Idiom](#))

They filled offices of trust, in order to give

“Their duty was to give” or “They faithfully gave”

to their brothers

Here “brothers” is a metaphor for “fellow priests.” AT: “to their fellow priests” (See: [Metaphor](#))

division by division

“group by group”

to both the important and the unimportant

Here “important” and “unimportant” are used together to mean “everyone.” AT: “to everyone, including the important and the unimportant” (See: [Merism](#))

the important and the unimportant

This seems to imply the old and the young. This can be restated to removed the nominal adjectives. AT: “those who are old and those who are young” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Nominal Adjectives](#))

translationWords

- [gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways](#)
- [freewill offering, freewill offerings](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings](#)
- [trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 31:16

UDB:

¹⁶ They also distributed things to the males who were at least three years old, those whose names were on the scrolls where lists of family names were written. They were males who were allowed to enter the temple to perform their tasks each day, the tasks that each group had been assigned to do.

ULB:

¹⁶ They also gave to those males three years old and up, who were listed in the records of their ancestors who entered the house of Yahweh, as required by the daily schedule, to do the work in their offices and their divisions. ^[1]

31:16 ^[1] Instead of *males three years old and up* , some modern versions have *males thirty years old and up* .

translationNotes

They also gave

It is understood that they gave the freewill offerings. AT: “They also gave freewill offerings” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

three years old and up

“three years old and older”

who were listed in the records

This can be stated in active form. AT: “whose names were in the records” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

as required by the daily schedule, to do the work in their offices and their divisions

This can be stated in active form. AT: “to do the daily work that they were supposed to do” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 31:17-19

UDB:

¹⁷ The names of the priests were on the scrolls where their families' names were written. They also distributed things to groups of descendants of Levi, those who were at least twenty years old. ¹⁸ They included all their little children and wives and other sons and daughters whose names were on the scrolls where the family names were written, because they also faithfully had set themselves apart for the honor of Yahweh and his requirements for holiness.

¹⁹ Hezekiah also appointed other men to distribute portions of those offerings to the priests and other descendants of Levi who were living in the pasturelands around the towns of Judah. But they gave things only to those who were descendants of Aaron the first high priest, whose names were on the scrolls containing the names of their families.

ULB:

¹⁷ They distributed to the priests according to the records of their ancestors, and the same to the Levites twenty years old and more, according to their offices and their divisions. ¹⁸ They included all their little ones, their wives, their sons, and their daughters, through the whole community, for they were faithful in keeping themselves holy. ¹⁹ For the priests, the descendants of Aaron, who were in the fields of the villages belonging to their cities, or in every city, there were men assigned by name to give portions to all the males among the priests, and to all who were listed in the records of their ancestors as being among the Levites.

translationNotes

They distributed

It is understood they distributed the freewill offerings. AT: "They distributed freewill offerings" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

twenty years old and more

"20 years old and older" (See: [Numbers](#))

there were men assigned by name to give portions

This can be stated in active form. AT: "there were men responsible for giving portions" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to all who were listed in the records

This can be stated in active form. AT: "to all whose names were in the records" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants
- Aaron
- name, names, named

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 31:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ That is what Hezekiah did throughout Judah. He always faithfully did things that Yahweh his God says are right and good. ²¹ In everything that he did for the worship in the temple, and as he obeyed God's laws and commands, he tried to find out what his God wanted, and he worked energetically. So he was successful.

ULB:

²⁰ Hezekiah did this throughout all Judah. He accomplished what was good, right, and faithful before Yahweh, his God. ²¹ In every project that he began in the service of the house of God, the law, and the commandments, to seek his God, he performed it with all his heart, and he succeeded.

translationNotes

to seek his God

Seeking Yahweh represents choosing to know, worship, and obey him. AT: "to obey his God" (See: [Metaphor](#))

he performed it with all his heart

Here the word "heart" refers to a person's will and desire. AT: "he performed it with all his will" or "he was completely committed to what he did" (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [Hezekiah](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [good, goodness](#)
- [faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness](#)
- [serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31 General Notes](#)

- 2 Chronicles 31 translationQuestions

2 Chronicles 32 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of King Hezekiah is completed in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Trust in Yahweh

Because Hezekiah trusted God, God rescued Jerusalem from the attacked of the Assyrian army and healed Hezekiah when he was very sick. (See: [trust](#), [trusts](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 32:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 32:1

UDB:

¹ After King Hezekiah had obeyed Yahweh's instructions and had done all those things, King Sennacherib of Assyria came with his army and invaded Judah. He commanded his soldiers to surround the cities that had walls around them, thinking that they would break through those walls and conquer those cities.

ULB:

¹ After these things and these acts of faithfulness, Sennacherib, king of Assyria, came and entered Judah. He camped to attack the fortified cities, which he intended to capture for himself.

translationNotes

After these things and these acts of faithfulness

The abstract noun "faithfulness" can be stated as "faithfully." AT: "After Hezekiah faithfully did all the things Yahweh commanded him to do" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Sennacherib, king of Assyria, came ... He camped

Here Sennacherib represents his army. AT: "Sennacherib, king of Assyria, and his army came ... They camped" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

came and entered Judah

Here "came" can be stated as "went." AT: "went and entered Judah" (See: [Go and Come](#))

translationWords

- [faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness](#)
- [Sennacherib](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrians, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [stronghold, strongholds, fortifications, fortified, fortress, fortresses](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 32:2-3

UDB:

² When Hezekiah saw that Sennacherib had come with his army and that they intended to attack Jerusalem, ³⁻⁴ he consulted with his officials and army leaders. They said to themselves, “Why should allow the king of Assyria and his army to come and find plenty of water to drink?” So they decided to stop the water from flowing outside the city. A large group of men gathered together and blocked all the springs and the stream that flowed through that area.

ULB:

² When Hezekiah saw that Sennacherib had come and that he intended to fight against Jerusalem, ³ he consulted with his leaders and his powerful men to stop up the waters of the springs that were outside the city; they helped him do so. ⁴ So many people gathered together and stopped up all the springs and the stream that was flowing through the middle of the land. They said, “Why should the kings of Assyria come and find a lot of water?”

translationNotes

that Sennacherib had come and that he intended

Here Sennacherib also represents his army. AT: “that Sennacherib and his army had come and that they intended” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

to fight against Jerusalem

Here “Jerusalem” represents the people there. AT: “to fight against the people of Jerusalem” or “to fight against the army of Jerusalem” (See: [Metonymy](#))

to stop up the waters of the springs that were outside the city

The people of the city would fill up wells and fountain springs with earth and rocks, hiding the water from the Assyrians, but the people would cause the water to flow into the city through secret pathways.

Why should the kings of Assyria come and find a lot of water?

The people use a rhetorical question to emphasize that they do not want the kings of Assyria to find their water. The question can be translated as a statement. AT: “We do not want the kings of Assyria to come here and find a lot of water.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

the kings of Assyria

Possible meanings for “kings” are 1) this is an idiom that refers to the one king of Assyria. AT: “the king of Assyria” or 2) this may refer to the king and his other leaders. AT: “the king and the other leaders of Assyria” (See: [Idiom](#))

translationWords

- [power, powers](#)
- [water, waters, watered, watering](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 32:5

UDB:

⁵ Then they worked hard to repair all the sections of the city wall that had been broken, and they built watchtowers on the walls higher. They strengthened the Millo, a massive supporting wall on the east side of the city of David. They also made a large number of weapons and shields.

ULB:

⁵ Hezekiah took courage and built up all the wall that was broken down. He built the towers higher, and also the other wall outside. He also strengthened the Millo in the city of David, and he made large amounts of weapons and shields. ^[1]

32:5 ^[1] Instead of *He built the towers higher*, some ancient and modern versions have, *he built towers on it*, that is, on the wall.

translationNotes

Hezekiah took courage and built up ... He built ... He also ... he made

The readers should understand that Hezekiah probably commanded other people to do the actual work. AT: “Hezekiah took courage and commanded the people to build up ... They built ... They also ... they made” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Hezekiah took courage and built up

Possible meanings are 1) Hezekiah strengthened his position by commanding the people to repair the walls of the city. You can make this clear by using the connecting word “by.” AT: “Hezekiah strengthened the city by building up” or 2) he became encouraged. AT: “Hezekiah became encouraged and built up” (See: [Connecting Words](#))

the Millo

This is a part of the wall on the north side of Jerusalem.

translationWords

- [watchtower, watchtowers, tower](#)
- [city of David](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 32:6-8

UDB:

⁶ Hezekiah appointed army commanders, and he gathered them in front of him in the square at one of the city gates, and he encouraged them by saying this to them: ⁷ "Be strong and courageous. Do not be afraid or discouraged because of the king of Assyria and the huge army that is with him, because Yahweh is with us, and his power is greater than their power. ⁸ They have to rely on the power of humans, but we have Yahweh our God to help us and to fight battles for us." So the people became more confident because of what Hezekiah, the king of Judah, said.

ULB:

⁶ He placed military commanders over the people. He gathered them together to him in the broad place at the city gate and spoke encouragingly to them. He said, ⁷ "Be strong and of good courage. Do not be afraid or discouraged because of the king of Assyria and all the army that is with him, for someone is with us who is greater than those with him. ⁸ With him is only an arm of flesh, but with us is Yahweh, our God, to help us, and to fight our battles." Then the people comforted themselves with the words of Hezekiah, king of Judah.

translationNotes

He placed military commanders over the people

The idiom "place over" means to put in charge of. "He put military commanders in charge of the people" (See: [Idiom](#))

for someone is with us who is greater than those with him

"for our God is with us and is more powerful than those with the king of Assyria"

is only an arm of flesh

Here "arm" represents strength, and "flesh" represents humanity. AT: "are only those with human power" (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- commander, commanders
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- fear, fears, afraid
- flesh
- Yahweh
- word, words

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 32:9-10

UDB:

⁹ Later, when Sennacherib and all his soldiers were surrounding the city of Lachish, he sent some officers to Jerusalem to give this message to King Hezekiah and to all the people of Judah who were there:

¹⁰ "I am Sennacherib, the great king of Assyria, and this is what I say: While you are staying in Jerusalem, my soldiers are surrounding the city. So what are you depending on to keep you safe?"

ULB:

⁹ After this, Sennacherib, king of Assyria, sent his servants to Jerusalem (now he was in front of Lachish, and all his army was with him), to Hezekiah, king of Judah, and to all of Judah who were in Jerusalem. He said, ¹⁰ "This is what Sennacherib, king of Assyria, says: What are you relying on in order to endure a siege in Jerusalem?"

translationNotes

now he was ... with him

The word "now" is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the narrator tells background information about the location of Sennacherib and his army. (See: [Background Information](#))

Lachish

This was a city in Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

What are you relying on in order to endure a siege in Jerusalem?

Sennacherib uses a rhetorical question to cause the people to think about their situation. The question can be translated as a statement. AT: "You are not able to endure a siege in Jerusalem." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

translationWords

- send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out
- enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants
- Jerusalem
- siege, besiege, besieged, besiegers, besieging, siegeworks

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 32:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ Hezekiah says to you, ‘Yahweh our God will save us from being defeated by the army of you.’ He wants you to die from having no food or water. ¹² Hezekiah is the one who told his men to get rid of that god’s high places on the hills, and his altars in the countryside, saying to you people of Jerusalem and other places in Judah, ‘You must worship at only one altar and burn sacrifices on only that altar.’

ULB:

¹¹ Is not Hezekiah misleading you, that he may give you over to die by famine and by thirst, when he tells you, ‘Yahweh our God will rescue us from the hand of the king of Assyria?’ ¹² Has not this same Hezekiah taken away his high places and his altars and commanded Judah and Jerusalem, ‘On one altar you must worship, and on it you must burn your sacrifices’?

translationNotes

Is not Hezekiah misleading you ... king of Assyria’?

Sennacherib uses a rhetorical question to cause the people of Jerusalem to think about their situation. It can be translated as a statement. AT: “Hezekiah is misleading you ... king of Assyria.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

that he may give you over to die by famine and by thirst

“so that you will die from lack of food and water”

from the hand of the king of Assyria

Here “hand” represents power or control. AT: “from the power of the king of Assyria” or “from the king of Assyria” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Has not this same Hezekiah taken away ... sacrifices’?

Sennacherib uses a rhetorical question to cause the people of Jerusalem to think about their situation. It can be translated as a statement. AT: “This is the same Hezekiah who has taken away ... sacrifices.” or “Hezekiah has taken away ... sacrifices.”

commanded Judah and Jerusalem

Here “Judah” and “Jerusalem” represent the people who live there. AT: “commanded the people of Judah and Jerusalem” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly
- famine, famines
- hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of
- altar, altars
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- worship
- sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 32:13-15

UDB:

¹³⁻¹⁴ Do you people not know what I and my ancestors have done to all the people groups in other countries? We destroyed them all, and their gods could not save them from me. ¹⁵ So do not allow Hezekiah to deceive you like this. Do not believe what he says, because no god of any nation or kingdom has ever been able to rescue his people from being conquered by my army and the armies of my ancestors. So certainly your god will not be able to rescue you from my power.”

ULB:

¹³ Do you not know what I and my ancestors have done to all the peoples of the other lands? Were the gods of the peoples of the surrounding lands able in any way to rescue their land from my power? ¹⁴ Among all the gods of those nations that my ancestors completely destroyed, was there any god who could rescue his people out of my hand? Why should your God be able to rescue you from my power? ¹⁵ Now do not let Hezekiah deceive you or persuade you in this way. Do not believe him, for no god of any nation or kingdom has been able to rescue his people out of my hand, or out of the hand of my ancestors. How much less will your God rescue you from my hand?”

translationNotes

Do you not know what ... lands?

Sennacherib uses a rhetorical question to cause the people of Jerusalem to think about their situation. It can be translated as a statement. AT: “You know very well what ... lands!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Were the gods ... power?

Sennacherib uses a rhetorical question to cause the people of Jerusalem to think about their situation. It can be translated as a statement. AT: “There was no god ... power!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Among all the gods ... was there any god who ... hand?

Sennacherib uses a rhetorical question to cause the people of Jerusalem to think about their situation. It can be translated as a statement. AT: “There was no god among all the gods ... who ... hand!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

out of my hand

Here “hand” represents power or control. AT: “from my power” or “from me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Why should your God be able ... power?

Sennacherib uses a rhetorical question to cause the people of Jerusalem to think about their situation. It can be translated as a statement. AT: “There is no reason your God should be able ... power!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Now

Here the word “now” is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

How much less will your God rescue you from my hand?

Sennacherib uses a rhetorical question to cause the people of Jerusalem to think about their situation. It can be translated as a statement. AT: “Your God will certainly not be able to rescue you from my hand!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

translationWords

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry](#)
- [power, powers](#)
- [deceive, deceives, deceived, deceiving, deceit, deceiver, deceivers, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deception, deceptive](#)
- [believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief](#)
- [nation, nations](#)
- [kingdom, kingdoms](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 32:16-17**UDB:**

¹⁶ Sennacherib's officers said more things to insult Yahweh their God and Hezekiah, who served God well. ¹⁷ King Sennacherib wrote more letters insulting Yahweh, the God whom the Israelites belonged to. He wrote, "No god of any of these nations I have conquered could save his people from me. Similarly, the god of Hezekiah will not save his people from my power."

ULB:

¹⁶ Sennacherib's servants spoke even more against Yahweh God and against his servant Hezekiah. ¹⁷ Sennacherib also wrote letters in order to mock Yahweh, the God of Israel, and to speak against him. He said, "As the gods of the nations of the lands have not rescued their people out of my hand, so the God of Hezekiah will not rescue his people out of my hand."

translationNotes**out of my hand**

Here "hand" represents power or control. AT: "from my power" or "from me" (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [Sennacherib](#)
- [enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants](#)
- [Hezekiah](#)
- [mock, mocks, mocked, mocking, mocker, mockers, mockery, ridicule, ridiculed, scoff at, scoffed at](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 32:18-19

UDB:

¹⁸ Then the officers shouted in the Hebrew language to the people who were on the wall, in order to cause them to be very terrified, thinking that as a result the army of Assyria could capture the city without a battle. ¹⁹ They belittled the God worshiped by the people of Jerusalem like they belittled the gods of the other people groups of the world, gods which indeed were only idols fashioned by craftsmen.

ULB:

¹⁸ They cried out in the language of the Jews to the people of Jerusalem who were on the wall, to frighten them and trouble them, in order that they might capture the city. ¹⁹ They spoke of the God of Jerusalem as they had spoken of the gods of the other peoples of the earth, which are merely the work of men's hands.

translationNotes

They cried out

“Sennacherib’s servants shouted loudly”

to frighten them and trouble them

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize the intensity of fear. AT: “to make them very afraid” (See: [Doublet](#))

they might capture

“the Assyrian army might capture”

They spoke of the God of Jerusalem as they had spoken of the gods of the other peoples of the earth

“They mocked the God of Jerusalem as they had mocked the gods of the other peoples of the earth”

which are merely the work of men's hands

This emphasizes that humans made these idols with their own hands and are therefore worthless. AT: “which are merely idols that men have made” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- Jew, Jewish, Jews
- Jerusalem
- trouble, troubles, troubled, troubling, troublemaker, troublesome
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- earth, earthen, earthly
- works, deeds, work, acts

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 32:20-21**UDB:**

²⁰ Then King Hezekiah and the prophet Isaiah cried out to God, praying very earnestly about this. ²¹ And that night Yahweh sent an angel who killed all the soldiers of Assyria and their leaders and their officers in the place where the king of Assyria and his army had set up their tents. So the king of Assyria left, and returned to his own country, very disgraced. And one day when he went into the temple of his god, some of his sons struck him with their swords and killed him.

ULB:

²⁰ Hezekiah, the king, and Isaiah son of Amoz, the prophet, prayed because of this matter and he cried out to heaven. ²¹ Yahweh sent an angel, who killed the fighting men, the commanders, and the officers of the king in the camp. So Sennacherib returned to his own land with shame on his face. When he had gone into the house of his god, some of his own children killed him there with the sword.

translationNotes**cried out to heaven**

Here “heaven” represents Yahweh. AT: “cried to Yahweh for help” or “pleaded to Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

with shame on his face

“embarrassed” or “ashamed”

the house of his god

“the temple of his god”

translationWords

- [Isaiah](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Amoz](#)
- [cry, cries, cried, crying, cry out, cries out, cried out, out, outcry, outcries](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [sword, swords, swordsmen](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 32:22-23

UDB:

²² That is how Yahweh guided and rescued Hezekiah and the people of Jerusalem from the power of Sennacherib, the king of Assyria, and from the power of all their other enemies. That is how he gave them peace with all the countries near them. ²³ Many people brought offerings for Yahweh to Jerusalem, and also brought valuable gifts for King Hezekiah. And from that time, Hezekiah was highly respected by the people of all the other nations.

ULB:

²² In this way, Yahweh saved Hezekiah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem from the hand of Sennacherib, the king of Assyria, and from the hand of all others, and gave them rest on every side. ^[1] ²³ Many were bringing offerings to Yahweh in Jerusalem, and precious gifts to Hezekiah king of Judah, so that he was lifted up in the eyes of all nations from that time forward.

32:22 ^[1] Instead of *gave them rest on every side*, some ancient and modern versions have *guided them on every side*. The original reading is uncertain.

translationNotes

from the hand of Sennacherib ... from the hand of all others

Here “hand” represents power or control. AT: “from the power of Sennacherib ... from the power of all others” or “from Sennacherib ... from all others” (See: [Metonymy](#))

gave them rest on every side

The abstract noun “rest” can be translated as “peacefully.” AT: “caused them to live peacefully with all the people of the nations around them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

he was lifted up in the eyes of all nations

Here “lifted up” is an idiom that means to honor. Also, “in the eyes” is a metaphor that represents judgment or evaluation. AT: “the people of all the nations honored him” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [save, saves, saved, safe, salvation](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrians, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [gift, gifts](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Hezekiah](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [nation, nations](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 32:24-26

UDB:

²⁴ About that time, Hezekiah became very ill. He thought that he was about to die. But he prayed to Yahweh, and Yahweh answered him. He performed a miracle and healed Hezekiah. ²⁵ But Hezekiah was very proud, and he did not thank Yahweh for acting kindly toward him. Therefore Yahweh was angry with him and punished him and the people of Jerusalem and other places in Judah. ²⁶ Then Hezekiah said that he was sorry about being proud, and the people of Jerusalem also said that they were sorry for their sins. So Yahweh did not punish them during the remaining years that Hezekiah was their king.

ULB:

²⁴ In those days Hezekiah was sick to the point of dying. He prayed to Yahweh, who spoke to him and gave him a sign that he would be healed. ²⁵ But Hezekiah did not pay back Yahweh for the help given to him, for his heart was lifted up. So anger came on him, and on Judah and Jerusalem. ²⁶ Nevertheless, Hezekiah later humbled himself for the pride of his heart, both he and the inhabitants of Jerusalem, so that Yahweh's anger did not come on them during Hezekiah's days.

translationNotes

that he would be healed

This can be stated in active form. AT: "that he would heal Hezekiah" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

But Hezekiah did not pay back Yahweh for the help given to him

This can be stated in active form. AT: "But Hezekiah did not act in a grateful way after Yahweh helped him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

his heart was lifted up

Here "heart" is a metonym that represents a person's inner being. Here "heart was lifted up" is an idiom that means to become proud. AT: "he became proud" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

So anger came on him, and on Judah and Jerusalem

Yahweh becoming angry and punishing the people is spoken of as if "anger came on" them. "Judah" and "Jerusalem" are metonyms that represent the people who live there. AT: "So Yahweh became angry and punished him and the people of Judah and Jerusalem" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

during Hezekiah's days

"during Hezekiah's lifetime" or "during Hezekiah's reign as king"

translationWords

- [miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs](#)
- [cure, cured, heal, heals, healed, healing, healings, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy](#)
- [humble, humbles, humbled, humility](#)
- [proud, proudly, pride, prideful](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 32:27-29

UDB:

²⁷ Hezekiah became very rich and was greatly honored. His workers made storerooms for his silver and gold, for his very valuable stones, and for spices and shields and other valuable things. ²⁸ His workers also built buildings to store the grain and wine and olive oil that people produced and brought to him. They also made stalls for various kinds of cattle, and pens for his flocks of sheep and goats. ²⁹ They built cities and acquired for the king great many flocks of sheep and goats and herds of cattle, because God had enabled him to become very rich.

ULB:

²⁷ Hezekiah had very many riches and much honor. He provided himself with storerooms for silver, gold, precious stones, and for spices, as well as for shields and for all kinds of valuable objects. ²⁸ He also had storehouses for the harvest of grain, new wine, and oil, and stalls for all kinds of animals. He also had flocks in their pens. ²⁹ In addition, he provided himself with cities and possessions of flocks and herds in abundance, for God had given him very much wealth. ^[1]

32:29 ^[1]Instead of *cities* , some modern versions have *donkeys* , and some other modern versions leave out the word entirely.

translationNotes

stalls

This is a small enclosure where horses are kept. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 9:25](#)

pens

a storage place for small animals

translationWords

- honor, honors
- silver
- gold, golden
- storehouse, storehouses
- harvest, harvests, harvested, harvesting, harvester, harvesters
- grain, grains, grainfields
- wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine

- oil
- flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds
- possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 32:30-31

UDB:

³⁰ Hezekiah was the one who told his workers to block the place where the water flows out of the spring of Gihon, and to build a tunnel through which the water flowed to the west side of the area called the city of David. He was able to do everything that he wanted to do. ³¹ But when messengers who were sent by the rulers of Babylon came and asked about the miracle that God had performed in the land, it was then that God left Hezekiah alone in order to test him. God tested him so that he would know everything that was in Hezekiah's heart.

ULB:

³⁰ It was this same Hezekiah who also stopped up the upper spring of the waters of Gihon, and who brought them straight down on the west side of the city of David. Hezekiah succeeded in all his projects. ³¹ However, in the matter of the ambassadors of the princes of Babylon, who sent to him to ask questions of those who knew, about the miraculous sign that had been done in the land, God left him to himself, in order to test him, and to know all that was in his heart.

translationNotes

Hezekiah who also stopped up ... and who brought them straight down

The readers should understand that Hezekiah probably commanded other people to do the actual work. AT: "Hezekiah who ordered his workers to stop up ... and to build a tunnel so that the water would flow down" (See: [Metonymy](#))

waters of Gihon

This is the name of a stream near Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the miraculous sign that had been done in the land

This can be stated in active form. AT: "the miracle that Yahweh had performed in the land" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to know all that was in his heart

Here "heart" represents a person's inner being. AT: "to reveal Hezekiah's true character" (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- water, waters, watered, watering
- city of David
- ambassador, ambassadors, representative, representatives
- prince, princes, princess, princesses
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian, Babylonians
- sign, signs, proof, reminder
- test, tests, tested
- heart, hearts

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 32:32-33

UDB:

³² A record of the other things that happened while Hezekiah was ruling, and the things that he did to please God, is written on the scroll of the vision of Isaiah the prophet. It is also written in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel. ³³ When Hezekiah died, he was buried in the tombs where the most respected kings of Judah were buried. Everyone in Jerusalem and other places in Judah honored him. Then his son Manasseh became the king.

ULB:

³² As for the other matters concerning Hezekiah, including his actions of covenant loyalty, you can see that they are written in the vision of the prophet Isaiah son of Amoz, and in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel. ³³ Hezekiah slept with his ancestors, and they buried him on the hill of the tombs of the descendants of David. All Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem honored him at his death. Manasseh his son became king in his place.

translationNotes

Hezekiah slept with his ancestors

This was a polite way to tell about him dying. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 9:31](#). AT: “Hezekiah died” (See: [Euphemism](#))

translationWords

- [covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love](#)
- [written](#)
- [vision, visions, envision](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Isaiah](#)
- [bury, buries, buried, burying, burial](#)
- [grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs, burial place](#)
- [descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants](#)
- [die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly](#)
- [Manasseh](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 33 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

King Manasseh

Manasseh angered God more than any other king of Judah. He worshiped the sun, stars and many foreign gods and even sacrificed his sons to the sun. (See: [god](#), [false god](#), [gods](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idols](#), [idolater](#), [idolaters](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 33:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 33:1-3

UDB:

¹ Manasseh was twelve years old when he became the king of Judah, and he ruled from Jerusalem for fifty-five years. ² He did many things that Yahweh said were evil. He imitated the disgusting things that were formerly done by the people groups that Yahweh had expelled from Israel as his people advanced into the land. ³ He commanded his workers to rebuild the high places upon the hills for worshipping idols, the same ones that his father Hezekiah had destroyed. He told them to set up poles to honor the god Baal, and to make poles to honor the goddess Asherah. He also bowed down to worship all the stars.

ULB:

¹ Manasseh was twelve years old when he began to reign; he reigned fifty-five years in Jerusalem. ² He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh, like the disgusting things of the nations whom Yahweh had driven out before the people of Israel. ³ For he rebuilt the high places that his father Hezekiah had torn down, and he built altars for the Baals, he made Asherah poles, and he bowed down to all the stars of heaven and worshiped them.

translationNotes

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

Here Yahweh's "sight" refers to how he judges or decides on the value of something. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 14:2](#). AT: "things that Yahweh said were evil" or "the things that Yahweh considers evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

like the disgusting things

Another possible meaning is "including the disgusting things."

he rebuilt the high places ... he built altars ... he made Asherah poles

Manasseh would have commanded his workers to do the building for him. AT: "he had the high places rebuilt ... he had altars built ... he had Asherah poles made" or "he had his workers rebuild the high places ... he had them build altars ... he had them make Asherah poles" (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [Manasseh](#)
- [reign, reigns, reigned, reigning](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

- evil, wicked, wickedness
- Yahweh
- nation, nations
- Hezekiah
- altar, altars
- Baal
- Asherah, Asherah pole, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth, Ashtoreths
- bow, bows, bowed, bowing, bow down, bows down, bowed down, bowing down
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- worship

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 33:4-6

UDB:

⁴ He directed his workers to build altars for foreign gods in the temple itself, about which Yahweh had said, “It is here in Jerusalem that I want people to worship me, forever.” ⁵ He directed that altars for worshipping all the stars be built in both of the courtyards outside the temple ⁶ He even sacrificed some of his own sons by burning them in a fire in the Valley of Ben Hinnom. He performed rituals to practice sorcery. He asked fortune tellers for advice. He performed witchcraft. He talked to people who consulted the spirits of people who had died to find out what would happen in the future. He did many things that Yahweh says are very evil, things that caused Yahweh to become very angry.

ULB:

⁴ Manasseh built pagan altars in the house of Yahweh, although Yahweh had commanded, “It is in Jerusalem that my name will be placed forever.” ⁵ He built altars for all the stars of heaven in the two courtyards of the house of Yahweh. ⁶ In the Valley of Ben Hinnom he caused his sons to pass through the fire. He practiced sorcery, divination and he read omens, and he consulted with those who talked with the dead and with those who talked with spirits. Manasseh did much evil in the sight of Yahweh, and he provoked him to anger.

translationNotes

It is in Jerusalem that my name will be placed forever

The name is a metonym for the person. Also, this can be stated in active form. AT: “Jerusalem is where I will forever make known who I am” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

He built altars for all the stars of heaven in the two courtyards of the house of Yahweh

It is implied that he built these altars so people could make sacrifices and worship the stars. Also, he would not have built these altars himself, rather he would have commanded his workers to do it. AT: “He had his workers build altars in the two courtyards of the house of Yahweh so that the people could worship the stars and offer them sacrifices” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Valley of Ben Hinnom

This is the name of a place near Jerusalem that is also known as Gehenna. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

he caused his sons to pass through the fire

You may need to make explicit why he put his son in the fire and what happened after he did so. AT: “he burned his sons to death as an offering to his gods” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

consulted

“asked for information from”

the dead

This refers to dead people. AT: “dead people” or “those who are dead” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

Manasseh did much evil in the sight of Yahweh

Here Yahweh’s “sight” refers to how he judges or decides on the value of something. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 14:2](#). AT: “Manasseh did many things that Yahweh said were evil” or “He practiced the things that Yahweh considered evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

he provoked him to anger

“Manasseh made Yahweh very angry”

translationWords

- [pagan, pagans](#)
- [altar, altars](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh’s house](#)
- [name, names, named](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [court, courts, courtyard, courtyards](#)
- [sorcerer, sorcerers, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft](#)
- [spirit, spirits, spiritual](#)
- [anger, angered, angry](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 33:7-9

UDB:

⁷ Manasseh took the carved idol that his workers had made and put it in the temple. That is the temple concerning which God had said to David and to his son Solomon, "My temple will be here in Jerusalem, the city that I have chosen where I want people to worship me, forever. ⁸ If they will obey all the laws and decrees and regulations that I told Moses to give to them, I will not again force the Israelite people to leave this land that I gave to their ancestors." ⁹ But Manasseh led the people of Jerusalem and other places in Judah to do things that are wrong, with the result that they did more evil than had been done by the people in the people groups that Yahweh had driven out as the Israelite people advanced through the land.

ULB:

⁷ The carved figure he had made, he placed it in the house of God. It was about this house that God had spoken to David and Solomon his son; he had said, "It is in this house and in Jerusalem, which I have chosen from all the tribes of Israel, that I will put my name forever. ⁸ I will not move the people of Israel any more out of the land that I assigned to their ancestors, if they will only be careful to keep all that I have commanded them, following all the law, statutes, and decrees which I gave them through Moses." ⁹ Manasseh led Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem to do evil even more than the nations that Yahweh had destroyed before the people of Israel.

translationNotes

he had made

Manasseh probably did not do the work. His servants would have done the work. AT: "Manasseh had ordered his servants to make" (See: [Metonymy](#))

that I will put my name forever

Here God is represented by his "name." AT: "where I want people to worship me forever" (See: [Metonymy](#))

that I assigned to their ancestors

"that I gave to their ancestors"

Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem

Here "Jerusalem" is a part of "Judah." AT: "the people of Judah and Jerusalem" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

even more than the nations that Yahweh had destroyed before the people of Israel

Here “nations” refers to the people who had lived in the land of Canaan before the Israelites had arrived. AT: “even more than the people whom Yahweh had destroyed as the people of Israel advanced through the land” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures
- house of God, Yahweh’s house
- David
- Solomon
- Jerusalem
- chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect
- tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen
- Israel, Israelites
- eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh
- statute, statutes
- decree, decrees, decreed
- Moses

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 33:10-11

UDB:

¹⁰ Yahweh spoke to Manasseh and the people of Judah, but they paid no attention. ¹¹ So Yahweh caused the army commanders of Assyria and their soldiers to come to Jerusalem, and they captured Manasseh. They put a hook in his nose, put bronze chains on his feet, and took him to Babylon.

ULB:

¹⁰ Yahweh spoke to Manasseh, and to his people, but they paid no attention. ¹¹ So Yahweh brought on them the commanders of the army of the king of Assyria, who took Manasseh in chains, bound him with fetters, and took him off to Babylon.

translationNotes

brought on them

Yahweh sent the army to attack Jerusalem. AT: “brought about an attack on them by” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the commanders of the army of the king of Assyria

The commanders were accompanied by their soldiers. AT: “the commanders of the army of the king of Assyria and their soldiers” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

took Manasseh in chains, bound him with fetters, and took him off to Babylon

Here Manasseh being taken as a prisoner is represented by him being bound by chains and fetters. Fetters were chains placed around the feet. AT: “seized Manasseh, bound him in chains, and took him as a prisoner to Babylon” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [commander, commanders](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrians, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian, Babylonians](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 33:12-13

UDB:

¹² There, while he was suffering, he humbled himself greatly in the presence of Yahweh, the God whom his ancestors worshiped, and pleaded with Yahweh to help him. ¹³ When he prayed, Yahweh heard him and pitied him. So he allowed him to return to Jerusalem and to rule his kingdom again. Then Manasseh realized that Yahweh is God, who can do anything.

ULB:

¹² When Manasseh was in distress, he implored Yahweh, his God, and humbled himself greatly before the God of his ancestors. ¹³ He prayed to him; and God was begged by him, and God heard his begging and brought him back to Jerusalem, into his kingship. Then Manasseh knew that Yahweh was God.

translationNotes

implored

to beg for help

He prayed to him; and God was begged by him

The second phrase intensifies the first phrase and emphasizes the earnestness of Manasseh's prayer. This can be stated in active form. AT: "He prayed to God and begged him" (See: [Doublet](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

into his kingship

"to rule again as king"

translationWords

- [Manasseh](#)
- [humble, humbles, humbled, humility](#)
- [pray, prayer, prayers, prayed](#)
- [beg, begged, begging, beggar](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 33:14-15

UDB:

¹⁴ Later, Manasseh's workers rebuilt the eastern section of the outer wall around Jerusalem, and they made it higher. That section extended from spring of Gihon north to the Fish Gate, and around the part of the city that they called Ophel Hill. Manasseh also appointed army officers to guard each of the cities in Judah that had walls around them. ¹⁵ Manasseh's workers removed from the temple the idols and the figures of gods of other nations. He also told them to remove the altars that they had previously built on Mount Zion and in other places in Jerusalem. He had all those things thrown out of the city.

ULB:

¹⁴ After this, Manasseh built an outer wall to the city of David, on the west side of Gihon, in the valley, to the entrance at the Fish Gate. He surrounded the hill of Ophel with it and raised the wall up to a very great height. He put courageous commanders in all the fortified cities of Judah. ¹⁵ He took away the foreign gods, the idol out of the house of Yahweh, and all the altars that he had built on the mount of the house of Yahweh and in Jerusalem, and threw them out of the city.

translationNotes

General Information:

See: [How to Translate Names](#)

Manasseh built ... He surrounded ... He took away ... he had built on the mount

Manasseh did not do the building and construction himself, rather, he commanded his workers to do it. AT: "Manasseh commanded his workers to build ... They surrounded ... He commanded his workers to take away ... they had previously built on the mount" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Gihon

This was the name of a spring and a stream. See how you translated the "waters of Gihon" in [2 Chronicles 32:30](#). AT: "the waters of Gihon" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the hill of Ophel

Translate the name of this hill as you did in [2 Chronicles 27:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

raised the wall up

"built the wall up"

the fortified cities

This refers to cities with walls around them.

the foreign gods

“the false gods from other countries”

translationWords

- [city of David](#)
- [god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry](#)
- [altar, altars](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 33:16-17**UDB:**

¹⁶ Then he told them to repair the altar of Yahweh, and he offered sacrifices to restore fellowship with Yahweh and to thank him. And he told the people of Judah that they must worship only Yahweh. ¹⁷ The people continued to offer sacrifices at the high places on the hills, but only to Yahweh their God.

ULB:

¹⁶ He rebuilt the altar of Yahweh and offered on it sacrifices of fellowship offerings and thank offerings; he commanded Judah to serve Yahweh, the God of Israel. ¹⁷ However, the people still sacrificed at the high places, but only to Yahweh, their God.

translationNotes**He rebuilt**

Manasseh did not do the building and construction himself, rather, he commanded his workers to do it. AT: "He commanded them to rebuild" (See: [Metonymy](#))

he commanded Judah

Here "Judah" refers to the people who live there. AT: "he commanded the people of Judah" (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- altar, altars
- fellowship offering, fellowship offerings
- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 33:18-20

UDB:

¹⁸ The other things that happened while Manasseh was ruling, including his prayer to God and the messages from Yahweh that the prophets spoke to him, are written in the book of the kings of Israel. ¹⁹ What Manasseh prayed and how God pitied him because of what he pleaded to God for—also his sins and ways in which he disobeyed God—also the list of places where he built the houses on the hills for idol worship and set up poles to honor the goddess Asherah and other idols before he humbled himself—these are all written in what the prophets wrote. ²⁰ Manasseh died and was buried in his palace. Then his son Amon became the king of Judah.

ULB:

¹⁸ As to the other matters concerning Manasseh, his prayer to his God, and the words of the seers who spoke to him in the name of Yahweh, the God of Israel, behold, they are written among the deeds of the kings of Israel. ¹⁹ In that account there is history of his prayer, and how God was moved by it. There is also an account of all his sin and his trespasses, and the places where he had built high places and set up the Asherah poles and the carved figures, before he humbled himself—they are written about in the Chronicles of the Seers. ^[1] ²⁰ So Manasseh slept with his ancestors, and they buried him in his own house. Amon, his son, became king in his place.

33:19 ^[1]Some modern versions have *the Chronicles of Hozai* , which is the reading of the original text. But many modern versions correct it to read *the Chronicles of the Seers* . Also, a few modern versions have *the Chronicles of his seers* .

translationNotes

behold

“indeed” This word is used here to draw the readers attention to the information that follows.

they are written ... they are written about

These phrases can be stated in active form. AT: “men have written them ... men have written about them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the deeds of the kings of Israel

This in account of the history of Israel that no longer exists.

the places where he had built high places and set up the Asherah poles and the carved figures

Manasseh did not do the building and construction himself, rather, he commanded his workers to do it. AT: “the place where he had the high places built and the Asherah poles and the carved figures set up” or “the places where he commanded his workers to build the high places and to set up the Asherah poles and carved figures” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the Chronicles of the Seers

This is a book that no longer exists.

So Manasseh slept with his ancestors

This is a euphemism. AT: “So Manasseh died” (See: [Euphemism](#))

in his own house

“in his palace”

Amon

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

king in his place

This is an idiom. AT: “became the next king” or “became the king of Judah” (See: [Idiom](#))

translationWords

- [pray, prayer, prayers, prayed](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [trespass, trespasses, trespassed](#)
- [humble, humbles, humbled, humility](#)
- [chronicles](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 33:21-23

UDB:

²¹ Amon was twenty-two years old when he became king, and he ruled in Jerusalem for two years. ²² He did many things that Yahweh said were evil, as his father Manasseh had done. Amon worshiped all the idols that Manasseh's workers had made. ²³ But he did not humble himself and turn to Yahweh like his father did. So he became more sinful than his father had been.

ULB:

²¹ Amon was twenty-two years old when he began to reign; he reigned two years in Jerusalem. ²² He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh, as Manasseh, his father, had done. Amon sacrificed to all the carved figures that Manasseh his father had made, and he worshiped them. ²³ He did not humble himself before Yahweh, as Manasseh his father had done. Instead, this same Amon trespassed more and more.

translationNotes

twenty-two years old

“22 years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

Here Yahweh's “sight” refers to how he judges or decides on the value of something. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 14:2](#). AT: “things that Yahweh said were evil” or “the things that Yahweh considers evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

this same Amon trespassed more and more

“Amon sinned again and again” or “Amon continued to sin”

translationWords

- [reign, reigns, reigned, reigning](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings](#)
- [image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 33:24-25

UDB:

²⁴ Then Amon's officials made plans to kill him. They assassinated him in his palace. ²⁵ But then the people of Judah killed all those who had assassinated Amon, and they appointed his son Josiah to be their king.

ULB:

²⁴ His servants conspired against him and put him to death in his own house. ²⁵ But the people of the land killed all those who had conspired against King Amon, and they made Josiah, his son, king in his place.

translationNotes

put him to death

This is an idiom. AT: "killed him" (See: [Idiom](#))

conspired

"planned in secret" or "plotted"

king in his place

This is an idiom. AT: "became the next king" or "became the king of Judah" (See: [Idiom](#))

translationWords

- [enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants](#)
- [die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly](#)
- [Josiah](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 34 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is the beginning of the story of King Josiah. (2 Chronicles 34-35)

Special concepts in this chapter

Returning the people to Yahweh

Josiah worshiped Yahweh and cleaned out the idols and shrines from Judah. The people returned to worship Yahweh again. (See: [clean](#), [cleans](#), [cleaned](#), [cleanse](#), [cleansed](#), [cleansing](#), [wash](#), [washing](#), [washed](#), [washes](#), [unclean](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 34:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 34:1-3

UDB:

¹ Josiah was eight years old when he became the king of Judah. He ruled from Jerusalem for thirty-one years. ² He did things that were pleasing to Yahweh, and conducted his life like his ancestor King David had done. He fully obeyed all the laws of God.

³ When he had been ruling for almost eight years, while he was still a boy, he began to worship God as his ancestor King David had done. Four years later, he began to get rid of all the houses that were built on the hills for idol worship, and they were all around Jerusalem and in other places in Judah. They also took down the poles that were to give honor the goddess Asherah and the carved idols and metal statues of gods.

ULB:

¹ Josiah was eight years old when he began to reign; he reigned thirty-one years in Jerusalem. ² He did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh, and walked in the ways of David his ancestor, and did not turn away either to the right or to the left. ³ For in the eighth year of his reign, while he was still young, he began to seek after the God of David, his ancestor. In the twelfth year, he began to cleanse Judah and Jerusalem from the high places, the Asherah poles, and the carved figures and the cast metal figures.

translationNotes

thirty-one years

“31 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

Here Yahweh’s “sight” refers to how he judges or decides on the value of something. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Chronicles 14:2](#). AT: “the things that Yahweh said were right” or “the things that Yahweh considers right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

walked in the ways of David his ancestor

Josiah behaving as David did is spoken of as if he walked on the same road or way as David. AT: “lived the way David his ancestor had lived” or “followed the example of David his ancestor” (See: [Metaphor](#))

did not turn away either to the right or to the left

To fully obey Yahweh is spoken of as if a person were on the correct road and never turned from it. AT: “did not do anything that would displease Yahweh” or “fully obeyed the laws of Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the eighth year ... the twelfth year

“year 8 ... year 12.” See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 14:2](#). (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

he began to cleanse Judah and Jerusalem from ... the cast metal figures

This speaks of Josiah getting rid of the things that were used for worshiping false gods from Judah and Jerusalem as if he were making the places physically clean. Josiah would have commanded his workers to remove these things. AT: “he began to make Judah and Jerusalem acceptable again to Yahweh by having his workers remove from them the high places, the Asherah poles, the carved figures, and the cast metal figures” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [Josiah](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [walk, walks, walked, walking](#)
- [David](#)
- [seek, seeks, seeking, sought](#)
- [God](#)
- [clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Asherah, Asherah pole, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth, Ashtoreths](#)
- [image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 34:4-5

UDB:

⁴ While he directed them, his workers tore down the altars where people worshiped Baal. They smashed the altars that were near those altars, where people burned incense. They smashed the poles to honor the goddess Asherah and the idols carved from wood or stone and metal statues. They smashed them to bits and scattered the bits over the graves of those who had offered sacrifices to them. ⁵ They burned the bones of the priests who had offered sacrifices; they burned them on their own altars. In that way Josiah caused Jerusalem and other places in Judah to be acceptable places to worship Yahweh again.

ULB:

⁴ The people broke down the altars of the Baals in his presence; he cut apart the incense altars that were above them. He broke the Asherah poles and the carved figures, and the cast metal figures in pieces until they were dust. He scattered the dust on the graves of those who had sacrificed to them. ⁵ He burned the bones of their priests on their altars. In this way, he cleansed Judah and Jerusalem.

translationNotes

in his presence

“in Josiah’s presence”

he cut apart ... He broke ... He scattered ... He burned

Josiah would have commanded his workers to do these things. AT: “he had them cut apart ... He commanded them to break ... He had them scatter ... He commanded them to burn” (See: [Metonymy](#))

dust

very small pieces that could be carried away by the wind

He burned the bones of their priests on their altars

This means that the bones of the priests who offered sacrifices on the altars to the false gods were burned on the altars that the priests had previously made sacrifices on.

he cleansed Judah and Jerusalem

This speaks of Josiah causing Judah and Jerusalem to be acceptable to Yahweh as if he made them physically clean. AT: “he caused Judah and Jerusalem to be acceptable again to Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [altar, altars](#)
- [Baal](#)
- [incense, incenses](#)
- [grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs, burial place](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 34:6-7

UDB:

⁶ In the towns in the tribes of Manasseh, Ephraim, and Simeon, and as far north as the tribe of Naphtali and in the ruins around all those towns, ⁷ Josiah's workers tore down the pagan altars and the poles to honor the goddess Asherah, and crushed the idols to powder, idols that craftsmen had carved. They also smashed to pieces all the altars for burning incense throughout Israel. Then Josiah returned to Jerusalem.

ULB:

⁶ He did the same in the cities of Manasseh, Ephraim, and Simeon, all the way to Naphtali, and in the ruins that surrounded them. ⁷ He broke down the altars, beat the Asherah poles and the carved images into powder, and cut apart all the incense altars throughout all the land of Israel. Then he returned to Jerusalem.

translationNotes

He broke down the altars, beat ... cut apart

Josiah would have commanded his workers to do these things. AT: "He commanded his workers to break down the altars, to beat ... to cut apart" (See: [Metonymy](#))

into powder

"into dust." This means to smash them until they have become powder.

translationWords

- [Manasseh](#)
- [Ephraim, Ephraimite, Ephraimites](#)
- [Simeon](#)
- [Naphtali](#)
- [ruin, ruins, ruined](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 34:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ When Josiah had been ruling for almost eighteen years, he decided to do something else to cause the land and the temple to be acceptable places to worship Yahweh. So he sent Shaphan son of Azaliah and Maaseiah the governor of the city and Joah son of Joahaz, the secretary, to repair the temple of Yahweh.

⁹ They went to Hilkiyah the high priest and gave him the money that had been brought to the temple. That was the money that the descendants of Levi who guarded the doors of the temple had collected from the people of the tribes of Manasseh and Ephraim and other places in Israel, and also from all the people in Jerusalem and other places in the tribes of Judah and Benjamin—all the people of the land who survived.

ULB:

⁸ Now in the eighteenth year of his reign, after Josiah had cleansed the land and the temple, he sent Shaphan son of Azaliah, Maaseiah, the governor of the city, and Joah son of Joahaz the secretary, to repair the house of Yahweh his God. ⁹ They went to Hilkiyah, the high priest, and entrusted to him the money that had been brought into the house of God, that the Levites, the guards of the doors, had gathered from Manasseh and Ephraim, from all the remnant of Israel, from all Judah and Benjamin, and from the inhabitants of Jerusalem.

translationNotes**the eighteenth year**

“year 18” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Josiah had cleansed the land and the temple

This speaks of Josiah causing Judah and Jerusalem to be acceptable to Yahweh as if he made them physically clean. AT: “Josiah had caused the land and the temple to become acceptable again to Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Shaphan son of Azaliah, Maaseiah ... Joah son of Joahaz ... Hilkiyah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

entrusted to him

“gave to him the responsibility of using the money”

that had been brought into the house of God, that the Levites, the guards of the doors, had gathered

This can be stated in active form. AT: “that the Levites who guarded the doors had brought into the house of God all that they had gathered” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [Josiah](#)
- [temple](#)
- [high priest](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh’s house](#)
- [Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical](#)
- [remnant](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 34:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ Then Hilkiah gave some of the money to the men who had been appointed to supervise the work of repairing the temple. The supervisors paid the men who did the repair work. ¹¹ They also gave some of the money to the carpenters and builders to buy the cut stones and the timber for the joists and the beams for the buildings that the kings of Judah had allowed to decay.

ULB:

¹⁰ They entrusted the money to the men who supervised the work on the temple of Yahweh. These men paid the workers who repaired and restored the temple. ¹¹ They paid it to the carpenters and builders to buy cut stone and timber for braces, and to make beams for the structures that some kings of Judah had let fall apart.

translationNotes**They entrusted**

The word “they” refers to the men that Josiah had sent to Hilkiah the high priest. They first gave the money to him and then he distributed it to the men who supervised the building. AT: “Then Hilkiah entrusted” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the money

This refers to some of the money that was entrusted to Hilkiah. AT: “some of the money” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

carpenters

workers who build with wood

braces

“joists” These are pieces used for connecting large beams.

had let fall apart

“had allowed to rot”

translationWords

- works, deeds, work, acts
- temple

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 34:12-13**UDB:**

¹² The workers did their work faithfully. Their supervisors were Jahath and Obadiah, who were descendants of Levi's son Merari, and Zechariah and Meshullam, who were descendants of Levi's son Kohath. All the descendants of Levi, who played musical instruments well, ¹³ supervised all the workers as they did their various jobs. Some of the descendants of Levi were secretaries; some kept records, and some guarded the temple gates.

ULB:

¹² The men did the work faithfully. Their supervisors Jahath and Obadiah, the Levites, of the sons of Merari; and Zechariah and Meshullam, from the sons of the Kohathites. Other Levites, all of whom were very good musicians, closely directed the workmen. ¹³ These Levites were in charge of those who carried building material and all other men who worked in any way. There were also Levites who were secretaries, administrators, and gate guards.

translationNotes**Jahath ... Meshullam**

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Merari

Translate this man's name as you did in [2 Chronicles 29:12](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Kohathites

Translate the name of the clan as you did in [2 Chronicles 20:19](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Obadiah ... Zechariah

Translate these men's names the same as you did for other men by the same names in [2 Chronicles 17:7](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

These Levites were in charge of those who carried building material and all other men who worked in any way

This means that they were in charge of all the men who did any type of building work. AT: "These Levites were in charge of all of the men who did any kind of building work" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness](#)
- [son, sons](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 34:14-16**UDB:**

¹⁴ While they were giving to the supervisors the money that had been taken to the temple, Hilkiah the high priest found a scroll on which was written the laws that Yahweh had given to Moses to give to the people. ¹⁵ So Hilkiah said to Shaphan, "I have found in the temple a scroll on which is written the laws that God gave to Moses!" Then Hilkiah gave the scroll to Shaphan.

¹⁶ Shaphan took the scroll to the king and said to him, "Your officials are doing everything that you told them to do.

ULB:

¹⁴ When they brought out the money that was brought into the house of Yahweh, Hilkiah the priest found the book of the law of Yahweh that had been given through Moses. ¹⁵ Hilkiah said to Shaphan the scribe, "I have found the book of the law in the house of Yahweh." Hilkiah brought the book to Shaphan. ¹⁶ Shaphan took the book to the king, and also reported to him, saying, "Your servants are doing everything that has been entrusted to them.

translationNotes**General Information:**

See: [How to Translate Names](#)

When they brought out the money that was brought into

The word "they" refers to Hilkiah and whoever was helping him. This can be stated in active form. AT: "When they brought out the money for the supervisors from" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

that had been given through Moses

This can be stated in active form. AT: "that Yahweh had given to the people through Moses" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Shaphan

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the book of the law

Most likely these laws were written on a scroll. A scroll was a type of book made of one long, rolled-up sheet of papyrus or leather.

everything that has been entrusted to them

This can be stated in active form. AT: “everything that you entrusted to them to do” or “everything that you gave them the responsibility to do” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [scribe, scribes](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)
- [report, reports, reported](#)
- [enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 34:17-19**UDB:**

¹⁷ They have taken the money that was in the temple, and they have given it to the men who will supervise the men who will repair the temple.” ¹⁸ Then Shaphan said to the king, “I have also brought to you a scroll that Hilkiyah gave to me.” And Shaphan started to read it to the king.

¹⁹ When the king heard the laws that were written in the scroll, he tore his clothes because he was very upset.

ULB:

¹⁷ They have emptied out the money that was found in the house of Yahweh, and they gave it into the hand of the supervisors and to the workmen.” ¹⁸ Shaphan the scribe told the king, “Hilkiyah the priest has given me a book.” Then Shaphan read in it to the king. ¹⁹ It came about that when the king had heard the words of the law, he tore his clothes.

translationNotes**They have emptied out**

This is an idiom. AT: “They have gathered all” (See: [Idiom](#))

into the hand of the supervisors and to the workmen

The supervisors and workmen are represented by their “hand” to emphasize their possession. AT: “to the supervisors and the workmen” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

It came about that when

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

he tore his clothes

This is a symbolic action that indicates intense grief or sadness. AT: “he tore his clothes because he was very upset” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

translationWords

- [scribe, scribes](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 34:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ Then he gave these instructions to Hilkiyah, to Shaphan's son Ahikam, to Micah's son Abdon, to Shaphan, and to Asaiah, the king's special advisor: ²¹ "Go and ask Yahweh for me, and for all his people who are still alive in Judah and Israel, about what is written in this scroll that has been found. Because it is clear that Yahweh is very angry with us because our ancestors disobeyed what Yahweh said; they did not obey the laws that are written on this scroll."

ULB:

²⁰ The king commanded Hilkiyah, Ahikam son of Shaphan, Abdon son of Micah, Shaphan the scribe, and Asaiah, his own servant, saying, ²¹ "Go and ask Yahweh's will for me, and for those who are left in Israel and in Judah, because of the words of the book that has been found. For it is great, the anger of Yahweh that has been poured out on us. It is great, because our ancestors have not listened to the words of this book so as to obey all that was written in it." ^[1]

34:21 ^[1] Instead of *that has been poured out on us*, some versions have, *that has been kindled against us*.

translationNotes

Ahikam son of Shaphan, Abdon son of Micah, Shaphan ... Asaiah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ask Yahweh's will for me

The word "will" can be translated as a verb. Also, it is made clear in [2 Chronicles 34:22](#) that the king means for the men to go to the prophetess of Yahweh to determine Yahweh's will. AT: "Ask Yahweh what he wants me to do" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

because of the words

"concerning the words"

the words of the book that has been found

Here "words" represents the laws. This can be stated in active form. AT: "the laws in the book that Hilkiyah has found" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

For it is great, the anger of Yahweh that has been poured out on us. It is great

Emotions such as anger are often spoken of in Scripture as if they were liquids. AT: “For Yahweh’s anger towards us is great, like water that could totally wash us away” or “For great is Yahweh’s anger with which he has punished us” (See: [Metaphor](#))

all that was written in it

This can be stated in active form. AT: “all that is written in it” or “all that is in this book” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [anger, angered, angry](#)
- [obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient](#)
- [written](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 34:22**UDB:**

²² So Hilkiah and the others went to consult a woman whose name was Huldah, who was a prophetess who lived in the Second District of Jerusalem. Her husband Shallum son of Tikvah, took care of the robes that were worn in the temple.

ULB:

²² So Hilkiah, and those whom the king had commanded, went to Huldah the prophetess, the wife of Shallum son of Tokhath son of Hasrah, keeper of the wardrobe (she lived in Jerusalem in the Second District), and they spoke with her in this way.

translationNotes**Huldah**

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Shallum ... Tokhath ... Hasrah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

keeper of the wardrobe

This refers to Shallum. Possible meanings are 1) the person who took care of the clothing that priests wore in the temple or 2) the person who took care of the king's clothing.

the Second District

This was a certain part of Jerusalem. It may have been a newer part. AT: "The Second Part" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

they spoke with her in this way

"they had the following conversation with her"

translationWords

- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 34:23-25**UDB:**

²³ When they told her what the king had said, she said to them, "This is what Yahweh, the God whom we Israelites say we worship, says: 'Go back and tell the king who sent you ²⁴ that this is what Yahweh says: "Listen to this carefully. I am going to bring a disaster on Jerusalem and all the people who live here. I will send on them the curses that were written in the scroll that was read to the king of Judah. ²⁵ I will do that because they have abandoned me, and they burn incense to honor other gods. They have caused me to become very angry because of all the idols that they have made.'"

ULB:

²³ She said to them, "This is what Yahweh, the God of Israel, says: Tell the man who sent you to me, ²⁴ 'This is what Yahweh says: See, I am about to bring disaster on this place and on its inhabitants, all the curses that have been written in the book that they have read before the king of Judah. ²⁵ This will happen because they have forsaken me and have burned incense to other gods, and they have provoked me to anger by all that their hands have made, therefore, my anger will be poured out on this place, and it will not be extinguished.' ^[1]

34:25 ^[1] Instead of *will be poured out on this place*, some versions have, *will be kindled against this place*.

translationNotes**the man who sent you to me**

Here "the man" refers to King Josiah.

See

The word is used here as an idiom to draw the listener's attention to what is said next. AT: "Listen" (See: [Idiom](#))

I am about to bring disaster on this place and on its inhabitants

Yahweh causing terrible things to happen is spoken of as if disaster were an object that he could bring to a place. AT: "I will soon cause terrible things to happen to this place and to those who live there" (See: [Metaphor](#))

on this place

“to Jerusalem” This refers to the city of Jerusalem which represents the whole land of Judah. AT: “on Judah” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

all the curses that have been written

This can be stated in active form. AT: “all the curses written” or “all the curses” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

they have provoked me to anger

“they have made me angry”

therefore, my anger will be poured out on this place, and it will not be extinguished

Emotions such as anger are often spoken of in Scripture as if they were liquids. AT: “therefore, my anger against this place is like a fire, and nothing will stop it” (See: [Metaphor](#))

my anger will be poured out

This can be stated in active form. AT: “I will pour out my anger” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

on this place

Here “this place” refers to the people who live there. AT: “on these people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [curse, cursed, curses, cursing](#)
- [forsake, forsakes, forsaken, forsook](#)
- [incense, incenses](#)
- [god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 34:26-28**UDB:**

²⁶ The king of Judah sent you to inquire what I, Yahweh, want. Go and tell him that this is what I, Yahweh, the God whom you Israelites worship, say about what you read: ²⁷ 'Because you heeded what was written in the scroll, and you humbled yourself when you heard what I said to warn about what would happen to this city and the people who live here, and because you tore your robes and wept in my presence, I have listened to you. ²⁸ So I will allow you to die in peace, without seeing me punish this place and the people living in it.'"

So they took her reply back to the king.

ULB:

²⁶ But to the king of Judah, who sent you to ask Yahweh what he should do, this is what you will say to him, 'Yahweh, the God of Israel says this: About the words that you heard, ²⁷ because your heart was tender, and you humbled yourself before God when you heard his words against this place and its inhabitants, and because you have humbled yourself before me and have torn your clothes and wept before me, I also have listened to you—this is Yahweh's declaration—²⁸ see, I will gather you to your ancestors. You will be gathered to your grave in peace, and your eyes will not see any of the disaster I will bring on this place and its inhabitants.'" The men took this message back to the king.

translationNotes**About the words that you heard**

Here "words" represents the message that Huldah just spoke. AT: "About the message that you heard" (See: [Metonymy](#))

because your heart was tender

Here "heart" represents a person's inner being. Feeling sorry is spoken of as if the heart were tender. AT: "because you felt sorry" or "because you repented" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

torn your clothes

This is a symbolic action that indicates intense grief or sadness. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

this is Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. AT: "this is what Yahweh has declared" or "this is what I, Yahweh, have declared" (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

see, I will gather you to your ancestors. You will be gathered to your grave in peace

Both statements mean basically the same thing. They are polite ways of saying he will die. AT: “so I will allow you to die and be buried peacefully” (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Euphemism](#))

You will be gathered to your grave

This can be stated in active form. AT: “I will gather you to your grave” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

your eyes will not see

Here “eyes” represents the whole person. Also, the phrase “will not see” represents not experiencing something. AT: “you will not experience” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metonymy](#))

the disaster I will bring on this place

Yahweh causing terrible things to happen is spoken of as if disaster were an object that Yahweh would bring to a place. AT: “the terrible things I will cause to happen to this place” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [word, words](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [humble, humbles, humbled, humility](#)
- [declare, declares, declared, declaring, declaration, declarations](#)
- [peace, peaceful, peacefully, peaceable, peacemakers](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 34:29-30**UDB:**

²⁹ Then the king summoned all the elders of Jerusalem and other places in Judea. ³⁰ They went up together to the temple with the leaders of Judah and many other people of Jerusalem and the priests and other descendants of Levi, from the least important to the most important ones. And while they listened, the king read to them everything that was in the scroll containing God's laws that had been found in the temple.

ULB:

²⁹ Then the king sent messengers and gathered together all the elders of Judah and Jerusalem. ³⁰ Then the king went up to the house of Yahweh, and all the men of Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem, and the priests, Levites, and all the people, from great to small. He then read in their hearing all the words of the book of the Covenant that had been found in the house of Yahweh.

translationNotes**all the men of Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem**

This is a generalization. AT: "many other people" (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

from great to small

This merism includes everyone in between. AT: "from the most important to the least important" (See: [Merism](#))

He then read in their hearing

"Then the king read aloud so that they could hear"

that had been found

This can be translated in active form. AT: "that Hilkiah had found" or "that they had found" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- messenger, messengers
- elder, elders
- priest, priests, priesthood
- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical

- [covenant, covenants, new covenant](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 34:31-32

UDB:

³¹ Then the king stood next to the pillar at the entrance to the temple, where kings stood when they announced something important, and while Yahweh was listening, he repeated his promise to sincerely obey, with his entire inner being, Yahweh and all his commands and regulations and decrees that were written on the scroll.

³² Then the king said that everyone who lived in Jerusalem and from the tribe of Benjamin should promise that they also would obey those laws. And they did that, agreeing that they would obey the agreement that God, whom their ancestors had worshiped, had made with them.

ULB:

³¹ The king stood in his place and made a covenant before Yahweh, to walk after Yahweh, and to keep his commandments, his regulations, and his statutes, with all his heart and all his soul, to obey the words of the covenant that were written in this book. ³² He caused all who were found in Jerusalem and Benjamin to stand by the covenant. The inhabitants of Jerusalem acted in obedience to the covenant of God, the God of their ancestors.

translationNotes

stood in his place

This refers to the place where the king stood at the temple. AT: “stood where he was supposed to stand at the entrance to the temple” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

walk after Yahweh

The way a person lives is spoken of as if that person were walking on a path, and “to walk after” someone is a metonym for doing what that other person does or wants others to do. AT: “live obeying Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

his commandments, his regulations, and his statutes

These words all share similar meanings. Together they emphasize everything that Yahweh had commanded in the law. (See: [Doublet](#))

with all his heart and all his soul

The idiom “with all his heart” means “completely” and “with all his soul” means “with all his being.” These two phrases have similar meanings. AT: “with all his being” or “with all his energy” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Doublet](#))

that were written in this book

This can be translated in active form. AT: “that this book contained” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

all who were found in Jerusalem and Benjamin

This can be stated in active form. AT: “all who lived in Jerusalem and Benjamin” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

stand by the covenant

This is an idiom. AT: “accept the terms of the covenant” or “promise to obey the covenant” (See: [Idiom](#))

translationWords

- [walk, walks, walked, walking](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [decree, decrees, decreed](#)
- [statute, statutes](#)
- [Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites](#)
- [obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 34:33

UDB:

³³ Josiah instructed his workers to remove all the disgusting idols from all the land of the Israelite people, and he commanded that all those from Israel who were there should worship only Yahweh their God. As long as Josiah was alive, the people did what was pleasing to Yahweh, the God whom their ancestors worshiped.

ULB:

³³ Josiah took away all the disgusting things from the lands that belonged to the people of Israel. He made everyone in Israel worship Yahweh, their God. For all of his days, they did not turn away from following Yahweh, the God of their ancestors.

translationNotes

Josiah took away all

Josiah would have commanded his workers to do this. AT: “Josiah commanded his workers to take away all” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the disgusting things

These are the idols that were repulsive to God. AT: “the disgusting idols” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

For all of his days

Josiah’s life is represented by his “days.” AT: “For all of his life” or “As long as Josiah was alive” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

translationWords

- Josiah
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- kingdom of Israel
- worship
- turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 35 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This is the end of the story of King Josiah.

Special concepts in this chapter

Passover

Josiah organized a large Passover celebration and people shared their animals with those without animals to sacrifice. The celebration of Passover was a sign of proper worship by the people. (See: [Passover](#) and [sign, signs, proof, reminder](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 35:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 35:1-2

UDB:

¹ Josiah commanded that the people should celebrate the Passover Festival in Jerusalem. So they slaughtered the lambs for the Passover on the 14th day of the first month. ² Josiah assigned to the priests to the tasks that they should perform at the temple, and encouraged them do their work well.

ULB:

¹ Josiah kept a Passover to Yahweh in Jerusalem, and they killed the Passover lambs on the fourteenth day of the first month. ² He placed the priests in their positions and encouraged them in the service of the house of Yahweh.

translationNotes

Josiah kept a Passover to Yahweh

Josiah commanded the people to celebrate the Passover that Yahweh had commanded their ancestors to celebrate.

in Jerusalem

Yahweh had commanded Moses that all the people of Israel were to go to Jerusalem to celebrate the Passover.

the fourteenth day of the first month

This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The fourteenth day is near the beginning of April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

He placed the priests in their positions

Placing the priests in a position is a metaphor for telling the priests which jobs they are to do. The reader should probably understand that Josiah commanded his officials to give instructions to the priests. AT: "He had people tell the priests which jobs to do" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

in the service of

The abstract noun "service" can be translated as a verb. AT: "as they served in" or "to serve well in" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

translationWords

- [Josiah](#)
- [Passover](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [day, days](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 35:3-4

UDB:

³ The descendants of Levi were the ones who taught all the Israelite people; they had been set apart for Yahweh. Josiah said to them, "Put the sacred chest in the temple that the workers of David's son King Solomon of Israel built. But carry it on poles; do not carry it on your shoulders. And do well your work for Yahweh your God and for his Israelite people. ⁴ Divide yourselves into your traditional clans, obeying the instructions that King David and his son Solomon wrote.

ULB:

³ He said to the Levites who taught all Israel and who were set apart to Yahweh, "Put the holy ark in the house that Solomon son of David, king of Israel built. Do not carry it around on your shoulders any longer. Now worship Yahweh your God, and serve his people Israel. ⁴ Organize yourselves by the name of your ancestral houses and your divisions, following the written instructions of David, king of Israel, and those of Solomon, his son.

translationNotes

that Solomon son of David, king of Israel built

The readers should understand that Solomon probably commanded other people to do the actual work. AT: "that Solomon, king of Israel, commanded the people to build" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

by the name of your ancestral houses and your divisions

The word "name" is a collective noun, referring to each name of each ancestral house and each division. Your language may need to say "according to the names of your ancestral houses and your divisions."

your ancestral houses

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. AT: "the families that are descendants of your ancestors" (See: [Metonymy](#))

divisions

groups into which the people had divided the priests and Levites

the written instructions of David ... and those of Solomon, his son

"the instructions that David ... and Solomon, his son, wrote"

translationWords

- Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical
- Israel, Israelites
- set apart
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh
- Solomon
- David
- worship
- people of God, my people
- name, names, named
- house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers
- written

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 35:5-6

UDB:

⁵ Then stand in the temple area, with each of you in your own Levite clan, ready to help your fellow Israelites when they bring their offerings to the temple. ⁶ Slaughter the lambs for the Passover. Do this for your fellow Israelites. Perform the rituals to set yourselves apart for God's honor and to serve Yahweh and do his work. Prepare the sacrifices, doing what Yahweh told Moses to tell you that you should do."

ULB:

⁵ Stand in the holy place, taking your position with your divisions within the ancestral houses of your brothers, the descendants of the people, and taking your places with your divisions within the ancestral houses of the Levites. ⁶ Kill the Passover lambs, consecrate yourselves, prepare the lambs for your brothers, to do according to the word of Yahweh that was given by the hand of Moses."

translationNotes

Stand in the holy place, taking your position

"Take your positions in the temple area"

your divisions

This refers to the work group to which the people had assigned each Levite. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 35:4](#).

the ancestral houses

This refers to the various clans among the Levites. It seems that Levites were assigned to different work groups on the basis of the kind of work assigned to each clan or ancestral house. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 35:4](#).

consecrate yourselves

This probably refers to the priests and Levites washing themselves before they did work in the temple.

to do according to the word of Yahweh that was given by the hand of Moses

Here the word “hand” refers to Moses himself. Yahweh used Moses as the agent to deliver his command. This can be translated in active form. AT: “to obey all of the commands that Yahweh gave to the people through Moses” or “to do everything that Yahweh commanded Moses to tell the people” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [holy place](#)
- [brother, brothers](#)
- [descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [Moses](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 35:7-9

UDB:

⁷ Josiah provided from his own flocks and herds thirty thousand young sheep and goats for the Passover sacrifices. He also provided three thousand bulls from his own herds.

⁸ His officials also voluntarily contributed animals for the people and the priests and the other descendants of Levi. Hilkiyah, Zechariah, and Jehiel, the officials who were in charge of the temple, gave to the priests 2,600 lambs and three hundred cattle to be sacrifices for the Passover. ⁹ Also, Konaniah, along with his younger brothers Shemaiah and Nethanel, and Hashabiah, Jeiel, and Jozabad, the leaders of the descendants of Levi, provided five thousand lambs and five hundred cattle for the other descendants of Levi, to be sacrifices for the Passover.

ULB:

⁷ Josiah gave to all the people thirty thousand lambs and kids from flocks for the Passover offerings to all who were present. He also gave three thousand bulls; these were from the king's possessions.

⁸ His leaders gave a free will offering to the people, priests, and Levites. Hilkiyah, Zechariah, and Jehiel, the officials in charge of the house of God, gave to the priests for the Passover offerings 2,600 small cattle and three hundred oxen. ⁹ Also Konaniah, and Shemaiah and Nethanel, his brothers, and Hashabiah, Jeiel, and Jozabad, the chiefs of the Levites, gave to the Levites for the Passover offerings five thousand small cattle and five hundred oxen.

translationNotes

General Information:

See: [Numbers](#) and [How to Translate Names](#)

thirty thousand lambs

“30,000 lambs” (See: [Numbers](#))

kids

baby goats

three thousand bulls

“3,000 bulls” (See: [Numbers](#))

these were from the king's possessions

“all these lambs, kids, and bulls that he gave were ones that he himself owned”

2,600 small cattle

“two thousand six hundred small cattle” (See: [Numbers](#))

three hundred oxen

“300 oxen” (See: [Numbers](#))

Hilkiah ... Zechariah ... Jehiel ... Konaniah ... Shemaiah ... Nethanel ... Hashabiah ... Jeiel ... Jozabad

These are all the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

five thousand small cattle

“5,000 small cattle” (See: [Numbers](#))

five hundred oxen

“500 oxen” (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings](#)
- [cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen](#)
- [possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess](#)
- [freewill offering, freewill offerings](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
-
- [chief, chiefs](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 35:10-12

UDB:

¹⁰ Everything for the Passover was arranged: The priests and the other descendants of Levi stood in their places in their groups, as the king had commanded. ¹¹ Then they slaughtered the Passover lambs. The priests sprinkled the blood from the bowls that were handed to them, while the other descendants of Levi removed the skins from the animals. ¹² They set aside the animals to be completely burned on the altar, in order to give them to the various family groups to offer to Yahweh, obeying the instructions that were written in the laws God gave Moses. They did the same thing with the cattle.

ULB:

¹⁰ So the service was prepared, and the priests stood in their places, with the Levites by their divisions, in response to the king's command. ¹¹ They killed the Passover lambs, and the priests sprinkled the blood that they received from the Levites' hand, and the Levites skinned the lambs. ¹² They removed the burnt offerings, in order to distribute them to the divisions of the ancestral houses of the people, to offer them to Yahweh, as it is written in the Book of Moses. They did the same with the bulls.

translationNotes

the service was prepared

This can be translated in active form. AT: "they prepared everything they needed so they could perform the Passover" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

their divisions

the groups into which the people had divided the priests and Levites. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 35:4](#).

the blood that they received from the Levites' hand

Here the word "hand" refers to the Levites. AT: "the blood that the Levites gave them" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

ancestral houses of the people

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. AT: "the families that were the descendants of their ancestors" (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice
- priest, priests, priesthood
- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- Passover
- lamb, Lamb of God
- blood
- receive, receives, received, receiving, receiver
- burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire
- Yahweh
- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 35:13-14

UDB:

¹³ Obeying those regulations, they roasted over the fire the lambs for the Passover. And they boiled the meat of the sacred offerings in pots and kettles and pans, and served the meat immediately to all the people who were there. ¹⁴ After that, they prepared meat for themselves and for the priests, because the priests were busy until nighttime, sacrificing the offerings to be completely burned and burning the fat parts of the offerings. So the descendants of Levi prepared meat for themselves and for the priests, who were descendants of Aaron, the first high priest.

ULB:

¹³ They roasted the Passover lambs with fire following the instructions. As for the consecrated offerings, they boiled them in pots, cauldrons, and pans, and they quickly carried them to all the people. ¹⁴ They later prepared offerings for themselves and for the priests, because the priests, the descendants of Aaron, were occupied in offering the burnt offerings and the fat until nightfall, so the Levites prepared the offerings for themselves and for the priests, the descendants of Aaron.

translationNotes

General Information:

All instances of “they” and “themselves” refer to the Levites ([2 Chronicles 35:10](#)).

They roasted the Passover lambs with fire

“They cooked the Passover lambs over fires”

they boiled them in pots, cauldrons, and pans

“they cooked them in water in containers of different sizes”

They ... prepared offerings for themselves and for the priests

“They ... prepared the offerings that they would eat and the offerings that the priests would eat”

translationWords

- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 35:15

UDB:

¹⁵ The musicians, who were descendants of Asaph, stood in their places, as had been commanded by King David, Asaph, Heman, and Jeduthun the king's prophet. The men who guarded the gates of the temple did not need to leave their places, because their fellow descendants of Levi prepared food for them to eat.

ULB:

¹⁵ The singers, the descendants of Asaph, were in their place, as directed by David, Asaph, Heman, and Jeduthun the king's seer, and the guards were at every gate. They did not have to leave their post, because their brothers the Levites made preparations for them.

translationNotes

as directed by David, Asaph, Heman, and Jeduthun the king's seer

This can be stated in active form. AT: "as David, Asaph, Heman, and Jeduthun the king's seer had directed them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Heman ... Jeduthun

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- [Asaph](#)
- [gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways](#)
- [brother, brothers](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 35:16-17

UDB:

¹⁶ So on that day everything that needed to be done for worshiping Yahweh was done. They celebrated the Passover Festival, and they presented offerings to be completely burned on the altar, which was what Josiah had commanded. ¹⁷ The Israelites who were there celebrated the Passover on that day, and for seven days they celebrated the Festival of Unleavened Bread.

ULB:

¹⁶ So, at that time the entire service of Yahweh was carried out for the celebration of the Passover and to offer burnt offerings on the altar of Yahweh, as King Josiah commanded. ¹⁷ The people of Israel who were present kept the Passover at that time, and then the Festival of Unleavened Bread for seven days.

translationNotes

the entire service of Yahweh was carried out

This refers to everything associated with the preparation, the sacrifice, and the worship of Yahweh during the Passover. The word “service” can be expressed as a verb and this can be stated in active form. AT: “they did everything that needed to be done to serve Yahweh” (See: [Abstract Nouns and Active or Passive](#))

kept the Passover

This is an idiom. AT: “observed the Passover” or “celebrated the Passover” (See: [Idiom](#))

then the Festival of Unleavened Bread

This refers to celebrating the festival. AT: “then kept the Festival of Unleavened Bread” or “then celebrated the Festival of Unleavened Bread” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

translationWords

- altar, altars
- Josiah
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- festival, festivals
- unleavened bread

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 35:18-19**UDB:**

¹⁸ The Passover Festival had not been celebrated like that in Israel since the time that the prophet Samuel lived. And none of the kings of Israel had ever celebrated the Passover like Josiah did, along with the priests, the other descendants of Levi, and all the other people of Judah and Israel who were there with the people who lived in Jerusalem. ¹⁹ They celebrated this Passover Festival when Josiah had been ruling for almost eighteen years.

ULB:

¹⁸ Such a Passover celebration had never been held in Israel from the days of the prophet Samuel, nor had any of the other kings of Israel ever celebrated such a Passover as Josiah did, along with the priests, Levites, and all the people of Judah and Israel who were present, and the inhabitants of Jerusalem. ¹⁹ This Passover was kept in the eighteenth year of the reign of Josiah.

translationNotes**Such a Passover celebration had never been held in Israel**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “There had never been such a Passover celebration in Israel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

held in Israel

This refers specifically to the nation of Israel as a whole, as it was before the northern kingdom and southern king split.

from the days

“from the time”

the other kings of Israel

Here “Israel” refers specifically to the northern kingdom of Israel.

This Passover was kept

This can be stated in active form. AT: “They observed this Passover” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

was kept

This is an idiom. AT: “was observed” or “was celebrated” (See: [Idiom](#))

the eighteenth year

“year 18” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Samuel](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 35:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ After Josiah had done all those things to restore the worship at the temple, King Necho of Egypt went with his army to attack the city of Carchemish alongside the Euphrates River, and Josiah marched with his army to fight against them. ²¹ Necho sent some messengers to Josiah, to tell him, “You are the king of Judah, and there is certainly no reason for you to fight me; we are attacking the army of Babylonia. God has told me to hurry. So stop opposing God, who is for me. If you do not stop, God will get rid of you.”

ULB:

²⁰ After all this, after Josiah had set the temple in order, Necho, king of Egypt, went up to fight against Carchemish at the Euphrates River, and Josiah went to fight against him. ²¹ But Necho sent ambassadors to him, saying, “What have I to do with you, king of Judah? I am not coming against you today, but against the house with which I am making war. God has commanded me to hurry, so refrain from interfering with God, who is with me, or he might destroy you.”

translationNotes

set the temple in order

This means that he restored the worship in the temple as God had intended it to be. AT: “restored proper worship to the temple” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Necho, king of Egypt, went up

This is the name of the king of Egypt. Here the king represents himself accompanied by his army. AT: “Necho, king of Egypt, went up with his army” (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

against Carchemish

This is the name of a city. Here the city represents the people who live there. AT: “against the people of Carchemish” (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Josiah went to fight against him

Here both Josiah and Necho represent themselves accompanied by their armies. AT: “Josiah and his army went to fight against Necho and his army” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

What have I to do with you, king of Judah?

Necho uses this rhetorical question to tell Josiah that he is not in conflict with him and that Josiah should not attack him. This question can be written as a statement. AT: “You have no reason to attack me, king of Judah.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

I am not coming against you

Here the king Josiah represents his kingdom. AT: “I am not fighting your kingdom” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

against the house with which

Here the word “house” refers to the house of Babylon, where “house” is a metonym for the kingdom. The kingdom is a synecdoche representing the Babylonian army. AT: “against the house of Babylon, with whom” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

translationWords

- [temple](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians](#)
- [Euphrates River, the River](#)
- [ambassador, ambassadors, representative, representatives](#)
- [house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers](#)
- [God](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 35:22

UDB:

²² But Josiah would not listen to him. Instead, he disguised himself in order to be able to attack the army of Egypt without anyone recognizing him. He did not pay any attention to what God had told Necho to say. Instead, he and his army went to fight Necho's army at the plain of Megiddo.

ULB:

²² However, Josiah refused to turn away from him. He disguised himself in order to fight with him. He did not listen to the words of Necho that had come from the mouth of God; so he went to fight in the Valley of Megiddo.

translationNotes

He disguised himself

Josiah disguised himself so that the other armies would not recognize him.

fight with him

The word "him" refers to Necho who represents himself accompanied by his army. AT: "fight with the army of Egypt" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

that had come from the mouth of God

Here God is represented by his "mouth" to emphasize his speech. AT: "that had come from God" or "that God had said to him" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

so he went

The word "he" refers to Josiah who represents himself accompanied by his army. AT: "so he and his army went" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

the Valley of Megiddo

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back
- word, words

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 35:23-24

UDB:

²³ Some archers shot King Josiah. He told his officers, “Take me away from here because I am badly wounded.” ²⁴ So they took him out of his chariot and put him in another chariot that he had brought with him, and they took him to Jerusalem, where he died. He was buried in the tombs where his ancestors had been buried, and all the people of Jerusalem and other places in Judah mourned for him.

ULB:

²³ Archers shot King Josiah, and the king said to his servants, “Take me away, for I am badly wounded.” ²⁴ So his servants took him out of the chariot, and put him in his extra chariot. They took him to Jerusalem, where he died. He was buried in the tombs of his ancestors. All Judah and Jerusalem mourned for Josiah.

translationNotes

All Judah and Jerusalem

“Judah” and “Jerusalem” represent the people who live there. AT: “All the people of Judah and Jerusalem” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [archer, archers](#)
- [enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants](#)
- [chariot, chariots, charioteers](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly](#)
- [bury, buries, buried, burying, burial](#)
- [grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs, burial place](#)
- [mourn, mourns, mourned, mourning, mourner, mourners, mournful, mournfully](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 35:25

UDB:

²⁵ The prophet Jeremiah composed a song to lament for Josiah, and all the men and women singers in Israel still mourn for Josiah by singing that song. That became a custom in Israel; the words of that song are written in a scroll of funeral songs.

ULB:

²⁵ Jeremiah lamented for Josiah; all the male and female singers lament about Josiah to this day. These songs became customary in Israel; behold, they are written in the songs of lament.

translationNotes

to this day

This means the day on which the writer wrote. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 5:9](#).

behold

This word is used here to add emphasis to what is said next.

the songs of lament

This was an ancient scroll of funeral songs.

translationWords

- [Jeremiah](#)
- [lament, laments, lamentation](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 35:26

UDB:

²⁶⁻²⁷ A record of the other things that happened while Josiah ruled, from the time he started to rule until he died, including how he faithfully was devoted to honoring God by obeying all that was written in the laws of Yahweh, is written in the book of the kings of Israel and Judah.

ULB:

²⁶ As for the other matters concerning Josiah, and his good deeds done in obedience to what is written in the law of Yahweh—²⁷ and his deeds, from beginning to end, are written in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel.

translationNotes

his good deeds done

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the good deeds that he did” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

what is written

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the words” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

and his deeds ... are written

This can be stated in active form. AT: “men have written of all his deeds, from beginning to end,” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

his deeds, from beginning to end,

This refers to all of the significant things that he did from the beginning of his reign as king to the end of his life. AT: “all of his deeds” or “everything he did from the beginning of his reign to when he died” (See: [Merism](#))

the book of the kings of Judah and Israel

This is a book that no longer exists.

translationWords

- good, goodness
- works, deeds, work, acts

- [law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [kingdom of Israel](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 36 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This is the end of the story of Judah as an independent country.

Special concepts in this chapter

Punishment

God warned the people through the prophets, that he would punish them if they did not worship Yahweh. The people refused to listen to the prophets or to stop their evil deeds. God finally punished them by letting the Babylonians conquer them. (See: [prophet](#), [prophets](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#) and [works](#), [deeds](#), [work](#), [acts](#))

Links:

- [2 Chronicles 36:01 Notes](#)

2 Chronicles 36:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Then the people of Judah chose Josiah's son Jehoahaz and appointed him to be the king in Jerusalem.

² Jehoahaz was twenty-three years old when he became the king, but he ruled from Jerusalem for only three months.

ULB:

¹ Then the people of the land took Jehoahaz son of Josiah, and made him king in his father's place in Jerusalem. ² Jehoahaz ^[1] but refers to the same person. was twenty-three years old when he began to reign, and he reigned three months in Jerusalem.

36:2 ^[1]Jehoahaz is written in HEB Joahaz

translationNotes**Jehoahaz**

This is a man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in his father's place

The phrase "in his ... place" is a metaphor meaning "instead of him." AT: "instead of his father" (See: [Metaphor](#))

twenty-three years old ... three months

"23 years old ... 3 months" (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [reign, reigns, reigned, reigning](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 36:3-4

UDB:

³ The king of Egypt captured him and prevented him from ruling any longer. He also forced the people of Judah to pay to him a tax of three and one-third metric tons of silver and thirty-three kilograms of gold. ⁴ The king of Egypt appointed Jehoahaz's younger brother Eliakim to be the king of Judah. He changed Eliakim's name to Jehoiakim. But Necho seized Jehoahaz and took him to Egypt.

ULB:

³ The king of Egypt removed him at Jerusalem, and fined the land one hundred talents of silver and one talent of gold. ⁴ The king of Egypt made Eliakim, who was the brother of Jehoahaz, king over Judah and Jerusalem (and changed Eliakim's name to Jehoiakim). Then Necho took Eliakim's brother Jehoahaz and brought him to Egypt.

translationNotes

The king of Egypt removed him at Jerusalem

The idiom “removed him at Jerusalem” means that he caused him no longer to be king in Jerusalem. AT: “The king of Egypt removed him from being king in Jerusalem” (See: [Idiom](#))

fined the land

Here the word “land” represents the people who lived there. AT: “fined the people of the land” (See: [Metonymy](#))

one hundred talents of silver and one talent of gold

You may convert this to a modern measure. A talent was about 33 kilograms. AT: “thirty-three hundred kilograms of silver and thirty-three kilograms of gold” or “about 3,300 kilograms of silver and 33 kilograms of gold” (See: [Biblical Money](#) and [Numbers](#))

Eliakim ... Jehoahaz

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly
- Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians

- [silver](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [Jehoiakim](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 36:5-7

UDB:

⁵ Jehoiakim was twenty-five years old when he became the king of Judah, and he ruled from Jerusalem for eleven years. He did many things that Yahweh said were evil. ⁶ Then the army of King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon attacked Jehoiakim's army. They captured Jehoiakim, fastened him with bronze chains, and took him to Babylon. ⁷ Nebuchadnezzar's soldiers also took valuable things from the temple. They took them to Babylon and put them in King Nebuchadnezzar's palace there.

ULB:

⁵ Jehoiakim was twenty-five years old when he began to reign, and he reigned eleven years in Jerusalem. He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh his God. ⁶ Then Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon, attacked him and bound him in chains to lead him away to Babylon. ⁷ Nebuchadnezzar also carried some of the objects in the house of Yahweh to Babylon, and put them in his palace at Babylon.

translationNotes

twenty-five years old ... eleven years

“25 years old ... 11 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh his God

Here “sight” represents judgment. Yahweh saw and did not approve of Jehoiakim's actions. AT: “what Yahweh judged to be evil” or “what Yahweh considered to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

attacked him

The word “him” refers to Jehoiakim. Jehoiakim represents either Jerusalem or the nation of Judah. AT: “attacked Jerusalem” or “attacked Judah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Nebuchadnezzar also carried

Since Nebuchadnezzar was king, he may have had his soldiers do this. AT: “Nebuchadnezzar also had his soldiers carry” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the house of Yahweh

Here the word “house” represents the temple. AT: “the temple of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian, Babylonians](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 36:8

UDB:

⁸ A record of the other things that happened while Jehoiakim was ruling, the disgusting things that he did and the evil things that people said that he did, is written in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel. After he was taken to Babylon, his son Jehoiachin became the king of Judah.

ULB:

⁸ As for the other matters concerning Jehoiakim, the disgusting things that he did, and what was found against him, behold, they are written in the book of the kings of Judah and Israel. Then Jehoiachin, his son, became king in his place.

translationNotes

the disgusting things that he did

This usually refers to worshiping false gods, which Yahweh hated.

what was found against him

This idiom refers to things that he did for which people could accuse him of wrong. This can be stated in active form. AT: “what people found against him” or “things that he did for which people could accuse him” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

behold

“indeed.” The word “behold” here adds emphasis to what follows.

they are written in the book

This can be stated in active form. AT: “someone has written them in the book” or “you can read of them in the book” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the book of the kings of Judah and Israel

This is a book that no longer exists. See how you translated this in [2 Chronicles 35:27](#).

became king in his place

The phrase “in his place” is a metaphor meaning “instead of him.” AT: “became king instead of Jehoiakim” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [kingdom of Israel](#)
- [Jehoiachin](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 36:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ Jehoiachin was eighteen years old when he became the king of Judah, and he ruled from Jerusalem for only three months and ten days. He did many things that Yahweh said were evil. ¹⁰ During the spring of the next year, King Nebuchadnezzar sent soldiers to bring him to Babylon. They also took to Babylon many valuable things from the temple of Yahweh. Then Nebuchadnezzar appointed Jehoiachin's uncle, Zedekiah, to be the king of Judah.

ULB:

⁹ Jehoiachin was eight years old when he began to reign; he reigned three months and ten days in Jerusalem. He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh. ¹⁰ In the spring, King Nebuchadnezzar sent men and brought him to Babylon, with the valuable things from the house of Yahweh, and made Zedekiah, his relative, king over Judah and Jerusalem.

translationNotes**eight years old ... three months and ten days**

“8 years old ... 3 months and 10 days” (See: [Numbers](#))

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

Here “sight” here represents judgment. Yahweh saw and did not approve of Jehoiachin's actions. AT: “what Yahweh judged to be evil” or “what Yahweh considered to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

brought him to Babylon

“brought Jehoiachin to Babylon”

the house of Yahweh

Here “house” represents the temple. AT: “the temple of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

his relative

“Jehoiachin's relative”

translationWords

- [reign, reigns, reigned, reigning](#)
- [Zedekiah](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 36:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ Zedekiah was twenty-one years old when he became the king, and he ruled in Jerusalem for eleven years. ¹² He did many things that Yahweh said were evil. He did not humble himself when the prophet Jeremiah spoke to him a message from Yahweh to warn him.

ULB:

¹¹ Zedekiah was twenty-one years old when he began to reign; he reigned eleven years in Jerusalem. ¹² He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh his God. He did not humble himself before Jeremiah the prophet, who spoke from the mouth of Yahweh.

translationNotes

twenty-one years old ... eleven years

“21 years old ... 11 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh his God

Here “sight” represents judgment. Yahweh saw and did not approve of Zedekiah’s actions. AT: “what Yahweh his God judged to be evil” or “what Yahweh his God considered to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

who spoke from the mouth of Yahweh

Here the word “mouth” represents the words that Yahweh spoke. AT: “who spoke the words that Yahweh spoke to him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [humble, humbles, humbled, humility](#)
- [Jeremiah](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 36:13-14

UDB:

¹³ He would not return to Yahweh, the God that the people of Israel said that they worshiped. Zedekiah also rebelled against King Nebuchadnezzar, who had forced him to solemnly promise using God's name to be loyal to him. Zedekiah became very stubborn. ¹⁴ Furthermore, all the leaders of the priests and also the people of Judah became more wicked again, doing all the disgusting things that the people of the other nations did, and causing the temple in Jerusalem that Yahweh had caused to be holy to become an unacceptable place to worship him.

ULB:

¹³ Zedekiah also rebelled against King Nebuchadnezzar, who had made him swear loyalty to him by God. But Zedekiah stiffened his neck and hardened his heart against turning to Yahweh, the God of Israel. ¹⁴ Moreover, all the leaders of the priests and the people were horribly unfaithful, and they followed the disgusting practices of the nations. They polluted the house of Yahweh which he had consecrated in Jerusalem.

translationNotes

Zedekiah stiffened his neck and hardened his heart against turning to Yahweh

The phrases “stiffened his neck” and “hardened his heart” are both metaphors that mean to become stubborn. Zedekiah refusing to worship Yahweh is spoken of as if he refused to turn to Yahweh. AT: “Zedekiah stubbornly refused to worship Yahweh” (See: [Doublet](#) and [Metaphor](#))

they followed the disgusting practices of the nations

The idiom “followed the ... practices” means to do those things. AT: “they did the disgusting things that the nations did” (See: [Idiom](#))

disgusting practices

This phrase refers to worshiping other gods.

They polluted the house of Yahweh

A place that is unfit to be used for God's purposes is spoken of as if it were physically dirty. The word “house” represents the temple. AT: “They polluted the temple of Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
- Nebuchadnezzar
- oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by
- God
- heart, hearts
- turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back
- priest, priests, priesthood
- trespass, trespasses, trespassed
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- consecrate, consecrated, consecration

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 36:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ Yahweh, the God whom the ancestors of the people of Judah worshiped, gave messages to his prophets many times, and the prophets gave those messages to the people of Judah. Yahweh did that because he pitied his people and did not want his temple to be destroyed. ¹⁶ But the people continually made fun of God's messengers. They despised God's messages. They ridiculed his prophets, until finally God became extremely angry with his people, with the result that nothing could stop him from destroying Judah.

ULB:

¹⁵ Yahweh, the God of their ancestors, sent word to them by his messengers again and again, because he had compassion on his people and on the place where he lives. ¹⁶ But they mocked God's messengers, despised his words, and scoffed at his prophets, until the wrath of Yahweh arose against his people, until there was no help for it.

translationNotes**again and again**

“many times”

the place where he lives

This refers to the temple.

the wrath of Yahweh arose against his people

Here the word “arose” refers to beginning an action. Yahweh punishing his people in his anger is spoken of as if his wrath were a person who acted against them. AT: “in his wrath, Yahweh began to punish his people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

there was no help for it

This idiom means that nobody could do anything to prevent what happened. AT: “there was no way to avoid it” (See: [Idiom](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out](#)

- word, words
- messenger, messengers
- people of God, my people
- life, live, lived, lives, living, alive
- mock, mocks, mocked, mocking, mocker, mockers, mockery, ridicule, ridiculed, scoff at, scoffed at
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- wrath, fury
- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 36:17

UDB:

¹⁷ He incited the king of Babylonia to attack Judah with his army. They killed the young men with their swords, even in the temple. They did not spare anyone, either young men or young women or old people. God enabled the army of Nebuchadnezzar to defeat all of them.

ULB:

¹⁷ So God brought on them the king of the Chaldeans, who killed their young men with the sword in the sanctuary, and had no compassion on young men or virgins, old men or the gray-haired. God gave them all into his hand.

translationNotes

God brought on them the king of the Chaldeans, who

The idiom “brought on them” means to cause to attack with his army. AT: “God caused the king of the Chaldeans to attack them, and he” (See: [Idiom](#))

who killed their young men with the sword

The king probably did not personally kill their young men. Rather, his army killed them. AT: “whose army killed their young men with swords” (See: [Metonymy](#))

God gave them all into his hand

Here “hand” is a metonym for the power to defeat them. AT: “God allowed the Chaldean army to defeat them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [Chaldea, Chaldean, Chaldeans](#)
- [sword, swords, swordsmen](#)
- [sanctuary](#)
- [virgin, virgins, virginity](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 36:18-19

UDB:

¹⁸ His soldiers took to Babylon all the things that were used in God's temple, big things and little things, all the valuable things, and the valuable things that belonged to the king and his officials. ¹⁹ They burned the temple, and they broke down the wall surrounding Jerusalem. They burned all the palaces in Jerusalem and destroyed all the remaining valuable things there.

ULB:

¹⁸ All the furnishings of the house of God, great and small, the treasures of the house of Yahweh, and the treasures of the king and his officials—all these he took to Babylon. ¹⁹ They burned down the house of God, broke down the wall of Jerusalem, burned all its palaces, and destroyed all the beautiful things in it.

translationNotes

the house of God ... the house of Yahweh

The word “house” represents the temple. AT: “the temple of God ... the temple of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

They burned down

“They” refers to the Babylonian soldiers.

translationWords

- [house of God, Yahweh's house](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian, Babylonians](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [palace, palaces](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 36:20-21

UDB:

²⁰ Nebuchadnezzar's soldiers took to Babylon the remaining people who had not been killed with their swords. Those people became the king's slaves and his son's slaves, until the army of Persia conquered Babylonia. ²¹ Moses had said that every seventh year the people must not plant their fields; they must allow the soil to rest. But the people had not done that. So after the army of Babylonia destroyed Judah, the soil was allowed to rest. That continued for seventy years, fulfilling what Yahweh had told Jeremiah would happen.

ULB:

²⁰ The king carried away to Babylon those who had escaped the sword. They became servants for him and his sons until the rule of the kingdom of Persia. ²¹ This happened to fulfill the word of Yahweh by the mouth of Jeremiah, until the land should have enjoyed its Sabbath rests. It observed its Sabbath for as long as it lay abandoned, in order to pass seventy years in this way.

translationNotes

The king carried away to Babylon

Here “the king” refers to his soldiers whom he ordered to do the work. The phrase “carried away” is an idiom that means to forcefully bring them to Babylon. AT: “The king had his army forcefully take to Babylon” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

until the rule of the kingdom of Persia

“until the kingdom of Persia came to power”

the word of Yahweh by the mouth of Jeremiah

Here the noun “word” can be translated with the verb “spoke.” The word “mouth” represents Jeremiah. AT: “what Yahweh spoke through Jeremiah” or “the word from Yahweh that Jeremiah spoke” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

until the land should have enjoyed its Sabbath rests

The people were supposed to obey the Sabbath law by not farming the land every seventh year. This phrase speaks about this as if the land were a person that would obey the Sabbath law and rest. AT: “until the land had rested according to the Sabbath law” or “until, as required by the Sabbath law, no one had farmed the land” (See: [Personification](#))

It observed its Sabbath for as long as it lay abandoned

The word “it” refers to the land. The land is spoken of as if it were a person who observed the Sabbath. AT: “The requirements of the Sabbath law were fulfilled as long as the land lay abandoned” (See: [Personification](#))

in order to pass seventy years in this way

“so that 70 years passed while the land lay abandoned” (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly](#)
- [kingdom, kingdoms](#)
- [Persia, Persians](#)
- [fulfill, fulfilled](#)
- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [Jeremiah](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [rest, rests, rested, resting, restless](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 translationQuestions](#)

2 Chronicles 36:22-23**UDB:**

²² During the first year that Cyrus was the king of Persia, in order that what Yahweh told Jeremiah would happen would occur, Yahweh motivated Cyrus to write this and proclaim it throughout his kingdom:

²³ “I, Cyrus, the king of Persia, declare that Yahweh, the God who rules in heaven, has enabled me to become the ruler of all the kingdoms of this world. And he has appointed me to command that my workers build a temple for him in Jerusalem, which is in Judah. I am allowing any of his people among you to go to Jerusalem. And I will pray that Yahweh will be with them.”

ULB:

²² Now in the first year of Cyrus, king of Persia, so that the word of Yahweh by the mouth of Jeremiah might be carried out, Yahweh motivated the spirit of Cyrus, king of Persia, so that he made a proclamation throughout all his kingdom, and put it also in writing. He said, ²³ “This is what Cyrus, king of Persia, says: Yahweh, the God of heaven, has given me all the kingdoms of the earth. He has commanded me to build a house for him in Jerusalem, which is in Judah. Whoever is among you from all his people, may Yahweh your God, be with you. Let him go up to the land.”

translationNotes**in the first year**

This refers to the beginning of the reign of King Cyrus. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

so that the word of Yahweh by the mouth of Jeremiah might be carried out

Here the noun “word” can be translated with the verb “spoke.” The word “mouth” represents Jeremiah. This can be stated in active form. AT: “so that what Yahweh spoke through Jeremiah might happen” or “so that the word from Yahweh that Jeremiah spoke might happen” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Yahweh motivated the spirit of Cyrus, king of Persia

Motivating the spirit is a synecdoche for making someone want to act. AT: “Yahweh made Cyrus, king of Persia, want to act” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

all the kingdoms of the earth

This is an exaggeration, as there were kingdoms over which Cyrus did not rule. (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

to build a house for him

Here the word “house” represents a temple. AT: “to build a temple for him” (See: [Metonymy](#))

his people

“Yahweh’s people”

Let him go up to the land

“Let that person go up to the land of Judah”

translationWords

- [Cyrus](#)
- [spirit, spirits, spiritual](#)
- [proclaim, proclaims, proclaimed, proclaiming, proclamation, proclamations](#)
- [kingdom, kingdoms](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [house of God, Yahweh’s house](#)
- [Judah](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to 2 Chronicles](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 translationQuestions](#)

translationQuestions

2 Chronicles 1

Why was Solomon, the son of David, strengthened in his rule?

Solomon was strengthened in his rule because Yahweh was with him and made him very powerful. [1:1]

What items were present for worship as Solomon went to the shrine that was at Gibeon?

There was the tent of meeting or tabernacle which Moses made in the wilderness, and the bronze altar that Bezalel had made, but the ark of God had been taken from Kiriath Jearim to a tent in Jerusalem. [1:2]

What items were present for worship as Solomon went to the shrine that was at Gibeon?

There was the tent of meeting or tabernacle which Moses made in the wilderness, and the bronze altar that Bezalel had made, but the ark of God had been taken from Kiriath Jearim to a tent in Jerusalem. [1:3]

What items were present for worship as Solomon went to the shrine that was at Gibeon?

There was the tent of meeting or tabernacle which Moses made in the wilderness, and the bronze altar that Bezalel had made, but the ark of God had been taken from Kiriath Jearim to a tent in Jerusalem. [1:4]

What items were present for worship as Solomon went to the shrine that was at Gibeon?

There was the tent of meeting or tabernacle which Moses made in the wilderness, and the bronze altar that Bezalel had made, but the ark of God had been taken from Kiriath Jearim to a tent in Jerusalem. [1:5]

What did Solomon do before Yahweh approached him with the question, "What should I give you"?

Solomon worshipped Yahweh at the bronze altar by offering one thousand burnt offerings. [1:6]

What did Solomon do before Yahweh approached him with the question, "What should I give you"?

Solomon worshipped Yahweh at the bronze altar by offering one thousand burnt offerings. [1:7]

Why did Solomon ask Yahweh to give him wisdom and knowledge?

Solomon asked Yahweh to give him wisdom and knowledge so that he could lead the people of Israel who were many in number. [1:8]

Why did Solomon ask Yahweh to give him wisdom and knowledge?

Solomon asked Yahweh to give him wisdom and knowledge so that he could lead the people of Israel who were many in number. [1:9]

Why did Solomon ask Yahweh to give him wisdom and knowledge?

Solomon asked Yahweh to give him wisdom and knowledge so that he could lead the people of Israel who were many in number. [1:10]

Why did God give Solomon wisdom and knowledge?

God gave Solomon wisdom and knowledge because he did not ask for riches, wealth, honor, the death of those who hated him nor long life for himself, but for God's help in ruling over his people. [1:11]

What did God give to Solomon along with wisdom and knowledge?

God gave Solomon what he did not ask for: riches, wealth, and honor above any of the kings before him. [1:12]

In what ways was the wealth of Solomon seen by all?

Solomon had 1,400 chariots and twelve thousand horsemen, silver and gold were as common as stone, and cedar wood was as common as the sycamore trees in the lowlands. [1:14]

In what ways was the wealth of Solomon seen by all?

Solomon had 1,400 chariots and twelve thousand horsemen, silver and gold were as common as stone, and cedar wood was as common as the sycamore trees in the lowlands. [1:15]

2 Chronicles 2

Why did Solomon ask Hiram to send him cedar logs as he did for his father David?

Solomon asked Hiram to send him cedar logs so he could build a house for Yahweh's name and a palace for his kingdom. [2:1]

Why did Solomon ask Hiram to send him cedar logs as he did for his father David?

Solomon asked Hiram to send him cedar logs so he could build a house for Yahweh's name and a palace for his kingdom. [2:2]

Why did Solomon ask Hiram to send him cedar logs as he did for his father David?

Solomon asked Hiram to send him cedar logs so he could build a house for Yahweh's name and a palace for his kingdom. [2:3]

Why did Solomon plan to build a house for the name of Yahweh that would be very large?

Solomon planned to build a large house for the name of Yahweh because his God was greater than all other gods. [2:4]

Why did Solomon plan to build a house for the name of Yahweh that would be very large?

Solomon planned to build a large house for the name of Yahweh because his God was greater than all other gods. [2:5]

Who did Solomon need if he was to build a house for the name of Yahweh which reflected Yahweh's greatness?

Solomon needed a man who was skilled at work in gold, silver, bronze, iron, and in purple, crimson, blue wool and who could make all kinds of engraved wood. [2:7]

Why did Solomon want Hiram to send him cedar, fir, and algum trees from Lebanon?

Solomon wanted Hiram to send these trees to him so that the house which he would build for the name of Yahweh would be great and marvelous. [2:8]

Why did Solomon want Hiram to send him cedar, fir, and algum trees from Lebanon?

Solomon wanted Hiram to send these trees to him so that the house which he would build for the name of Yahweh would be great and marvelous. [2:9]

According to Hiram, why did Yahweh make Solomon the king over the people of Israel?

According to Hiram, Yahweh made Solomon the king because Yahweh loved his people and Solomon was gifted with prudence and understanding. [2:11]

According to Hiram, why did Yahweh make Solomon the king over the people of Israel?

According to Hiram, Yahweh made Solomon the king because Yahweh loved his people and Solomon was gifted with prudence and understanding. [2:12]

Why did Hiram send Huramabi to Solomon?

Hiram sent Hurambi because he was skilled at work in gold, silver, bronze, iron, stone, and in timber, and in purple, blue, crimson wool, and fine linen as well as in making any kind of engravings. [2:13]

Why did Hiram send Huramabi to Solomon?

Hiram sent Hurambi because he was skilled at work in gold, silver, bronze, iron, stone, and in timber, and in purple, blue, crimson wool, and fine linen as well as in making any kind of engravings. [2:14]

How was it possible for the wood from Lebanon to be taken to Israel?

The wood from Lebanon was taken to Israel as rafts by sea to Joppa and then carried up to Jerusalem. [2:16]

2 Chronicles 3

Why did Solomon begin to build the house of Yahweh at the threshing floor of Ornan the Jebusite on Mount Moriah?

Solomon began to build the house of Yahweh there because that was where Yahweh had appeared to David his father. [3:1]

Why did Solomon begin to build the house of Yahweh at the threshing floor of Ornan the Jebusite on Mount Moriah?

Solomon began to build the house of Yahweh there because that was where Yahweh had appeared to David his father. [3:2]

What were the dimensions of the foundation which Solomon laid for the house of God?

The dimensions of the foundation for the house of God was sixty cubits long and twenty cubits wide, using the old style cubit. [3:3]

How high was the portico at the front of the house?

The portico was twenty cubits. [3:4]

What was used to overlay the most holy place?

The most holy place was overlaid with fine gold. [3:8]

What was used to overlay the most holy place?

The most holy place was overlaid with fine gold. [3:9]

What did Solomon put on the two pillars in front of the house of God?

Solomon joined one hundred pomegranates to the chains which he placed on top of the pillars. [3:15]

What did Solomon put on the two pillars in front of the house of God?

Solomon joined one hundred pomegranates to the chains which he placed on top of the pillars. [3:16]

What did Solomon put on the two pillars in front of the house of God?

Solomon joined one hundred pomegranates to the chains which he placed on top of the pillars.
[3:17]

2 Chronicles 4

What were the dimensions for the altar of bronze?

The altar of bronze was twenty cubits long, twenty cubits wide, and ten cubits high. [4:1]

How big was the round sea of cast metal?

The round sea was ten cubits from brim to brim. It was five cubits high and thirty cubits in circumference. [4:2]

What was the purpose of the sea which Solomon built for the temple?

The sea was for the priests to wash in. [4:6]

How did Solomon know how to make the ten lampstands of gold?

Solomon made the ten lampstands of gold from the instructions for their design. [4:7]

What was the work which Hiram finished for King Solomon in the house of God?

Hiram finished the work on the two pillars, the bowls, the decorative latticework, and the four hundred pomegranates. [4:12]

What was the work which Hiram finished for King Solomon in the house of God?

Hiram finished the work on the two pillars, the bowls, the decorative latticework, and the four hundred pomegranates. [4:13]

What did Hiramabi make of polished bronze for King Solomon for the house of Yahweh?

Hiramabi made the stands and the basins, one sea and the twelve bulls under it, and many implements. [4:14]

What did Hiramabi make of polished bronze for King Solomon for the house of Yahweh?

Hiramabi made the stands and the basins, one sea and the twelve bulls under it, and many implements. [4:15]

What did Hiramabi make of polished bronze for King Solomon for the house of Yahweh?

Hiramabi made the stands and the basins, one sea and the twelve bulls under it, and many implements. [4:16]

What was the weight of the bronze for all of the vessels Solomon made?

The weight of the bronze all the vessels Solomon made could not be known. [4:18]

What were the lampstands with their lamps that were designed to burn before the inner room made of?

The lampstand with their lamps were made of pure gold. [4:20]

2 Chronicles 5

Where did Solomon put the things which David had dedicated to God?

Solomon put all the things including the silver, gold, and all the furnishings, into the storerooms of the house of God. [5:1]

What did Solomon decide to do next?

Solomon assembled the leaders of Israel to bring up the ark of the covenant of Yahweh from the city of David. [5:2]

What did Solomon decide to do next?

Solomon assembled the leaders of Israel to bring up the ark of the covenant of Yahweh from the city of David. [5:3]

What did King Solomon and all the assembly of Israel do when the Levites brought up the ark of the covenant?

King Solomon and all the assembly of Israel came together sacrificing many sheep and oxen. [5:4]

What did King Solomon and all the assembly of Israel do when the Levites brought up the ark of the covenant?

King Solomon and all the assembly of Israel came together sacrificing many sheep and oxen. [5:5]

What did King Solomon and all the assembly of Israel do when the Levites brought up the ark of the covenant?

King Solomon and all the assembly of Israel came together sacrificing many sheep and oxen. [5:6]

Where did the priests place the ark of the covenant of Yahweh?

The priests placed the ark of the covenant of Yahweh in the most holy place under the wings of the cherubim. [5:7]

Where did the priests place the ark of the covenant of Yahweh?

The priests placed the ark of the covenant of Yahweh in the most holy place under the wings of the cherubim. [5:8]

What items were in the ark of the covenant?

There was nothing in the ark of the covenant except the two tablets that Moses had put there at Horeb. [5:9]

What items were in the ark of the covenant?

There was nothing in the ark of the covenant except the two tablets that Moses had put there at Horeb. [5:10]

What did all the Levites do after the priests came out of the holy place?

The Levites, who were clothed in fine linen, stood at the east end of the altar playing cymbals, harps, and lyres. [5:11]

What did all the Levites do after the priests came out of the holy place?

The Levites, who were clothed in fine linen, stood at the east end of the altar playing cymbals, harps, and lyres. [5:12]

How did the trumpeters and singers praise Yahweh?

The trumpeters and singers made music together, singing, "For he is good, for his covenant loyalty endures forever." [5:13]

Why were the priests unable to stand in order to serve?

The priests could not stand because the cloud, which was the glory of Yahweh, filled Yahweh's house. [5:14]

2 Chronicles 6

How had Solomon improved the place where Yahweh would live?

Yahweh had said he would live in thick darkness, but Solomon built him a lofty residence in which he would live forever. [6:1]

How had Solomon improved the place where Yahweh would live?

Yahweh had said he would live in thick darkness, but Solomon built him a lofty residence in which he would live forever. [6:2]

Where did Yahweh finally decide to live and whom did he chose to rule over Israel?

Yahweh had chosen no city in which to build his house nor any man to be prince over Israel, but he then chose Jerusalem as the city and David to be over Israel. [6:4]

Where did Yahweh finally decide to live and whom did he chose to rule over Israel?

Yahweh had chosen no city in which to build his house nor any man to be prince over Israel, but he then chose Jerusalem as the city and David to be over Israel. [6:5]

Where did Yahweh finally decide to live and whom did he chose to rule over Israel?

Yahweh had chosen no city in which to build his house nor any man to be prince over Israel, but he then chose Jerusalem as the city and David to be over Israel. [6:6]

What did Yahweh say to David to keep him from fulfilling the desire of his heart?

Yahweh had told David, "It was in your heart to build a house for my name, but your son will build it instead." [6:7]

What did Yahweh say to David to keep him from fulfilling the desire of his heart?

Yahweh had told David, "It was in your heart to build a house for my name, but your son will build it instead." [6:8]

What did Yahweh say to David to keep him from fulfilling the desire of his heart?

Yahweh had told David, "It was in your heart to build a house for my name, but your son will build it instead." [6:9]

How did Yahweh carry out the word that he had spoken?

Yahweh carried out the word he had spoken by having Solomon sit on David's throne, build the house for the name of Yahweh, and place the ark within it. [6:10]

How did Yahweh carry out the word that he had spoken?

Yahweh carried out the word he had spoken by having Solomon sit on David's throne, build the house for the name of Yahweh, and place the ark within it. [6:11]

How did Solomon stand before the altar of Yahweh?

Solomon stood on a bronze platform, knelt down before all the assembly of Israel, and spread out his hands toward the heavens. [6:12]

How did Solomon stand before the altar of Yahweh?

Solomon stood on a bronze platform, knelt down before all the assembly of Israel, and spread out his hands toward the heavens. [6:13]

What does Yahweh do for the servants who walk before him with all their heart?

Yahweh keeps covenant and covenant faithfulness with his servants who walk before him with all their heart. [6:14]

What does Yahweh do for the servants who walk before him with all their heart?

Yahweh keeps covenant and covenant faithfulness with his servants who walk before him with all their heart. [6:15]

What is the promise which Yahweh made to his servant David?

Yahweh told David that he would not fail to have a man from his tribe sit on the throne of Israel if his descendants were careful to walk in Yahweh's law. [6:16]

What is the promise which Yahweh made to his servant David?

Yahweh told David that he would not fail to have a man from his tribe sit on the throne of Israel if his descendants were careful to walk in Yahweh's law. [6:17]

What was the basic request which Solomon made of Yahweh?

Solomon requested that Yahweh listen to his cry and prayer so that his eyes would be open on the temple day and night. [6:19]

What was the basic request which Solomon made of Yahweh?

Solomon requested that Yahweh listen to his cry and prayer so that his eyes would be open on the temple day and night. [6:20]

What did Solomon want Yahweh, the God of Israel, to do after Yahweh listened to the requests of Solomon and the people of Israel?

Solomon wanted Yahweh to forgive. [6:21]

How could a righteous man be declared innocent if he was charged with sinning against his neighbor?

A righteous man could be declared innocent by swearing an oath before the altar in Yahweh's house. [6:22]

How could a righteous man be declared innocent if he was charged with sinning against his neighbor?

A righteous man could be declared innocent by swearing an oath before the altar in Yahweh's house. [6:23]

What did the people of Israel need to do when they had been defeated by an enemy because they had sinned against Yahweh?

The people of Israel needed to turn back to Yahweh by confessing his name, praying, and requesting forgiveness before him in the temple. [6:24]

What did the people of Israel need to do when they had been defeated by an enemy because they had sinned against Yahweh?

The people of Israel needed to turn back to Yahweh by confessing his name, praying, and requesting forgiveness before him in the temple. [6:25]

How should the people of Israel respond when the skies are shut up and there is no rain because they have sinned against Yahweh?

The people of Israel should pray toward the temple, confess Yahweh's name, and turn from their sin so that rain would fall on their land. [6:26]

How should the people of Israel respond when the skies are shut up and there is no rain because they have sinned against Yahweh?

The people of Israel should pray toward the temple, confess Yahweh's name, and turn from their sin so that rain would fall on their land. [6:27]

What were some of the conditions where people in Israel needed Yahweh to listen to their prayers and forgive them for their sins?

The people in Israel needed Yahweh to listen to their prayers when there was famine, disease, blight or mildew, locusts or caterpillars, when enemies attacked the city gates, or if there was any plague or sickness. [6:28]

What were some of the conditions where people in Israel needed Yahweh to listen to their prayers and forgive them for their sins?

The people in Israel needed Yahweh to listen to their prayers when there was famine, disease, blight or mildew, locusts or caterpillars, when enemies attacked the city gates, or if there was any plague or sickness. [6:29]

What were some of the conditions where people in Israel needed Yahweh to listen to their prayers and forgive them for their sins?

The people in Israel needed Yahweh to listen to their prayers when there was famine, disease, blight or mildew, locusts or caterpillars, when enemies attacked the city gates, or if there was any plague or sickness. [6:30]

What were some of the conditions where people in Israel needed Yahweh to listen to their prayers and forgive them for their sins?

The people in Israel needed Yahweh to listen to their prayers when there was famine, disease, blight or mildew, locusts or caterpillars, when enemies attacked the city gates, or if there was any plague or sickness. [6:31]

Why should Yahweh do what the foreigner asks of him when he came and prayed toward Yahweh's house?

Yahweh should do what the foreigner asked of him so that all the people groups on earth might know Yahweh's name, fear him, and know the house which is called by his name. [6:32]

Why should Yahweh do what the foreigner asks of him when he came and prayed toward Yahweh's house?

Yahweh should do what the foreigner asked of him so that all the people groups on earth might know Yahweh's name, fear him, and know the house which is called by his name. [6:33]

What request did Solomon make of Yahweh?

Solomon requested that Yahweh would listen to the confession of the people of Israel and forgive them of their sins after they had sinned, been taken captive to the land of their enemy, and repented of their sins. [6:36]

What request did Solomon make of Yahweh?

Solomon requested that Yahweh would listen to the confession of the people of Israel and forgive them of their sins after they had sinned, been taken captive to the land of their enemy, and repented of their sins. [6:37]

What request did Solomon make of Yahweh?

Solomon requested that Yahweh would listen to the confession of the people of Israel and forgive them of their sins after they had sinned, been taken captive to the land of their enemy, and repented of their sins. [6:38]

What request did Solomon make of Yahweh?

Solomon requested that Yahweh would listen to the confession of the people of Israel and forgive them of their sins after they had sinned, been taken captive to the land of their enemy, and repented of their sins. [6:39]

What did Solomon want Yahweh to do?

Solomon wanted Yahweh to be attentive to the prayers of the people, clothe his priests with salvation, and let his saints rejoice in his goodness. [6:40]

What did Solomon want Yahweh to do?

Solomon wanted Yahweh to be attentive to the prayers of the people, clothe his priests with salvation, and let his saints rejoice in his goodness. [6:41]

What did Solomon want Yahweh to do?

Solomon wanted Yahweh to be attentive to the prayers of the people, clothe his priests with salvation, and let his saints rejoice in his goodness. [6:42]

2 Chronicles 7

What happened when Solomon finished his prayer to Yahweh?

When Solomon finished his prayer, fire came down from heaven to consume the burnt offerings and sacrifices, and the glory of Yahweh filled the house. [7:1]

What was the response of the people of Israel when the fire came down and the glory of Yahweh filled the house?

The people of Israel bowed with their faces to the ground, worshiped, and gave thanks to Yahweh. [7:3]

Why did King Solomon and all the people offer sacrifices to Yahweh?

King Solomon and the people offered sacrifices to Yahweh to dedicate the house of God [7:4]

Why did King Solomon and all the people offer sacrifices to Yahweh?

King Solomon and the people offered sacrifices to Yahweh to dedicate the house of God [7:5]

Why did Solomon offer burnt offerings and the fat of the fellowship offerings in the middle of the courtyard?

The burnt offerings and the fat of the fellowship offerings were offered by Solomon in the middle of the courtyard because the bronze altar he made was not able to hold the burnt offerings, the grain offerings, and the fat. [7:7]

Why was Solomon able to send the people of Israel away to their homes with glad and joyful hearts after the festival?

The people were sent away by Solomon with glad and joyful hearts because of the goodness that Yahweh had shown to David, Solomon, and his people Israel. [7:8]

Why was Solomon able to send the people of Israel away to their homes with glad and joyful hearts after the festival?

The people were sent away by Solomon with glad and joyful hearts because of the goodness that Yahweh had shown to David, Solomon, and his people Israel. [7:9]

Why was Solomon able to send the people of Israel away to their homes with glad and joyful hearts after the festival?

The people were sent away by Solomon with glad and joyful hearts because of the goodness that Yahweh had shown to David, Solomon, and his people Israel. [7:10]

What was carried out by Solomon in the house of Yahweh and in Solomon's own house?

Everything was carried out that came into Solomon's heart to do in the house of Yahweh and in his own house. [7:11]

What did the people of Israel need to do in order for Yahweh to hear their prayer, forgive their sin, and heal their land?

The people who were called by Yahweh's name needed to humble themselves, pray, seek Yahweh's face and turn from their wicked ways. [7:14]

Why did Yahweh choose and consecrate his house?

Yahweh chose and consecrated his house so that his name might be there forever. [7:16]

What conditions did Yahweh set forth for the people of Israel to meet in order for a descendant of David to always be on the throne of his kingdom?

Yahweh said that the people of Israel must obey all that he had commanded them and keep his statutes and decrees. [7:17]

What conditions did Yahweh set forth for the people of Israel to meet in order for a descendant of David to always be on the throne of his kingdom?

Yahweh said that the people of Israel must obey all that he had commanded them and keep his statutes and decrees. [7:18]

What would happen if the people of Israel would disobey Yahweh's statutes and commandments and worship other gods?

If the people of Israel would disobey Yahweh's statutes and commandments and worship other gods, then he would uproot them from the ground he had given them and the house he had consecrated and make them a joke among all the peoples. [7:19]

What would happen if the people of Israel would disobey Yahweh's statutes and commandments and worship other gods?

If the people of Israel would disobey Yahweh's statutes and commandments and worship other gods, then he would uproot them from the ground he had given them and the house he had consecrated and make them a joke among all the peoples. [7:20]

What response would be given to the people who passed by the temple and were shocked at what Yahweh had done to the land and his house?

The response would be that Yahweh had brought all this disaster upon the land and his house because his people disobeyed him and laid hold of other gods, bowing down to worship them. [7:21]

What response would be given to the people who passed by the temple and were shocked at what Yahweh had done to the land and his house?

The response would be that Yahweh had brought all this disaster upon the land and his house because his people disobeyed him and laid hold of other gods, bowing down to worship them. [7:22]

2 Chronicles 8

What did Solomon do while he was building the house of Yahweh and his own house?

During the time Solomon built the house of Yahweh and his own house, he was also rebuilding the towns which Hiram had given to him and he made the people of Israel live there. [8:1]

What did Solomon do while he was building the house of Yahweh and his own house?

During the time Solomon built the house of Yahweh and his own house, he was also rebuilding the towns which Hiram had given to him and he made the people of Israel live there. [8:2]

In general where and for what purpose did Solomon build?

Solomon built for his own pleasure in Jerusalem, Lebanon, and in all the lands under his rule. [8:6]

What happened to the people of the land who did not belong to Israel?

Solomon made the people who did not belong to Israel forced laborers. [8:7]

What happened to the people of the land who did not belong to Israel?

Solomon made the people who did not belong to Israel forced laborers. [8:8]

What jobs did Solomon give the people of Israel?

Solomon made the people of Israel his soldiers, his commanders, his officers, and the commanders of his chariot forces and horsemen. [8:9]

What jobs did Solomon give the people of Israel?

Solomon made the people of Israel his soldiers, his commanders, his officers, and the commanders of his chariot forces and horsemen. [8:10]

Why did Solomon bring the daughter of Pharaoh out of the city of David to a house he had built for her?

Solomon brought the daughter of Pharaoh out of the city of David to a house, because the ark of Yahweh was in the city and so it was a holy place. [8:11]

How did Solomon offer burnt offerings to Yahweh on the altar he built in front of the portico?

Solomon offered burnt offerings to Yahweh just as the daily schedule required, following the directions found in the commandment of Moses. [8:12]

How did Solomon offer burnt offerings to Yahweh on the altar he built in front of the portico?

Solomon offered burnt offerings to Yahweh just as the daily schedule required, following the directions found in the commandment of Moses. [8:13]

What were the responsibilities of the priests and the Levites?

The priests and the Levites were appointed by Solomon to their positions in order to praise God and to serve before the priests as the daily schedule required. [8:14]

How faithful were the gatekeepers in carrying out their responsibilities?

The gatekeepers obeyed the commands of the king to the priests and Levites concerning any matter. [8:14]

How faithful were the gatekeepers in carrying out their responsibilities?

The gatekeepers obeyed the commands of the king to the priests and Levites concerning any matter. [8:15]

What was the sign that all of Solomon's work on the house of Yahweh had been accomplished?

The house of Yahweh was completely finished and put into use. [8:16]

2 Chronicles 9

Why did the queen of Sheba come to Jerusalem?

The queen of Sheba came to Jerusalem because she heard of Solomon's fame and wanted to test him with hard questions. [9:1]

How did Solomon respond when the queen of Sheba asked him all the questions that were on her heart?

Solomon answered all the questions that the queen of Sheba asked of him. [9:1]

How did Solomon respond when the queen of Sheba asked him all the questions that were on her heart?

Solomon answered all the questions that the queen of Sheba asked of him. [9:2]

What was the response from the queen of Sheba when she saw Solomon's wisdom and all the buildings, food, clothing, and servants he had in his possession?

When the queen of Sheba saw all the possessions which Solomon had, there was no more spirit in her. [9:3]

What was the response from the queen of Sheba when she saw Solomon's wisdom and all the buildings, food, clothing, and servants he had in his possession?

When the queen of Sheba saw all the possessions which Solomon had, there was no more spirit in her. [9:4]

What was the queen of Sheba's assessment of king Solomon?

The queen of Sheba told King Solomon that his wisdom and wealth exceeded what she had heard about him. [9:6]

What did the queen of Sheba say to remind Solomon how he had come to be on the throne of Israel as their king?

The queen of Sheba reminded Solomon that Yahweh had made him king over Israel and had placed him on the throne because Yahweh loved Israel and wanted to establish it forever. [9:8]

What was the outcome of the queen of Sheba's trip to see King Solomon?

King Solomon gave to the queen of Sheba everything she asked for in addition to what she had brought to the king, and then she left and went back to her own land. [9:12]

How much gold came to Solomon in one year?

The weight of gold that came to Solomon in one year was 666 talents. [9:13]

Who brought gold to Solomon?

The traders, the merchants, all the kings of Arabia and the governors in the country brought gold to Solomon. [9:14]

How many gold shields did Solomon make?

King Solomon made five hundred shields of beaten gold. [9:16]

What was King Solomon's throne made of?

King Solomon's throne was made of ivory overlaid with the finest gold. [9:17]

Why were none of King Solomon's drinking cups made of silver?

None of King Solomon's drinking cups were made of silver because silver was not considered valuable in Solomon's day. [9:20]

Why did all the earth seek the presence of Solomon?

All the earth sought the presence of Solomon because of his riches, and in order to hear his wisdom which God had put in his heart. [9:22]

Why did all the earth seek the presence of Solomon?

All the earth sought the presence of Solomon because of his riches, and in order to hear his wisdom which God had put in his heart. [9:23]

What kings did Solomon rule over?

King Solomon ruled over all the kings from the Euphrates River to the land of the Philistines, and to the border of Egypt. [9:26]

How long did Solomon reign as king in Jerusalem over all Israel?

Solomon reigned in Jerusalem over all Israel for forty years. [9:29]

How long did Solomon reign as king in Jerusalem over all Israel?

Solomon reigned in Jerusalem over all Israel for forty years. [9:30]

2 Chronicles 10

Why was all of Israel coming to Shechem?

All of Israel was coming to Shechem to make Rehoboam their king. [10:1]

What stood in the way of Rehoboam becoming the king of all Israel?

Jeroboam's return from exile in Egypt stood in the way of Rehoboam becoming king of all Israel. [10:2]

What request did Jeroboam and all Israel make of Rehoboam?

Jeroboam and all Israel asked Rehoboam to lighten the heavy yoke that King Solomon had put on them. [10:3]

What request did Jeroboam and all Israel make of Rehoboam?

Jeroboam and all Israel asked Rehoboam to lighten the heavy yoke that King Solomon had put on them. [10:4]

What did the old men, who had stood before Solomon when he was alive, advise King Rehoboam to do?

The old men advised King Rehoboam to be good to the people and please them with good words, and then they would always be his servants. [10:6]

What did the old men, who had stood before Solomon when he was alive, advise King Rehoboam to do?

The old men advised King Rehoboam to be good to the people and please them with good words, and then they would always be his servants. [10:7]

What did Rehoboam do after he ignored the advice the old men gave him?

Rehoboam consulted with the young men who had grown up with him, by asking them how he should respond to the request to lighten the load of the people. [10:8]

What did Rehoboam do after he ignored the advice the old men gave him?

Rehoboam consulted with the young men who had grown up with him, by asking them how he should respond to the request to lighten the load of the people. [10:9]

What advice did the young men who had grown up with Rehoboam give him concerning the request of the people to lighten their load?

The young men advised Rehoboam to tell the people that although my father burdened you with a heavy yoke, I will add to your yoke. [10:10]

What advice did the young men who had grown up with Rehoboam give him concerning the request of the people to lighten their load?

The young men advised Rehoboam to tell the people that although my father burdened you with a heavy yoke, I will add to your yoke. [10:11]

What happened when Jeroboam and all the people of Israel came to Rehoboam on the third day?

King Rehoboam ignored the advice of the old men and answered them roughly by following the advice of the young men. [10:12]

What happened when Jeroboam and all the people of Israel came to Rehoboam on the third day?

King Rehoboam ignored the advice of the old men and answered them roughly by following the advice of the young men. [10:13]

What happened when Jeroboam and all the people of Israel came to Rehoboam on the third day?

King Rehoboam ignored the advice of the old men and answered them roughly by following the advice of the young men. [10:14]

Why did King Rehoboam not listen to the people of Israel?

The king's decision not to listen to the people of Israel was a turn of events brought about by Yahweh to carry out the word he had spoken by Ahijah to Jeroboam. [10:15]

What was Israel's response to King Rehoboam's statement that he would make their yoke heavier?

When Israel heard from King Rehoboam, the people of Israel said they did not have any share in David, told the people of Israel to go back to their tents, and told Rehoboam to see to his own house. [10:16]

How did the people of Israel respond when King Rehoboam sent Adoniram, who was over the forced laborers, to them?

The people of Israel stoned Adoniram to death and King Rehoboam fled in his chariot to Jerusalem.
[10:18]

2 Chronicles 11

Why did Rehoboam assemble the house of Judah and Benjamin to fight against Israel when he arrived in Jerusalem?

Rehoboam assembled the house of Judah and Benjamin in order to restore the kingdom to himself. [11:1]

What message from Yahweh did Shemaiah deliver to Rehoboam and all of Israel?

The message from Yahweh was that they must not attack or fight against their brothers. [11:2]

What message from Yahweh did Shemaiah deliver to Rehoboam and all of Israel?

The message from Yahweh was that they must not attack or fight against their brothers. [11:3]

What message from Yahweh did Shemaiah deliver to Rehoboam and all of Israel?

The message from Yahweh was that they must not attack or fight against their brothers. [11:4]

Why did Rehoboam build cities in Judah?

Rehoboam built cities in Judah for defense. [11:5]

Why did Rehoboam build cities in Judah?

Rehoboam built cities in Judah for defense. [11:6]

Why did Rehoboam build cities in Judah?

Rehoboam built cities in Judah for defense. [11:7]

Why did Rehoboam build cities in Judah?

Rehoboam built cities in Judah for defense. [11:8]

Why did Rehoboam build cities in Judah?

Rehoboam built cities in Judah for defense. [11:9]

Why did Rehoboam build cities in Judah?

Rehoboam built cities in Judah for defense. [11:10]

What were some of the accomplishments of Rehoboam?

Rehoboam fortified the fortresses, put commanders in them, and put shields and spears in every city. [11:11]

What were some of the accomplishments of Rehoboam?

Rehoboam fortified the fortresses, put commanders in them, and put shields and spears in every city. [11:12]

Why did the Levites leave their pasture lands and property in order to come to Judah and Jerusalem?

The Levites left their pastureland and property because Jeroboam and his sons had driven them away, so that they could no longer perform priestly duties for Yahweh. [11:13]

Why did the Levites leave their pasture lands and property in order to come to Judah and Jerusalem?

The Levites left their pastureland and property because Jeroboam and his sons had driven them away, so that they could no longer perform priestly duties for Yahweh. [11:14]

How did Jeroboam replace the priests and Levites who moved to Judah?

Jeroboam appointed for himself priests for the shrines and the idols of calves and goats that he had made. [11:14]

How did Jeroboam replace the priests and Levites who moved to Judah?

Jeroboam appointed for himself priests for the shrines and the idols of calves and goats that he had made. [11:15]

What did people from the tribes of Israel do to strengthen Rehoboam and the kingdom of Judah?

People, who set their hearts to seek Yahweh, came from all the tribes of Israel to Jerusalem to sacrifice to Yahweh. [11:16]

What did people from the tribes of Israel do to strengthen Rehoboam and the kingdom of Judah?

People, who set their hearts to seek Yahweh, came from all the tribes of Israel to Jerusalem to sacrifice to Yahweh. [11:17]

What was one way in which Rehoboam ruled wisely?

Rehoboam ruled wisely by scattering all his sons throughout all the land of Judah and Benjamin to every fortified city. [11:22]

What was one way in which Rehoboam ruled wisely?

Rehoboam ruled wisely by scattering all his sons throughout all the land of Judah and Benjamin to every fortified city. [11:23]

2 Chronicles 12

What wrong thing did Rehoboam do when his reign was established?

Rehoboam and all Israel abandoned the law of Yahweh. [12:1]

Why did Shishak, king of Egypt, come up against Jerusalem?

Shishak came up against Jerusalem because the people had been unfaithful to Yahweh. [12:2]

What was the response of Rehoboam and the leaders of Judah when Shemaiah the prophet told them they had been given over into Shishak's hand because they had forsaken Yahweh?

Rehoboam and the leaders of Judah humbled themselves and proclaimed that Yahweh was righteous. [12:5]

What was the response of Rehoboam and the leaders of Judah when Shemaiah the prophet told them they had been given over into Shishak's hand because they had forsaken Yahweh?

Rehoboam and the leaders of Judah humbled themselves and proclaimed that Yahweh was righteous. [12:6]

How did Yahweh respond when he saw that Rehoboam and the leaders of Judah had humbled themselves?

Yahweh rescued them to some extent, but still allowed them to become servants under Shishak. [12:7]

Why did Yahweh allow the leaders of Judah to become the servants of Shishak?

Yahweh allowed them to become servants of Shishak so they could understand what it was to serve him as well as to serve the rulers of other countries. [12:8]

What did Shishak take away from Jerusalem?

Shishak took away the treasures in the house of Yahweh and the king's house, as well as the shields of gold that Solomon made. [12:9]

Why was Yahweh's anger turned away from Rehoboam?

Yahweh's anger was turned away because Rehoboam humbled himself and there was still some good to be found in Judah. [12:12]

Why was it said that “King Rehoboam did what was evil”?

It was said that Rehoboam did what was evil because he did not fix his heart to seek Yahweh. [12:13]

Why was it said that “King Rehoboam did what was evil”?

It was said that Rehoboam did what was evil because he did not fix his heart to seek Yahweh. [12:14]

What happened after Rehoboam died and was buried in Jerusalem?

Abijah his son became king in his place. [12:16]

2 Chronicles 13

Against whom did Abijah fight?

Abijah fought against Jeroboam. [13:2]

Where is Mount Zemaraim?

Mount Zemaraim is in the hill country of Ephraim. [13:4]

Who gathered to Jeroboam?

Worthless men, base fellows, gathered to Jeroboam. [13:7]

According to Abijah, who said he could resist the ruling might of Yahweh?

According to Abijah, Jeroboam said he could resist the ruling might of Yahweh. [13:8]

Who had not forsaken Yahweh?

Abijah's nation, Judah, had not forsaken him. [13:10]

Who would not succeed if they fought against Yahweh?

The people of Israel would not succeed if they fought against Yahweh. [13:12]

What was Jeroboam's plan for the battle?

Jeroboam prepared an ambush behind them; his army was in front of Judah, and the ambush was behind them. [13:13]

Why did the people of Judah win?

The people of Judah won because they relied on Yahweh. [13:18]

How did Jeroboam die?

Yahweh struck him, and he died. [13:20]

2 Chronicles 14

What actions of Asa were proof that he did what was good and right in the eyes of Yahweh?

Asa took away the foreign altars and the shrines, broke down the sacred stone pillars, and cut down the Asherah poles. [14:2]

What actions of Asa were proof that he did what was good and right in the eyes of Yahweh?

Asa took away the foreign altars and the shrines, broke down the sacred stone pillars, and cut down the Asherah poles. [14:3]

Why was the land quiet and there were no wars during the reign of Asa?

The land was quiet and there were no wars during the reign of Asa because Yahweh had given him peace. [14:5]

Why was the land quiet and there were no wars during the reign of Asa?

The land was quiet and there were no wars during the reign of Asa because Yahweh had given him peace. [14:6]

Why did Asa make plans to build walled cities?

Asa made plans to build walled cities because Yahweh had given them the land along with peace on every side. [14:7]

What was Asa's response when the vast army of Zerah the Ethiopian came against the people of Israel?

Asa cried out to Yahweh for his help by acknowledging that he and his army were coming in Yahweh's name against the vast army of Zerah. [14:9]

What was Asa's response when the vast army of Zerah the Ethiopian came against the people of Israel?

Asa cried out to Yahweh for his help by acknowledging that he and his army were coming in Yahweh's name against the vast army of Zerah. [14:10]

What was Asa's response when the vast army of Zerah the Ethiopian came against the people of Israel?

Asa cried out to Yahweh for his help by acknowledging that he and his army were coming in Yahweh's name against the vast army of Zerah. [14:11]

Who struck the Ethiopians before Asa and Judah?

Yahweh struck the Ethiopians before Asa and Judah. [14:12]

What did the army do to the villages around Gerar?

The army destroyed and plundered the villages around Gerar. [14:14]

2 Chronicles 15

What message from God did Azariah deliver to King Asa?

The message was that Yahweh was with Asa, while Asa was with Yahweh, but if Asa left Yahweh, Yahweh would leave Asa. [15:1]

What message from God did Azariah deliver to King Asa?

The message was that Yahweh was with Asa, while Asa was with Yahweh, but if Asa left Yahweh, Yahweh would leave Asa. [15:2]

What was Israel without for a long time?

Israel was without the true God, a teaching priest, and the law for a long time. [15:3]

In those times, what were on all the inhabitants of the lands?

In those times, great troubles were on all the inhabitants of the lands. [15:5]

How did God trouble the inhabitants of the lands?

God troubled the inhabitants of the lands with all kinds of suffering. [15:6]

What did Asa rebuild when he heard the prophet's message?

Asa rebuilt the altar of Yahweh when he heard the prophet's message. [15:8]

Why did great numbers of people come to King Asa from Ephraim, Manasseh, and Simeon?

They came because they saw that Yahweh was with King Asa. [15:9]

What did the people make a covenant to do?

The people made a covenant to seek Yahweh with all their heart and with all their soul. [15:12]

What would happen to anyone who refused to seek Yahweh?

Anyone who refused to seek Yahweh would be put to death. [15:13]

What did Yahweh give the people after they swore to him with all their heart?

Yahweh gave the people peace all around them. [15:15]

What was the condition of King Asa's heart?

King Asa's heart was completely devoted to Yahweh all his days. [15:17]

What did not occur until Asa's thirty-fifth year of reigning?

There was no war until Asa's thirty-fifth year of reigning. [15:19]

2 Chronicles 16

Why did Baasha, king of Israel, act aggressively against Judah by building up Ramah?

Baasha acted aggressively so he might not allow anyone to leave or enter into the land of Asa. [16:1]

Why did Asa bring the silver and gold out of the storerooms and send it to Benhadad, king of Aram?

Asa sent the silver and gold to Ben Hadad to encourage him to break his treaty with Baasha and establish a treaty with Asa. [16:2]

Why did Asa bring the silver and gold out of the storerooms and send it to Benhadad, king of Aram?

Asa sent the silver and gold to Ben Hadad to encourage him to break his treaty with Baasha and establish a treaty with Asa. [16:3]

Why did Asa want Ben Hadad to break his treaty with Baasha?

Asa wanted Ben Hadad to break the treaty so that Baasha would leave Asa alone. [16:3]

What happened when Baasha stopped building up Ramah due to the attacks from Ben Hadad?

Asa and all Judah carried away the stones and timbers which Baasha was using to build up Ramah and used them to build up Geba and Mizpah. [16:4]

What happened when Baasha stopped building up Ramah due to the attacks from Ben Hadad?

Asa and all Judah carried away the stones and timbers which Baasha was using to build up Ramah and used them to build up Geba and Mizpah. [16:5]

What happened when Baasha stopped building up Ramah due to the attacks from Ben Hadad?

Asa and all Judah carried away the stones and timbers which Baasha was using to build up Ramah and used them to build up Geba and Mizpah. [16:6]

Why did Hanani the seer rebuke Asa?

Hanani rebuked Asa because he relied on a treaty with the king of Aram instead of relying on Yahweh as he did against the Ethiopians. [16:7]

Why did Hanani the seer rebuke Asa?

Hanani rebuked Asa because he relied on a treaty with the king of Aram instead of relying on Yahweh as he did against the Ethiopians. [16:8]

Why do the eyes of Yahweh run everywhere throughout the whole earth?

The eyes of Yahweh run everywhere to show himself strong on behalf of those whose hearts are perfect toward him. [16:9]

What was Asa's reaction to the rebuke of Hanani?

Asa was angry with Hanani and put him into prison. [16:10]

How did Asa react to the severe disease of his feet?

Asa did not seek help from Yahweh, but only from physicians. [16:12]

How was Asa honored after his death?

The people laid Asa on a bier filled with various spices and made a very great fire in his honor. [16:14]

2 Chronicles 17

Where did Jehoshaphat place forces?

Jehoshaphat placed forces in all the fortified cities of Judah. [17:2]

Why was Yahweh with Jehoshaphat?

Yahweh was with Jehoshaphat because he walked in the first ways of his father David. [17:3]

Whose behavior did Jehoshaphat not walk after, because he walked in God's commandments?

He walked in God's commandments, not after the behavior of Israel. [17:4]

On what was Jehoshaphat's heart fixed?

Jehoshaphat's heart was fixed on Yahweh's ways. [17:6]

What book did the officials and Levites and priests have when they taught in Judah?

They taught in Judah, having the book of the law of Yahweh with them. [17:9]

What did the monarchies around Judah not do because the terror of Yahweh fell on them?

The terror of Yahweh fell on them that were around Judah, so that they made no war against Jehoshaphat. [17:10]

What two things did Jehoshaphat build in Judah?

Jehoshaphat built fortresses and store cities in Judah. [17:12]

What did Amasiah, the son of Zichri, willingly offer?

Amasiah willingly offered to serve Yahweh. [17:16]

What kind of man was Eliada from Benjamin?

Eliada was a powerful man of courage. [17:17]

2 Chronicles 18

How did Jehoshaphat ally himself with Ahab?

Jehoshaphat allied himself with Ahab by having one of his family marry his daughter. [18:1]

What did Jehoshaphat tell the king of Israel to do to find his answer?

Jehoshaphat said to the king of Israel, "Please first seek the word of Yahweh for your answer." [18:4]

Why did the king of Israel hate Micaiah the son of Imlah?

The king of Israel hated Micaiah because he never prophesied anything good about the king, but only hardships. [18:7]

Who did the prophets say had given Ramoth Gilead into the hand of the king?

They all prophesied saying that Yahweh had given Ramoth Gilead into the hand of the king. [18:11]

What did the messenger tell Micaiah the words of the prophets declared to the king?

The messenger told Micaiah that the words of the prophets declared good things to the king with one mouth. [18:12]

To what did Micaiah compare Israel when he saw them scattered on the mountains?

Micaiah said that he saw all Israel scattered on the mountains, like sheep who have no shepherd. [18:16]

When Micaiah saw Yahweh on his throne where were the hosts of heaven?

Micaiah saw Yahweh sitting on his throne, and all the host of heaven were standing on his right hand and on his left. [18:18]

What was Yahweh asking to happen when Ahab went up to Ramoth Gilead?

Yahweh was asking for one to entice Ahab, king of Israel, so that he would go up and fall at Ramoth Gilead. [18:19]

To whom was the spirit going to become a lying spirit?

The spirit said that he would go out and become a lying spirit in the mouth of all Ahab's prophets. [18:21]

What did Micaiah say Yahweh had decreed for the king of Israel?

Micaiah said that Yahweh had decreed disaster for him. [18:22]

Where was Micaiah to be until the king of Israel returned safely?

The king said to put Micaiah in prison until he returned safely. [18:26]

If the king returned safely, what did that mean about Micaiah's words?

Micaiah said that if the king returned safely, then Yahweh had not spoken by him. [18:27]

Who had the king of Aram told the captains to attack?

The king of Aram told the captains of his chariots not to attack the soldiers, but instead, to attack only the king of Israel. [18:30]

What did the commanders do when they realized Jehoshaphat was not the king of Israel?

When the commanders saw that he was not the king of Israel, they turned back from pursuing him. [18:32]

What time of day was it when Ahab died?

About the time that the sun was going down, Ahab died. [18:34]

2 Chronicles 19

What good was found in Jehoshaphat's heart?

Some good was found in Jehoshaphat, that he had fixed his heart to seek God. [19:3]

Where did Jehoshaphat place judges?

Jehoshaphat placed judges in the land throughout all the fortified cities of Judah. [19:5]

Where did Jehoshaphat say Yahweh was when the judges passed judgement?

He told the judges that Yahweh was with them in the act of judging. [19:6]

What kind of heart did Jehoshaphat say the judges in Jerusalem should have in reverence for Yahweh?

Jehoshaphat instructed them that in reverence for Yahweh, judge faithfully, and with a perfect heart. [19:9]

What would not come down on them if the people did not sin against Yahweh?

The people were told not to sin against Yahweh, so that anger would not come down on them. [19:10]

With whom did Jehoshaphat pray that Yahweh abides?

Jehoshaphat prayed for Yahweh to be with those who were good. [19:11]

2 Chronicles 20

For what reason did the people of Moab, Ammon, and the Meunites come against Jehoshaphat?

They came against Jehoshaphat to do battle. [20:1]

Where did the people of Judah come from to seek Yahweh?

The people came to seek Yahweh from all the cities of Judah. [20:4]

Where did Jehoshaphat stand in the assembly of the people?

Jehoshaphat stood at the house of Yahweh, in front of the new courtyard. [20:5]

What promise of Yahweh did Jehoshaphat repeat when the people cried to him in their affliction?

Jehoshaphat said that when the people cry to Yahweh in their affliction, he would hear them and save them. [20:9]

What did Yahweh not let Israel do to Ammon, Moab and Mount Seir when they came out of Egypt?

Yahweh would not let Israel invade them when they came out of the land of Egypt. [20:10]

What part of the people of Judah stood before Yahweh?

All Judah stood before Yahweh, with their little ones, wives, and children. [20:13]

Why did Yahweh say not to fear or be discouraged by the great army against them?

Yahweh told them not to fear or be discouraged because of this great army, for the battle did not belong to them, but to God. [20:15]

What did Yahweh say the people would see when they stood still in their positions?

Yahweh told them to stand still, and see the rescue of Yahweh with them. [20:17]

What did Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem do in worship before Yahweh?

All Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem fell down before Yahweh, worshipping him. [20:18]

As the army went out, why did Jehoshaphat say to give thanks to Yahweh?

As they went out preceding the army, Jehoshaphat told them to say, "Give thanks to Yahweh; for his covenant faithfulness endures forever." [20:21]

What did Yahweh do when the people of Judah began to sing and praise?

When they began to sing and praise, Yahweh set men in ambush against their enemies. [20:22]

What did the people of Judah see when they looked out on the enemy's army?

When they looked out on the army, they were dead, fallen to the ground. [20:24]

How long did it take the people to carry off the plunder from the army?

It took the people three days to carry off the plunder, because there was so much of it. [20:25]

Why did Jehoshaphat and his people return to Jerusalem with joy?

They returned to Jerusalem with joy for Yahweh had made them rejoice over their enemies. [20:27]

What did God give Jehoshaphat that made his kingdom quiet?

Jehoshaphat's kingdom was quiet, for his God gave him peace all around him. [20:30]

What had Jehoshaphat done in the eyes of Yahweh?

Jehoshaphat did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh. [20:32]

What was prophesied against Jehoshaphat, because he allied himself with Ahaziah?

Because Jehoshaphat had allied himself with Ahaziah, Yahweh destroyed his projects. [20:37]

2 Chronicles 21

Why did Jehoshaphat give the throne to Jehoram?

Jehoshaphat gave the throne to Jehoram because Jehoram was his firstborn. [21:3]

What did Jehoram do to his brothers after he was established as king?

When Jehoram had firmly established himself as king, he killed all his brothers with the sword. [21:4]

Why did Yahweh not wish to destroy the house of David?

Yahweh did not wish to destroy the house of David because of the covenant he had made with David. [21:7]

Why did Libnah revolt from the power of Judah?

They revolted from Judah's power, because Jehoram had forsaken Yahweh. [21:10]

What did Jehoram build in the mountains of Judah?

Jehoram also built shrines in the mountains of Judah. [21:11]

What did Elijah say would happen to Jehoram's intestines in his sickness?

Jehoram would have much sickness until his intestines fell out because of the sickness. [21:15]

What did the Philistines and Arabians carry away from the king's house?

They carried away all the wealth that was found in the king's house. [21:17]

What did his people not do for Jehoram that they had done for his ancestors?

His people made no fire in his honor as they had done for his ancestors. [21:19]

2 Chronicles 22

In whose ways did Ahaziah walk because of the advice of his mother?

Ahaziah walked in the ways of the house of Ahab, for his mother was his adviser in doing wicked things. [22:3]

How did Ahaziah act in Yahweh's sight, as the house of Ahab was doing?

Ahaziah did what was evil in Yahweh's sight, as the house of Ahab was doing. [22:4]

Why did Ahaziah go to visit Joram, the son of Ahab?

Ahaziah went down to Jezreel to see him because Joram had been wounded. [22:6]

What did God bring about through Ahaziah's visit to Joram?

The destruction of Ahaziah was brought about by God through his visit to Joram. [22:7]

What did Jehu recall of Ahaziah's father?

Jehu said that Ahaziah was a son of Jehoshaphat, who sought Yahweh with all his heart. [22:9]

What did Ahaziah's mother do when she saw that he was dead?

When she saw that her son was dead, she arose and killed all the royal children in the house of Judah. [22:10]

How long was Joash hidden in the house of God while Athaliah reigned?

Joash was hidden in the house of God for six years while Athaliah reigned over the land. [22:12]

2 Chronicles 23

What made Jehoiada bold to speak to the leaders that the king's son would reign?

Jehoiada said the king's son would reign, as Yahweh had said concerning the descendants of David. [23:3]

What work was assigned to the priests and Levites serving on the Sabbath?

Those who come to serve on the Sabbath would be guards at the doors. [23:4]

When were the Levites told to stay with the king?

They were told to stay with the king when he came in and when he went out. [23:7]

How completely did the Levites and all Judah follow Jehoiada's command?

They served in every way in the manner in which Jehoiada the priest commanded. [23:8]

What did they give to the king's son when they put the crown on him?

They brought out the king's son, put the crown on him, and gave him the covenant decrees. [23:11]

What noise made Athaliah come to the people in the house of Yahweh?

When she heard the noise of the people running and praising the king, she came to the people in the house of Yahweh. [23:12]

What did Athaliah do while shouting out "Treason!"?

She tore her clothes and shouted, "Treason!" [23:13]

What did Jehoiada command to be done to anyone who followed Athaliah?

Jehoiada said to let anyone who followed her be killed with the sword. [23:14]

What covenant did Jehoiada make between himself, the people, and the king?

Jehoiada made a covenant between himself, all the people, and the king, that they should be Yahweh's people. [23:16]

Whom did Jehoiada keep from entering the house of Yahweh by setting guards at the gates?

Jehoiada set guards at the gates of the house of Yahweh, so that no one that was unclean in any way should enter. [23:19]

Where did Jehoiada and the people set the king after coming through the Upper Gate?

The people came through the Upper Gate to the king's house and sat the king on the throne of the kingdom. [23:20]

2 Chronicles 24

How long did Joash do what was right in the eyes of Yahweh?

Joash did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh all the days of Jehoiada, the priest. [24:2]

For what work did Joash send the priests and Levites out to gather money from all Israel?

Joash sent them to gather from all Israel money to repair the house of their God. [24:5]

What had the sons of Athaliah taken from the house of Yahweh and given to the Baals?

They had given all the dedicated furnishings of the house of Yahweh to the Baals. [24:7]

Where was the chest the king had commanded to be made placed?

The king commanded, and they made a chest and placed it outside at the entrance to the house of Yahweh. [24:8]

What part of the people rejoiced and brought money to put into the chest?

All the leaders and all the people rejoiced and brought money in and put it into the chest. [24:10]

As the officials emptied the chest day after day what did they gather?

They emptied the chest day after day, gathering large amounts of money. [24:11]

How did the workmen set up the house of God as they repaired it?

The workmen set up the house of God in its original design and strengthened it. [24:13]

Why was Jehoiada buried among the kings in the city of David?

They buried him in the city of David among the kings, because he had done good in Israel, toward God, and to God's house. [24:16]

What did the people do when Yahweh sent prophets to testify against them?

Yahweh sent prophets who testified against the people, but they refused to listen. [24:19]

Why did Zechariah tell the people Yahweh had forsaken them?

Zechariah told the people that since they had forsaken Yahweh, Yahweh had also forsaken them. [24:20]

How did King Joash ignore the kindness that Zechariah's father had done to him?

In this manner, Joash, the king, ignored the kindness that Jehoiada, Zechariah's father, had done to him. Instead, he killed Jehoiada's son. [24:22]

What did Yahweh give the small army of the Arameans because Judah had forsaken him?

The Arameans had come with a small army, but Yahweh gave them victory over a very great army, because Judah had forsaken Yahweh. [24:24]

Why did the servants of Joash plot against him?

Joash's own servants plotted against him because of the murder of the sons of Jehoiada, the priest. [24:25]

2 Chronicles 25

How old was Amaziah when he began to reign and how long did he reign?

Amaziah was twenty-five years old when he began to reign and he reigned for twenty-nine years. [25:1]

What was the condition of Amaziah's heart?

Amaziah's heart was not perfectly devoted to Yahweh. [25:2]

Why did Amaziah not kill the children of the servants who had murdered his father, the king?

Amaziah did not kill the children of the servants who had murdered his father because the laws in the book of Moses said that the children must not die for the fathers, but that every person must die for his own sin. [25:3]

Why did Amaziah not kill the children of the servants who had murdered his father, the king?

Amaziah did not kill the children of the servants who had murdered his father because the laws in the book of Moses said that the children must not die for the fathers, but that every person must die for his own sin. [25:4]

How did Amaziah add to the 300,000 chosen men from Judah and Benjamin that were registered by their ancestor's houses?

Amaziah hired 100,000 fighting men from Israel to add to the 300,00 chosen men from Judah. [25:5]

How did Amaziah add to the 300,000 chosen men from Judah and Benjamin that were registered by their ancestor's houses?

Amaziah hired 100,000 fighting men from Israel to add to the 300,00 chosen men from Judah. [25:6]

Why did the man of God tell the king he should not let the army of Israel go with him?

The man of God told the king the army of Israel should not go with him because Yahweh was not with Israel. [25:7]

What did the man of God say would happen even if Amaziah was courageous and strong in battle?

The man of God said that God would throw him down before the enemy. [25:8]

How did the man of God answer Amaziah's question about what to do about the one hundred talents that he had given to the army of Israel?

The man of God told Amaziah that Yahweh was able to give him much more than that. [25:9]

Why was the anger of the army from Ephraim kindled against Judah?

Their anger was kindled against Judah because Amaziah separated the army and sent them home. [25:10]

What happened to the ten thousand men of Seir when Amaziah led his people out to the Valley of Salt?

Amaziah led his people out to the Valley of Salt and he defeated ten thousand men of Seir. [25:11]

What did the army of Judah do to the additional ten thousand men of Seir who they carried away alive?

The army of Judah threw the men of Seir down from the top of the cliff. [25:12]

What did the army of Israel do to the cities of Judah from Samaria to Bethhoron?

The army of Israel attacked the cities, struck down three thousand of the people and took much plunder. [25:13]

What did Amaziah do with the gods that he brought back from the people of Seir?

Amaziah set the gods up to be his own gods, bowed down before them, and burned incense to them. [25:14]

What did the prophet sent by Yahweh ask Amaziah about the gods of the people of Seir?

The prophet asked Amaziah why he sought after the gods of a people whose gods did not even save their own people from the hand of Amaziah. [25:15]

What did the prophet say was God's reason for his decision to destroy Amaziah?

The reason God decided to destroy Amaziah was that Amaziah had done this deed and had not listened to the advice of the prophet. [25:16]

What was the message that Amaziah sent to Jehoash, king of Israel?

Amaziah sent a message asking Jehoash to come and meet with Amaziah face to face in battle. [25:17]

Why did the messengers of Jehoash tell Amaziah that he should stay at home?

The messengers of Jehoash told Amaziah to stay at home because both Amaziah and Judah would fall. [25:18]

Why did the messengers of Jehoash tell Amaziah that he should stay at home?

The messengers of Jehoash told Amaziah to stay at home because both Amaziah and Judah would fall. [25:19]

Why would God hand over the people of Judah into the hand of their enemies?

God would hand them over to their enemies because they had sought advice from the gods of Edom. [25:20]

What was the result when Jehoash, king of Israel, and Amaziah, king of Judah, met each other face to face at Beth Shemesh?

The result was that Judah was struck down before Israel and every man fled home. [25:21]

What was the result when Jehoash, king of Israel, and Amaziah, king of Judah, met each other face to face at Beth Shemesh?

The result was that Judah was struck down before Israel and every man fled home. [25:22]

To what place did Jehoash return after he tore down the wall of Jerusalem and took many valuable objects from the temple and palace, along with hostages?

Jehoash returned to Samaria after he tore down the wall of Jerusalem and took all the valuables and hostages. [25:23]

To what place did Jehoash return after he tore down the wall of Jerusalem and took many valuable objects from the temple and palace, along with hostages?

Jehoash returned to Samaria after he tore down the wall of Jerusalem and took all the valuables and hostages. [25:24]

For how many years did Amaziah, king of Judah, live after the death of Jehoash, king of Israel?

Amaziah lived fifteen years after the death of Jehoash. [25:25]

Where are other matters written concerning Amaziah?

Other matters concerning Amaziah are written in The Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel. [25:26]

What was begun against Amaziah after he turned away from following Yahweh?

After Amaziah turned away from following Yahweh, a conspiracy was begun against him. [25:27]

Where was Amaziah buried after he was killed in Lachish?

Amaziah was buried with his ancestors in the City of Judah. [25:27]

Where was Amaziah buried after he was killed in Lachish?

Amaziah was buried with his ancestors in the City of Judah. [25:28]

2 Chronicles 26

Who made Uzziah king after the death of his father Amaziah?

The people of Judah took Uzziah and made him king in place of his father Amaziah. [26:1]

What did Uzziah do to the town of Eloth after he became king?

Uzziah rebuilt Eloth and restored it to Judah. [26:2]

How did Uzziah follow the example of his father in his relationship to Yahweh?

Uzziah did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh and set himself to seek God. [26:4]

How did Uzziah follow the example of his father in his relationship to Yahweh?

Uzziah did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh and set himself to seek God. [26:5]

What happened to Uzziah as long as he sought Yahweh?

As long as Uzziah sought Yahweh, God made him prosper. [26:5]

What was the result of God helping Uzziah as he fought against his enemies?

God helped Uzziah fight against his enemies, and his fame spread to other lands, and he became very powerful. [26:6]

What was the result of God helping Uzziah as he fought against his enemies?

God helped Uzziah fight against his enemies, and his fame spread to other lands, and he became very powerful. [26:7]

What was the result of God helping Uzziah as he fought against his enemies?

God helped Uzziah fight against his enemies, and his fame spread to other lands, and he became very powerful. [26:8]

What did Uzziah build at the gates in Jerusalem and in the wilderness?

Uzziah built towers at the corner gates of Jerusalem and at the turning wall. He also built watch towers in the wilderness. [26:9]

What did Uzziah build at the gates in Jerusalem and in the wilderness?

Uzziah built towers at the corner gates of Jerusalem and at the turning wall. He also built watch towers in the wilderness. [26:10]

Why did Uzziah build watch towers, and why did he dig cisterns in the wilderness?

Uzziah built watch towers and dug cisterns in the wilderness because he had cattle and people who farmed and he loved farming. [26:10]

How did Uzziah's army make war?

Uzziah's army made war with mighty power to help the king against the enemy. [26:11]

How did Uzziah's army make war?

Uzziah's army made war with mighty power to help the king against the enemy. [26:13]

What was invented by skillful men in Jerusalem as Uzziah equipped his army?

In Jerusalem, Uzziah built engines that were invented by skillful men. [26:14]

What was invented by skillful men in Jerusalem as Uzziah equipped his army?

In Jerusalem, Uzziah built engines that were invented by skillful men. [26:15]

How far did Uzziah's fame spread when he was greatly helped by Yahweh, until he became very powerful?

Uzziah's fame spread to distant lands. [26:15]

How did Uzziah trespass against Yahweh, his God, when he became powerful?

Uzziah trespassed against Yahweh when he went into the house of Yahweh to burn incense on the altar of incense. [26:16]

Why did Azariah and the eighty priests go in after Uzziah, and why did Azariah say that Uzziah had trespassed when he burned incense in the sanctuary?

The priests told Uzziah that it is only the priests, the sons of Aaron, who are consecrated to burn incense in the sanctuary, so Uzziah had trespassed when he burned incense to Yahweh. [26:17]

Why did Azariah and the eighty priests go in after Uzziah, and why did Azariah say that Uzziah had trespassed when he burned incense in the sanctuary?

The priests told Uzziah that it is only the priests, the sons of Aaron, who are consecrated to burn incense in the sanctuary, so Uzziah had trespassed when he burned incense to Yahweh. [26:18]

What happened to Uzziah as he was holding a censer in his hand to burn incense, and when he was angry with the priests?

While Uzziah was holding a censer, and when he became angry with the priests, leprosy broke out on his forehead. [26:19]

Why did leprosy break out on Uzziah's forehead?

Leprosy broke out on Uzziah's forehead because Yahweh had struck him. [26:20]

Why did Uzziah have to live in a separate house until the day of his death?

Uzziah had to live in a separate house because he was a leper and he was cut off from the house of Yahweh. [26:21]

Who became king after Uzziah died and was buried with his ancestors?

Jotham, Uzziah's son, became king in his place. [26:23]

2 Chronicles 27

How old was Jotham when he became king of Judah and how long did he reign?

Jotham was twenty-five years old when he became king and he reigned for sixteen years in Jerusalem. [27:1]

How did the people of Judah behave even though Jotham did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh?

The people of Judah still behaved in evil ways, even though Jotham did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh. [27:2]

What did Jotham build in Jerusalem?

Jotham built the upper gate of the house of Yahweh, and he built much on the hill of Ophel. [27:3]

What did Jotham build in the hill country and forests of Judah?

Jotham built cities in the hill country, and castles and towers in the forests of Judah. [27:4]

Why did the people of Ammon give Jotham silver, wheat, and barley?

The people of Ammon gave Jotham silver, wheat, and barley because he fought with them and defeated them. [27:5]

Why did Jotham become powerful?

Jotham became powerful because he walked firmly before Yahweh his God. [27:6]

Where was Jotham buried when he died?

Jotham was buried in the city of David. [27:9]

Who became king of Judah after the death of Jotham?

Ahaz, Jotham's son, became king in his place. [27:9]

2 Chronicles 28

What did Ahaz not do as David his ancestor had done?

Ahaz did not do what was right in the eyes of Yahweh, as David his ancestor had done. [28:1]

What did Ahaz make as he walked in the ways of the kings of Israel?

Ahaz made cast metal figures for the Baals. [28:2]

What did Ahaz do to his children in addition to making figures of Baal, offering incense, and following after the wickedness of the people groups which Yahweh had driven out before the people of Israel?

Ahaz put his children in fire as burnt offerings. [28:3]

What was the cause of the defeats of Ahaz at the hand of the Arameans and also at the hand of the king of Israel?

Ahaz was defeated by the Arameans and the king of Israel because he and his people had forsaken Yahweh, the God of their ancestors. [28:5]

What was the cause of the defeats of Ahaz at the hand of the Arameans and also at the hand of the king of Israel?

Ahaz was defeated by the Arameans and the king of Israel because he and his people had forsaken Yahweh, the God of their ancestors. [28:6]

What did the army of Israel take back to Samaria?

The army of Israel took captives from their kinsmen, and they also took much plunder which they carried back to Samaria. [28:8]

Who went out to meet the army coming into Samaria?

Obed, a prophet of Yahweh, came out to meet the army. [28:9]

What was the accusation that Obed brought against the army?

Obed accused the army of slaughtering the people of Judah in a rage that reached up to heaven. [28:9]

What did Obed tell the army of Israel to do with the prisoners they had taken as slaves from Jerusalem?

Obed told the army to send the prisoners back, because Yahweh's fierce wrath was on them. [28:10]

What did Obed tell the army of Israel to do with the prisoners they had taken as slaves from Jerusalem?

Obed told the army to send the prisoners back, because Yahweh's fierce wrath was on them. [28:11]

What did the leaders of the people of Ephraim say was the reason they should not bring the prisoners to Samaria?

The leaders said it would add to their sins against Yahweh and bring his fierce wrath against Israel. [28:13]

What did the leaders do with the prisoners when the armed men left the prisoners before them?

The leaders clothed them, gave them sandals, gave them food to eat and drink, treated their wounds, put the weak on donkeys, and took them back to their families in Jericho. [28:14]

What did the leaders do with the prisoners when the armed men left the prisoners before them?

The leaders clothed them, gave them sandals, gave them food to eat and drink, treated their wounds, put the weak on donkeys, and took them back to their families in Jericho. [28:15]

What made it necessary for King Ahaz to send messengers to the kings of Assyria asking for help?

It was necessary for Ahaz to ask the kings of Assyria for help because the Edomites had attacked Judah and the Philistines had invaded the cities of the lowlands and of the Negev of Judah. [28:16]

What made it necessary for King Ahaz to send messengers to the kings of Assyria asking for help?

It was necessary for Ahaz to ask the kings of Assyria for help because the Edomites had attacked Judah and the Philistines had invaded the cities of the lowlands and of the Negev of Judah. [28:17]

What made it necessary for King Ahaz to send messengers to the kings of Assyria asking for help?

It was necessary for Ahaz to ask the kings of Assyria for help because the Edomites had attacked Judah and the Philistines had invaded the cities of the lowlands and of the Negev of Judah. [28:18]

What did Ahaz do which caused Yahweh to bring Judah low?

Judah was brought low because Ahaz had acted wickedly and had sinned against Yahweh very heavily. [28:19]

Why did Ahaz plunder the house of Yahweh and the houses of the king and the leaders?

Ahaz plundered the house of Yahweh and the houses of the king and the leaders in order to give the valuable things to the kings of Assyria. [28:21]

What brought on the ruin Ahaz and all of Israel?

Ahaz sinned against Yahweh and sacrificed to the gods of Damascus. [28:22]

What brought on the ruin Ahaz and all of Israel?

Ahaz sinned against Yahweh and sacrificed to the gods of Damascus. [28:23]

What did Ahaz do to the furnishings of the house of God?

Ahaz cut the furnishings to pieces and shut the doors of the house of Yahweh. [28:24]

What was the result of Ahaz making altars for himself in every corner of Jerusalem, and making shrines to burn sacrifices to other gods in every city of Judah?

The result of Ahaz's actions was that he provoked to anger Yahweh, the God of his ancestors. [28:24]

What was the result of Ahaz making altars for himself in every corner of Jerusalem, and making shrines to burn sacrifices to other gods in every city of Judah?

The result of Ahaz's actions was that he provoked to anger Yahweh, the God of his ancestors. [28:25]

Where are the rest of Ahaz's deeds recorded?

The rest of Ahaz's deeds are recorded in The Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel. [28:26]

Who became king after Ahaz died and was buried in Jerusalem?

Hezekiah, Ahaz's son, became king in his place. [28:27]

2 Chronicles 29

What example did Hezekiah follow when he began to reign at the age of twenty-five?

Hezekiah followed the example of his ancestor David and did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh. [29:1]

What example did Hezekiah follow when he began to reign at the age of twenty-five?

Hezekiah followed the example of his ancestor David and did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh. [29:2]

What did Hezekiah tell the Levites to do after he had opened the doors of the house of Yahweh and had repaired them?

Hezekiah told the Levites to consecrate themselves, consecrate the house of Yahweh, and carry away the filthiness from the holy place. [29:3]

What did Hezekiah tell the Levites to do after he had opened the doors of the house of Yahweh and had repaired them?

Hezekiah told the Levites to consecrate themselves, consecrate the house of Yahweh, and carry away the filthiness from the holy place. [29:4]

What did Hezekiah tell the Levites to do after he had opened the doors of the house of Yahweh and had repaired them?

Hezekiah told the Levites to consecrate themselves, consecrate the house of Yahweh, and carry away the filthiness from the holy place. [29:5]

What did Hezekiah say that their ancestors did in the sight of Yahweh?

Hezekiah said that their ancestors trespassed and did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh their God. [29:6]

What did their ancestors not do in the place where Yahweh lived?

Their ancestors did not burn incense or offer burnt offerings in the holy place to the God of Israel. [29:6]

What did their ancestors not do in the place where Yahweh lived?

Their ancestors did not burn incense or offer burnt offerings in the holy place to the God of Israel. [29:7]

What was the result of Yahweh's wrath falling on Judah and Jerusalem?

Yahweh made Judah and Jerusalem to be an object of terror, horror, and scorn. [29:8]

What happened to their fathers, sons, daughters, and wives because of the wrath of Yahweh?

Their fathers fell by the sword and their sons, daughters, and wives were brought into captivity because of the wrath of Yahweh. [29:9]

What did Hezekiah propose to do so that Yahweh's fierce anger might turn away from them?

Hezekiah proposed that they make a covenant with Yahweh, the God of Israel. [29:10]

What did the Levites do after they gathered their brothers?

The Levites and their brothers, dedicated themselves to Yahweh, and went in to cleanse the house of Yahweh. [29:15]

What did the priests do with all the filth that they found in the temple of Yahweh as they cleansed it?

The priests took all the filth and carried it out to the brook Kidron. [29:16]

How long did it take the priests to sanctify the house of Yahweh?

The priests began on the first day of the first month and on the sixteenth day of the first month they finished. [29:17]

What did the priests tell Hezekiah they had prepared and sanctified in addition to cleansing all the house of Yahweh?

In addition to cleansing all the house of Yahweh, the priests prepared and sanctified all the implements that King Ahaz threw away when he trespassed during his reign. [29:18]

What did the priests tell Hezekiah they had prepared and sanctified in addition to cleansing all the house of Yahweh?

In addition to cleansing all the house of Yahweh, the priests prepared and sanctified all the implements that King Ahaz threw away when he trespassed during his reign. [29:19]

What did Hezekiah command the priests to do with the animals they brought as a sin offering for Judah?

Hezekiah told the priests to offer the animals on the altar of Yahweh. [29:20]

What did Hezekiah command the priests to do with the animals they brought as a sin offering for Judah?

Hezekiah told the priests to offer the animals on the altar of Yahweh. [29:21]

Why did the priests kill the animals and splash their blood on the altar?

The priests killed the animals and splashed their blood on the altar to make atonement for all Israel. A burnt offering and a sin offering had to be made for all Israel. [29:22]

Why did the priests kill the animals and splash their blood on the altar?

The priests killed the animals and splashed their blood on the altar to make atonement for all Israel. A burnt offering and a sin offering had to be made for all Israel. [29:23]

Why did the priests kill the animals and splash their blood on the altar?

The priests killed the animals and splashed their blood on the altar to make atonement for all Israel. A burnt offering and a sin offering had to be made for all Israel. [29:24]

From whom did the command come for arranging the Levites and their instruments in the house of Yahweh?

The command came from Yahweh by means of his prophets. [29:25]

How long did the singing and playing of music continue as all the assembly worshiped and the burnt offering began?

The singing and music continued until the burnt offering was finished. [29:27]

How long did the singing and playing of music continue as all the assembly worshiped and the burnt offering began?

The singing and music continued until the burnt offering was finished. [29:28]

What was the attitude of the Levites as they sang praises to Yahweh using the words of David and Asaph?

The Levites sang praises with gladness and they bowed down and worshiped. [29:30]

What did the assembly bring into the house of Yahweh?

The assembly brought in sacrifices and thank offerings, and all who had a willing heart brought burnt offerings. [29:31]

What kinds of animals did the assembly bring to be used as burnt offerings?

The assembly brought bulls, rams, lambs, oxen, and sheep to be used as burnt offerings. [29:32]

What kinds of animals did the assembly bring to be used as burnt offerings?

The assembly brought bulls, rams, lambs, oxen, and sheep to be used as burnt offerings. [29:33]

Why did the priests have to ask the Levites to help skin the burnt offerings?

The priests had to ask the Levites to help them skin the burnt offerings because the priests were too few to do the work themselves. [29:34]

What did Hezekiah and all the people do when the service of the house of Yahweh was set in order?

Hezekiah and all the people rejoiced. [29:35]

What did Hezekiah and all the people do when the service of the house of Yahweh was set in order?

Hezekiah and all the people rejoiced. [29:36]

2 Chronicles 30

To where did Hezekiah send messengers and to whom did he write letters?

Hezekiah sent messengers to all of Israel and Judah, and wrote letters to Ephraim and Manasseh. [30:1]

What did Hezekiah's message tell them?

The message told them they should come to Jerusalem to the house of Yahweh to celebrate the Passover. [30:1]

Who were they that consulted together, to celebrate the Passover in the second month?

They were the king, his leaders, and all the assembly in Jerusalem. [30:2]

Why could they not celebrate the Passover right away?

They could not celebrate the Passover right away, because there were not sufficient numbers of consecrated priests, nor had the people gathered in Jerusalem. [30:3]

How did this plan appear to the king and all the assembly?

The plan appeared to be right in their eyes. [30:4]

What did the king and all the assembly establish and make?

They established a decree and made a proclamation. [30:5]

To where did the proclamation go?

The proclamation went throughout all Israel, from Beersheba to Dan. [30:5]

What did the proclamation say?

The proclamation said the people should come to celebrate the Passover of Yahweh in Jerusalem. [30:5]

By what means did the proclamation go?

The proclamation went with couriers by letters from the king and his leaders to all of Israel and Judah. [30:6]

What did the proclamation say would happen if the people turned back to Yahweh?

The brothers and children would find compassion before those who had taken them as prisoners, and would come back into Israel. [30:9]

Where did the couriers go and how did the people respond?

The couriers went from city to city throughout Ephraim and Manasseh all the way to Zebulun, but the people responded to them with laughing and mocking. [30:10]

Who humbled themselves and what did they do?

Certain men of Asher, Manasseh, and Zebulun humbled themselves and came to Jerusalem. [30:11]

What did the hand of God do and what happened?

The hand of God came on Judah and they had one heart to carry out the command. [30:12]

How many gathered in Jerusalem to celebrate the Festival of Unleavened Bread in the second month?

Many people, a very great assembly, gathered in Jerusalem. [30:13]

What did those gathered in Jerusalem do?

They took away the altars, all the altars for incense, and threw them into the Kidron. Then they killed the Passover lambs on the fourteenth day of the second month. [30:14]

What did those gathered in Jerusalem do?

They took away the altars, all the altars for incense, and threw them into the Kidron. Then they killed the Passover lambs on the fourteenth day of the second month. [30:15]

What did the priests and Levites who were ashamed do?

They consecrated themselves and brought burnt offerings into the house of Yahweh. [30:15]

How did they stand and what did the priests do?

They stood in their divisions following the law of Moses, and the priests sprinkled blood. [30:16]

Why did the priests sprinkle the blood they received from the Levites?

Because many had not consecrated themselves, the Levites were in charge of slaughtering the Passover lambs, and the priests received it from them to sprinkle. [30:17]

Why did Hezekiah pray for the people of Ephraim, Manasseh, Issachar, and Zebulun, and for what did he pray?

Many of the people had not purified themselves and ate the Passover meal against the written instructions. So Hezekiah prayed for Yahweh to pardon those who set their hearts to seek God, although they were not purified by the standards of the sanctuary. [30:18]

Why did Hezekiah pray for the people of Ephraim, Manasseh, Issachar, and Zebulun, and for what did he pray?

Many of the people had not purified themselves and ate the Passover meal against the written instructions. So Hezekiah prayed for Yahweh to pardon those who set their hearts to seek God, although they were not purified by the standards of the sanctuary. [30:19]

What did Yahweh do in response to the prayer?

Yahweh listened to Hezekiah and healed the people. [30:20]

What did the people of Israel, the Levites, and the priests do?

The people kept the Festival for seven days with great joy. The Levites and priests praised Yahweh singing with loud instruments. [30:21]

How did Hezekiah speak to the Levites who understood the service of Yahweh, and what did they do?

Hezekiah encouraged them and they ate throughout the festival for seven days, offering fellowship sacrifices, and making confession to Yahweh. [30:22]

What did the whole assembly decide to do when Hezekiah gave the assembly one thousand bulls and seven thousand sheep, and the leaders gave one thousand bulls and ten thousand sheep and goats?

The whole assembly decided to celebrate for another seven days, and they did with joy. [30:23]

What did the whole assembly decide to do when Hezekiah gave the assembly one thousand bulls and seven thousand sheep, and the leaders gave one thousand bulls and ten thousand sheep and goats?

The whole assembly decided to celebrate for another seven days, and they did with joy. [30:24]

Who were all those that rejoiced in the celebration?

All the assembly of Judah, the priests, the Levites, and all the people who came together from Israel, the foreigners who came from Israel and those who lived in Judah rejoiced. [30:25]

How was the celebration described?

There was great joy in Jerusalem, and since the time of Solomon, there had not been anything like it in Jerusalem. [30:26]

What did the priests and Levites do next in the celebration?

They blessed the people and their voice was heard and their prayer went up to heaven. [30:27]

2 Chronicles 31

What did the Israelites do after celebrating the Festival of the Unleavened Bread?

The people of Israel went out to the cities of Judah, broke the sacred stone pillars, cut down the Asherah poles, broke down the shrines and altars in Judah, Benjamin, Ephraim and Manasseh, until they had destroyed them all. [31:1]

Where did the people of Israel go after they did this?

They returned to their own land and city. [31:1]

What did Hezekiah assign the priests and the Levites to do after he organized them by their divisions?

Hezekiah assigned them to make burnt offerings, fellowship offerings, to serve, to give thanks, and to praise at the gates of Yahweh's temple. [31:2]

What portion did Hezekiah assign and when was it to be offered?

The portion was to be a king's portion from his own possessions, and the burnt offerings were for the morning, evening, Sabbath days, the new moons, and the fixed festivals. [31:3]

What did Hezekiah command the people of Jerusalem to do so the priests and Levites might concentrate on obeying the law of Yahweh?

The people were to give a portion for the priests and Levites. [31:4]

What happened when the command went out to the people?

The people of Israel gave the first fruits of grain, new wine, oil, honey, and from the harvest of the field to all in abundance. They also gave the tithe of all things. [31:5]

What did the people in the cities of Judah do about the command?

The people in the cities of Judah brought the tithe of oxen, sheep, and a tithe of things that were consecrated to Yahweh, laying them in heaps. [31:6]

What were the months when the people laid the heaps?

The people laid the heaps beginning in the third month and finishing the heaps in the seventh month. [31:7]

Who blessed Yahweh and the people when they saw the heaps?

Hezekiah and the leaders blessed Yahweh and the people. [31:8]

How did Azariah, the chief priest, answer Hezekiah when he asked the priests and the Levites about the heaps?

Azariah answered that the people brought the tithes and put them in these large heaps. He told Hezekiah that they had eaten enough, and these heaps were left over because Yahweh had blessed the people. [31:9]

How did Azariah, the chief priest, answer Hezekiah when he asked the priests and the Levites about the heaps?

Azariah answered that the people brought the tithes and put them in these large heaps. He told Hezekiah that they had eaten enough, and these heaps were left over because Yahweh had blessed the people. [31:10]

What did Hezekiah command to be prepared and what did the people do?

Hezekiah commanded storerooms be prepared in the house of Yahweh. Then the people prepared them and brought in the offerings, tithes, and consecrated things. [31:11]

What did Hezekiah command to be prepared and what did the people do?

Hezekiah commanded storerooms be prepared in the house of Yahweh. Then the people prepared them and brought in the offerings, tithes, and consecrated things. [31:12]

Who did Hezekiah and Azariah appoint to be managers in charge of the storerooms?

Hezekiah and Azariah appointed Conaniah manager in charge with Conaniah's brother, Shimei, as manager second in charge. [31:12]

To whom did Kore and those with him distribute the offerings?

They distributed to those males three years old and up, division by division, who were counted in the genealogies that entered the house of Yahweh that did the work in their positions. [31:16]

Who was counted next to receive the offerings?

They gave to the Levites twenty years old and up that were filling their positions division by division. [31:17]

What had the people done before receiving the offerings from Kore and those with him?

The people had consecrated themselves before the distribution to all their little ones, their wives, and their sons and daughters, who were counted in their genealogies. [31:18]

What was done for the priests who were counted in the genealogies as being among the Levites?

There were men assigned to give portions to all the males who were in the fields of the villages that belonged to the cities or in every city. [31:19]

Where did Hezekiah accomplish this and how was it done?

Hezekiah accomplished this throughout all Judah and it was done good, right, and faithful before Yahweh. [31:20]

In what way did Hezekiah perform each project, and what was the result?

Hezekiah performed all these projects with all his heart, and he succeeded. [31:21]

2 Chronicles 32

What did Sennacherib, king of Assyria, do to Judah?

He entered Judah and attacked the cities. [32:1]

With what did Hezekiah ask his leaders to help?

He asked them to stop up all the springs and streams so the king of Assyria would not find water. [32:2]

With what did Hezekiah ask his leaders to help?

He asked them to stop up all the springs and streams so the king of Assyria would not find water. [32:3]

With what did Hezekiah ask his leaders to help?

He asked them to stop up all the springs and streams so the king of Assyria would not find water. [32:4]

What did Hezekiah do to guard against the enemy's attack?

He built up the walls and made a large amounts of weapons. [32:5]

What encouraging words did Hezekiah give to his people?

He told them to be strong, of good courage, and not be afraid because Yahweh, who is greater than their enemy, will help them fight. [32:6]

What encouraging words did Hezekiah give to his people?

He told them to be strong, of good courage, and not be afraid because Yahweh, who is greater than their enemy, will help them fight. [32:7]

What encouraging words did Hezekiah give to his people?

He told them to be strong, of good courage, and not be afraid because Yahweh, who is greater than their enemy, will help them fight. [32:8]

Why did Sennacherib send his servants to Jerusalem?

He wanted to know what Hezekiah was relying on for a victory. [32:9]

Why did Sennacherib send his servants to Jerusalem?

He wanted to know what Hezekiah was relying on for a victory. [32:10]

How did Sennacherib try to persuade the people that Hezekiah was misleading them?

He said they might die of famine and thirst and questioned whether Yahweh would rescue them. [32:11]

What did Sennacherib and his ancestors do to other people and their lands?

Because their gods could not help them, they were completely destroyed. [32:13]

What did Sennacherib and his ancestors do to other people and their lands?

Because their gods could not help them, they were completely destroyed. [32:14]

Why did Sennacherib say the Israelites should not believe Hezekiah?

Sennacherib wanted to mislead the people into believing that God would not rescue them from his powerful hand. [32:14]

Why did Sennacherib say the Israelites should not believe Hezekiah?

Sennacherib wanted to mislead the people into believing that God would not rescue them from his powerful hand. [32:15]

What did Sennacherib do to mock Yahweh?

He wrote letters to speak against Yahweh, to remind the people of Jerusalem of the past, and that Hezekiah's God will not rescue them. [32:16]

What did Sennacherib do to mock Yahweh?

He wrote letters to speak against Yahweh, to remind the people of Jerusalem of the past, and that Hezekiah's God will not rescue them. [32:17]

Why did Sennacherib's servants cry in the Jews' language to the people of Jerusalem?

The servants wanted to frighten the people so they might capture the city. [32:18]

How did Yahweh respond when Hezekiah and Isaiah prayed and cried out to heaven?

He sent an angel, who killed the fighting men and the officers. [32:20]

How did Yahweh respond when Hezekiah and Isaiah prayed and cried out to heaven?

He sent an angel, who killed the fighting men and the officers. [32:21]

What happened to Sennacherib after the angel killed his army?

Sennacherib returned embarrassed to his own land, where his children killed him. [32:21]

How was Hezekiah exalted?

Yahweh saved Hezekiah from Sennacherib and others. Precious gifts were brought to Yahweh and Hezekiah by many. [32:22]

How was Hezekiah exalted?

Yahweh saved Hezekiah from Sennacherib and others. Precious gifts were brought to Yahweh and Hezekiah by many. [32:23]

What happened to Hezekiah when he didn't give thanks to Yahweh when he was deathly sick?

God's anger came on him, and Judah and Jerusalem. After he and the people of Jerusalem humbled themselves, Yahweh's anger did not come on them for the rest of Hezekiah's life. [32:24]

What happened to Hezekiah when he didn't give thanks to Yahweh when he was deathly sick?

God's anger came on him, and Judah and Jerusalem. After he and the people of Jerusalem humbled themselves, Yahweh's anger did not come on them for the rest of Hezekiah's life. [32:25]

What happened to Hezekiah when he didn't give thanks to Yahweh when he was deathly sick?

God's anger came on him, and Judah and Jerusalem. After he and the people of Jerusalem humbled themselves, Yahweh's anger did not come on them for the rest of Hezekiah's life. [32:26]

After Hezekiah humbled himself what did God give him?

God abundantly blessed him with precious stones, much harvest, many animals, and cities. [32:27]

After Hezekiah humbled himself what did God give him?

God abundantly blessed him with precious stones, much harvest, many animals, and cities. [32:28]

After Hezekiah humbled himself what did God give him?

God abundantly blessed him with precious stones, much harvest, many animals, and cities. [32:29]

Why did God leave Hezekiah to himself after Hezekiah succeeded in all his projects?

God wanted to test him and know what was in his heart. [32:30]

Why did God leave Hezekiah to himself after Hezekiah succeeded in all his projects?

God wanted to test him and know what was in his heart. [32:31]

Where are Hezekiah's good deeds written?

They are written in The Vision of Isaiah the Prophet and in The Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel. [32:32]

2 Chronicles 33

What kind of a king was Manasseh for fifty-five years?

He did evil things in the sight of Yahweh, rebuilt idols that Hezekiah had torn down, and worshiped the stars of heaven. [33:1]

What kind of a king was Manasseh for fifty-five years?

He did evil things in the sight of Yahweh, rebuilt idols that Hezekiah had torn down, and worshiped the stars of heaven. [33:2]

What kind of a king was Manasseh for fifty-five years?

He did evil things in the sight of Yahweh, rebuilt idols that Hezekiah had torn down, and worshiped the stars of heaven. [33:3]

What did he do to provoke God to anger?

Manasseh offered his children as burnt offerings, performed sorcery, and consulted with those that talked with the dead. [33:6]

What did Manasseh do to lead the people of Judah and Jerusalem to do evil?

He broke the commandments by placing the carved figure in the house of God. [33:7]

What happened to Manasseh when Yahweh spoke to him and the people?

Because they paid no attention, Yahweh had the army of the king of Assyria put Manasseh in chains and take him to Babylon. [33:10]

What happened to Manasseh when Yahweh spoke to him and the people?

Because they paid no attention, Yahweh had the army of the king of Assyria put Manasseh in chains and take him to Babylon. [33:11]

What did Manasseh do so that God would bring him back to Jerusalem?

He humbled himself, prayed, and begged God. [33:12]

What did Manasseh do so that God would bring him back to Jerusalem?

He humbled himself, prayed, and begged God. [33:13]

After Manasseh prayed, what action did he take to show his remorse?

He built a high wall around Judah and took away foreign gods, the idol that he had placed in God's house, and all the altars he had built. [33:14]

After Manasseh prayed, what action did he take to show his remorse?

He built a high wall around Judah and took away foreign gods, the idol that he had placed in God's house, and all the altars he had built. [33:15]

To whom did the people offer sacrifices at the shrines?

They offered sacrifices only to Yahweh at the shrines. [33:17]

How were Manasseh's prayers and important matters preserved?

Manasseh's important matters, prayers, and words of the seers are recorded with the deeds of the kings of Israel. [33:18]

What kind of king was Amon during his two-year reign?

He was more evil than his father, he worshiped carved figures, and he did not humble himself before Yahweh. [33:21]

What kind of king was Amon during his two-year reign?

He was more evil than his father, he worshiped carved figures, and he did not humble himself before Yahweh. [33:22]

What kind of king was Amon during his two-year reign?

He was more evil than his father, he worshiped carved figures, and he did not humble himself before Yahweh. [33:23]

After King Amon's servants killed him, what did the people of the land do to those who killed him?

The people of the land killed all the servants who put Amon to death. [33:24]

2 Chronicles 34

Although King Josiah was only eight years old when he became king, what did he do during his reign that pleased Yahweh?

He sought after God, he began to cleanse Judah and Jerusalem from the shrines, idols, and carved figures. [34:1]

Although King Josiah was only eight years old when he became king, what did he do during his reign that pleased Yahweh?

He sought after God, he began to cleanse Judah and Jerusalem from the shrines, idols, and carved figures. [34:2]

Although King Josiah was only eight years old when he became king, what did he do during his reign that pleased Yahweh?

He sought after God, he began to cleanse Judah and Jerusalem from the shrines, idols, and carved figures. [34:3]

How did Josiah cleanse Judah and Jerusalem?

He destroyed the altars, broke the Asherah poles, carved figures, and cast metal figures and the dust he scattered on the graves. The bones of the priests he burned on their altars. [34:4]

How did Josiah cleanse Judah and Jerusalem?

He destroyed the altars, broke the Asherah poles, carved figures, and cast metal figures and the dust he scattered on the graves. The bones of the priests he burned on their altars. [34:5]

What did Josiah do in the land of Israel before he returned to Jerusalem?

He repeated the cleansing that he did in Judah and Jerusalem. [34:6]

What did Josiah do in the land of Israel before he returned to Jerusalem?

He repeated the cleansing that he did in Judah and Jerusalem. [34:7]

Where did the money come from that would be used to repair the house of Yahweh?

The money had been collected from the people of Jerusalem and entrusted to the high priest. [34:8]

Where did the money come from that would be used to repair the house of Yahweh?

The money had been collected from the people of Jerusalem and entrusted to the high priest. [34:9]

To whom was the money distributed and for what was it used?

Carpenters and builders bought stone and timber to repair the temple. [34:10]

To whom was the money distributed and for what was it used?

Carpenters and builders bought stone and timber to repair the temple. [34:11]

What roles did the Levites play in the repair of the temple?

Some were supervisors, secretaries, administrators, and gate guards; others were good musicians and directed the faithful workmen. [34:12]

What roles did the Levites play in the repair of the temple?

Some were supervisors, secretaries, administrators, and gate guards; others were good musicians and directed the faithful workmen. [34:13]

What did the priest find when he brought out the money that had been brought into the house of Yahweh?

The high priest found the book of the law of Yahweh that had been given through Moses. [34:14]

What did the king do after hearing the words of the law?

King Josiah tore his clothes. [34:19]

Why will God's anger be poured out on the people and not cease?

They have forsaken him by worshiping other gods as their ancestors had done. [34:25]

Because Josiah's heart was tender, what happened when he humbled himself after hearing God's words?

God said he would give him peace, and he would not see any of the disasters that God would bring on the people and land. [34:26]

Because Josiah's heart was tender, what happened when he humbled himself after hearing God's words?

God said he would give him peace, and he would not see any of the disasters that God would bring on the people and land. [34:27]

Because Josiah's heart was tender, what happened when he humbled himself after hearing God's words?

God said he would give him peace, and he would not see any of the disasters that God would bring on the people and land. [34:28]

Why did Josiah have all the people, great and small, gather together?

Josiah read to them from the book of the covenant. [34:29]

Why did Josiah have all the people, great and small, gather together?

Josiah read to them from the book of the covenant. [34:30]

What covenant did Josiah make with Yahweh?

He made a covenant before Yahweh to keep his commandments. [34:31]

What covenant did Josiah make with Yahweh?

He made a covenant before Yahweh to keep his commandments. [34:32]

What did the people of Israel do to obey Josiah?

They worshiped Yahweh and did not turn away from him. [34:33]

2 Chronicles 35

How did Josiah keep the Passover in Jerusalem?

He had the Passover lambs killed and placed the priests in their positions in the house of Yahweh. [35:1]

How did Josiah keep the Passover in Jerusalem?

He had the Passover lambs killed and placed the priests in their positions in the house of Yahweh. [35:2]

Where did Josiah tell the people to put the holy ark instead of carrying it on their shoulders?

They were told to put the holy ark in the house that Solomon built. [35:3]

How were the people to get ready for the Passover?

The people were to kill the Passover lambs and consecrate themselves in obedience to God's word. [35:6]

How did the people of Israel offer their sacrifices to Yahweh?

They killed the Passover lamb, splashed the blood, skinned the lambs, and offered the burnt offerings to Yahweh, as was written in the book of Moses. [35:11]

How did the people of Israel offer their sacrifices to Yahweh?

They killed the Passover lamb, splashed the blood, skinned the lambs, and offered the burnt offerings to Yahweh, as was written in the book of Moses. [35:12]

What did the people of Israel do after the Passover celebration?

They celebrated the Festival of Unleavened Bread for seven days. [35:16]

What did the people of Israel do after the Passover celebration?

They celebrated the Festival of Unleavened Bread for seven days. [35:17]

Why was this celebration of the Passover so special?

It was special because this is the first time it had been held in Israel since the days of the prophet Samuel. [35:18]

What was the message that the king of Egypt brought to Josiah?

He said God had commanded him to fight against Carchemish and that Josiah should not interfere. [35:20]

What was the message that the king of Egypt brought to Josiah?

He said God had commanded him to fight against Carchemish and that Josiah should not interfere. [35:21]

What was Josiah's reaction to the message from the king of Egypt?

He did not listen to the king's words, but instead, Josiah disguised himself so he could fight. [35:22]

What happened to Josiah on the battle field?

He was shot by archers and his servants took him to Jerusalem, where he later died. [35:23]

What happened to Josiah on the battle field?

He was shot by archers and his servants took him to Jerusalem, where he later died. [35:24]

What are the songs of lament that have become customary in Israel?

They are songs that have been sung to lament for Josiah and are still sung. [35:25]

Where are the matters of Josiah and his good deeds recorded?

They are contained in The Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel. [35:26]

Where are the matters of Josiah and his good deeds recorded?

They are contained in The Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel. [35:27]

2 Chronicles 36

After Josiah died, who became king of Jerusalem?

The people of the land made Josiah's son, Jehoahaz, king and he reigned for three months. [36:1]

After Josiah died, who became king of Jerusalem?

The people of the land made Josiah's son, Jehoahaz, king and he reigned for three months. [36:2]

How did Eliakim become king of Judah and Jerusalem?

His brother, the king of Egypt, removed Jehoahaz after three months and made Eliakim king, changing his name to Jehoiakim. [36:3]

How did Eliakim become king of Judah and Jerusalem?

His brother, the king of Egypt, removed Jehoahaz after three months and made Eliakim king, changing his name to Jehoiakim. [36:4]

What kind of ruler was Jehoiakim in his reign of eleven years?

Jehoiakim was evil in the sight of Yahweh. [36:5]

What did King Nebuchadnezzar, of Babylon, do to the king of Judah?

He attacked him, bound him in chains, and took him to Babylon. [36:6]

What did Nebuchadnezzar do to the house of Yahweh?

He carried some of the objects in the house of Yahweh to Babylon, and put them in his palace. [36:7]

Who became king after Jehoiakim?

His son, Jehoiachin, became king after him. [36:8]

What kind of king was Jehoiachin?

In his short reign, he did evil in the sight of Yahweh. [36:9]

How did King Nebuchadnezzar treat this Jehoiachin?

He brought Jehoiachin to Babylon along with more valuable things from the house of Yahweh. [36:10]

How did Zedekiah respond to Yahweh?

He did evil in the sight of Yahweh, and he did not humble himself before the prophet Jeremiah, who spoke from the mouth of Yahweh. [36:12]

How did Zedekiah rebel against King Nebuchadnezzar?

He hardened his heart against Yahweh and turned away from King Nebuchadnezzar. [36:13]

How did the people respond to the compassion that Yahweh continued to show them?

They mocked God's messengers, despised his words, and scoffed at his prophets. [36:15]

How did the people respond to the compassion that Yahweh continued to show them?

They mocked God's messengers, despised his words, and scoffed at his prophets. [36:16]

How did God deal with the mockers?

He had the young men killed by the king of the Chaldeans, and all the others were given over to the king. [36:17]

What did the king of the Babylonians do to Jerusalem and what did he take to Babylon?

He destroyed the house of God, the wall of Jerusalem, all its palaces, and the beautiful things in it. Then he took all the furnishings and treasures to Babylon. [36:18]

What did the king of the Babylonians do to Jerusalem and what did he take to Babylon?

He destroyed the house of God, the wall of Jerusalem, all its palaces, and the beautiful things in it. Then he took all the furnishings and treasures to Babylon. [36:19]

What happened to those that escaped the killing?

They became servants for the king and his sons, which fulfilled Yahweh's words to Jeremiah. [36:20]

What happened to those that escaped the killing?

They became servants for the king and his sons, which fulfilled Yahweh's words to Jeremiah. [36:21]

What did Cyrus, king of Persia, proclaim and put in writing?

He said Yahweh had commanded him to build a house of God in Jerusalem and that God would be with them when they go up to the land. [36:22]

What did Cyrus, king of Persia, proclaim and put in writing?

He said Yahweh had commanded him to build a house of God in Jerusalem and that God would be with them when they go up to the land. [36:23]

translationWords

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 4:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 5:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 18:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 29:32-33
- 2 Chronicles 31:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 35:7-9

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 26 General Notes

shame, shames, shamed, shameful, shamefully, shameless, shamelessly, ashamed, unashamed

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to a painful feeling of being disgraced a person has because of something dishonorable or improper that he or someone else has done.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something shameful.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their sin so that they feel ashamed of themselves.
- The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- God can bring shame to a person who does not repent by exposing that person’s sin and causing him to be humiliated.

(See also: [false god](#), [humble](#), [humiliate](#), [Isaiah](#), [repent](#), [sin](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 03:15-17](#)
- [2 Kings 02:17-18](#)
- [2 Samuel 13:13-14](#)
- [Luke 20:11-12](#)
- [Mark 08:38](#)
- [Mark 12:4-5](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H937, H954, H955, H1317, H1322, H2616, H2659, H2781, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H6172, H7022, H7036, H8103, H8106, G127, G149, G152, G153, G422, G808, G818, G819, G821, G1788, G1791, G1870, G2617, G3856, G5195

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 30:13-15](#)

Aaron

Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

- Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
- While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
- God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the **priest** priests for the people of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [priest](#), [Moses](#), [Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:12-14
- [Acts 07:38-40](#)
- Exodus 28:1-3
- [Luke 01:5-7](#)
- Numbers 16:44-46

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:15** God warned Moses and **Aaron** that Pharaoh would be stubborn.
- **10:05** Pharaoh called Moses and **Aaron** and told them that if they stopped the plague, the Israelites could leave Egypt.
- **13:09** God chose Moses' brother, **Aaron**, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.
- **13:11** So they (the Israelites) brought gold to **Aaron** and asked him to form it into an idol for them!
- **14:07** They (the Israelites) became angry with Moses and **Aaron** and said, "Oh, why did you bring us to this horrible place?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H175, G2

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 13:8-9](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26:16-18](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29:20-21](#)

- [2 Chronicles 31:17-19](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35:13-14](#)

Abijah

Facts:

Abijah was a king of Judah who reigned from 915 to 913 B.C. He was a son of King Rehoboam. There were also several other men named Abijah in the Old Testament:

- Samuel's sons Abijah and Joel were leaders over the people of Israel at Beersheba. Because Abijah and his brother were dishonest and greedy, the people asked Samuel to appoint a king to rule them instead.
- Abijah was one of the temple priests during the time of King David.
- Abijah was one of King Jeroboam's sons.
- Abijah was also a chief priest who returned with Zerubbabel to Jerusalem from the Babylonian captivity.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:1-3
- 1 Samuel 08:1-3
- [2 Chronicles 13:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13:19-22](#)
- [Luke 01:5-7](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H29, G7

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 13:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13:13-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14:1-4](#)

Abraham, Abram

Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to “Abraham.”

- The name “Abram” means “exalted father.”
- “Abraham” means “father of many.”
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, [Chaldea](#), Sarah, [Isaac](#))

Bible References:

- [Galatians 03:6-9](#)
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:1-4
- Genesis 22:1-3
- [James 02:21-24](#)
- [Matthew 01:1-3](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance.”
- **05:04** Then God changed **Abram**’s name to **Abraham**, which means “father of many.”
- **05:05** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s son.
- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham**’s faith by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **06:01** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **06:04** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:02** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H87, H85, G11

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 20:5-7](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30:6](#)

Absalom

Facts:

Absalom was the third son of King David. He was known for his handsome appearance and fiery temperament.

- When Absalom's sister Tamar was raped by their half-brother, Amnon, Absalom made a plan to have Amnon killed.
- After the murder of Amnon, Absalom fled to the region of Geshur (where his mother Maacah was from) and stayed there three years. Then King David sent for him to come back to Jerusalem, but did not allow Absalom to come into his presence for two years.
- Absalom turned some of the people against King David and led a revolt against him.
- David's army fought against Absalom and killed him. David was very grieved when this happened.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Geshur, Amnon)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:1-3
- 1 Kings 01:5-6
- 2 Samuel 15:1-2
- 2 Samuel 17:1-4
- 2 Samuel 18:18
- [Psalm 003:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H53

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 11:20-21](#)

adversary, adversaries, enemy, enemies

Definition:

An “adversary” is a person or group who is opposed to someone or something. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose you or harm you.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- Adversary may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 05:14-16](#)
- [Isaiah 09:11-12](#)
- [Job 06:21-23](#)
- [Lamentations 04:12-13](#)
- [Luke 12:57-59](#)
- [Matthew 13:24-26](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G2189, G2190, G4567, G5227

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 6:24-25](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25:20-22](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26:11-13](#)

afflicted, afflict, afflicted, afflicting, affliction, afflictions

Definition:

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships in order to cause them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to be suffering some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

Translation Suggestions:

- To afflict someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- In certain contexts “afflict” could be translated as “happen to” or “come to” or “bring suffering.”
- A phrase like “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.”
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See also: [leprosy](#), [plague](#), [suffer](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Thessalonians 01:6-8](#)
- [Amos 05:12-13](#)
- [Colossians 01:24-27](#)
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:31-32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1790, H3013, H3905, H3906, H4157, H4523, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, H7667, G2346, G2347, G2552, G2553, G2561, G3804,

G4777, G4778, G5003

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 6:26-27](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20:8-9](#)

Ahab

Facts:

Ahab was a very evil king who reigned over the northern kingdom of Israel from 875 to 854 BC.

- King Ahab influenced the people of Israel to worship false gods.
- The prophet Elijah confronted Ahab and told him there would be a severe drought for three and a half years as punishment for the sins that Ahab caused Israel to commit.
- Ahab and his wife Jezebel did many other evil things, including using their power to kill innocent people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Baal](#), [Elijah](#), Jezebel, [kingdom of Israel](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:1-2
- 1 Kings 20:1-3
- [2 Chronicles 21:6-7](#)
- 2 Kings 09:7-8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [19:02](#) Elijah was a prophet when **Ahab** was king over the kingdom of Israel. **Ahab** was an evil man who encouraged people to worship a false god named Baal.
- [19:03](#) **Ahab** and his army looked for Elijah, but they could not find him.
- [19:05](#) After three and a half years, God told Elijah to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with **Ahab** because he was going to send rain again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H256

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 18:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18:9-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18:19](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21:6-7](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21:12-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22:1-3](#)

Ahaz

Definition:

Ahaz was a wicked king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah from 732 BC to 716 BC. This was about 140 years before the time when many people in Israel and Judah were taken as captives to Babylonia.

- While he was ruling Judah, Ahaz had an altar built for worshipping the false gods of the Assyrians, which caused the people to turn away from the one true God, Yahweh.
- King Ahaz was 20 years old when he started to rule over Judah, and he ruled for 16 years.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 08:35-37
- [2 Chronicles 28:1-2](#)
- 2 Kings 16:19-20
- [Hosea 01:1-2](#)
- [Isaiah 01:1](#)
- [Isaiah 07:3-4](#)
- [Matthew 01:9-11](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H271

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 27:8-9](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28:1-2](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28:5-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28:16-18](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28:19-21](#)

Ahaziah

Facts:

Ahaziah was the name of two kings: one ruled over the kingdom of Israel, and the other ruled over the kingdom of Judah.

- Judah's King Ahaziah was the son of King Jehoram. He reigned for one year (841 B.C.) and then was killed by Jehu. Ahaziah's young son Joash eventually took his place as king.
- Israel's King Ahaziah was the son of King Ahab. He reigned for two years (850-49 B.C.). He died from injuries suffered in a fall at his palace, and his brother Joram became king.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jehu](#), [Ahab](#), [Jeroboam](#), [Joash](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 22:39-40
- [2 Chronicles 22:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25:23-24](#)
- 2 Kings 11:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H274

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 20:35-37](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25:23-24](#)

Ahijah

Facts:

Ahijah was the name of several different men in the Old Testament. The following are some of these men:

- Ahijah was the name of a priest in the time of Saul.
- A man named Ahijah was a secretary during the reign of King Solomon.
- Ahijah was the name of a prophet from Shiloh who predicted that the nation of Israel would be divided into two kingdoms.
- The father of King Baasha of Israel was also named Ahijah.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Baasha](#), [Shiloh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:27-28
- 1 Kings 21:21-22
- 1 Samuel 14:18-19
- [2 Chronicles 10:15](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H281

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 9:29-31](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10:15](#)

alien, alienates, alienated, foreign, foreigner, foreigners**Definition:**

The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.”

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 02:17-18](#)
- [Acts 07:29-30](#)
- Deuteronomy 01:15-16
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 17:24-27
- [Luke 17:17-19](#)
- [Matthew 17:24-25](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H312, H628, H776, H1471, H1481, H1616, H2114, H3363, H3937, H4033, H5236, H5237, H5361, H6154, H8453, G241, G245, G526, G915, G1854, G3581, G3927, G3941

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 2:17-18](#)
- [2 Chronicles 6:32-33](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30:25-27](#)

altar, altars

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, [false god](#), [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 08:20-22
- Genesis 22:9-10
- [James 02:21-24](#)
- [Luke 11:49-51](#)
- [Matthew 05:23-24](#)
- [Matthew 23:18-19](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:09** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:06** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 1:2](#)
- [2 Chronicles 4:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 4:19-21](#)

- 2 Chronicles 5:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 6:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 6:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 7:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 8:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 14:1-4
- 2 Chronicles 14:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 15:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 23:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 23:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 26:19-20
- 2 Chronicles 28:24-25
- 2 Chronicles 29:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 29:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 31:1
- 2 Chronicles 32:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 33:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 33:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 33:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 33:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 34:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 35:16-17

amazed, amazement, astonished, marvel, marveled, marveling, marvelous, wonder, wonders

Definition:

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean “struck with amazement” or “standing outside of (oneself).” These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be “extremely surprised” or “very shocked.”
- Related words include “marvelous” (amazing, wonderful), “amazement,” and “astonishment.”
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: [miracle](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 08:9-11](#)
- [Acts 09:20-22](#)
- [Galatians 01:6-7](#)
- [Mark 02:10-12](#)
- [Matthew 07:28-29](#)
- [Matthew 15:29-31](#)
- [Matthew 19:25-27](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H926, H2865, H3820, H4159, H4923, H5953, H6313, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8078, H8429, H8539, H8540, H8541, H8653, G639, G1568, G1569, G1605, G1611, G1839, G2284, G2285, G2296, G2297, G2298, G3167, G4023, G4423, G4592, G5059

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 2:8-10](#)

Amaziah

Facts:

Amaziah became king over the kingdom of Judah when his father, King Joash, was murdered.

- King Amaziah reigned over Judah for twenty-nine years, from 796 BC to 767 BC.
- He was a good king, but he did not destroy the high places where idols were worshiped.
- Amaziah eventually put to death all the men who were responsible for the murder of his father.
- He defeated the rebellious Edomites and brought them back under the control of the Kingdom of Judah.
- He challenged King Jehoash of Israel to a battle, but lost. Part of the walls of Jerusalem were broken down and the silver and gold vessels of the temple were stolen.
- Years later King Amaziah turned away from Yahweh and certain men in Jerusalem plotted together and killed him.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Joash](#), [Edom](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:10-12
- 1 Chronicles 04:34-38
- [2 Chronicles 25:9-10](#)
- 2 Kings 14:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H558

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 24:27](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25:1-2](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25:9-10](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25:23-24](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25:27-28](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26:1-3](#)

ambassador, ambassadors, representative, representatives

Definition:

An ambassador is a person who is chosen to officially represent his country in relating to foreign nations. The word is also used in a figurative sense and is sometimes translated more generally as “representative.”

- An ambassador or representative gives people messages from the person or government that sent him.
- The more general term “representative” refers to someone who has been given the authority to act and speak on behalf of the person he is representing.
- The apostle Paul taught that Christians are Christ’s “ambassadors” or “representatives” since they represent Christ in this world and teach others his message.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as “official representative” or “appointed messenger” or “chosen representative” or “God’s appointed representative.”
- A “delegation of ambassadors” could be translated as “some official messengers” or “group of appointed representatives” or “official party of people to speak for all people.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [messenger](#))

Bible References:

- [Ephesians 06:19-20](#)
- [Luke 14:31-33](#)
- [Luke 19:13-15](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3887, H4135, H4136, H4397, H6735, H6737, G4243

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 32:30-31](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35:20-21](#)

Ammon, Ammonite, Ammonites

Facts:

The “people of Ammon” or the “Ammonites” were a people group in Canaan. They were descended from Ben-ammi, who was the son of Lot by his younger daughter.

- The term “Ammonitess” refers specifically to a female Ammonite. This could also be translated as “Ammonite woman.”
- The Ammonites lived east of the Jordan River and were enemies of the Israelites.
- At one point, the Ammonites hired a prophet named Balaam to curse Israel, but God did not allow him to do it.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [curse](#), [Jordan River](#), Lot)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 19:1-3
- [Ezekiel 25:1-2](#)
- Genesis 19:36-38
- Joshua 12:1-2
- Judges 11:26-28
- [Zephaniah 02:8-9](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5983, H5984, H5985

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 12:13-14](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20:1-2](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20:10-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20:22-23](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24:25-26](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26:6-8](#)
- [2 Chronicles 27:5](#)

Amorite, Amorites

Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who were descended from Noah's grandson Canaan.

- Their name means "high one," which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The Amorites lived in regions on both sides of the Jordan River. The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the "sin of the Amorites," which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

Bible References:

- [Amos 02:9-10](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:1-3](#)
- [Genesis 10:15-18](#)
- [Genesis 15:14-16](#)
- [Joshua 09:9-10](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***15:07** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon. ***15:08** In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them. ***15:09** God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**. ***15:10** God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H567,

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 8:7-8](#)

Amoz

Facts:

Amoz was the father of the prophet Isaiah.

- The only times he is mentioned in the Bible are when Isaiah is identified as the “son of Amoz.”
- This name is different from the name of the prophet Amos and should be spelled differently.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Amos, [Isaiah](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 19:1-2
- [Isaiah 37:1-2](#)
- [Isaiah 37:21-23](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H531

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 32:20-21](#)

ancestor, ancestors, father, fathers, fathered, fathering, forefather, forefathers, grandfather

Definition:

When used literally, the term “father” refers to a person’s male parent. There are also several figurative uses of this term.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to the male ancestors of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader.”
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: God the Father, **son**, Son of God)

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:1-3](#)
- [Acts 07:31-32](#)
- [Acts 07:44-46](#)
- [Acts 22:3-5](#)
- [Genesis 31:29-30](#)
- [Genesis 31:41-42](#)
- [Genesis 31:51-53](#)
- [Hebrews 07:4-6](#)
- [John 04:11-12](#)
- [Joshua 24:3-4](#)

- Malachi 03:6-7
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:7-8
- Matthew 03:7-9
- Matthew 10:21-23
- Matthew 18:12-14
- Romans 04:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G256, G540, G1080, G2495, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 1:2
- 2 Chronicles 5:1
- 2 Chronicles 11:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 16:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 17:14-16
- 2 Chronicles 19:4-5

angel, angels, archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh,” has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh, who looked like an angel.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [chief](#), [head](#), [messenger](#), [Michael](#), [ruler](#), [servant](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:15-16
- [Acts 10:3-6](#)
- [Acts 12:22-23](#)

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Genesis 48:14-16
- Luke 02:13-14
- Mark 08:38
- Matthew 13:49-50
- Revelation 01:19-20
- Zechariah 01:7-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:12** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- **22:03** The **angel** responded to Zechariah, "I was sent by God to bring you this good news."
- **23:06** Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you."
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God.
- **25:08** Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- **38:12** Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- **38:15** "I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G32, G743, G2465

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 32:20-21

anger, angered, angry

Definition:

To “be angry” or to “have anger” means to be very displeased, irritated and upset about something or against someone.

- When people get angry, they are often sinful and selfish, but sometimes they have righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
- God’s anger (also called “wrath”) expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
- The phrase “provoke to anger” means “cause to be angry.”

(See also: [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- [Ephesians 04:25-27](#)
- [Exodus 32:9-11](#)
- [Isaiah 57:16-17](#)
- [John 06:52-53](#)
- [Mark 10:13-14](#)
- [Matthew 26:6-9](#)
- [Psalms 018:7-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H599, H639, H1149, H2152, H2194, H2195, H2198, H2534, H2734, H2787, H3179, H3707, H3708, H3824, H4751, H4843, H5674, H5678, H6225, H7107, H7110, H7266, H7307, G23, G1758, G2371, G2372, G3164, G3709, G3710, G3711, G3947, G3949, G5520

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 6:36-39](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12:7-8](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16:9-10](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24:17-19](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25:9-10](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26:19-20](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28:9-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33:4-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34:20-21](#)

anoint, anointed, anointing

Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. The term is also used figuratively to refer to the Holy Spirit choosing and empowering someone.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: Christ, [consecrate](#), [high priest](#), King of the Jews, [priest](#), [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 02:20-21](#)
- [1 John 02:27-29](#)
- [1 Samuel 16:2-3](#)
- [Acts 04:27-28](#)
- [Amos 06:5-6](#)
- [Exodus 29:5-7](#)
- [James 05:13-15](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H430, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4397, H4398, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, H8136, G32, G218, G743, G1472, G2025, G3462, G5545, G5548

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 6:40-42](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23:10-11](#)

appoint, appoints, appointed

Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eterna life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:10-12
- Acts 03:19-20
- Acts 06:2-4
- Acts 13:48-49
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 03:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H561, H977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G322, G606, G1299, G1303, G1935, G2525, G2749, G4287, G4384, G4929, G5021, G5087

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 8:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 11:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 19 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 19:8-9

- [2 Chronicles 20:20-21](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31:11-13](#)

Arabia, Arabian, Arabians

Facts:

Arabia is the largest peninsula in the world, covering nearly 3,000,000 square kilometers. It is located southeast of Israel, and is bordered by the Red Sea, the Arabian Sea, and the Persian Gulf.

- The term “Arabian” is used to refer to someone who lives in Arabia or to something that is connected with Arabia.
- The earliest people to live in Arabia were grandchildren of Shem. Other early inhabitants of Arabia included Abraham’s son Ishmael and his descendants, as well as descendants of Esau.
- The desert region where the Israelites wandered for 40 years was located in Arabia.
- After becoming a believer in Jesus, the apostle Paul spent a few years in the desert of Arabia.
- In his letter to the Christians in Galatia, Paul mentioned that Mt. Sinai was located in Arabia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Esau, Galatia, Ishmael, Shem, Sinai)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:14-15
- [Acts 02:8-11](#)
- [Galatians 01:15-17](#)
- [Galatians 04:24-25](#)
- [Jeremiah 25:24-26](#)
- [Nehemiah 02:19-20](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6152, H6153, H6163, G688, G690

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 9:13-14](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17:10-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21:16-17](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26:6-8](#)

Aram, Aramean, Arameans, Aramaic

Definition:

“Aram” was the name of two men in the Old Testament. It was also the name of a region northeast of Canaan, where modern-day Syria is located.

- The people living in Aram became known as “Arameans” and spoke “Aramaic.” Jesus and other Jews of his time also spoke Aramaic.
- One of Shem’s sons was named Aram. Another man named Aram was a cousin of Rebekah. It is probable that the region of Aram was named after one of these two men.
- Aram later became known by the Greek name “Syria.”
- The term “Paddan Aram” means “plain of Aram” and this plain was located in the northern part of Aram.
- Some of Abraham’s relatives lived in the city of Haran, which was located in “Paddan Aram.”
- In the Old Testament, sometimes the terms “Aram” and “Paddan Aram” refer to the same region.
- The term “Aram Naharaim” may mean “Aram of Two Rivers.” This region was located in the northern part of Mesopotamia and was to the east of “Paddan Aram.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Mesopotamia, Paddan Aram, Rebekah, Shem, Syria)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:17-19
- 2 Samuel 08:5-6
- [Amos 01:5](#)
- [Ezekiel 27:16-18](#)
- Genesis 31:19-21
- [Hosea 12:11-12](#)
- [Psalm 060:1](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H758, H763, G689

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 1:16-17](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16:2-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18:9-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18:28-30](#)

- 2 Chronicles 18:33-34
- 2 Chronicles 22:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 24:23-24
- 2 Chronicles 28:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 28:22-23

archer, archers

Definition:

The term “archer” refers to a man who is skilled at using a bow and arrow as a weapon.

- In the Bible, an archer is usually a soldier who uses a bow and arrow to fight in an army.
- Archers were an important part of the Assyrian military force.
- Some languages might have a term for this, such as “bow-man.”

(See also: [Assyria](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 31:1-3
- [2 Chronicles 35:23-24](#)
- Genesis 21:19-21
- [Isaiah 21:16-17](#)
- [Job 16:13-14](#)
- [Proverbs 26:9-10](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1167, H1869, H2671, H2686, H3384, H7198, H7199, H7228

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 35:23-24](#)

ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh

Definition:

These terms refer to a special wooden chest, overlaid with gold, that contained the two stone tablets on which the Ten Commandments were written. It also contained Aaron's staff and a jar of manna.

- The term "ark" here could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- The objects in this chest reminded the Israelites of God's covenant with them.
- The ark of the covenant was located in the "most holy place."
- God's presence was above the ark of the covenant in the most holy place of the tabernacle, where he spoke to Moses on behalf of the Israelites.
- During the time that the ark of the covenant was in the most holy place of the temple, the high priest was the only one who could approach the ark, once a year on the Day of Atonement.
- Many English versions translate the term "covenant decrees" literally as "testimony." This refers to the fact that the Ten Commandments were a testimony or witness to God's covenant with his people. It is also translated as "covenant law."

(See also: ark, [covenant](#), [atonement](#), [holy place](#), [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 06:14-15
- Exodus 25:10-11
- [Hebrews 09:3-5](#)
- Judges 20:27-28
- Numbers 07:89
- [Revelation 11:19](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H727, H1285, H3068

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 1:2](#)
- [2 Chronicles 5:2-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 6:10-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 6:40-42](#)
- [2 Chronicles 8:11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35:3-4](#)

armor, armory

Definition:

The term “armor” refers to the equipment a soldier uses to fight in a battle and protect himself from enemy attacks. It is also used in a figurative way to refer to spiritual armor.

- Parts of a soldier’s armor include a helmet, a shield, a breastplate, leg coverings, and a sword.
- Using the term figuratively, the apostle Paul compares physical armor to spiritual armor that God gives the believer to help him fight spiritual battles.
- The spiritual armor God gives his people to fight against sin and Satan includes truth, righteousness, the gospel of peace, faith, salvation, and the Holy Spirit.
- This could be translated with a term that means “soldier gear” or “protective battle clothing” or “protective covering” or “weapons.”

(See also: faith, [Holy Spirit](#), [peace](#), [save](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 31:9-10
- 2 Samuel 20:8
- [Ephesians 06:10-11](#)
- [Jeremiah 51:3-4](#)
- [Luke 11:21-23](#)
- [Nehemiah 04:15-16](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2185, H2290, H2488, H3627, H4055, H5402, G3696, G3833

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 18:33-34](#)

Asa

Facts:

Asa was a king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah for forty years, from 913 B.C. to 873 B.c.

- King Asa was a good king who removed many idols of false gods and caused the Israelites to start worshipping Yahweh again.
- Yahweh gave King Asa success in his warfare against other nations.
- Later in his reign, however, King Asa stopped trusting Yahweh and became sick with a disease that eventually killed him.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:14-16
- 1 Kings 15:7-8
- [2 Chronicles 14:1-4](#)
- [Jeremiah 41:8-9](#)
- [Matthew 01:7-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H609

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 14:1-4](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14:7-8](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15:1-2](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15:18-19](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16:1](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17:1-2](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20:31-33](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21:12-15](#)

Asaph

Facts:

Asaph was a Levite priest and gifted musician who composed the music for the psalms of King David. He also wrote his own psalms.

- Asaph was appointed by King David to be one of three musicians who were responsible for providing songs for worship in the temple. Some of these songs were also prophecies.
- Asaph trained his sons and they carried on this responsibility, playing musical instruments and prophesying in the temple.
- Some of the musical instruments included the lute, harp, trumpet, and cymbals.
- Psalms 50 and 73-83 are said to be from Asaph. It may be that some of these psalms were written by his family members.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), [harp](#), [lute](#), [prophet](#), [psalm](#), [trumpet](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:39-43
- [2 Chronicles 35:15](#)
- [Nehemiah 02:7-8](#)
- [Psalm 050:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H623

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 35:15](#)

Ashdod, Azotus

Facts:

Ashdod was one of the five most important cities of the Philistines. It was located in southwestern Canaan near the Mediterranean Sea, halfway between the cities of Gaza and Joppa.

- The temple of the Philistine's false god Dagon was located in Ashdod.
- God severely punished the people of Ashdod when the Philistines stole the ark of the covenant and put it in the pagan temple at Ashdod.
- The Greek name for this city was Azotus. It was one of the cities where the evangelist Philip preached the gospel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ekron, [Gath](#), Gaza, [Joppa](#), Philip, [Philistines](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 05:1-3
- [Acts 08:39-40](#)
- [Amos 01:8](#)
- Joshua 15:45-47
- [Zechariah 09:5-7](#)

{{tag>publish ktlink}}

Word Data:

- Strong's: H795, G108

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 26:6-8](#)

Asher

Facts:

Asher was the eighth son of Jacob. His descendants formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel and this tribe was also called “Asher.”

- Asher’s mother was Zilpah, the servant of Leah.
- His name means “happy” or “blessed.”
- Asher was also the name of the territory assigned to the tribe of Asher when the Israelites entered the promised land.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 04:15-17
- [Ezekiel 48:1-3](#)
- Genesis 30:12-13
- [Luke 02:36-38](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H836

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 30:10-12](#)

Asherah, Asherah pole, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth, Ashtoreths

Definition:

Asherah was the name of a goddess that was worshiped by Canaanite people groups during Old Testament times. “Ashtoreth” may be another name for “Asherah,” or it could be the name of a different goddess that was very similar.

- The term “Asherah poles” refers to carved wooden images or carved trees that were made to represent this goddess.
- Asherah poles were often set up near altars of the false god Baal, who was thought of as Asherah’s husband. Some people groups worshiped Baal as the sun god and Asherah or Ashtoreth as the moon goddess.
- God commanded the Israelites to destroy all the carved images of Asherah.
- Some Israelite leaders such as Gideon, King Asa, and King Josiah obeyed God and led the people in destroying these idols.
- But other Israelite leaders such as King Solomon, King Manasseh, and King Ahab did not get rid of the Asherah poles and influenced the people to worship these idols.

(See also: [false god](#), [Baal](#), [Gideon](#), [image](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:4-5
- 2 Kings 21:1-3
- [Isaiah 27:9](#)
- Judges 03:7-8
- [Micah 05:12-15](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H842, H6252, H6253

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 14:1-4](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15:16-17](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17:5-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24:17-19](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31:1](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34:1-3](#)

assembly, assemblies, assemble, assembled

Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together to discuss problems, give advice, and make decisions.

- An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.
- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”
- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [hyperbole](#))

(See also: council)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:14-16
- [Acts 07:38-40](#)
- [Ezra 10:12-13](#)
- [Hebrews 12:22-24](#)
- Leviticus 04:20-21
- [Nehemiah 08:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H622, H627, H1413, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H5789, H6116, H6633, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, H7284, G1577, G1997, G3831, G4863, G4864, G4871, G4905

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 1:2
- 2 Chronicles 6:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 6:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 7:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 20:5-7
- 2 Chronicles 20:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 23:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 24:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 28:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 29:22-24
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15

Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrians, Assyrian Empire

Facts:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: [Samaria](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11-14
- Genesis 25:17-18
- [Isaiah 07:16-17](#)
- [Jeremiah 50:17-18](#)
- [Micah 07:11-13](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***20:02** So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the **Assyrian Empire**, a powerful, cruel nation. The **Assyrians** killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country. ***20:03** The **Assyrians** gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to **Assyria**. ***20:04** Then the **Assyrians** brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H804, H1121

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 28:16-18](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30:6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32:1](#)

- [2 Chronicles 32:22-23](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33:10-11](#)

Athaliah

Facts:

Athaliah was the evil wife of Jehoram king of Judah. She was the granddaughter of the evil King Omri of Israel.

- Athaliah's son Ahaziah became king after Jehoram died.
- When her son Ahaziah died, Athaliah made a plan to kill all the rest of the king's family.
- But Athaliah's young grandson Joash was hidden by his aunt and saved from being killed. After Athaliah had ruled the land for six years, she was killed and Joash became king.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaziah](#), [Jehoram](#), [Joash](#), [Omri](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 22:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24:6-7](#)
- [2 Kings 11:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6721

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 22:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22:10-12](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23:12-13](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23:20-21](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24:6-7](#)

atonement, atone, atones, atoned

Definition:

The terms “atone” and “atonement” refer to how God provided a sacrifice to pay for people’s sins and to appease his wrath for sin.

- In Old Testament times, God allowed temporary atonement to be made for the sins of the Israelites by the offering of a blood sacrifice, which involved killing an animal.
- As recorded in the New Testament, Christ’s death on the cross is the only true and permanent atonement for sin.
- When Jesus died, he took the punishment that people deserve because of their sin. He paid the atonement price with his sacrificial death.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “atone” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “pay for” or “provide payment for” or “cause someone’s sins to be forgiven” or “make amends for a crime.”
- Ways to translate “atonement” could include “payment” or “sacrifice to pay for sin” or “providing the means of forgiveness.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to payment of money.

(See also: atonement lid, [forgive](#), propitiation, reconcile, redeem)

Bible References:

- [Ezekiel 43:25-27](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:18-20](#)
- Leviticus 04:20-21
- Numbers 05:8-10
- Numbers 28:19-22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3722, H3725, G2643

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 29:22-24](#)

authority, authorities

Definition:

The term “authority” refers to the power of influence and control that someone has over someone else.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word “authorities” can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- The word “authorities” can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God’s authority.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “authority” can also be translated as “control” or “right” or “qualifications.”
- Sometimes “authority” is used with the meaning of “power.”
- When “authorities” is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as “leaders” or “rulers” or “powers.”
- The phrase “by his own authority” could also be translated as, “with his own right to lead” or “based on his own qualifications.”
- The expression, “under authority” could be translated as, “responsible to obey” or “having to obey others’ commands.”

(See also: citizen, [command](#), [obey](#), [power](#), [ruler](#))

Bible References:

- [Colossians 02:10-12](#)
- [Esther 09:29](#)
- [Genesis 41:35-36](#)
- [Jonah 03:6-7](#)
- [Luke 12:4-5](#)
- [Luke 20:1-2](#)
- [Mark 01:21-22](#)
- [Matthew 08:8-10](#)
- [Matthew 28:18-19](#)
- [Titus 03:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8633, G831, G1413, G1849, G1850, G2003, G2715, G5247

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 26:11-13](#)

Azariah

Facts:

Azariah was the name of several men in the Old Testament.

- One Azariah is best known by his Babylonian name, Abednego. He was one of many Israelites from Judah who were captured by Nebuchadnezzar's army and taken to live in Babylon. Azariah and his fellow Israelites Hananiah and Mishael refused to worship the Babylonian king, so he had them thrown into a blazing furnace as punishment. But God protected them and they were not harmed at all.
- Uzziah king of Judah was also known as "Azariah."
- Another Azariah was an Old Testament high priest.
- In the time of the prophet Jeremiah, a man named Azariah wrongly urged the Israelites to disobey God by leaving their homeland.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, [Jeremiah](#), [Uzziah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:36-38
- 1 Kings 04:1-4
- [2 Chronicles 15:1-2](#)
- [Daniel 01:6-7](#)
- [Jeremiah 43:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5838

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 15:1-2](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26:16-18](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29:12-14](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31:9-10](#)

Baal

Facts:

“Baal” means “lord” or “master” and was the name of the primary false god that was worshiped by the Canaanites.

- There were also local false gods that had “Baal” as part of their names, such as “Baal of Peor.” Sometimes all these gods together are referred to as “the Baals.”
- Some people had names that included the word “Baal” in them.
- The worship of Baal included evil practices such as sacrificing children and using prostitutes.
- At different time periods throughout their history, the Israelites also became deeply involved in Baal worship, following the example of the pagan nations around them.
- During the reign of King Ahab, God’s prophet Elijah set up a test to prove to the people that Baal does not exist and that Yahweh is the only true God. As a result, the prophets of Baal were destroyed and the people started worshiping Yahweh again.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Asherah](#), [Elijah](#), [false god](#), [prostitute](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:31-33
- 1 Samuel 07:3-4
- [Jeremiah 02:7-8](#)
- Judges 02:11-13
- Numbers 22:41

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [19:02](#) Ahab was an evil man who encouraged people to worship a false god named **Baal**.
- [19:06](#) All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 prophets of **Baal**, came to Mount Carmel. Elijah said to the people, “How long will you keep changing your mind? If Yahweh is God, serve him! If **Baal** is God, serve him!”
- [19:07](#) Then Elijah said to the prophets of **Baal**, “Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire.
- [19:08](#) Then the prophets of **Baal** prayed to **Baal**, “Hear us, O **Baal**!”
- [19:12](#) So the people captured the prophets of **Baal**. Then Elijah took them away from there and killed them.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1120, G896

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 17:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 23:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 24:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 28:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 33:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 34:4-5

Baasha

Facts:

Baasha was one of Israel's evil kings, who influenced the Israelites to worship idols.

- Baasha was the third king of Israel and reigned for twenty-four years, during the time when Asa was king of Judah.
- He was a military commander who became king by killing the previous king, Nadab.
- During Baasha's reign there were many wars between the kingdoms of Israel and Judah, especially with King Asa of Judah.
- Baasha's many sins caused God to eventually remove him from office by his death.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asa](#), [false god](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:16-17
- 2 Kings 09:9-10
- [Jeremiah 41:8-9](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1201

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 16:1](#)

Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian, Babylonians

Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- In the New Testament, the term “Babylon” is sometimes used as a metaphor to refer to places, people, and thinking patterns that are associated with idol-worship and other sinful behaviors.
- The phrase “Babylon the Great” or “great city of Babylon” refers metaphorically to a city or nation that was large, wealthy, and sinful, just as the ancient city of Babylon was. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [Babel](#), [Chaldea](#), [Judah](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 2 Kings 17:24-26
- [Acts 07:43](#)
- [Daniel 01:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 12:11-13](#)
- [Matthew 01:9-11](#)
- [Matthew 01:15-17](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:06** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **20:07** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:09** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

- **20:11** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3778, H3779, H8152, H894, H895, H896, G897

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 32:30-31
- 2 Chronicles 33:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 36:5-7
- 2 Chronicles 36:18-19

barley

Definition:

The term “barley” refers to a kind of grain that is used to make bread.

- The barley plant has a long stalk with a head at the top where the seeds or grains grow.
- Barley does well in warmer weather so it is often harvested in spring or summer.
- When barley is threshed, the edible seeds are separated from the worthless chaff.
- Barley grain is ground up into flour, which is then mixed with water or oil to make bread.
- If barley is not known, this could be translated as “grain called barley” or “barley grain.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [grain](#), [thresh](#), [wheat](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:12-14
- [Job 31:38-40](#)
- Judges 07:13-14
- Numbers 05:15
- [Revelation 06:5-6](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8184, G2915, G2916

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 2:8-10](#)
- [2 Chronicles 27:5](#)

beast, beasts

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “beast” is often just another way of saying “animal.”

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term “livestock” is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include “creature” or “created thing” or “animal” or “wild animal,” depending on the context.

(See also: [authority](#), Daniel, livestock, [nation](#), [power](#), reveal, Beelzebul)

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 15:31-32](#)
- 1 Samuel 17:44-45
- [2 Chronicles 25:18-19](#)
- [Jeremiah 16:1-4](#)
- Leviticus 07:21
- [Psalms 049:12-13](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H338, H929, H1165, H2123, H2416, H2423, H2874, H3753, H4806, H7409, G2226, G2341, G2342, G2934, G4968, G5074

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 25:18-19](#)

Beersheba

Facts:

In Old Testament times, Beersheba was a city located about 45 miles southwest of Jerusalem in a desert area that is now called the Negev.

- The desert surrounding Beersheba was the wilderness area where Hagar and Ishmael wandered after Abraham sent them away from his tents.
- The name of this city means “well of the oath.” It was given this name when Abraham swore an oath to not punish King Abimelech’s men for seizing control of one of Abraham’s wells.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Abimelech, [Abraham](#), Hagar, Ishmael, [Jerusalem](#), [oath](#))

===== Bible References:=====

- 1 Samuel 03:19-21
- 2 Samuel 17:11-12
- Genesis 21:14-16
- Genesis 21:31-32
- Genesis 46:1-4
- [Nehemiah 11:28-30](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H884

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 19:4-5](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30:4-5](#)

beg, begged, begging, beggar

Definition:

The term “beg” means to urgently ask someone for something. It often refers to asking for money, but it is also commonly used to refer to pleading for something.

- Often people beg or plead when they strongly need something, but don’t know if the other person will give them what they ask for.
- A “beggar” is someone who regularly sits or stands in a public place to ask people for money.
- Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, “plead” or “urgently ask” or “demand money” or “regularly ask for money.”

(See also: plead)

Bible References:

- [Luke 16:19-21](#)
- [Mark 06:56](#)
- [Matthew 14:34-36](#)
- [Psalm 045:12-13](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***10:04** God sent frogs all over Egypt. Pharaoh **begged** Moses to take away the frogs. ***29:08** “The king called the servant and said, ‘You wicked servant! I forgave your debt because you **begged** me.’” ***32:07** The demons **begged** Jesus, “Please do not send us out of this region!” There was a herd of pigs feeding on a nearby hill. So, the demons **begged** Jesus, “Please send us into the pigs instead!” ***32:10** The man who used to have the demons **begged** to go along with Jesus. ***35:11** His father came out and **begged** him to come and celebrate with them, but he refused.” ***44:01** One day, Peter and John were going to the Temple. As they approached the Temple gate, they saw a crippled man who was **begging** for money.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H34, H7592, G154, G1871, G4319, G4434, G6075

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 33:12-13](#)

believe, believes, believed, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelievers, unbelief

Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”

- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”
- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: [believe](#), apostle, Christian, disciple, faith, [trust](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:6-8
- Genesis 45:24-26
- [Job 09:16-18](#)
- [Habakkuk 01:5-7](#)
- [Mark 06:4-6](#)
- [Mark 01:14-15](#)
- [Luke 09:41-42](#)
- [John 01:12-13](#)
- [Acts 06:5-6](#)
- [Acts 09:40-43](#)
- [Acts 28:23-24](#)
- [Romans 03:3-4](#)
- [1 Corinthians 06:1-3](#)
- [1 Corinthians 09:3-6](#)
- [2 Corinthians 06:14-16](#)
- [Hebrews 03:12-13](#)
- [1 John 03:23-24](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **04:08** Abram **believed** God’s promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God’s promise.
- **11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:06** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:05** Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?”
- **43:01** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:03** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared

over the heads of all the **believers**.

- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:01** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:09** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus. It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called “Christians.”
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H540, G543, G544, G569, G570, G571, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103, G4135

Uses:

- **2 Chronicles 9:5-6**
- **2 Chronicles 32:13-15**

Benjamin, Benjamite, Benjamites

Facts:

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, “son of my right hand.”

- He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
- The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), Joseph (OT), Paul, Rachel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 02:8-9
- [Acts 13:21-22](#)
- Genesis 35:16-20
- Genesis 42:1-4
- Genesis 42:35-36
- [Philippians 03:4-5](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G958

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 11:1](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14:7-8](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15:1-2](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17:17-19](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25:5-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31:1](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34:8-9](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34:31-32](#)

Beth Shemesh

Facts:

Beth Shemesh was the name of a Canaanite city approximately 30 kilometers west of Jerusalem.

- The Israelites captured Beth Shemesh during the time of Joshua's leadership.
- Beth Shemesh was a city that was set aside as a place for the Levite priests to live.
- When the Philistines were taking the captured ark of the covenant back to Jerusalem, Beth Shemesh was the first city where they stopped with it.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [Canaan](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Joshua](#), [Levite](#), [Philistines](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:7-10
- 1 Samuel 06:7-9
- Joshua 19:20-22
- Judges 01:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1053

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 25:20-22](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25:23-24](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28:16-18](#)

Bethel

Facts:

Bethel was a city located just north of Jerusalem in the land of Canaan. It was formerly called “Luz.”

- After receiving God’s promises for the first time, Abram (Abraham) built an altar to God near Bethel. The actual name of the city was not yet Bethel at that time, but it was usually referred to as “Bethel,” which was better known.
- When fleeing from his brother Esau, Jacob stayed overnight near this city and slept outdoors on the ground there. While he was sleeping, he had a dream showing angels going up and down a ladder to heaven.
- This city did not have the name “Bethel” until after Jacob named it that. To make this clear, some translations may translate it as “Luz (later called Bethel)” in the passages about Abraham, as well as when Jacob first arrives there (before he changed the name).
- Bethel is mentioned often in the Old Testament and was a place where many important events happened.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [altar](#), [Jacob](#), [Jerusalem](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 12:8-9
- Genesis 35:1-3
- [Hosea 10:14-15](#)
- Judges 01:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1008

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 13:19-22](#)

Bethlehem, Ephrathah

Facts:

Bethlehem was a small city in the land of Israel, near the city of Jerusalem. It was also known as “Ephrathah,” which was probably its original name.

- Bethlehem has been called the “city of David,” since King David was born there.
- The prophet Micah said that the Messiah would come from “Bethlehem Ephrathah.”
- Fulfilling that prophecy, Jesus was born in Bethlehem, many years later.
- The name “Bethlehem” means “house of bread” or “house of food.”

(See also: Caleb, [David](#), Micah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:16-20
- [John 07:40-42](#)
- [Matthew 02:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 02:16](#)
- Ruth 01:1-2
- Ruth 01:19-21

Examples from the Bible stories:

***17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of **Bethlehem**. ***21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin. The prophet Micah said that he would be born in the town of **Bethlehem**. ***23:04** Joseph and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to **Bethlehem** because their ancestor was David whose hometown was **Bethlehem**. ***23:06** “The Messiah, the Master, has been born in **Bethlehem!**”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H376, H672, H1035, G965

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 11:5-10](#)

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 10:14-17](#)
- [Acts 13:32-34](#)
- [Ephesians 01:3-4](#)
- [Genesis 14:19-20](#)
- [Isaiah 44:3-4](#)
- [James 01:22-25](#)
- [Luke 06:20-21](#)
- [Matthew 26:26](#)
- [Nehemiah 09:5-6](#)
- [Romans 04:9-10](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:07** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **01:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **01:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **04:04** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **04:07** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **07:03** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

Uses:

- **2 Chronicles 2:11-12**
- **2 Chronicles 6:1-3**
- **2 Chronicles 9:7-8**
- **2 Chronicles 30:25-27**
- **2 Chronicles 31:6-8**

blood

Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- Through his death on the cross, Jesus’ blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: [flesh](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:31-32](#)
- [Acts 02:20-21](#)
- [Acts 05:26-28](#)
- [Colossians 01:18-20](#)
- [Galatians 01:15-17](#)
- [Genesis 04:10-12](#)
- [Psalms 016:4](#)
- [Psalms 105:28-30](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:03** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:03** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.

- **11:05** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb's **blood**.
- **13:09** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person's sin, and God's punishment passes over him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131, G1420

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 29:22-24](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30:16-17](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35:10-12](#)

bloodshed

Definition:

The term “bloodshed” refers to the death of human beings due to murder, war, or some other violent act.

- This term literally means “shedding of blood,” which refers to when blood comes out of a person’s body from an open wound.
- The term “bloodshed” is often used to refer to widespread killing of people.
- It is also used as a general reference to the sin of murder.

Translation Suggestions:

- “The bloodshed” could be translated as “the killing of people” or “the many people who were killed.”
- “Through bloodshed” could also be translated as, “by killing people.”
- “Innocent bloodshed” could be translated as “killing innocent people.”
- “Bloodshed follows bloodshed” could be translated as “they keep killing people” or “the killing of people goes on and on” or “they have killed many people and continue to do that” or “people keep killing other people.”
- Another figurative use, “bloodshed will pursue you,” could be translated as “your people will continue to experience bloodshed” or “your people will keep being killed” or “your people will continue to be at war with other nations and people will keep dying.”

(See also: [blood slaughter](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 22:6-8
- Genesis 09:5-7
- [Hebrews 09:21-22](#)
- [Isaiah 26:20-21](#)
- [Matthew 23:29-31](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818, G2210

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 19:10](#)

bow and arrow, bows and arrows

Definition:

This is a type of weapon that consists of shooting arrows from a stringed bow. In Bible times it was used for fighting against enemies and for killing animals for food.

- The bow is made out of wood, bone, metal, or other hard material, such as a deer's antler. It has a curved shape and is strung tightly with a string, cord, or vine.
- An arrow is a thin shaft with a sharp, pointed head on one end. In ancient times, the arrows could be made of a variety of materials such as wood, bone, stone, or metal.
- Bows and arrows are commonly used by hunters and warriors.
- The term "arrow" is also sometimes used figuratively in the Bible to refer to enemy attacks or divine judgment.

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:14-16
- [Habakkuk 03:9-10](#)
- [Job 29:20-22](#)
- [Lamentations 02:3-4](#)
- [Psalms 058:6-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2671, H7198, G5115

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 14:7-8](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17:17-19](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18:33-34](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26:14-15](#)

bow, bows, bowed, bowing, bow down, bows down, bowed down, bowing down

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- Exodus 20:4-6
- Genesis 24:26-27
- Genesis 44:14-15
- [Isaiah 44:19](#)
- [Luke 24:4-5](#)
- [Matthew 02:11-12](#)
- [Revelation 03:9-11](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H86, H3721, H3766, H5186, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4781, G4794

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 7:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 7:21-22
- 2 Chronicles 20:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 29:29-30
- 2 Chronicles 33:1-3

bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast.
- Bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. In the Bible this is called “unleavened bread” and was used for the Jews’ passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The term “bread of the presence” referred to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The figurative term “bread from heaven” referred to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert.
- Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”
- When Jesus and his disciples were eating the Passover meal together before his death, he compared the unleavened Passover bread to his body which would be wounded and killed on a cross.
- Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”

(See also: [Passover](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [unleavened bread](#), yeast)

Bible References:

- [Acts 02:46-47](#)
- [Acts 27:33-35](#)
- Exodus 16:13-15
- [Luke 09:12-14](#)
- [Mark 06:37-38](#)
- [Matthew 04:1-4](#)
- [Matthew 11:18-19](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 2:4-5](#)

- [2 Chronicles 4:19-21](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13:10-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29:18-19](#)

bribe, bribes, bribed, bribery**Definition:**

To “bribe” means to give someone something of value, such as money, to influence that person to do something dishonest.

- The soldiers who guarded Jesus’ empty tomb were bribed with money to lie about what happened.
- Sometimes a government official will be bribed to overlook a crime or to vote a certain way.
- The Bible forbids giving or taking bribes.
- The term, “bribe” could be translated as, “dishonest payment” or “payment for lying” or “price for breaking the rules.”
- To “bribe” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, to “pay to influence (someone)” or to “pay to have a dishonest favor done” or to “pay for a favor.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:1-3
- [Ecclesiastes 07:7](#)
- [Isaiah 01:23](#)
- [Micah 03:9-11](#)
- [Proverbs 15:27-28](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3724, H4979, H7809, H7810, H7936, H7966, H8641, G5260

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 19:6-7](#)

bronze

Definition:

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [armor](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 07:15-17
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- [Daniel 02:44-45](#)
- Exodus 25:3-7
- [Revelation 01:14-16](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G5470, G5474, G5475

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 1:2](#)
- [2 Chronicles 2:6-7](#)
- [2 Chronicles 4:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 4:14-16](#)
- [2 Chronicles 6:12-13](#)
- [2 Chronicles 7:7](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12:9-10](#)

brother, brothers

Definition:

The term “brother” usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:26-28](#)
- [Genesis 29:9-10](#)
- [Leviticus 19:17-18](#)
- [Nehemiah 03:1-2](#)
- [Philippians 04:21-23](#)
- [Revelation 01:9-11](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 5:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 11:2-4
- 2 Chronicles 19:10
- 2 Chronicles 28:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 29:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 29:34
- 2 Chronicles 30:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 35:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 35:15

burnt offering, burnt offerings, offering by fire

Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](#), [atonement](#), [ox](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 08:20-22
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 03:3-5
- [Mark 12:32-34](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G3646

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 1:6-7](#)
- [2 Chronicles 2:4-5](#)
- [2 Chronicles 4:4-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 7:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 7:7](#)
- [2 Chronicles 8:12-13](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13:10-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23:18-19](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24:13-14](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28:3-4](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29:6-7](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29:18-19](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29:32-33](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30:13-15](#)

- [2 Chronicles 31:2-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35:10-12](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35:13-14](#)

bury, buries, buried, burying, burial

Definition:

The term “bury” usually refers to putting a dead body into a hole or other burial place. The term “burial” is the act of burying something or can be used to describe a place used to bury something.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” are all ways to refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: [Jericho](#), [tomb](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 09:9-10
- Genesis 35:4-5
- [Jeremiah 25:32-33](#)
- [Luke 16:22-23](#)
- [Matthew 27:6-8](#)
- [Psalm 079:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6900, H6912, H6913, G1779, G1780, G2290, G4916, G5027

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 9:29-31](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12:15-16](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14:1-4](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16:13-14](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22:9](#)

- 2 Chronicles 24:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 25:27-28
- 2 Chronicles 27:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 32:32-33
- 2 Chronicles 35:23-24

call, calls, calling, called

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” literally means to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. There are also several figurative meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- The term “called” is used in the Bible to mean that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of calling someone a name. For example, “He is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God knows a person’s name personally and has specifically chosen him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know your name and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- 2 Timothy 01:8-11
- Ephesians 04:1-3
- Galatians 01:15-17
- Matthew 02:13-15
- Philippians 03:12-14

{{tag>publish ktlink }}

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, G154, G363, G1458, G1528, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G4316, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 7:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 10:3-5

camel, camels

Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: burden, [clean](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:20-22
- [2 Chronicles 09:1-2](#)
- Exodus 09:1-4
- [Mark 10:23-25](#)
- [Matthew 03:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 19:23-24](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H327, H1581, G2574

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 9:1-2](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14:14-15](#)

captive, captives, captivate, captivated, captivity

Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as, “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as, “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as, “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as, “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [exile](#), [prison](#), [seize](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Corinthians 10:5-6](#)
- [Isaiah 20:3-4](#)
- [Jeremiah 43:1-3](#)
- [Luke 04:18-19](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H2925, H6808, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, H7870, G161, G162, G163, G164, G2221

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 6:36-39
- 2 Chronicles 29:8-9

cedar, cedars, cedarwood

Definition:

The term “cedar” refers to a large fir tree which normally has reddish-brown wood. Like other firs, it has cones and needle-like leaves.

- The Old Testament often mentions cedar trees in connection with Lebanon, where they grew plentifully.
- Cedar wood was used in the construction of the Jerusalem temple.
- It was also used for sacrifices and purification offerings.

(See also: fir, [pure](#), [sacrifice](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:1-2
- 1 Kings 07:1-2
- [Isaiah 02:12-13](#)
- [Zechariah 11:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H730

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 1:14-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 2:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 9:27-28](#)

Chaldea, Chaldean, Chaldeans

Facts:

Chaldea was a region in the southern part of Mesopotamia or Babylonia. The people who lived in this region were called Chaldeans.

- The city of Ur, where Abraham was from, was located in Chaldea. It is often referred to as “Ur of the Chaldeans.”
- King Nebuchadnezzar was one of several Chaldeans who became kings over Babylonia.
- After many years, around 600 BC, the term “Chaldean” came to mean “Babylonian.”
- In the book of Daniel, the term “Chaldean” also refers to a special class of men who were highly educated and studied the stars.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Babylon](#), Shinar, Ur)

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:4-5](#)
- [Ezekiel 01:1-3](#)
- Genesis 11:27-28
- Genesis 11:31-32
- Genesis 15:6-8
- [Isaiah 13:19-20](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3679, H3778, H3779, G5466

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 36:17](#)

chariot, chariots, charioteers

Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:22
- [2 Chronicles 18:28-30](#)
- [Acts 08:29-31](#)
- [Acts 08:36-38](#)
- [Daniel 11:40-41](#)
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Genesis 41:42-43

Examples from the Bible stories:

*[12:10](#) So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H668, H2021, H4817, H4818, H5699, H7393, H7395, H7396, H7398, G716, G4480

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 1:14-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 8:5-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 8:9-10](#)
- [2 Chronicles 9:25-26](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10:17-19](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12:2-4](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14:9-11](#)

- 2 Chronicles 16:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- 2 Chronicles 21:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 35:23-24

cherub, cherubim, cherubs

Definition:

The term “cherub,” and its plural form “cherubim,” refer to a special type of heavenly being that God created. The Bible describes cherubim as having wings and flames.

- The cherubim display the glory and power of God and seem to be guardians of sacred things.
- After Adam and Eve sinned, God placed cherubim with flaming swords at the east side of the Garden of Eden so that people could no longer get to the tree of life.
- God commanded the Israelites to carve two cherubim facing each other, with their wings touching, over the atonement lid of the ark of the covenant.
- He also told them to weave pictures of the cherubim into the curtains of the tabernacle.
- In some passages, these creatures are also described as having four faces: of a man, a lion, an ox, and an eagle.
- Cherubim are sometimes thought of as being angels, but the Bible does not clearly state that.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “cherubim” could be translated as “creatures with wings” or “guardians with wings” or “winged spiritual guardians” or “holy, winged guardians.”
- A “cherub” should be translated as the singular of cherubim, as in, “creature with wings” or “winged spiritual guardian,” for example.
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “angel.”
- Also consider how this term is translated or written in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [angel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:5-6
- 1 Kings 06:23-26
- Exodus 25:15-18
- [Ezekiel 09:3-4](#)
- Genesis 03:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3742, G5502

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 3:6-7](#)
- [2 Chronicles 5:7-8](#)

chief priests

Definition:

The chief priests were important Jewish religious leaders during the time that Jesus lived on earth.

- The chief priests were responsible for everything needed for the worship services at the temple. They were also in charge of the money that was given to the temple.
- They were higher in rank and power than the ordinary priests. Only the high priest had more authority.
- The chief priests were some of Jesus' main enemies and they strongly influenced the Roman leaders to arrest and kill him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "chief priests" could also be translated as "head priests" or "leading priests" or "ruling priests."
- Make sure this term is translated differently from the term "high priest."

(See also: [chief](#), [high priest](#), Jewish leaders, [priest](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 09:13-16](#)
- [Acts 22:30](#)
- [Acts 26:12-14](#)
- [Luke 20:1-2](#)
- [Mark 08:31-32](#)
- [Matthew 16:21-23](#)
- [Matthew 26:3-5](#)
- [Matthew 26:59-61](#)
- [Matthew 27:41-42](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3548, H7218, G749

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 19:11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26:19-20](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31:9-10](#)

chief, chiefs

Definition:

The term “chief” refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, “chief musician,” “chief priest,” and “chief tax collector.” and “chief ruler.”
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as “chiefs” of their family clans. In this context, the term “chief” could also be translated as “leader” or “head father.”
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as “leading” or “ruling,” as in “leading musician” or “ruling priest.”

(See also: [chief priests](#), [priest](#), tax collector)

Bible References:

- [Daniel 01:11-13](#)
- [Ezekiel 26:15-16](#)
- [Luke 19:1-2](#)
- [Psalm 004:1](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H441, H5057, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G749, G750, G754, G4410, G4413, G5506

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 11:22-23](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35:7-9](#)

chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

Definition:

The term “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones) or ”the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” This could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See also: [appoint](#), Christ)

Bible References:

- [2 John 01:1-3](#)
- [Colossians 03:12-14](#)
- [Ephesians 01:3-4](#)
- [Isaiah 65:22-23](#)
- [Luke 18:6-8](#)
- [Matthew 24:19-22](#)

- [Romans 08:33-34](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H970, H972, H977, H1254, H1262, H1305, H4005, H6901, G138, G140, G1586, G1588, G1589, G1951, G4400, G4401, G4758, G4899, G5500

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 6:4-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13:16-18](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33:7-9](#)

chronicles

Definition:

The term “chronicle” refers to a written record of events over a period of time.

- Two Old Testament books are called “First Book of the Chronicles” and “Second Book of the Chronicles.”
- The books called “Chronicles” record part of the history of the Israelite people, beginning with a list of people in every generation since Adam.
- The “First Book of the Chronicles” records the end of King Saul’s life and the events of King David’s reign.
- The “Second Book of the Chronicles” records the reigns of King Solomon and several other kings, including the building of the temple and the separation of the northern kingdom of Israel from the southern kingdom of Judah.
- The end of 2 Chronicles describes the beginning of the Babylonian exile.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [David](#), [exile](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:23-24
- [2 Chronicles 33:18-20](#)
- [Esther 10:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1697

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 33:18-20](#)

cistern, cisterns, well, wells

Definition:

The terms “well” and “cistern” refer to two different kinds of sources for water in Bible times.

- A well is a deep hole dug into the ground so that underground water can flow into it.
- A cistern is a deep hole dug into rock that was used as a holding tank for collecting rain water.
- Cisterns were usually dug into rock and sealed with plaster to keep the water in. A “broken cistern” happened when the plaster became cracked so that the water leaked out.
- Cisterns were often located in the courtyard area of people’s homes to catch the rainwater that would run off the roof.
- Wells were often located where they could be accessed by several families or a whole community.
- Because water was very important for both people and livestock, the right to use a well was often a cause of strife and conflict.
- Both wells and cisterns were usually covered with a large stone to prevent anything falling in it. Often there was a rope with a bucket or pot attached to it to bring the water up to the surface.
- Sometimes a dry cistern was used as a place to imprison someone, such as happened to Joseph and Jeremiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “well” could include “deep water hole” or “deep hole for spring water” or “deep hole for drawing water.”
- The term “cistern” could be translated as “stone water pit” or “deep and narrow pit for water” or “underground tank for holding water.”
- These terms are similar in meaning. The main difference is that a well continually receives water from underground springs, whereas a cistern is a holding tank for water that usually comes from rain.

(See also: [Jeremiah](#), [prison](#), strife)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:15-17
- 2 Samuel 17:17-18
- Genesis 16:13-14
- [Luke 14:4-6](#)
- Numbers 20:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H875, H883, H953, H1360, H3653, H4599, H4726, H4841, G4077, G5421

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 26:9-10](#)

city of David

Facts:

The term “city of David” is another name for both Jerusalem and Bethlehem.

- Jerusalem is where David lived while he ruled Israel.
- Bethlehem is where David was born.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [Bethlehem](#), [Jerusalem](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 2 Samuel 05:6-7
- [Isaiah 22:8-9](#)
- [Luke 02:4-5](#)
- [Nehemiah 03:14-15](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, H5892, G1138, G4172

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 5:2-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 8:11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 9:29-31](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12:15-16](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14:1-4](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16:13-14](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24:15-16](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24:25-26](#)
- [2 Chronicles 27:8-9](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32:5](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32:30-31](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33:14-15](#)

clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean

Definition:

The term “clean” literally means to not have any dirt or stain. In the Bible, it is often used figuratively to mean, “pure,” “holy,” or “free from sin.”

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity.

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”

translation Words *clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes, unclean*

- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: defile, demon, [holy](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 07:1-3
- Genesis 07:8-10
- Deuteronomy 12:15-16
- [Psalms 051:7-9](#)
- [Proverbs 20:29-30](#)
- [Ezekiel 24:13](#)
- [Matthew 23:27-28](#)
- [Luke 05:12-13](#)
- [Acts 08:6-8](#)
- [Acts 10:27-29](#)
- [Colossians 03:5-8](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 04:7-8](#)
- [James 04:8-10](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G167, G169, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2839, G2840, G3394, G3689

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 23:18-19](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29:15-17](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34:1-3](#)

clothe, clothed, clothes, clothing, unclothed

Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, “clothed with” means to be endowed or equipped with something. To “clothe” oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is external to your body and is visible to all, when you are “clothed” with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To “clothe yourself with kindness” means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be “clothed with power from on high” means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as “clothed with shame” or “clothed with terror.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, “clothe yourselves with.” Another way to translate this could be “put on” if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate “clothed with” could be “showing” or “manifesting” or “filled with” or “having the quality of.”
- The term “clothe yourself with” could also be translated as “cover yourself with” or “behave in a way that shows.”

Bible References:

- [Luke 24:48-49](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H899, H1545, H3680, H3736, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4346, H4374, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G294, G1463, G1562, G1737, G1742, G1746, G1902, G2066, G2439, G2440, G3608, G4016, G4470, G4616, G4683, G4749, G5509, G6005

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 6:40-42](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18:9-11](#)

column, columns, pillar, pillars

Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- As a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: [foundation](#), [false god](#), [image](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:4-5
- Exodus 13:19-22
- Exodus 33:7-9
- Genesis 31:45-47
- [Proverbs 09:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H352, H547, H2106, H2553, H3730, H4552, H4676, H4678, H4690, H5324, H5333, H5982, H8490, G4769

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 3:15-17](#)
- [2 Chronicles 4:11-13](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14:1-4](#)

- [2 Chronicles 23:12-13](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31:1](#)

command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

Definition:

The term to “command” means to order someone to do something. A “command” or “commandment” is what the person was ordered to do.

- Although these terms have basically the same meaning, “commandment” often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](#), [statute](#), [law](#), Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- [Luke 01:5-7](#)
- [Matthew 01:24-25](#)
- [Matthew 22:37-38](#)
- [Matthew 28:20](#)
- Numbers 01:17-19
- [Romans 07:7-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H559, H560, H565, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4483, G4487, G5506

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 1:2
- 2 Chronicles 2:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 7:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 7:16-18
- 2 Chronicles 7:19-20
- 2 Chronicles 8:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 8:17-18
- 2 Chronicles 13:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 14:1-4
- 2 Chronicles 17:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- 2 Chronicles 19:10
- 2 Chronicles 23:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 24:20-22
- 2 Chronicles 25:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 25:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 29:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 29:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 29:29-30
- 2 Chronicles 31:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 31:11-13
- 2 Chronicles 31:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 32:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 33:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 33:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 34:22
- 2 Chronicles 34:31-32
- 2 Chronicles 35:10-12
- 2 Chronicles 35:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 36:22-23

commander, commanders

Definition:

The term “commander” refers to a leader of an army who is responsible for leading and commanding a certain group of soldiers.

- A commander could be in charge of a small group of soldiers or a large group, such as a thousand men.
- This term is also used to refer to Yahweh as the commander of angel armies.
- Other ways to translate “commander” could include, “leader” or “captain” or “officer.”
- The term to “command” an army could be translated as to “lead” or to “be in charge of.”

(See also: [command](#), [ruler](#), centurion)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:4-6
- [2 Chronicles 11:11-12](#)
- [Daniel 02:14-16](#)
- [Mark 06:21-22](#)
- [Proverbs 06:6-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2710, H2951, H1169, H4929, H5057, H6346, H7101, H7262, H7218, H7227, H7229, H7990, H8269, G5506

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 8:9-10](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11:11-12](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12:9-10](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16:4-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17:14-16](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21:8-10](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23:20-21](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26:11-13](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32:6-8](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33:10-11](#)

compassion, compassionate

Definition:

The term “compassion” refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A “compassionate” person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word “compassion” usually includes caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.
- In Paul’s letter to the Colossians, he tells them to “clothe themselves with compassion.” He is instructing them to care about people and to actively help others who are in need.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal meaning of “compassion” is “bowels of mercy.” This is an expression that means “mercy” or “pity.” Other languages may have their own expression that means this.
- Ways of translating “compassion” could include, “a deep caring for” or “helpful mercy.”
- The term “compassionate” could also be translated as, “caring and helpful” or “deeply loving and merciful.”

Bible References:

- [Daniel 01:8-10](#)
- [Hosea 13:14](#)
- [James 05:9-11](#)
- [Jonah 04:1-3](#)
- [Mark 01:40-42](#)
- [Romans 09:14-16](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2550, H7349, H7355, H7356, G1653, G3356, G3627, G4697, G4834, G4835

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 30:7-9](#)

concubine, concubines

Definition:

A concubine is a woman who is a secondary wife for a man who already has a wife. Usually a concubine is not legally married to the man.

- In the Old Testament, concubines were often female slaves.
- A concubine could be acquired by purchase, through military conquest, or in payment of a debt.
- For a king, having many concubines was a sign of power.
- The New Testament teaches that the practice of having a concubine is against God's will.

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 03:6-7
- Genesis 22:23-24
- Genesis 25:5-6
- Genesis 35:21-22
- Genesis 36:9-12
- Judges 19:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3904, H6370

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 11:20-21](#)

confess, confessed, confesses, confession

Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A “confession” is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term “confess” can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confess” could include, “admit” or “testify” or “declare” or “acknowledge” or “affirm.”
- Different ways to translate “confession” could be, “declaration” or “testimony” or “statement about what we believe” or “admitting sin.”

(See also: faith, [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 01:8-10](#)
- [2 John 01:7-8](#)
- [James 05:16-18](#)
- [Leviticus 05:5-6](#)
- [Matthew 03:4-6](#)
- [Nehemiah 01:6-7](#)
- [Philippians 02:9-11](#)
- [Psalms 038:17-18](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3034, H8426, G1843, G3670, G3671

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 6:24-25
- 2 Chronicles 6:26-27
- 2 Chronicles 30:21-22

consecrate, consecrated, consecration

Definition:

To consecrate means to dedicate something or someone to serve God. The person or object that is consecrated is considered holy and set apart for God.

- The meaning of this term is similar to “sanctify” or to “make holy,” but with the added meaning of formally setting apart someone for service to God.
- Things that were consecrated to God included animals to be sacrificed, the altar of burnt offering, and the tabernacle.
- People who were consecrated to God included the priests, the people of Israel, and the oldest male child.
- Sometimes the word “consecrate” has a meaning that is similar to “purify,” especially when it pertains to preparing people or things for God’s service so that they will be cleansed and acceptable to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “consecrate” could include, “set apart for God’s service” or “purify for service to God.”
- Also consider how the terms “holy” and “sanctify” are translated.

(See also: [holy](#), [pure](#), sanctify)

Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 04:3-5](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13:8-9](#)
- [Ezekiel 44:19](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2763, H3027, H4390, H4394, H5144, H5145, H6942, H6944, G1457, G5048

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 5:11-12](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13:8-9](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26:16-18](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29:3-5](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29:15-17](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29:15-17](#)

- 2 Chronicles 30:1
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 30:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 35:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 36:13-14

consume, consumes, consumed, consuming

Definition:

The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as, “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone’s strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as, “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See also: [devour](#), [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:38-40
- Deuteronomy 07:16
- [Jeremiah 03:23-25](#)
- [Job 07:8-10](#)
- Numbers 11:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H398, H402, H1086, H1104, H1197, H1497, H1846, H2000, H2628, H3615, H3617, H3631, H3857, H4127, H4529, H4743, H5486, H5487, H5595, H6244, H6789, H7332, H7646, H7829, H8046, H8552, G355, G1159, G2618, G2654, G2719, G5315, G5723

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 7:1-3](#)

court, courts, courtyard, courtyards

Definition:

The terms “courtyard” and “court” refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term “court” also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase “king’s court” can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh’s dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “courtyard” could be translated as “enclosed space” or “walled-in land” or “temple grounds” or “temple enclosure.”
- Sometimes the term “temple” may need to be translated as “temple courtyards” or “temple complex” so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” could be translated as, “place where Yahweh lives” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped.”
- The term used for a king’s court could also be used to refer to Yahweh’s court.

(See also: Gentile, [judge](#), [king](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:4-5
- Exodus 27:9-10
- [Jeremiah 19:14-15](#)
- [Luke 22:54-55](#)
- [Matthew 26:69-70](#)
- Numbers 03:24-26
- [Psalms 065:4](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1508, H2691, H5835, H6503, H7339, G833, G933, G2681, G4259

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 4:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 6:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 7:7
- 2 Chronicles 20:5-7
- 2 Chronicles 23:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 24:20-22
- 2 Chronicles 29:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 29:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 33:4-6

covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love

Definition:

This term is used to describe God's commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to his people.

- God made promises to the Israelites in formal agreements called "covenants."
- The "covenant faithfulness" or "covenant loyalty" of Yahweh refers to the fact that he keeps his promises to his people.
- God's faithfulness to keep his covenant promises is an expression of his grace toward his people.
- The term "loyalty" is another word that refers to being committed and dependable, to do and say what has been promised, and what will benefit someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- The way this term is translated will also depend on how the terms "covenant" and "faithfulness" are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term could include, "faithful love" or "loyal, committed love" or "loving dependability."

(See also: [covenant](#), [faithful](#), [grace](#), [Israel](#), [people of God](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

- [Ezra 03:10-11](#)
- [Numbers 14:17-19](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2617

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 1:8-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 6:14-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 6:40-42](#)
- [2 Chronicles 7:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 7:4-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20:20-21](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32:32-33](#)

covenant, covenants, new covenant

Definition:

A covenant is a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term “new covenant” refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God’s “new covenant” was explained in the part of the Bible called the “New Testament.”
- This new covenant is in contrast to the “old” or “former” covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people’s sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term “new covenant” could be translated as “new formal agreement” or “new pact” or “new contract.”

- The word “new” in these expressions has the meaning of “fresh” or “new kind of” or “another.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 09:11-13
- Genesis 17:7-8
- Genesis 31:43-44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- [Mark 14:22-25](#)
- [Luke 01:72-75](#)
- [Luke 22:19-20](#)
- [Acts 07:6-8](#)
- [1 Corinthians 11:25-26](#)
- [2 Corinthians 03:4-6](#)
- [Galatians 03:17-18](#)
- [Hebrews 12:22-24](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:09** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **05:04** “I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac.”
- **06:04** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **07:10** The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob.”
- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **13:04** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods.”
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:05** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.

- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G802, G1242, G4934

Uses:

- Introduction to 2 Chronicles
- 2 Chronicles 5:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 5:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 7:16-18
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 15:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 21:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 23 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 23:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 23:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 24:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 29:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 34:29-30

cow, cows, bull, bulls, calf, calves, cattle, heifer, ox, oxen**Definition:**

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [yoke](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 01:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:1-3
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 01:9-10
- [2 Chronicles 11:13-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15:10-11](#)
- [Matthew 22:4](#)
- [Luke 13:15-16](#)
- [Luke 14:4-6](#)
- [Hebrews 09:13-15](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H441, H504, H929, H1165, H1241, H1241, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H5697, H6499, H6499, H6510, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8377, H8450, H8450, G1016, G1151, G2353, G2934, G3447, G3448, G4165, G5022, G5022

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 4:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 4:14-16
- 2 Chronicles 11:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 26:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 29:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 29:32-33
- 2 Chronicles 30:23-24
- 2 Chronicles 35:7-9

crown, crowns, crowned

Definition:

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term to “crown” means to put a crown on someone’s head; figuratively it means, to “honor.”

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown was intended to be a symbol of a king’s power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus’ head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- Used figuratively, to “crown” means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
- Pauls calls fellow believers his “joy and crown.” In this expression, “crown” is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.
- When used figuratively, “crown” could be translated as “prize” or “honor” or “reward.”
- The figurative use of to “crown” could be translated as to “honor” or to “decorate.”
- If a person is “crowned” this could be translated as “a crown was put on his head.”
- The expression, “he was crowned with glory and honor” could be translated as, “glory and honor were bestowed on him” or “he was given glory and honor” or “he was endowed with glory and honor.”

(See also: [glory](#), [king](#), olive)

Bible References:

- [John 19:1-3](#)
- [Lamentations 05:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 27:27-29](#)
- [Philippians 04:1-3](#)
- [Psalms 021:3-4](#)
- [Revelation 03:9-11](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2213, H3803, H3804, H4502, H5145, H5849, H5850, H6936, G1238, G4735, G4737

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 23:10-11](#)

cry, cries, cried, crying, cry out, cries out, cried out, out, outcry, outcries**Definition:**

The terms “cry” or “cry out” often mean to say something loudly and urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain or in distress or in anger.

- The phrase “cry out” also means to shout or call out, often with the intent to ask for help.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as, “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: [call](#), [plead](#))

Bible References:

- [Job 27:8-10](#)
- [Mark 05:5-6](#)
- [Mark 06:48-50](#)
- [Psalm 022:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H603, H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7769, H7771, H7773, H7775, H8173, H8663, G310, G349, G863, G994, G995, G1916, G2019, G2799, G2805, G2896, G2905, G2906, G2929, G4377, G5455

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 32:20-21](#)

cure, cured, heal, heals, healed, healing, healings, healer, health, healthy, unhealthy

Definition:

The terms “heal” and “cure” both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is “healed” or “cured” has been “made well” or “made healthy.”
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions, such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases, such as leprosy, however do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased, and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.

(See also: [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 05:14-16](#)
- [Acts 08:6-8](#)
- [Luke 05:12-13](#)
- [Luke 06:17-19](#)
- [Luke 08:43-44](#)
- [Matthew 04:23-25](#)
- [Matthew 09:35-36](#)
- [Matthew 13:15](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***19:14** One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease. He had heard of Elisha so he went and asked Elisha to **heal** him. ***21:10** He (Isaiah) also predicted that the Messiah would **heal** sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk. ***26:06** Jesus continued saying, “And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not **heal** any of them. He only **healed** the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel’s enemies.” ***26:08** They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus **healed** them. ***32:14** She had heard that Jesus had **healed** many sick people and thought, “I’m sure that if I can just touch Jesus’ clothes, then I will be **healed**, too!” ***44:03** Immediately, God **healed** the

lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to praise God. *44:08 Peter answered them, "This man stands before you **healed** by the power of Jesus the Messiah." *49:02] Jesus did many miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, **healed** many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H724, H1369, H1455, H2280, H2421, H2896, H3444, H3545, H4832, H4974, H7495, H7499, H7500, H7725, H7965, H8549, H8585, H8644, H622, G1295, G1743, G2322, G2323, G2386, G2390, G2392, G2511, G3647, G4982, G4991, G5198, G5199

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 30:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 32:24-26

curse, cursed, curses, cursing

Definition:

The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as, “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as, “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as, “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- “Cursed be the day I was born” could also be translated as, “I am so miserable it would have been better not to be born.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- [2 Peter 02:12-14](#)
- [Galatians 03:10-12](#)
- [Galatians 03:13-14](#)
- Genesis 03:14-15
- Genesis 03:17-19
- [James 03:9-10](#)
- Numbers 22:5-6
- [Psalms 109:28-29](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:09** God said to the snake, "You are **cursed!**"
- **02:11** "Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food."
- **04:04** "I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you."
- **39:07** Then Peter vowed, saying, "May God **curse** me if I know this man!"
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G331, G332, G685, G1944, G2551, G2652, G2653, G2671, G2672, G6035

Uses:

- **2 Chronicles 34:23-25**

curtain, curtains

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “curtain” refers to a very thick, heavy piece of material used in the making of the tabernacle and the temple.

- The tabernacle was built using four layers of curtains for the top and sides. These curtain coverings were made of cloth or animal skins.
- Cloth curtains were also used to form a wall surrounding the tabernacle courtyard. These curtains were made out of “linen” which was a kind of cloth made out of the flax plant.
- In both the tabernacle and temple building, a thick cloth curtain hung between the holy place and the most holy place. It was this curtain that was miraculously torn into two parts when Jesus died.

Translation Suggestions:

- Since modern-day curtains are very different from the curtains used in the Bible, it may be more clear to use a different word or to add words that describe the curtains.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “curtain covering” or “covering” or “piece of thick cloth” or “animal skin covering” or “hanging piece of cloth.”

(See also: [holy place](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- [Hebrews 10:19-22](#)
- [Leviticus 04:16-17](#)
- [Luke 23:44-45](#)
- [Matthew 27:51-53](#)
- [Numbers 04:5-6](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1852, H3407, H4539, H6532, H7050, G2665

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 3:13-14](#)

cut off, cuts off, cutting off

Definition:

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, to “cut off” could be translated as, to “destroy” or to “send away” or to “separate from” or to “destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:12-14
- Judges 21:6-7
- [Proverbs 23:17-18](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1468, H1494, H1504, H1629, H1820, H1824, H1826, H2498, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6202, H6789, H6990, H7082, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G609, G851, G1581, G2407, G5257

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 26:21](#)

Cyrus

Facts:

Cyrus was a Persian king who founded the Persian empire in about 550 BC, through military conquest. In history he was also known as Cyrus the Great.

- King Cyrus conquered the city of Babylon, which led to the release of the Israelites who had been kept in exile there.
- Cyrus was known for his tolerant attitude toward the people of the nations he conquered. His kindness toward the Jews led to the rebuilding of the Jerusalem temple after the exile.
- Cyrus was reigning during the time when Daniel, Ezra, and Nehemiah were living.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Daniel, Darius, Ezra, Nehemiah, [Persia](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 36:22-23](#)
- [Daniel 01:19-21](#)
- [Ezra 05:12-13](#)
- [Isaiah 44:28](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3566

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 36:22-23](#)

Damascus

Facts:

Damascus is the capital city of the country of Syria. It is still in the same location as it was in Bible times.

- Damascus is one of the oldest, continuously inhabited cities in the world.
- During the time of Abraham, Damascus was the capital of the Aram kingdom (located in what is now Syria).
- Throughout the Old Testament, there are many references to the interactions between the inhabitants of Damascus and the people of Israel.
- Several biblical prophecies predict the destruction of Damascus. These prophecies may have been fulfilled when Assyria destroyed the city during Old Testament times, or there may be also be a future, more complete destruction of this city.
- In the New Testament, the Pharisee Saul (later known as Paul) was on his way to arrest Christians in the city of Damascus when Jesus confronted him and caused him to become a believer.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Aram](#), [Assyria](#), [believe](#), Syria)

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 24:23-24](#)
- [Acts 09:1-2](#)
- [Acts 09:3-4](#)
- [Acts 26:12-14](#)
- [Galatians 01:15-17](#)
- [Genesis 14:15-16](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1833, H1834, G1154

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 16:2-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24:23-24](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28:5-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28:22-23](#)

Dan

Facts:

Dan was the fifth son of Jacob and was one of the twelve tribes of Israel. The region settled by the tribe of Dan in the northern part of Canaan also was given this name.

- During the time of Abram, there was a city named Dan located west of Jerusalem.
- Years later, during the time the nation of Israel entered the promised land, a different city named Dan was located about 60 miles north of Jerusalem.
- The term “Danites” refers to the descendants of Dan, who were also members of his clan.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, [Jerusalem](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 12:34-35
- 1 Kings 04:24-25
- Exodus 01:1-5
- Genesis 14:13-14
- Genesis 30:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1835, H1839, H2051

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 2:13-14](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16:4-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30:4-5](#)

darkness

Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: corrupt, dominion, [kingdom](#), light, redeem, [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 John 02:7-8](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 05:4-7](#)
- [2 Samuel 22:10-12](#)
- [Colossians 01:13-14](#)
- [Isaiah 05:29-30](#)
- [Jeremiah 13:15-17](#)
- [Joshua 24:7](#)
- [Matthew 08:11-13](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H652, H653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, G2217, G4652, G4653, G4655, G4656

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 6:1-3](#)

David

Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Goliath, [Philistines](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:32-34
- 2 Samuel 05:1-2
- [2 Timothy 02:8-10](#)
- [Acts 02:25-26](#)
- [Acts 13:21-22](#)
- [Luke 01:30-33](#)
- [Mark 02:25-26](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***17:02** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God. ***17:03** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath. ***17:04** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul. ***17:05** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.

***17:06** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices. ***17:09** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God. ***17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was.

David repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G1138

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 1:1
- 2 Chronicles 2:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 5:1
- 2 Chronicles 6:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 6:40-42
- 2 Chronicles 7:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 10:16
- 2 Chronicles 11:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 17:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 21:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 21:12-15
- 2 Chronicles 21:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 23:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 23:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 28:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 29:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 29:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 30:25-27
- 2 Chronicles 33:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 34:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 35:3-4

day, days

Definition:

The term “day” literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

- For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
- Sometimes the term “day” is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “last days.”
- Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate “day” nonfiguratively.
- Other translations of “day” could include, “time” or “season” or “occasion” or “event,” depending on the context.

(See also: judgment day, last day)

Bible References:

- [Acts 20:4-6](#)
- [Daniel 10:4-6](#)
- [Ezra 06:13-15](#)
- [Ezra 06:19-20](#)
- [Matthew 09:14-15](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H3118, H6242, G2250

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 3:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10:12-14](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29:15-17](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30:13-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35:1-2](#)

deceive, deceives, deceived, deceiving, deceit, deceiver, deceivers, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitfulness, deception, deceiver

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit.”

- Another term “deception” also refers to the act of causing someone to believe something that is not true.
- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 01:8-10](#)
- [1 Timothy 02:13-15](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 02:3-4](#)
- Genesis 03:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- [Matthew 27:62-64](#)
- [Micah 06:11-12](#)

translation *Words deceive, deceives, deceived, deceiving, deceit, deceiver, deceivers, deceitful, deceitfully, deceitful*

{{tag>publish review}}

Word Data:

- Strong's: H898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H6121, H6231, H6280, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8501, H8582, H8591, H8649, G538, G539, G1386, G1387, G1388, G1389, G1818, G3884, G4105, G4106, G4108, G5422, G5423

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 32:13-15](#)

declare, declares, declared, declaring, declaration, declarations

Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something.

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: [proclaim](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:23-24
- [1 Corinthians 15:31-32](#)
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- [Amos 02:15-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 05:11-12](#)
- [Matthew 07:21-23](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H262, H559, H560, H816, H874, H952, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H6575, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G312, G394, G518, G669, G1107, G1213, G1229, G1335, G1344, G1555, G1718, G1732, G1834, G2097, G2511, G2605, G2607, G3140, G3670, G3724, G3822, G3853, G3870, G3955, G5319, G5419

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 6:22-23](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34:26-28](#)

decree, decrees, decreed

Definition:

A decree is a proclamation or law that is publicly declared to all the people.

- God's laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
- Like laws and commands, decrees must be obeyed.
- An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.
- To decree something means to give an order that must be obeyed. This could be translated as to "order" or to "command" or to "formally require" or to "publicly make a law."
- Something that is "decreed" to happen means that this "will definitely happen" or "has been decided upon and will not be changed" or "declared absolutely that this will happen."

(See also: [command](#), [declare](#), [law](#), [proclaim](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:13-15
- 1 Kings 08:57-58
- [Acts 17:5-7](#)
- [Daniel 02:12-13](#)
- [Esther 01:21-22](#)
- [Luke 02:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H633, H1697, H5715, H1504, H1510, H1881, H1882, H1696, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2711, H2782, H2852, H2940, H2941, H2942, H3791, H3982, H4055, H4406, H4941, H5407, H5713, H6599, H6680, H7010, H8421, G1378

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 7:16-18](#)
- [2 Chronicles 8:14-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18:22](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19:10](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23:10-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24:6-7](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33:7-9](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34:31-32](#)

dedicate, dedicates, dedicated, dedication

Definition:

To dedicate is to set apart or commit something for a special purpose or function.

- David dedicated his gold and silver to the Lord.
- Often the word “dedication” refers to a formal event or ceremony to set apart something for a special purpose.
- The dedication of the altar included offering a sacrifice to God.
- Nehemiah led the Israelites in a dedication of Jerusalem’s repaired walls with a renewed promise to serve only Yahweh and to take care of his city. This event included giving thanks to God with musical instruments and singing.
- The term “dedicate” could also be translated as “specially assign a special purpose” or “commit something to be used for a specific use” or “commit someone to do a special task.”

(See also: commit)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:11-12
- **1 Corinthians 06:9-11**
- 1 Kings 07:51
- **1 Timothy 04:3-5**
- **2 Chronicles 02:4-5**
- **John 17:18-19**
- **Luke 02:22-24**

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2596, H2597, H2598, H2764, H4394, H6942, H6944, G1456, G1457

Uses:

- **2 Chronicles 7:4-6**

descend, descends, descended, descending, descendant, descendants**Definition:**

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person’s descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob’s descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as “from the family line of.”

(See also: [Abraham](#), [ancestor](#), [Jacob](#), Noah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:4-5
- [Acts 13:23-25](#)
- Deuteronomy 02:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

***02:09** “The woman’s **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.” ***04:09** “I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.” ***05:10** “Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.” ***17:07** “Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants!**” ***18:13** The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David. ***21:04** God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own **descendants**. ***48:13** God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H319, H1004, H1121, H1323, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6849, H7611, H8435, G1074, G1085, G4690

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 6:16-17](#)
- [2 Chronicles 7:16-18](#)
- [2 Chronicles 8:7-8](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13:8-9](#)

- 2 Chronicles 20:5-7
- 2 Chronicles 20:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 21:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 23:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 31:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 32:32-33
- 2 Chronicles 35:5-6

desert, deserts, deserted, deserting, wilderness, wildernesses**Definition:**

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as “wilderness.”
- “Wilderness” conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as “deserted place” or “remote place” or “uninhabited place.”

Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:37-38
- Exodus 04:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 03:14-15
- Luke 01:80
- Luke 09:12-14
- Mark 01:1-3
- Matthew 04:1-4
- Matthew 11:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G2047, G2048

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 1:2
- 2 Chronicles 8:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 20:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 20:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 20:24
- 2 Chronicles 24:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 26:9-10

devour, devours, devoured, devouring

Definition:

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 05:8-9](#)
- [Amos 01:9-10](#)
- Exodus 24:16-18
- [Ezekiel 16:20-22](#)
- [Luke 15:28-30](#)
- [Matthew 23:13-15](#)
- [Psalms 021:9-10](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H399, H400, H402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G2068, G2666, G2719, G5315

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 7:13-15](#)

die, dies, died, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deaths, deathly

Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

1. Physical death

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person’s spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Spiritual death

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to “die” may be expressed as to “not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to “pass away” in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, physical life and death are often compared to spiritual life and death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and spiritual death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “spiritual death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: **nominal adjective**)

- The expression “put to death” could also be translated as “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [life](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 15:20-21](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 04:16-18](#)
- [Acts 10:42-43](#)
- [Acts 14:19-20](#)
- [Colossians 02:13-15](#)
- [Colossians 02:20-23](#)
- [Genesis 02:15-17](#)
- [Genesis 34:27-29](#)
- [Matthew 16:27-28](#)
- [Romans 05:10-11](#)
- [Romans 05:12-13](#)
- [Romans 06:10-11](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** “Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt.”
- **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:05** “Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**.”
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** “Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead.”
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**. *

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G336, G337, G520, G581, G599, G615, G622, G684, G1634, G1935, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G2966, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G4881, G5053, G5054

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 10:17-19](#)

- 2 Chronicles 13:16-18
- 2 Chronicles 13:19-22
- 2 Chronicles 15:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 16:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 18:33-34
- 2 Chronicles 20:24
- 2 Chronicles 21:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 22:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 22:10-12
- 2 Chronicles 24:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 25:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 25:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 26:21
- 2 Chronicles 32:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 32:32-33
- 2 Chronicles 33:24-25
- 2 Chronicles 35:23-24

donkey, mule

Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:32-34
- 1 Samuel 09:3-4
- 2 Kings 04:21-22
- Deuteronomy 05:12-14
- [Luke 13:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 21:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, H7409, G3678, G3688, G5268

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 9:22-24](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28:14-15](#)

drink offering

Definition:

A drink offering was a sacrifice to God that involved pouring wine on an altar. It was often offered together with a burnt offering and a grain offering.

- Paul refers to his life as being poured out like a drink offering. This means that he was totally dedicated to serving God and telling people about Jesus, even though he knew he would suffer and probably be killed because of that.
- Jesus' death on the cross was the ultimate drink offering, as his blood was poured out on the cross for our sins.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another way to translate this term could be “offering of grape wine.”
- When Paul says he is being “poured out like an offering” this could also be translated as “I am completely committed to teaching God’s message to people, just like an offering of wine is poured out completely on the altar.”

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [grain offering](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 25:28-30
- [Ezekiel 45:16-17](#)
- Genesis 35:14-15
- [Jeremiah 07:16-18](#)
- Numbers 05:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5257, H5261, H5262

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 29:35-36](#)

earth, earthen, earthly

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [metonymy](#))
- The expressions “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [spirit](#), world)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- [2 Chronicles 02:11-12](#)
- [Daniel 04:35](#)
- [Luke 12:51-53](#)
- [Matthew 06:8-10](#)
- [Matthew 11:25-27](#)
- [Zechariah 06:5-6](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2886, G3625, G3749, G4578, G5517

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 2:11-12](#)

- 2 Chronicles 6:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 6:32-33
- 2 Chronicles 9:22-24
- 2 Chronicles 16:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 32:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 36:22-23

Edom, Edomite, Edomites, Idumea

Facts:

Edom was another name for Esau. The region where he lived also became known as “Edom” and later, “Idumea.” The “Edomites” were his descendants.

- The region of Edom changed locations over time. It was mostly located to the south of Israel and eventually extended into southern Judah.
- During New Testament times, Edom covered the southern half of the province of Judea. The Greeks called it “Idumea.”
- The name “Edom” means “red,” which may refer to the fact that Esau was covered with red hair when he was born. Or it may refer to the red lentil stew that Esau traded his birthright for.
- In the Old Testament, the country of Edom is often mentioned as an enemy of Israel.
- The entire book of Obadiah is about the destruction of Edom. Other Old Testament prophets also spoke negative prophecies against Edom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [adversary](#), birthright, Esau, Obadiah, [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:29-30
- Genesis 32:3-5
- Genesis 36:1-3
- [Isaiah 11:14-15](#)
- Joshua 11:16-17
- [Obadiah 01:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H123, H130, H8165, G2401

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 8:17-18](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21:8-10](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25:14-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28:16-18](#)

Egypt, Egyptian, Egyptians

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 04:7-9
- [Acts 07:9-10](#)
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 41:27-29
- Genesis 41:55-57
- [Matthew 02:13-15](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:04** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **08:08** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **08:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to **Egypt** to buy food.
- **08:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **09:01** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4713, H4714, G124, G125

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 1:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 5:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 6:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 7:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 7:21-22
- 2 Chronicles 9:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 10:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 12:2-4
- 2 Chronicles 20:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 26:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 35:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 36:3-4

elder, elders

Definition:

Elders are spiritually mature men who have responsibilities of spiritual and practical leadership among God's people.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish elders continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian elders gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers.
- Elders in these churches included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 03:1-3
- 1 Timothy 04:14-16
- Acts 05:19-21
- Acts 14:23-26
- Mark 11:27-28
- Matthew 21:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 5:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 34:29-30

Elijah

Facts:

Elijah was one of the most important prophets of Yahweh. Elijah prophesied during the reigns of several kings of Israel and Judah, including King Ahab.

- God did many miracles through Elijah, including raising a dead boy back to life.
- Elijah rebuked King Ahab for worshiping the false god Baal.
- He challenged the prophets of Baal to a test that proved that Yahweh is the only true God.
- At the end of Elijah's life, God miraculously took him up to heaven while he was still alive.
- Hundreds of years later, Elijah, along with Moses, appeared with Jesus on a mountain, and they talked together about Jesus' coming suffering and death in Jerusalem.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [miracle](#), [prophet](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 17:1
- 2 Kings 01:3-4
- [James 05:16-18](#)
- [John 01:19-21](#)
- [John 01:24-25](#)
- [Mark 09:4-6](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***19:02 Elijah** was a prophet when Ahab was king over the kingdom of Israel. ***19:02 Elijah** said to Ahab, "There will be no rain or dew in the kingdom of Israel until I say so." ***19:03** God told **Elijah** to go to a stream in the wilderness to hide from Ahab who wanted to kill him. Every morning and every evening, birds would bring him bread and meat. ***19:04** But they took care of **Elijah**, and God provided for them so that their flour jar and their bottle of oil never became empty. ***19:05** After three and a half years, God told **Elijah** to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with Ahab because he was going to send rain again. ***19:07** Then **Elijah** said to the prophets of Baal, "Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire." ***19:12** Then **Elijah** said, "Do not let any of the prophets of Baal escape!" ***36:03** Then Moses and the prophet **Elijah** appeared. These men had lived hundreds of years before this. They talked with Jesus about his death that would soon happen in Jerusalem.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H452, G2243

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 21:12-15](#)

En Gedi

Definition:

En Gedi was the name of a city in the wilderness of Judah southeast of Jerusalem.

- En Gedi was located on the western bank of the Salt Sea.
- Part of its name means “fountain,” referring to a spring of water that flows down from the city into the sea.
- En Gedi was known for having beautiful vineyards and other fertile land, probably due to the continual watering by the fountain of water.
- There were strongholds in En Gedi which David fled to when he was being chased by King Saul.

(See also: [David](#), [desert](#), [fountain](#), [Judah](#), [rest](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#), [stronghold](#), [vineyard](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 20:1-2](#)
- [Song of Solomon 01:12-14](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5872

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 20:1-2](#)

enslave, enslaves, enslaved, servant, servants, slave, slaves, slaved, slavery, maidservants

Definition:

The word for “servant” can also mean “slave” and refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. The surrounding text usually makes it clear whether a person is a servant or a slave.

- In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master’s household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.
- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the Bible, the phrase “I am your servant” was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- Christians are also called “slaves to righteousness,” which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave’s commitment to obey his master.

(See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [commit](#), [enslave](#), [household](#), [lord](#), [obey](#), [righteous](#), [serve](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 04:29-31](#)
- [Acts 10:7-8](#)
- [Colossians 01:7-8](#)
- [Colossians 03:22-25](#)
- [Genesis 21:10-11](#)
- [Luke 12:47-48](#)
- [Mark 09:33-35](#)
- [Matthew 10:24-25](#)
- [Matthew 13:27-28](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac. ***08:04** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official. ***09:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt." ***19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**." ***29:03** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'" ***35:06** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving." ***47:04** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God. ***50:04** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G1249, G1401, G1402, G2324, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3816, G4983, G5257

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 1:2
- 2 Chronicles 2:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 6:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 6:40-42
- 2 Chronicles 8:17-18
- 2 Chronicles 9:10
- 2 Chronicles 10:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 12:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 13:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 18:25-27
- 2 Chronicles 24:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 24:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 25:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 28:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 29:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 32:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 32:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 33:24-25
- 2 Chronicles 34:14-16
- 2 Chronicles 35:23-24

Ephraim, Ephraimite, Ephraimites

Facts:

Ephraim was the second son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes that were located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- Ephraim was apparently a very mountainous or hilly area, based on references to “the hill country of Ephraim” or “the mountains of Ephraim.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [kingdom of Israel](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:66-69
- [2 Chronicles 13:4-5](#)
- [Ezekiel 37:15-17](#)
- Genesis 41:50-52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- [John 11:54-55](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H669, H673, G2187

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 13:4-5](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15:8-9](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17:1-2](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19:4-5](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25:7-8](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25:23-24](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28:7-8](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30:1](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31:1](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34:6-7](#)

epistle, letter, letters

Definition:

A letter is a written message sent to a person or group of persons who are usually a distance away from the writer. An epistle is a special type of letter, often written in a more formal style, for a special purpose, such as teaching.

- In New Testament times, epistles and other types of letters were written on parchment made from animal skins or on papyrus made from plant fibers.
- The New Testament epistles from Paul, John, James, Jude, and Peter were letters of instruction that they wrote to encourage, exhort, and teach the early Christians in various cities throughout the Roman Empire.
- Ways to translate this term could include “written message” or “written down words” or “writing.”

(See also: encourage, exhort, teach)

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 05:25-28](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 02:13-15](#)
- [Acts 09:1-2](#)
- [Acts 28:21-22](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H104, H107, H3791, H4385, H5406, H5407, H5612, H6600, G1121, G1989, G1992

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 30:1](#)

eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.
- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time. Sometimes it is used figuratively to mean “a very long time.”

- The term “forever and ever” emphasizes that something will always happen or exist.
- The phrase “forever and ever” is a way of expressing what eternity or eternal life is. It also has the idea of time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), [reign](#), [life](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:7-8
- Genesis 48:3-4
- Exodus 15:17-18
- 2 Samuel 03:28-30
- 1 Kings 02:32-33
- Job 04:20-21
- Psalms 021:3-4
- Isaiah 09:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 07:17-18
- Luke 18:18-21
- Acts 13:46-47
- Romans 05:20-21
- Hebrews 06:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 01:1-2
- 1 John 05:11-12
- Revelation 01:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?"
- **28:01** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, "Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God's laws."
- **28:10** Jesus answered, "Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name's sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G126, G165, G166, G1336

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 2:4-5

- 2 Chronicles 5:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 6:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 7:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 7:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 7:16-18
- 2 Chronicles 9:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 20:5-7
- 2 Chronicles 20:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 30:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 33:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 33:7-9

Ethiopia, Ethiopian

Facts:

Ethiopia is a country in Africa located just south of Egypt, bordered by the Nile River to the west and by the Red Sea to the east. A person from Ethiopia is an “Ethiopian.”

- Ancient Ethiopia was located south of Egypt and included land that is now part of several modern-day African countries, such as Sudan, modern Ethiopia, Somalia, Kenya, Uganda, Central African Republic, and Chad.
- In the Bible, Ethiopia is sometimes called “Cush” or “Nubia.”
- The countries of Ethiopia (“Cush”) and Egypt are often mentioned together in the Bible, perhaps because they were located next to each other and their people may have had some of the same ancestors.
- God sent Philip the evangelist to a desert where he shared the good news about Jesus with an Ethiopian eunuch.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Cush, [Egypt](#), eunuch, Philip)

Bible References:

- [Acts 08:26-28](#)
- [Acts 08:29-31](#)
- [Acts 08:32-33](#)
- [Acts 08:36-38](#)
- [Isaiah 18:1-2](#)
- [Nahum 03:8-9](#)
- [Zephaniah 03:9-11](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3568, H3569, H3571, G128

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 12:2-4](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14:9-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16:7-8](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21:16-17](#)

Euphrates River, the River

Facts:

The Euphrates is the name of one of the four rivers that flowed through the Garden of Eden. It is the river that is most often mentioned in the Bible.

- The modern day river named Euphrates is located in the Middle East and is the longest and most important river in Asia.
- Together with the Tigris River, the Euphrates borders a region of land known as Mesopotamia.
- The ancient city of Ur where Abraham came from was at the mouth of the Euphrates River.
- This river was one of the boundaries of the land that God promised to give to Abraham (Genesis 15:18).
- Sometimes the Euphrates is simply called “the River.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:7-9
- [2 Chronicles 09:25-26](#)
- Exodus 23:30-33
- Genesis 02:13-14
- [Isaiah 07:20-22](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5104, H6578, G2166

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 9:25-26](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35:20-21](#)

evil, wicked, wickedness

Definition:

The terms “evil” and “wicked” both refer to anything that is opposed to God’s holy character and will.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), demon)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:10-11
- [1 Timothy 06:9-10](#)
- [3 John 01:9-10](#)
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- [Job 01:1-3](#)
- [Job 08:19-20](#)
- Judges 09:55-57
- [Luke 06:22-23](#)
- [Matthew 07:11-12](#)
- [Proverbs 03:7-8](#)
- [Psalms 022:16-17](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”

- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **04:02** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **08:12** "You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!"
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:01** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:08** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:02** They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2617, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G92, G113, G459, G932, G987, G988, G1426, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2557, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G5337

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 6:36-39](#)
- [2 Chronicles 7:13-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12:13-14](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20:35-37](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21:6-7](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24:6-7](#)
- [2 Chronicles 27:1-2](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28:19-21](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33:21-23](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36:5-7](#)

ewe, ewes, ram, rams, sheep, sheepfold, sheepfolds, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [lamb](#), [sacrifice](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 08:32-33](#)
- [Genesis 30:31-32](#)
- [John 02:13-14](#)
- [Luke 15:3-5](#)
- [Mark 06:33-34](#)
- [Matthew 09:35-36](#)
- [Matthew 10:5-7](#)
- [Matthew 12:11-12](#)
- [Matthew 25:31-33](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:08** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G4165, G4262, G4263

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 5:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 7:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 14:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 17:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 18:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 29:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 29:32-33
- 2 Chronicles 30:23-24
- 2 Chronicles 31:6-8

exile, exiles, exiled

Definition:

The term “exile” refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The “Babylonian exile” (or “the exile”) is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase “the exiles” refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “exile” could also be translated as to “send away” or to “force out” or to “banish.”
- The term “the exile” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the sent away time” or “the time of banishment” or “the time of forced absence” or “banishment.”
- Ways to translate “the exiles” could include “the exiled people” or “the people who were banished” or “the people exiled to Babylon.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Judah](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 24:13-14
- [Daniel 02:25-26](#)
- [Ezekiel 01:1-3](#)
- [Isaiah 20:3-4](#)
- [Jeremiah 29:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1541, H1546, H1547, H3212, H3318, H5080, H6808, H7617, H7622, H8689, G3927

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 6:36-39](#)

face, faces, faced, facing, facial, facedown**Definition:**

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 05:4-6
- Genesis 33:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H600, H639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 6:40-42
- 2 Chronicles 7:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 30:7-9

faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”
- Depending on the context, “unfaithful” could be translated as “not faithful” or “unbelieving” or “not obedient” or “not loyal.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- The term “unfaithfulness” could be translated as “disobedience” or “disloyalty” or “not believing or obeying.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: adultery, [believe](#), disobey, faith, [believe](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40-42
- Numbers 12:6-8
- Joshua 02:14

- Judges 02:16-17
- 1 Samuel 02:9
- Psalm 012:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 01:26
- Jeremiah 09:7-9
- Hosea 05:5-7
- Luke 12:45-46
- Luke 16:10-12
- Colossians 01:7-8
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23-24
- 3 John 01:5-8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:09** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!'"
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:04** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G569, G571, G4103

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 12:2-4
- 2 Chronicles 19:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 31:11-13
- 2 Chronicles 31:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 32:1
- 2 Chronicles 34:12-13

family, families

Definition:

The term “family” refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. It often also includes other relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- The Hebrew family was a religious community passing on traditions through worship and instruction.
- Usually the father was the major authority of the family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as “clan” or “household” that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The term “family” is also used to refer to people who are related spiritually, such as people who are part of God’s family because they believe in Jesus.

(See also: clan, [ancestor](#), [house](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 18:17-18
- Exodus 01:20-22
- Joshua 02:12-13
- [Luke 02:4-5](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H251, H272, H504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, G1085, G3614, G3624, G3965

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 5:2-3](#)

famine, famines

Definition:

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
- In the Bible, God often caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- [Acts 07:11-13](#)
- Genesis 12:10-13
- Genesis 45:4-6
- [Jeremiah 11:21-23](#)
- [Luke 04:25-27](#)
- [Matthew 24:6-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G3042

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 6:28-31](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32:11-12](#)

fast, fasts, fasted, fasting, fastings

Definition:

The term to “fast” means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb to “fast” can also be translated as to “refrain from eating” or to “not eat.”
- The noun “fast” could be translated as “time of not eating” or “time of abstaining from food.”

(See also: Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 20:3-4
- Acts 13:1-3
- Jonah 03:4-5
- Luke 05:33-35
- Mark 02:18-19
- Matthew 06:16-18
- Matthew 09:14-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:01** Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness, where he **fasted** for forty days and forty nights.
- **34:08** ”For example, I **fast** two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.”
- **46:10** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were **fasting** and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, “Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G777, G3521, G3522, G3523

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 20:3-4

favor, favors, favorable, favoritism

Definition:

To “favor” is to prefer. When someone favors a person, he regards that person positively and does more to benefit that person than he does to benefit others.

- The term “favoritism” means the attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.
- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means they approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.
- A “favor” can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include, “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite,” which means “the one who is preferred or loved best.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 01:11
- Acts 24:26-27
- Genesis 41:14-16
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Genesis 50:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5869, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H6491, H7521, H7522, H7965, G1184, G3685, G4380, G5485, G5486

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 6:36-39
- 2 Chronicles 19:6-7

fear, fears, afraid

Definition:

The terms “fear” and “afraid” refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term “fear” can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase “fear of Yahweh,” as well as related terms “fear of God” and “fear of the Lord,” refer to a deep respect of God and the showing of that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “fear” can be translated as to “be afraid” or to “deeply respect” or to “revere” or to “be in awe of.”
- The term “afraid” could be translated as “terrified” or “scared” or “fearful.”
- The sentence “The fear of God fell on all of them” could be translated as “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- Note that the phrase “fear of Yahweh” does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase “fear of the Lord” or “fear of the Lord God” is used instead.

(See also: [marvel](#), awe, [Lord](#), [power](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 04:17-18](#)
- [Acts 02:43-45](#)
- [Acts 19:15-17](#)
- [Genesis 50:18-21](#)
- [Isaiah 11:3-5](#)
- [Job 06:14-17](#)
- [Jonah 01:8-10](#)
- [Luke 12:4-5](#)
- [Matthew 10:28-31](#)
- [Proverbs 10:24-25](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H367, H926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032,

H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1630, G1719, G2124, G2125, G2962, G5398, G5399, G5400, G5401

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 6:28-31](#)
- [2 Chronicles 6:32-33](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19:6-7](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20:3-4](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32:6-8](#)

feast, feasts, feasting

Definition:

The term “feast” refers to an event where a group of people eat a very large meal together, often for the purpose of celebrating something. The action to “feast” means to eat a large amount of food or to participate in eating a feast together.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In Bible times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- A feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.
- The term to “feast” could also be translated as to “eat lavishly” or to “celebrate by eating lots of food” or to “eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: [festival](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Peter 02:12-14](#)
- [Genesis 26:30-31](#)
- [Genesis 29:21-22](#)
- [Genesis 40:20-23](#)
- [Jude 01:12-13](#)
- [Luke 02:41-44](#)
- [Luke 14:7-9](#)
- [Matthew 22:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H2077, H2282, H2287, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4580, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G26, G755, G1062, G1173, G1403, G1456, G1858, G1859, G2165, G3521, G4910

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 5:2-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 7:8-10](#)

fellowship offering, fellowship offerings

Facts:

In the Old Testament, the “fellowship offering” was a kind of sacrifice that was offered for different reasons, such as to give thanks to God or to fulfill a vow.

- This offering required the sacrifice of an animal that could be male or female. This was different from the burnt offering, which required a male animal.
- After giving a portion of the sacrifice to God, the person who brought the fellowship offering shared the meat with the priests and other Israelites.
- There was a meal associated with this offering which included unleavened bread.
- This is sometimes called the “peace offering.”

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [fulfill](#), [grain offering](#), [guilt offering](#), [peace offering](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), [unleavened bread](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 21:25-27](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29:35-36](#)
- [Exodus 24:5-6](#)
- [Leviticus 03:3-5](#)
- [Numbers 06:13-15](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8002

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 7:7](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29:35-36](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30:21-22](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31:2-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33:16-17](#)

festival, festivals

Definition:

In general, a festival is a celebration held by a community of people.

- The word for “festival” in the Old Testament literally means “appointed time.”
- The festivals celebrated by the Israelites were specially appointed times or seasons that God had commanded them to observe.
- In some English translations, the word “feast” is used instead of festival because the celebrations included having a large meal together.
- There were several main festivals that the Israelites celebrated every year:
 - Passover
 - Festival of Unleavened Bread
 - Firstfruits
 - Festival of Weeks (Pentecost)
 - Festival of Trumpets
 - Day of Atonement
 - Festival of Shelters
- The purpose of these festivals was to thank God and to remember the amazing things he had done to rescue, protect, and provide for his people.

(See also: [feast](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:30-31
- [2 Chronicles 08:12-13](#)
- Exodus 05:1-2
- [John 04:43-45](#)
- [Luke 22:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1974, H2166, H2282, H2287, H6213, H4150, G1456, G1858, G1859

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 2:4-5](#)
- [2 Chronicles 7:8-10](#)
- [2 Chronicles 8:12-13](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30:13-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35:16-17](#)

fire, fires, firebrands, firepans, fireplaces, firepot, firepots

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: [pure](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 01:9-10
- [2 Thessalonians 01:6-8](#)
- [Acts 07:29-30](#)
- [John 15:5-7](#)
- [Luke 03:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 03:10-12](#)
- [Nehemiah 01:3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H215, H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 7:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16:13-14](#)

firstfruits

Definition:

The term “firstfruits” refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the “firstfruits” of all believers in him, believers who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the “firstfruits” of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal use of this term could be translated as “first portion (of crops)” or “first part of the harvest.”
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: firstborn)

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 31:4-5](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 02:13-15](#)
- Exodus 23:16-17
- [James 01:17-18](#)
- [Jeremiah 02:1-3](#)
- [Psalms 105:34-36](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H6529, H7225, G536

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 31:4-5](#)

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kin-folk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

Bible References:

- [1 John 02:15-17](#)
- [2 John 01:7-8](#)
- [Ephesians 06:12-13](#)
- [Galatians 01:15-17](#)
- [Genesis 02:24-25](#)
- [John 01:14-15](#)
- [Matthew 16:17-18](#)
- [Romans 08:6-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4560, G4561

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 32:6-8](#)

flocks, flock, flocking, herd, herds**Definition:**

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle, oxen, or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- For example, in English the term “herd” can also be used for sheep or goats, but in the Bible text it is not used this way.
- The term “flock” in English is also used for a group of birds, but it can not be used for pigs, oxen, or cattle.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals.
- For verses that refer to “flocks and herds” it may be better to add “of sheep” or “of cattle” for example, if the language does not have different words to refer to different kinds of animal groups.

(See also: [goat](#), ox, pig, [sheep](#),)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- [2 Chronicles 17:10-11](#)
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- [Luke 02:8-9](#)
- [Matthew 08:30-32](#)
- [Matthew 26:30-32](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G34, G4167, G4168

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 17:10-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32:27-29](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35:7-9](#)

fool, fools, foolish, folly

Definition:

The term “fool” refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term “foolish” describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

- In the Bible, the term “fool” usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
- In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
- The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
- The term “folly” refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God’s will. Often “folly” also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “fool” could be translated as “foolish person” or “unwise person” or “senseless person” or “ungodly person.”
- Ways to translate “foolish” could include “lacking understanding” or “unwise” or “senseless.”

(See also: [wise](#))

Bible References:

- [Ecclesiastes 01:16-18](#)
- [Ephesians 05:15-17](#)
- [Galatians 03:1-3](#)
- [Genesis 31:26-28](#)
- [Matthew 07:26-27](#)
- [Matthew 25:7-9](#)
- [Proverbs 13:15-16](#)
- [Psalms 049:12-13](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H191, H196, H200, H1198, H1984, H2973, H3684, H3687, H3688, H3689, H3690, H5034, H5036, H5039, H5528, H5529, H5530, H5531, H6612, H8417, H8602, H8604, G453, G454, G781, G801, G877, G878, G3471, G3472, G3473, G3474, G3912

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 16:9-10](#)

footstool

Definition:

The term “footstool” refers to an object which a person puts his feet on, usually to rest them while sitting. This term also has figurative meanings of submission and lower status.

- People in Bible times considered feet to be the least honorable parts of the body. So a “footstool” was of even lower honor because feet were rested on it.
- When God says “I will make my enemies a footstool for my feet” he is declaring power, control, and victory over the people who rebel against him. They will be humbled and conquered to the point of submitting to God’s will.
- To “worship at God’s footstool” means to bow down in worship before him as he sits on his throne. This again communicates humility and submission to God.
- David refers to the temple as God’s “footstool.” This could refer to his absolute authority over his people. This could also be picturing God the King on his throne, with his feet resting on his footstool, which represents all that is in submission to him.

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:47-50](#)
- [Isaiah 66:1](#)
- [Luke 20:41-44](#)
- [Matthew 05:33-35](#)
- [Matthew 22:43-44](#)
- [Psalm 110:1](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1916, H3534, H7272, G4228, G5286

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 9:17-18](#)

forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness, pardon, pardoned

Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. “Forgiveness” is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean “cancel,” as in the expression “forgive a debt.”
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus’ sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

The term “pardon” means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as “forgive” but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “forgive” could be translated as “pardon” or “cancel” or “release” or “not hold against” (someone).
- The term “forgiveness” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “practice of not resenting” or “declaring (someone) as not guilty” or “the act of pardoning.”
- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate “pardon.”

(See also: [guilt](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 50:15-17
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Deuteronomy 29:20-21
- Joshua 24:19-20
- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- [Psalms 025:10-11](#)
- [Psalms 025:17-19](#)
- [Isaiah 55:6-7](#)
- [Isaiah 40:1-2](#)
- [Luke 05:20-21](#)

- Acts 08:20-23
- Ephesians 04:31-32
- Colossians 03:12-14
- 1 John 02:12-14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:10** But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- **13:15** Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- **17:13** David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.
- **29:01** One day Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?"
- **29:08** I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins.

Word Data:

- H5546, H5547, H3722, H5375, H5545, H5547, H7521, G859, G863, G5483

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 6:21
- 2 Chronicles 6:28-31
- 2 Chronicles 7:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 30:18-20

forsake, forsakes, forsaken, forsook

Definition:

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used in the past tense, as in “he has forsaken you” or as in referring to someone who has “been forsaken.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:11-13
- [Daniel 11:29-30](#)
- Genesis 24:26-27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- [Matthew 27:45-47](#)
- [Proverbs 27:9-10](#)
- [Psalms 071:17-18](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G646, G657, G863, G1459, G2641,

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 7:19-20](#)

- 2 Chronicles 7:21-22
- 2 Chronicles 12:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 13:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 15:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 21:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 24:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 24:20-22
- 2 Chronicles 28:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 29:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 34:23-25

found, founded, founder, foundation, foundations

Definition:

The verb “found” means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase “founded on” means supported by or based on. A “foundation” is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.” (See also: cornerstone, create)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- Luke 14:28-30
- Matthew 13:34-35
- Matthew 25:34-36

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H134, H787, H803, H808, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H6884, H8356, G2310, G2311, G2602

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3

- 2 Chronicles 8:16
- 2 Chronicles 23:4-5

fountain, fountains, spring, springs, springing

Definition:

The terms “fountain” and “spring” usually refer to a large amount of water that flows out naturally from the ground.

- These words are also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to blessings flowing from God or to refer to something that cleanses and purifies.
- In modern times, a fountain is often a manmade object that has water flowing out of it, such as a drinking fountain. Make sure that the translation of this term refers to a natural source of flowing water.
- Compare the translation of this term with how the term “flood” is translated.

(See also: flood)

Bible References:

- [2 Peter 02:17-19](#)
- Genesis 07:11-12
- Genesis 08:1-3
- Genesis 24:12-14
- Genesis 24:42-44
- [James 03:11-12](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H794, H953, H1530, H1543, H1876, H3222, H4002, H4161, H4456, H4599, H4726, H5033, H5869, H5927, H6524, H6779, H6780, H7823, H8444, H8666, G242, G305, G393, G985, G1530, G1816, G4077, G4855, G5453

freewill offering, freewill offerings

Definition:

A freewill offering was a type of sacrifice to God that was not required by the Law of Moses. It was a person's own choice to give this offering.

- If the freewill offering was an animal to be sacrificed, the animal was permitted to have slight defects since it was a voluntary offering.
- The Israelites ate the sacrificed animal as part of a celebration feast.
- When a freewill offering could be given, this was a cause of rejoicing for Israel since it showed that the harvest had been good so that the people had plenty of food.
- The book of Ezra describes a different type of freewill offering that was brought for rebuilding the temple. This offering consisted of gold and silver money, as well as bowls and other objects made of gold and silver.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), Ezra, [feast](#), [grain offering](#), guilt offering, [law](#), [sin offering](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:6-7
- [2 Chronicles 35:7-9](#)
- Deuteronomy 12:17
- Exodus 36:2-4
- Leviticus 07:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5068, H5071

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 31:14-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35:7-9](#)

fruit, fruits, fruitful, unfruitful**Definition:**

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces—”that is children.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural, “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a woman gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elizabeth says to Mary “blessed is the fruit of your womb,” she means “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression “fruit of the vine,” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”

- The apostle Paul’s expression “fruitful labor” could be translated as “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [grain](#), grape, [Holy Spirit](#), [vine](#), womb)

Bible References:

- [Galatians 05:22-24](#)
- [Genesis 01:11-13](#)
- [Luke 08:14-15](#)
- [Matthew 03:7-9](#)
- [Matthew 07:15-17](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3, H4, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2173, H2233, H2981, H3206, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H4395, H5108, H5208, H6500, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8256, H8393, H8570, G1081, G2590, G2592, G2593, G3703, G5052, G5352, G6013

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 26:9-10](#)

fulfill, fulfilled

Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), Christ, minister, [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:26-27
- [Acts 03:17-18](#)
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- [Luke 04:20-22](#)
- [Matthew 01:22-23](#)
- [Matthew 05:17-18](#)
- [Psalms 116:12-15](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:04** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **40:03** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **42:07** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **43:05** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:07** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”

- **44:05** "Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1214, H5487, G1096, G4138

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36:20-21](#)

Gad

Facts:

Gad was one of the sons of Jacob. Jacob was also named Isreal.

- Gad's family became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- Another man in the Bible named Gad was a prophet who confronted King David for his sin of taking a census of the Israelite people.
- The names of the cities Baalgad and Migdalgad are each two words in the original text and are sometimes written "Baal Gad" and "Migdal Gad."

(Translation suggestions:[How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: census, [prophet](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:18-19
- Exodus 01:1-5
- Genesis 30:9-11
- Joshua 01:12-13
- Joshua 21:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1410, H1425, G1045

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 29:25-26](#)

gate, gates, gate bars, gatekeeper, gatekeepers, gateposts, gateway, gateways

Definition:

A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place to lock the gate.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made, because city walls were thick enough to have gateways that produced cool shade from the hot sun. Citizens found it pleasant to sit in the shade to conduct their business and even to judge legal cases.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:

- [Acts 09:23-25](#)
- [Acts 10:17-18](#)
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Genesis 24:59-60
- [Matthew 07:13-14](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, H8651, G2374, G4439, G4440

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 6:28-31](#)
- [2 Chronicles 8:5-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14:7-8](#)

- 2 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 23:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 23:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 25:23-24
- 2 Chronicles 26:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 27:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 31:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 35:15

Gath, Gittite, Gittites

Facts:

Gath was one of the five major cities of the Philistines. It was located north of Ekron and east of Ashdod and Ashkelon.

- The Philistine warrior Goliath was from the city of Gath.
- During the time of Samuel, the Philistines stole the ark of the covenant from Israel and took it to their pagan temple at Ashdod. It was then moved to Gath and later to Ekron. But God punished the people of those cities with disease, so they sent it back to Israel again.
- When David was escaping from King Saul, he fled to Gath and lived there awhile with his two wives and with six hundred men who were his loyal followers.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ashdod](#), Ashkelon, Ekron, Gaza, Goliath, [Philistines](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:39-40
- 1 Samuel 05:8-9
- [2 Chronicles 26:6-8](#)
- Joshua 11:21-22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1661, H1663

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 26:6-8](#)

Gerar

Facts:

Gerar was a city and region in the land of Canaan, located southwest of Hebron and northwest of Beersheba.

- King Abimelech was the ruler of Gerar when Abraham and Sarah settled there.
- The Philistines dominated the region of Gerar during the time that the Israelites were living in Canaan.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Abimelech, [Beersheba](#), [Hebron](#), [Philistines](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 14:12-13](#)
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1642

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 14:12-13](#)

Gibeon, Gibeonite, Gibeonites

Facts:

Gibeon was a city that was located about 13 kilometers northwest of Jerusalem. The people living in Gibeon were the Gibeonites.

- When the Gibeonites heard about how the Israelites had destroyed the cities of Jericho and Ai, they were afraid.
- So the Gibeonites came to the leaders of Israel at Gilgal and pretended to be people from a far-away country.
- The Israelite leaders were deceived and made an agreement with the Gibeonites that they would protect them and not destroy them.

(See also: Gilgal, [Jericho](#), [Jerusalem](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 08:29-31
- 1 Kings 03:4-5
- 2 Samuel 02:12-13
- Joshua 09:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

***15:06** But one of the Canaanite people groups, called the **Gibeonites**, lied to Joshua and said they were from a place far from Canaan.

***15:07** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the Amorites, heard that the **Gibeonites** had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked **Gibeon**.

***15:08** So Joshua gathered the Israelite army and they marched all night to reach the **Gibeonites**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1391, H1393

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 1:2](#)

gift, gifts

Definition:

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 12:1-3](#)
- [2 Samuel 11:6-8](#)
- [Acts 08:20-23](#)
- [Acts 10:3-6](#)
- [Acts 11:17-18](#)
- [Acts 24:17-19](#)
- [James 01:17-18](#)
- [John 04:9-10](#)
- [Matthew 05:23-24](#)
- [Matthew 08:4](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4979, H4991, H5078, H5083, H5379, H7810, H8641, G334, G1390, G1394, G1431, G1434, G1435, G3311, G5486

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 2:11-12](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32:22-23](#)

Gilead, Gileadite, Gileadites

Definition:

Gilead was the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region was also referred to as the “hill country of Gilead” or “Mount Gilead.”
- “Gilead” was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Gad](#), Jephthah, [Manasseh](#), Reuben, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:21-22
- 1 Samuel 11:1-2
- [Amos 01:3-4](#)
- Deuteronomy 02:36-37
- Genesis 31:19-21
- Genesis 37:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1568, H1569

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 18:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18:12-14](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22:4-5](#)

glory, glorious, glorify, glorifies

Definition:

In general, the term “glory” means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be “glorious.”

- Sometimes “glory” refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression “glory of the shepherds” refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

The term “glorify” means to show or tell how great and important something or someone is. It literally means to “give glory to.”

- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done.
- They can also glorify God by living in a way that honors him and shows how great and magnificent he is.
- When the Bible says that God glorifies himself, it means that he reveals to people his amazing greatness, often through miracles.
- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to people the Son’s perfection, splendor, and greatness.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. When they are raised to life, they will be changed to reflect his glory and to display his grace to all creation.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “brightness” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as, “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: exalt, **obey**, **praise**)

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:16-18
- Numbers 14:9-10
- **Isaiah 35:1-2**
- **Luke 18:42-43**
- **Luke 02:8-9**
- **John 12:27-29**
- **Acts 03:13-14**
- **Acts 07:1-3**
- **Romans 08:16-17**
- **1 Corinthians 06:19-20**
- **Philippians 02:14-16**
- **Philippians 04:18-20**
- **Colossians 03:1-4**
- **1 Thessalonians 02:5-6**
- **James 02:1-4**
- **1 Peter 04:15-16**
- **Revelation 15:3-4**

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, "**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!"
- **25:06** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **37:01** When Jesus heard this news, he said, "This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God."
- **37:08** Jesus responded, "Did I not tell you that you would see God's **glory** if you believe in me?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H142, H155, H215, H1342, H1921, H1922, H1925, H1926, H1935, H1984, H2892, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G1391, G1392, G1740, G1741, G2620, G2744, G2745, G2746, G2755, G2811, G4888

Uses:

- **2 Chronicles 5:13-14**

- 2 Chronicles 7:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 20:20-21

goat, goats, goatskins, scapegoat, kids

Definition:

A goat is a medium-sized, four-legged animal which is similar to a sheep and is raised primarily for its milk and meat. A baby goat is called a “kid.”

- Like sheep, goats were important animals of sacrifice, especially at Passover.
- Although goats and sheep can be very similar, these are some ways that they are different:
- Goats have coarse hair; sheep have wool.
- The tail of a goat stands up; the tail of a sheep hangs down.
- Sheep usually like to stay with their herd, but goats are more independent and tend to wander away from their herd.
- In Bible times, goats were often the main source of milk in Israel.
- Goat skins were used for tent coverings and to make bags for holding wine.
- In both the Old and New Testaments, the goat was used as a symbol for unrighteous people, perhaps because of its tendency to wander away from the one taking care of it.
- The Israelites also used goats as symbolic sin bearers. When one goat was sacrificed, the priest would lay his hands on a second, live goat, and send it into the desert as a symbol that the animal was bearing the people’s sins.

(See also: [flock](#), [sacrifice](#), [sheep](#), [righteous](#), [wine](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:3-4
- Genesis 30:31-32
- Genesis 31:10-11
- Genesis 37:31-33
- Leviticus 03:12-14
- [Matthew 25:31-33](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H689, H1423, H1429, H1601, H3277, H3629, H5795, H5796, H6260, H6629, H6842, H6939, H7716, H8163, H8166, H8495, G122, G2055, G2056, G5131

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 7:4-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11:13-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15:10-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17:10-11](#)

- 2 Chronicles 29:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 30:23-24

God

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being.”
- Other ways to translate “God” could be “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: create, [false god](#), God the Father, [Holy Spirit](#), [false god](#), Son of God, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 Samuel 10:7-8](#)
- [1 Timothy 04:9-10](#)
- [Colossians 01:15-17](#)
- [Deuteronomy 29:14-16](#)
- [Ezra 03:1-2](#)

- Genesis 01:1-2
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:18-20
- Jeremiah 05:4-6
- John 01:1-3
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Micah 04:4-5
- Philippians 02:5-8
- Proverbs 24:11-12
- Psalms 047:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **09:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:02** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:09** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:01** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:09** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H136, H305, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G1096, G1140, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2305, G2312, G2313, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G3361, G3785, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 1:1
- 2 Chronicles 1:2
- 2 Chronicles 2:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 6:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 6:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 6:40-42
- 2 Chronicles 9:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 9:22-24
- 2 Chronicles 10:15
- 2 Chronicles 11:2-4
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 13:12
- 2 Chronicles 14:1-4
- 2 Chronicles 15:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 16:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 17:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 18:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 18:12-14
- 2 Chronicles 19:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 20:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 20:29-30
- 2 Chronicles 21:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 22:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 24:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 25:20-22
- 2 Chronicles 26:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 26:16-18
- 2 Chronicles 27:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 29:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 30:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 31:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 34:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 34:23-25
- 2 Chronicles 35:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 36:5-7
- 2 Chronicles 36:13-14

god, false god, gods, goddess, idol, idols, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), [Asherah](#), [Baal](#), Molech, demon, [image](#), [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:1-3

- Exodus 32:1-2
- Psalms 031:5-7
- Psalms 081:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 07:41-42
- Acts 07:43
- Acts 15:19-21
- Acts 19:26-27
- Romans 02:21-22
- Galatians 04:8-9
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Colossians 03:5-8
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H367, H410, H426, H430, H457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G1493, G1494, G1495, G1496, G1497, G2299, G2712

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 2:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 07 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 11:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 24 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 24:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 24:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 25 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 25:14-15

- 2 Chronicles 28 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 28:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 32:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 33 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 33:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 34:23-25

gold, golden

Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [false god](#), [silver](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 01:6-7](#)
- [1 Timothy 02:8-10](#)
- [2 Chronicles 01:14-15](#)
- [Acts 03:4-6](#)
- [Daniel 02:31-33](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1222, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H4062, H5458, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 1:14-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 2:6-7](#)
- [2 Chronicles 3:4-5](#)
- [2 Chronicles 4:7-8](#)
- [2 Chronicles 4:19-21](#)
- [2 Chronicles 5:1](#)

- 2 Chronicles 8:17-18
- 2 Chronicles 9:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 9:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 12:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 15:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 16:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 21:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 24:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 25:23-24
- 2 Chronicles 32:27-29
- 2 Chronicles 36:3-4

good, goodness

Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [evil](#), [holy](#), profit, [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- [Galatians 05:22-24](#)
- [Genesis 01:11-13](#)
- [Genesis 02:9-10](#)
- [Genesis 02:15-17](#)
- [James 03:13-14](#)
- [Romans 02:3-4](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:04** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **01:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- **01:12** Then God said, ”It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **02:04** ”God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **08:12** ”You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good!**”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **28:01** ”**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, ”Why do you call me ’**good?**’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H117, H145, H155, H202, H239, H410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1380, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2114, G2115, G2133, G2140, G2162, G2163, G2174, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2887, G2986, G3140, G3617, G3776, G4147, G4632, G4674, G4851, G5223, G5224, G5358, G5542, G5543, G5544

Uses:

- **2 Chronicles 6:40-42**
- **2 Chronicles 7:1-3**
- **2 Chronicles 7:8-10**
- **2 Chronicles 10:6-7**
- **2 Chronicles 30:18-20**
- **2 Chronicles 31:20-21**
- **2 Chronicles 35:26**

govern, government, governments, governor, governors, proconsul, proconsuls

Definition:

A “governor” is a person who rules over a state, region, or territory. To “govern” means to guide, lead, or manage them.

- The term “proconsul” was a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
- In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
- A “government” consists of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “governor” can also be translated as “ruler” or “overseer” or “regional leader” or “one who rules over a small territory.”
- Depending on the context, the term “govern” could also be translated as, “rule over” or “lead” or “manage” or supervise.”
- The term “governor” should be translated differently than the terms for “king” or “emperor”, since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
- The term “proconsul” could also be translated as, “Roman governor” or “Roman provincial ruler.”

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [power](#), province, Rome, [ruler](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:9-10](#)
- [Acts 23:22-24](#)
- [Acts 26:30-32](#)
- [Mark 13:9-10](#)
- [Matthew 10:16-18](#)
- [Matthew 27:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H324, H1777, H2142, H2280, H2710, H4951, H5148, H5460, H6346, H6347, H6486, H6664, H7989, H8269, H8660, G445, G446, G746, G1481, G2232, G2233, G2230, G4232

translationWords *govern, government, governments, governor, governors, proconsul, proconsuls*

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 9:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 18:25-27
- 2 Chronicles 23:20-21

grace, gracious

Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

Bible References:

- [Acts 04:32-33](#)
- [Acts 06:8-9](#)
- [Acts 14:3-4](#)
- [Colossians 04:5-6](#)
- [Colossians 04:18](#)
- [Genesis 43:28-29](#)
- [James 04:6-7](#)
- [John 01:16-18](#)
- [Philippians 04:21-23](#)
- [Revelation 22:20-21](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G2143, G5485, G5543

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 30:7-9](#)

grain offering, grain offerings

Definition:

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [guilt offering](#) , [sacrifice](#), [sin offering](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:27-29
- Exodus 29:41-42
- Judges 13:19-20
- Leviticus 02:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4503, H8641

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 7:7](#)

grain, grains, grainfields

Definition:

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](#), [wheat](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 42:1-4
- Genesis 42:26-28
- Genesis 43:1-2
- [Luke 06:1-2](#)
- [Mark 02:23-24](#)
- [Matthew 13:7-9](#)
- Ruth 01:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H1430, H1715, H2233, H2591, H3759, H3899, H7054, H7383, H7641, H7668, G248, G2590, G3450, G4621, G4719

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 31:4-5](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32:27-29](#)

grave, gravediggers, graves, tomb, tombs, burial place

Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](#), [death](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 02:29-31](#)
- [Genesis 23:5-6](#)
- [Genesis 50:4-6](#)
- [John 19:40-42](#)
- [Luke 23:52-53](#)
- [Mark 05:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 27:51-53](#)
- [Romans 03:13-14](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [32:04](#) The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- [37:06](#) Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- [37:07](#) The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- [40:09](#) Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- [41:04](#) He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- [41:05](#) When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.”

The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus' body had been laid. His body was not there!

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1164, H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G86, G2750, G3418, G3419, G5028

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 16:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 21:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 24:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 26:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 28:26-27
- 2 Chronicles 32:32-33
- 2 Chronicles 34:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 35:23-24

guilt, guilty

Definition:

The term “guilt” refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To “be guilty” means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of “guilty” is “innocent.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate “guilt” as “the weight of sin” or “the counting of sins.”
- Ways to translate to “be guilty” could include a word or phrase that means, to “be at fault” or “having done something morally wrong” or “having committed a sin.”

(See also: [innocent](#), [iniquity](#), [punish](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:36-38
- [Isaiah 06:6-7](#)
- [James 02:10-11](#)
- [John 19:4-6](#)
- [Jonah 01:14-16](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** They brought many witnesses who lied about him (Jesus). However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was **guilty** of anything.
- **39:11** After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, “I find no **guilt** in this man.” But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!” Pilate replied, “He is not **guilty**.” But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, “He is not **guilty**!”
- **40:04** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Don’t you fear God? We are **guilty**, but this man is innocent.
- **49:10** Because of your sin, you are **guilty** and deserve to die.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H816, H817, H818, H5352, H5355, G338, G1777, G3784, G5267

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 19:10
- 2 Chronicles 28:9-11

Hamath, Hamathites, Lebo Hamath

Facts:

Hamath was an important city in northern Syria, north of the land of Canaan. The Hamathites were descendants of Noah's son Canaan.

- The name "Lebo Hamath" probably refers to a mountain pass near the city of Hamath.
- Some versions translate "Lebo Hamath" as "entrance to Hamath."
- King David defeated enemies of King Tou of Hamath, causing them to be on good terms.
- Hamath was one of Solomon's storehouse cities where provisions were kept.
- The land of Hamath was where King Zedekiah was killed by King Nebuchadnezzar and where King Jehoahaz was captured by an Egyptian pharaoh.
- The term "Hamathite" could also be translated as "person from Hamath."

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), Canaan, [Nebuchadnezzar](#), Syria, [Zedekiah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:3-4
- 2 Samuel 08:9-10
- [Amos 06:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 47:15-17](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2574, H2577

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 7:8-10](#)

hand, hands, handed, handing, by the hand of, lay a hand on, lays his hand on, right hand, right hands, from the hand of

Definition:

There are several figurative ways that “hand” is used in the Bible:

- To “hand” something to someone means to put something into that person’s hands.
- The term “hand” is often used in reference to God’s power and action, such as when God says “Has not my hand made all these things?” (See: [metonymy](#))
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- Some other figurative uses of “hand” include:
 - To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
 - To “save from the hand of” means to stop someone from harming someone else.
 - The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
 - The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, “by the hand of the Lord” means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.
- Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.
- The term “laying on of hands” refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service or to pray for healing.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- When “hand” refers to the person, such as in “the hand of God did this,” it could be translated as “God did this.”
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression

with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [bless](#), [captive](#), [honor](#), [power](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:22-25](#)
- [Acts 08:14-17](#)
- [Acts 11:19-21](#)
- [Genesis 09:5-7](#)
- [Genesis 14:19-20](#)
- [John 03:34-36](#)
- [Mark 07:31-32](#)
- [Matthew 06:3-4](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H405, H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G710, G1188, G1448, G1451, G1764, G2021, G2092, G2176, G2902, G4084, G4474, G4475, G5495, G5496, G5497

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 12:7-8](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13:8-9](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13:16-18](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15:6-7](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16:7-8](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17:5-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20:5-7](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25:20-22](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28:5-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30:6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31:11-13](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32:11-12](#)

harp, harps, harpist, harpists

Definition:

A harp is a stringed musical instrument, that usually consists of a large open frame with vertical strings.

- In Bible times, fir wood was used to make harps and other musical instruments.
- Harps were often held in the hands and played while walking.
- In many places in the Bible, harps are mentioned as instruments that were used to praise and worship God.
- David wrote several psalms which were set to harp music.
- He also played a harp for King Saul, to soothe the king's troubled spirit.

(See also: [David](#), [fir](#), [psalm](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 15:16-18](#)
- [Amos 05:23-24](#)
- [Daniel 03:3-5](#)
- [Psalm 033:1-3](#)
- [Revelation 05:8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: [H3658](#), [H5035](#), [H5059](#), [H7030](#), [G2788](#), [G2789](#), [G2790](#)

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 5:11-12](#)
- [2 Chronicles 9:10](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20:27-28](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29:25-26](#)

harvest, harvests, harvested, harvesting, harvester, harvesters

Definition:

The term “harvest” refers to the gathering in of ripe fruits or vegetables from the plants on which they were growing.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In a figurative sense, the word “harvest” can refer to people coming to believe in Jesus or can describe a person’s spiritual growth.
- The idea of a harvest of spiritual crops fits with the figurative image of fruits being a picture of godly character qualities.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as, “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb to “harvest” could be translated as, to “gather in” or to “pick up” or to “collect.”

(See also: [firstfruits](#), [festival](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 09:9-11](#)
- [2 Samuel 21:7-9](#)
- [Galatians 06:9-10](#)
- [Isaiah 17:10-11](#)
- [James 05:7-8](#)
- [Leviticus 19:9-10](#)
- [Matthew 09:37-38](#)
- [Ruth 01:22](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2758, H7105, G2326, G6013

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 31:4-5](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32:27-29](#)

head, heads, forehead, foreheads, baldhead, headfirst, headbands, headscarves, beheaded

Definition:

In the Bible, the word “head” is used with several figurative meanings.

- Often this term is used to refer to being in authority over people, as in “you have made me the head over nations.” This could be translated as “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over...”
- Jesus is called the “head of the church.” Just as a person’s head guides and directs the members of its body, so Jesus guides and directs the members of his “body,” the Church.
- The New Testament teaches that a husband is the “head” or authority of his wife. He is given the responsibility of leading and guiding his wife and family.
- The expression “no razor will ever touch his head” means” he will never cut or shave his hair.”
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something, as in the “head of the street.”
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top parts of a wheat or barley plant that contains the seeds.
- Another figurative use for “head” is when it is used to represent the whole person, as in “this gray head,” referring to an elderly person, or as in “the head of Joseph,” which refers to Joseph. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as “authority” or “the one who leads and directs” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “head of” can refer to the whole person and so this expression could be translated using just the person’s name. For example, “the head of Joseph” could simply be translated as “Joseph.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “beginning” or “source” or “ruler” or “leader” or “top.”

(See also: [grain](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:51-54

- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 09:22
- Colossians 02:10-12
- Colossians 02:18-19
- Numbers 01:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H441, H1270, H1538, H1627, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G346, G755, G2775, G2776, G4719

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 1:2
- 2 Chronicles 5:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 6:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 13:12
- 2 Chronicles 23:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 26:11-13

heart, hearts

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

- [1 John 03:16-18](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 02:3-4](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 03:13-15](#)
- [Acts 08:20-23](#)
- [Acts 15:7-9](#)
- [Luke 08:14-15](#)
- [Mark 02:5-7](#)
- [Matthew 05:5-8](#)
- [Matthew 22:37-38](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G674, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 1:8-11
- 2 Chronicles 6:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 6:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 7:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 9:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 9:22-24
- 2 Chronicles 11:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 12:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 15:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 16:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 17:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 19:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 19:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 20:31-33
- 2 Chronicles 22:9
- 2 Chronicles 25:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 26:16-18
- 2 Chronicles 29:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 29:31
- 2 Chronicles 30:10-12
- 2 Chronicles 31:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 32:24-26
- 2 Chronicles 32:30-31
- 2 Chronicles 34:26-28
- 2 Chronicles 36:13-14

heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the “kingdom of heaven” he is referring to the kingdom of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it could be translated as “God.”
- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- [1 Thessalonians 01:8-10](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 04:16-18](#)
- Deuteronomy 09:1-2
- [Ephesians 06:9](#)
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Genesis 07:11-12
- [John 03:12-13](#)
- [John 03:27-28](#)
- [Matthew 05:17-18](#)
- [Matthew 05:46-48](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

Uses:

- **2 Chronicles 2:6-7**
- **2 Chronicles 6:12-13**
- **2 Chronicles 6:21**
- **2 Chronicles 6:28-31**
- **2 Chronicles 7:1-3**
- **2 Chronicles 7:13-15**
- **2 Chronicles 18:17-18**
- **2 Chronicles 20:5-7**
- **2 Chronicles 28:9-11**
- **2 Chronicles 32:20-21**
- **2 Chronicles 33:1-3**
- **2 Chronicles 33:4-6**
- **2 Chronicles 36:22-23**

Hebron

Facts:

Hebron was a city located in the high, rocky hills about 20 miles south of Jerusalem.

- The city was built around 2000 BC during the time of Abram. It was mentioned many times in the historical accounts given in the Old Testament.
- Hebron had a very important role in King David's life. Several of his sons, including Absalom, were born there.
- The city was destroyed around AD 70 by the Romans.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Absalom](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 02:10-11
- Genesis 13:16-18
- Genesis 23:1-2
- Genesis 35:26-27
- Genesis 37:12-14
- Judges 01:8-10
- Numbers 13:21-22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2275, H2276, H5683

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 11:5-10](#)

Hezekiah

Definition:

Hezekiah was the 13th king over the kingdom of Judah. He was a king who trusted and obeyed God.

- Unlike his father Ahaz, who had been an evil king, King Hezekiah was a good king who destroyed all the places of idol worship in Judah.
- One time when Hezekiah became very sick and almost died, he earnestly prayed that God would spare his life. God healed him and allowed him to live 15 more years.
- As a sign to Hezekiah that this would happen, God performed a miracle and caused the sun to move backwards in the sky.
- God also answered Hezekiah's prayer to save his people from King Sennacherib of Assyria, who was attacking them.

(See also: [Ahaz](#), [Assyria](#), [false god](#), [Judah](#), [Sennacherib](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:13-14
- 2 Kings 16:19-20
- [Hosea 01:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 01:9-11](#)
- [Proverbs 25:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2396, H3169, G1478

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 28:26-27](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29:1-2](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29:18-19](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30:1](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30:18-20](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31:2-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31:20-21](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32:16-17](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32:22-23](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33:1-3](#)

high place, high places

Definition:

The term “high places” refers to the altars and shrines that were used for worshiping idols. They were usually built on higher ground, such as on a hill or mountainside.

- Many of the kings of Israel sinned against God by building altars to false gods on these high places. This led the people to become deeply involved in worshiping idols.
- It often happened that when a God-fearing king started ruling in Israel or Judah, often he would remove the high places or altars in order to stop the worship of these idols.
- However, some of these good kings were careless and did not remove the high places, which resulted in the entire nation of Israel would continue to worship idols.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “elevated places for idol worship” or “hilltop idol shrines” or “idol altar mounds.”
- Make sure it is clear that this term refers to the idol altars, not just to the high place where those altars were located.

(See also: [altar](#), [false god](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 09:12-13
- 2 Kings 16:3-4
- [Amos 04:12-13](#)
- Deuteronomy 33:29
- [Ezekiel 06:1-3](#)
- [Habakkuk 03:18-19](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1116, H1181, H1354, H2073, H4791, H7311, H7413

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 1:2](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11:13-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14:1-4](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14:5-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15:16-17](#)

- 2 Chronicles 17:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 20:31-33
- 2 Chronicles 21:11
- 2 Chronicles 28:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 31:1

high priest

Definition:

The term “high priest” refers to a special priest who was appointed to serve for one year as the leader of all the other Israelite priests.

- The high priest had special responsibilities. He was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy part of the temple to offer a special sacrifice once a year.
- The Israelites had many priests, but only one high priest at a time.
- When Jesus was being arrested, Caiaphas was the official high priest. Caiaphas’ father-in-law Annas is also mentioned sometimes because he was a former high priest who probably still had power and authority over the people.

Translation Suggestions:

- “High priest” could be translated as “supreme priest” or “highest ranking priest.”
- Make sure this term is translated differently from the term “chief priest.”

(See also: Annas, Caiaphas, [chief priests](#), [priest](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 05:26-28](#)
- [Acts 07:1-3](#)
- [Acts 09:1-2](#)
- Exodus 30:10
- [Hebrews 06:19-20](#)
- Leviticus 16:32-33
- [Luke 03:1-2](#)
- [Mark 02:25-26](#)
- [Matthew 26:3-5](#)
- [Matthew 26:51-54](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:08** No one could enter the room behind the curtain except the **high priest**, because God lived there.
- **21:07** The Messiah who would come would be the perfect **high priest** who would offer himself as a perfect sacrifice to God.
- **38:03** The Jewish leaders, led by the **high priest**, paid Judas thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **39:01** The soldiers led Jesus to the house of the **high priest** in order for the **high priest** to question him.

- **39:03** Finally, the **high priest** looked directly at Jesus and said, “Tell us, are you the Messiah, the Son of the living God?”
- **44:07** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and John to the **high priest** and the other religious leaders.
- **45:02** So the religious leaders arrested Stephen and brought him to the **high priest** and the other leaders of the Jews, where more false witnesses lied about Stephen.
- **46:01** The **high priest** gave Saul permission to go to the city of Damascus to arrest Christians there and bring them back to Jerusalem.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great **High Priest**. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only sacrifice that could take away the sin of all the people in the world. Jesus was the perfect **high priest** because he took the punishment for every sin that anyone has ever committed.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7218, H1419, H3548, G748, G749

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24:6-7](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34:8-9](#)

Hittite, Hittites

Definition:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: [descendant](#), Esau, [foreigner](#), Ham, [mighty](#), [Solomon](#), Uriah)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 23:10-11
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Joshua 01:4-5
- [Nehemiah 09:7-8](#)
- Numbers 13:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2850

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 1:16-17](#)
- [2 Chronicles 8:7-8](#)

Hivite, Hivites

Facts:

The Hivites were one of seven major people groups living in the land of Canaan.

- All these groups, including the Hivites, were descended from Canaan, who was Noah's grandson.
- Shechem the Hivite raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, and her brothers killed many Hivites in revenge.
- When Joshua led the Israelites to take over the land of Canaan, the Israelites were tricked into making a treaty with the Hivites instead of conquering them.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, Hamor, Noah, [Shechem](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 08:7-8](#)
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 34:1-3
- Joshua 09:1-2
- Judges 03:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2340

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 8:7-8](#)

holy place

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “the holy place” and “the most holy place” refer to the two parts of the tabernacle or temple building.

- The “holy place” was the first room, and it contained the altar of incense and the table with the special “bread of the presence” on it.
- The “most holy place” was the second, innermost room, and it contained the ark of the covenant.
- A thick, heavy curtain separated the outer room from the inner room.
- The high priest was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy place.
- Sometimes “holy place” refers to both the building and courtyard areas of either the temple or tabernacle. It could also refer generally to any place that is set apart for God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “holy place” could also be translated as “room set apart for God” or “special room for meeting God” or “place reserved for God.”
- The term “most holy place” could be translated as “room that is the most set apart for God” or “most special room for meeting God.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the general expression “a holy place” could include “a consecrated place” or “a place that God has set apart” or “a place in the temple complex, which is holy” or “a courtyard of God’s holy temple.”

(See also: altar of incense, [ark of the covenant](#), [bread](#), [consecrate](#), [courtyard](#), [curtain](#), [holy](#), [set apart](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:16-18
- [Acts 06:12-15](#)
- Exodus 26:31-33
- Exodus 31:10-11
- [Ezekiel 41:1-2](#)
- [Ezra 09:8-9](#)
- [Hebrews 09:1-2](#)
- Leviticus 16:17-19
- [Matthew 24:15-18](#)
- [Revelation 15:5-6](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1964, H4720, H4725, H5116, H6918, H6944, G39, G40, G3485, G5117

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 3:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 4:22
- 2 Chronicles 5:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 20:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 26:16-18
- 2 Chronicles 29:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 30:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 30:25-27
- 2 Chronicles 35:5-6

Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [spirit](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), God the Father, Son of God, [gift](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:9-10
- [1 Thessalonians 04:7-8](#)
- [Acts 08:14-17](#)
- [Galatians 05:25-26](#)
- Genesis 01:1-2
- [Isaiah 63:10](#)
- [Job 33:4-5](#)
- [Matthew 12:31-32](#)
- [Matthew 28:18-19](#)
- [Psalms 051:10-11](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:08** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.

- **26:03** Jesus read, "God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:03** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:08** "And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit**."
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151

Uses:

- **2 Chronicles 15:1-2**
- **2 Chronicles 18:23-24**
- **2 Chronicles 24:20-22**

holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was oftentimes used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”

- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [consecrate](#), [sanctify](#), [set apart](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:20-22
- 2 Kings 03:1-3
- [Lamentations 04:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:18-20](#)
- [Matthew 07:6](#)
- [Mark 08:38](#)
- [Acts 07:33-34](#)
- [Acts 11:7-10](#)
- [Romans 01:1-3](#)
- [2 Corinthians 12:3-5](#)
- [Colossians 01:21-23](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 03:11-13](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 04:7-8](#)
- [2 Timothy 03:14-15](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **09:12** “You are standing on **holy** ground.”
- **13:01** “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation.”
- **13:05** “Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**.”
- **22:05** “So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God.”
- **50:02** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G1859, G2150, G2412, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 5:4-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 8:11](#)

- 2 Chronicles 14:1-4
- 2 Chronicles 20:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 31:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 35:3-4

honey, honeycomb

Definition:

“Honey” is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God’s words and decrees are said to be “sweeter than honey.” (See also: [Simile](#), [Metaphor](#))
- Sometimes a person’s words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: John (the Baptist), Jonathan, [Philistines](#), Samson)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:1-3
- Deuteronomy 06:3
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Joshua 05:6-7
- [Proverbs 05:3-4](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1706, H3293, H3295, H5317, H6688, G2781, G3192, G3193

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 31:4-5](#)

honor, honors

Definition:

The terms “honor” and to “honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term to “honor” could be translated as to “show special respect to” or to “cause to be praised” or to “show high regard for” or to “highly value.”

(See also: dishonor, [glory](#), [glory](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:8
- [Acts 19:15-17](#)
- [John 04:43-45](#)
- [John 12:25-26](#)
- [Mark 06:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 15:4-6](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1927, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G820, G1391, G1392, G1784, G2151, G2570, G3170, G4411, G4586, G5091, G5092, G5093, G5399

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 1:8-11](#)

- 2 Chronicles 16:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 17:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 18:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 21:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 24:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 26:16-18
- 2 Chronicles 32:27-29

Horeb

Definition:

Mount Horeb is another name for Mount Sinai, where God gave Moses the stone tablets with the ten commandments.

- Mount Horeb is called the “mountain of God.”
- Horeb was the place where Moses saw the burning bush when he was tending sheep.
- Mount Horeb was the place where God revealed his covenant to the Israelites by giving them the stone tablets with his commandments written on them.
- It was also the place where God later told Moses to strike a rock to provide water for the Israelites as they were wandering in the desert.
- The exact location of this mountain is not known, but it may have been in the southern part of what is now the Sinai Peninsula.
- It is possible that “Horeb” was the actual name of the mountain and that “Mount Sinai” simply means “mountain of Sinai,” referring to the fact that Mount Horeb was located in the desert of Sinai.

(See also: [covenant](#), [Israel](#), [Moses](#), Sinai, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:9-11
- [2 Chronicles 05:9-10](#)
- Deuteronomy 01:1-2
- Exodus 03:1-3
- [Psalms 106:19-21](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2722

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 5:9-10](#)

horse, horses, warhorse, warhorses, horseback

Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: [chariot](#), , [donkey](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:3-4
- 2 Kings 02:11-12
- Exodus 14:23-25
- [Ezekiel 23:5-7](#)
- [Zechariah 06:7-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G2462

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 1:16-17](#)
- [2 Chronicles 9:22-24](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23:14-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25:27-28](#)

horseman, horsemen

Definition:

In Bible times, the term “horsemen” referred to men who rode horses into battle.

- Warriors who rode in horse-pulled chariots may also have been called “horsemen,” though this term usually refers to men who were actually riding on horses.
- The Israelites believed that using horses in battle placed too much emphasis on their own strength rather than on Yahweh, so they did not have many horsemen.
- This term could also be translated as “horse riders” or “men on horses.”

(See also: [chariot](#), [horse](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:5-6
- [Daniel 11:40-41](#)
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Genesis 50:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6571, H7395, G2460

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 1:14-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 8:5-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 8:9-10](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12:2-4](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16:7-8](#)

house of David

Facts:

The expression “house of David” refers to the family or descendants of King David.

- This could also be translated as “descendants of David” or “family of David” or “King David’s clan.”
- Because Jesus was descended from David, he was part of the “house of David.”
- Sometimes “house of David” or “household of David” refers to the people in David’s family who were still living.
- Other times this term is more general and refers to all his descendants, including those who had already died.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [descendant](#), [house](#), [Jesus](#), [king](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 10:17-19](#)
- [2 Samuel 03:6-7](#)
- [Luke 01:69-71](#)
- [Psalms 122:4-5](#)
- [Zechariah 12:7-9](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1732, G1138, G3624

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 10:17-19](#)

house of God, Yahweh's house

Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases “house of God” (God’s house) and “house of Yahweh (Yahweh’s house) refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- Sometimes “God’s house” is used to refer to the people of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as “a house for worshipping God” or “a place for worshipping God.”
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as “the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped (or “where God is present” or “where God meets with his people.”)
- The word “house” may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God “dwells” there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: [people of God](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 03:14-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23:8-9](#)
- [Ezra 05:12-13](#)
- [Genesis 28:16-17](#)
- [Judges 18:30-31](#)
- [Mark 02:25-26](#)
- [Matthew 12:3-4](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H426, H430, H1004, H1005, H3068, G2316, G3624

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 2:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 2:11-12](#)
- [2 Chronicles 3:1-3](#)

- 2 Chronicles 4:11-13
- 2 Chronicles 5:1
- 2 Chronicles 5:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 7:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 7:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 8:16
- 2 Chronicles 9:10
- 2 Chronicles 12:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 12:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 15:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 15:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 16:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 20:5-7
- 2 Chronicles 22:10-12
- 2 Chronicles 23:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 24:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 24:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 24:27
- 2 Chronicles 25:23-24
- 2 Chronicles 26:16-18
- 2 Chronicles 28:19-21
- 2 Chronicles 28:24-25
- 2 Chronicles 29:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 29:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 30:1
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 31:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 31:11-13
- 2 Chronicles 31:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 33:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 33:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 34:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 34:29-30
- 2 Chronicles 35:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 35:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 36:5-7
- 2 Chronicles 36:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 36:22-23

house, houses, housetop, housetops, storehouse, storehouses, housekeepers

Definition:

The term “house” is often used figuratively in the Bible.

- Sometimes it means “household,” referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Often “house” refers to a person’s descendants or other relatives. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to where God is or dwells.
- In Hebrews 3, “God’s house” is used as a metaphor to refer to God’s people or, more generally, to everything pertaining to God.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh’s temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.”
- “House of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](#), [descendant](#), [house of God](#), [household](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:41-42](#)
- [Acts 07:47-50](#)
- [Genesis 39:3-4](#)
- [Genesis 41:39-41](#)
- [Luke 08:38-39](#)
- [Matthew 10:5-7](#)
- [Matthew 15:24-26](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1005, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 1:2
- 2 Chronicles 10:16
- 2 Chronicles 11:1
- 2 Chronicles 17:14-16
- 2 Chronicles 21:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 22:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 23:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 25:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 26:11-13
- 2 Chronicles 31:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 35:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 35:20-21

humble, humbles, humbled, humility

Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one’s weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: [proud](#))

Bible References:

- [James 01:19-21](#)
- [James 03:13-14](#)
- [James 04:8-10](#)
- [Luke 14:10-11](#)
- [Luke 18:13-14](#)
- [Matthew 18:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 23:11-12](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***17:02** David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God. ***34:10** ”God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G858, G4236, G4239, G4240, G5011, G5012, G5013, G5391

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 7:13-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12:5-6](#)

- 2 Chronicles 30:10-12
- 2 Chronicles 32:24-26
- 2 Chronicles 33:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 33:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 34:26-28
- 2 Chronicles 36:11-12

image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast metal figure, cast metal figures

Definition:

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term “image” is a shortened form of “carved image.”

- A “carved image” or “carved figure” is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
- A “cast metal figure” is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
- These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
- The term “image” when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to an idol, the term “image” could also be translated as “statue” or “engraved idol” or “carved religious object.”
- It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as “carved image” or “cast metal figure,” even in places where only the term “image” or “figure” is in the original text.
- Make sure it is clear that this term is different than the term used to refer to being in the image of God.

(See also: [false god](#), [God](#), [false god](#), [image of God](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:9-10
- [Acts 07:43](#)
- [Isaiah 21:8-9](#)
- [Matthew 22:20-22](#)
- [Romans 01:22-23](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H457, H1544, H2553, H4541, H4676, H4853, H4906, H5257, H5262, H5566, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6754, H6755, H6816, H8403, H8544, H8655, G1504, G5179, G5481

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 3:10-11](#)

image, images, carved image, carved images, cast metal images, figure, figures, carved figure, carved figures, cast

- 2 Chronicles 23:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 28:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 33:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 33:21-23
- 2 Chronicles 34:1-3

incense, incenses

Definition:

The term “incense” refers to a mixture of fragrant spices that is burned to produce smoke that has a pleasant smell.

- God told the Israelites to burn incense as an offering to him.
- The incense had to be made by mixing equal amounts of five specific spices exactly as God directed. This was a sacred incense, so they were not allowed to use it for any other purpose.
- The “altar of incense” was a special altar that was only used for burning incense.
- The incense was offered at least four times a day, at each hour of prayer. It was also offered every time a burnt offering was made.
- The burning of incense represents prayer and worship rising up to God from his people.
- Other ways to translate “incense” could include “fragrant spices” or “good-smelling plants.”

(See also: altar of incense, [burnt offering](#), frankincense)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 03:1-3
- [2 Chronicles 13:10-11](#)
- 2 Kings 14:4-5
- Exodus 25:3-7
- [Luke 01:8-10](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2553, H3828, H4196, H4289, H5208, H6988, H6999, H7002, H7004, H7381, G2368, G2369, G2370, G2379, G3031

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 2:4-5](#)
- [2 Chronicles 4:22](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13:10-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14:5-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25:14-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26:16-18](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28:3-4](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29:6-7](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30:13-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34:4-5](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34:23-25](#)

inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

Definition:

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The “inheritance” is what is received.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.
- The Bible also calls God’s people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.
- There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to “inherit the land.” This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.
- In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will “inherit salvation” and “inherit eternal life.” It is also expressed as, “inherit the kingdom of God.” This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.
- There are other figurative meanings for these terms:
- The Bible says that wise people will “inherit glory” and righteous people will “inherit good things.”
- To “inherit the promises” means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.
- This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who “inherit the wind” or “inherit folly.” This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- When God’s people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as “valued ones belonging to him.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions” or “person chosen to receive (God’s) spiritual possessions or blessings.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as “blessings from God” or “inherited blessings.”

(See also: heir, Canaan, Promised Land)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:9-11
- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- 2 Samuel 21:2-3
- Acts 07:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16-18
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Genesis 15:6-8
- Hebrews 09:13-15
- Jeremiah 02:7-8
- Luke 15:11-12
- Matthew 19:29-30
- Psalm 079:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **35:03** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819, G2820

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 6:26-27
- 2 Chronicles 10:16
- 2 Chronicles 20:10-11

iniquity, iniquities

Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), [transgress](#), [trespass](#))

Bible References:

- [Daniel 09:12-14](#)
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16-17
- [Habakkuk 02:12-14](#)
- [Matthew 13:40-43](#)
- [Matthew 23:27-28](#)
- [Micah 03:9-11](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G92, G93, G458, G3892, G4189

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 19:6-7](#)

innocent

Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- The frequently occurring expression “innocent blood” could be translated as “people who did nothing wrong to deserve being killed.”
- The expression “shed innocent blood” could be translated as “kill innocent people” or “kill people who did nothing wrong to deserve it.”
- In the context of someone being killed, “innocent of the blood of” could be translated as “not guilty for the death of.”
- When talking about people not hearing the good news about Jesus but not accepting it, “innocent of the blood of” could be translated as “not responsible for whether they remain spiritually dead or not” or “not responsible for whether they accept this message.”
- When Judas said “I have betrayed innocent blood,” he was saying “I have betrayed a man who did nothing wrong” or “I have caused the death of a man who was sinless.”
- When Pilate said about Jesus “I am innocent of the blood of this innocent man,” this could be translated as “I am not responsible for the killing of this man who has done nothing wrong to deserve it.”

(See also: [guilt](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 04:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 19:4-5](#)
- [Acts 20:25-27](#)
- [Exodus 23:6-9](#)
- [Jeremiah 22:17-19](#)
- [Job 09:21-24](#)
- [Romans 16:17-18](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.
- **40:04** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, "Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**."
- **40:08** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, "Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God." *

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2136, H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, G121

Uses:

- **2 Chronicles 6:22-23**

Isaac

Facts:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name “Isaac” means “he laughs.” When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham’s faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac’s son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [descendant](#), [eternity](#), [fulfill](#), [Jacob](#), Sarah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- [Galatians 04:28-29](#)
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:19-20
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:6-8
- Genesis 28:1-2
- Genesis 31:17-18
- [Matthew 08:11-13](#)
- [Matthew 22:31-33](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***05:04** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him **Isaac**.” ***05:06** When **Isaac** was a young man, God tested Abraham’s faith by saying, “Take **Isaac**, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.” ***05:09** God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of **Isaac**. ***06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, **Isaac**, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, **Isaac**. ***06:05** **Isaac** prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins. ***07:10** Then **Isaac** died, and Jacob and Esau buried him. The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to **Isaac** now passed on to Jacob.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3327, H3446, G2464

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 30:6

Isaiah

Facts:

Isaiah was a prophet of God who prophesied during the reigns of four kings of Judah: Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah.

- He lived in Jerusalem during the time when the Assyrians were attacking the city, during the reign of Hezekiah.
- The Old Testament book of Isaiah is one of the major books of the Bible.
- Isaiah wrote many prophecies that came true while he was still living.
- Isaiah is especially known for the prophecies he wrote about the Messiah that came true 700 years later when Jesus was living on earth.
- Jesus and his disciples quoted Isaiah's prophecies to teach people about the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaz](#), [Assyria](#), [Christ](#), [Hezekiah](#), [Jotham](#), [Judah](#), [prophet](#), [Uzziah](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:1-3
- [Acts 28:25-26](#)
- [Isaiah 01:1](#)
- [Luke 03:4](#)
- [Mark 01:1-3](#)
- [Mark 07:6-7](#)
- [Matthew 03:1-3](#)
- [Matthew 04:14-16](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***21:09** The prophet **Isaiah** prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin. ***21:10** The prophet **Isaiah** said the Messiah would live in Galilee, comfort broken-hearted people, and proclaim freedom to captives and release to prisoners. ***21:11** The prophet **Isaiah** also prophesied that the Messiah would be hated without reason and rejected. ***21:12** **Isaiah** prophesied that people would spit on, mock, and beat the Messiah. ***26:02** They handed him (Jesus) the scroll of the prophet **Isaiah** so that he would read from it. Jesus opened up the scroll and read part of it to the people. ***45:08** When Philip approached the chariot, he heard the Ethiopian reading from what the prophet **Isaiah** wrote. ***45:10** Philip explained to the Ethiopian that **Isaiah** was writing about Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3470, G2268

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 26:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 32:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 32:32-33

Israel, Israelite, Israelites, Jacob

Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, [deceive](#), Esau, [Isaac](#), [Israel](#), Rebekah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:11-13](#)
- [Acts 07:44-46](#)
- Genesis 25:24-26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- [John 04:4-5](#)
- [Matthew 08:11-13](#)
- [Matthew 22:31-33](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:01** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **07:07** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **07:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **08:01** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G2384

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 30:6](#)

Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means “he struggles with God.”

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “people of Israel” or the “nation of Israel” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah,” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [nation](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1-3
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- [Acts 02:34-36](#)
- [Acts 07:22-25](#)
- [Acts 13:23-25](#)
- [John 01:49-51](#)
- [Luke 24:21](#)
- [Mark 12:28-31](#)
- [Matthew 02:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 27:9-10](#)
- [Philippians 03:4-5](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***08:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**. ***09:03** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities. ***09:05** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy. ***10:01** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’” ***14:12** But despite all this, the people of **Israel** complained and grumbled against God and against Moses. ***15:09** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites. ***15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders. ***16:16** So God punished **Israel** again for worshiping idols. ***43:06** “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 1:2
- 2 Chronicles 2:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 2:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 2:17-18
- 2 Chronicles 5:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 5:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 6:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 6:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 6:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 7:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 7:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 8:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 8:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 9:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 10:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 10:16
- 2 Chronicles 11:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 12:1
- 2 Chronicles 12:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 15:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 15:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 15:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 15:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 16:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 18:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 18:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- 2 Chronicles 20:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 20:29-30
- 2 Chronicles 21:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 22:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 24:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 25:23-24
- 2 Chronicles 28:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 28:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 29:6-7

- 2 Chronicles 29:22-24
- 2 Chronicles 29:27-28
- 2 Chronicles 30:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 30:21-22
- 2 Chronicles 31:1
- 2 Chronicles 31:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 31:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 32:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 33:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 33:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 34:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 34:23-25
- 2 Chronicles 35:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 35:18-19

Issachar

Facts:

Issachar was the fifth son of Jacob. His mother was Leah.

- The tribe of Issachar was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- Issachar's land was bordered by the lands of Naphtali, Zebulun, Manasseh, and Gad.
- It was located just south of the Sea of Galilee.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Gad](#), [Manasseh](#), [Naphtali](#), twelve tribes of Israel, [Zebulun](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 01:1-5
- [Ezekiel 48:23-26](#)
- Genesis 30:16-18
- Joshua 17:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3485, G2466

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 30:18-20](#)

Jebus, Jebusite, Jebusites

Facts:

The Jebusites were a people group living in the land of Canaan. They were descended from Ham's son Canaan.

- The Jebusites lived in the city of Jebus, and its name was later changed to Jerusalem when King David conquered it.
- Melchizedek, the king of Salem, was probably of Jebusite origin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, Ham, [Jerusalem](#), Melchizedek)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:13-16
- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 10:15-18
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Judges 01:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2982, H2983

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 3:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 8:7-8](#)

Jehoiachin

Facts:

Jehoiachin was a king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah.

- Jehoiachin became king when he was 18 years old. He only reigned three months, and after that he was captured by the Babylonian army and taken to Babylon.
- During his short reign, Jehoiachin did evil things like the ones his grandfather King Manasseh and his father King Jehoiakim had done.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Jehoiakim](#), [Judah](#), [Manasseh](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 36:8](#)
- [2 Kings 24:15-17](#)
- [Esther 02:5-6](#)
- [Ezekiel 01:1-3](#)
- [Jeremiah 22:24-26](#)
- [Jeremiah 37:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3078, H3112, H3204, H3659

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 36:8](#)

Jehoiakim

Facts:

Jehoiakim was an evil king who reigned over the kingdom of Judah, beginning around 608 B.C. He was King Josiah's son. His name was originally Eliakim.

- The Egyptian pharaoh Necho changed Eliakim's name to Jehoiakim and made him king of Judah.
- Necho forced Jehoiakim to pay high taxes to Egypt.
- When Judah was later invaded by King Nebuchadnezzar, Jehoiakim was among those who were captured and taken to Babylon.
- Jehoiakim was an evil king who led Judah away from Yahweh. Jeremiah the prophet prophesied against him.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Eliakim](#), [Jeremiah](#), [Judah](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:15-16
- 2 Kings 23:34-35
- 2 Kings 24:1-2
- [Daniel 01:1-2](#)
- [Jeremiah 01:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3079

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 36:3-4](#)

Jehoram, Joram

Facts:

“Jehoram” was the name of two kings in the Old Testament. Both kings were also known as “Joram.”

- One King Jehoram ruled over the kingdom of Judah for eight years. He was the son of King Jehoshaphat. This is the king that is most commonly known as Jehoram.
- The other King Jehoram ruled over the kingdom of Israel for twelve years. He was the son of King Ahab.
- King Jehoram of Judah reigned during the time that the prophets Jeremiah, Daniel, Obadiah, and Ezekiel were prophesying in the kingdom of Judah.
- The King Jehoram also reigned during some of the time that his father King Jehoshaphat was reigning over Judah.
- Some translations may choose to consistently use the name “Jehoram” when this king of Israel is mentioned and the name “Joram” for the king of Judah.
- Another way to clearly identify each one would be to include the name of his father.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Jehoshaphat](#), [Joram](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Obadiah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 22:48-50
- [2 Chronicles 21:1-3](#)
- 2 Kings 11:1-3
- 2 Kings 12:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3088, H3141, G2496

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 21:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22:6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22:7-8](#)

Jehoshaphat

Facts:

Jehoshaphat was the name of at least two men in the Old Testament.

- The best known man by this name was King Jehoshaphat who was the fourth king to rule over the kingdom of Judah.
- He restored peace between Judah and Israel and destroyed the altars of false gods.
- Another Jehoshaphat was a “recorder” for David and Solomon. His job included writing documents for the king to sign and recording the history of the important events that happened in the kingdom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [altar](#), [David](#), [false god](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [priest](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:10-12
- 1 Kings 04:15-17
- [2 Chronicles 17:1-2](#)
- 2 Kings 01:17-18
- 2 Samuel 08:15-18
- [Matthew 01:7-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3092, H3146, G2498

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 17:1-2](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18:17-18](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20:1-2](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20:25-26](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21:12-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22:9](#)

Jehu

Facts:

Jehu was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- Jehu son of Hanani was a prophet during the reigns of King Ahab of Israel and King Jehoshaphat of Judah.
- Jehu son (or descendant) of Jehoshaphat was a general in the Israelite army who was anointed king by order of the prophet Elisha.
- King Jehu killed two evil kings, King Joram of Israel and King Ahaziah of Judah.
- King Jehu also killed all the relatives of the former King Ahab and had the evil queen Jezebel killed.
- King Jehu destroyed all the places of Baal worship in Samaria and killed all the prophets of Baal.
- King Jehu served the only true God, Yahweh, and was king over Israel for twenty-eight years.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Ahaziah](#), [Baal](#), [Elisha](#), [Jehoshaphat](#), [Jehu](#), [Jezebel](#), [Joram](#), [Judah](#), [Samaria](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 04:34-38
- 1 Kings 16:1-2
- [2 Chronicles 19:1-3](#)
- 2 Kings 10:8-9
- [Hosea 01:3-5](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3058

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 19:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20:34](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22:7-8](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25:17](#)

Jeremiah

Facts:

Jeremiah was a prophet of God in the kingdom of Judah. The Old Testament book of Jeremiah contains his prophecies.

- Like most of the prophets, Jeremiah often had to warn the people of Israel that God was going to punish them for their sins.
- Jeremiah prophesied that the Babylonians would capture Jerusalem, making some of the people of Judah angry. So they put him in a deep, dry well and left him there to die. But the king of Judah ordered his servants to rescue Jeremiah from the well.
- Jeremiah wrote that he wished his eyes could be a “fountain of tears,” to express his deep sadness over the rebellion and sufferings of his people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Judah](#), [prophet](#), [rebel](#), [suffer](#), [well](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 35:25](#)
- [Jeremiah 01:1-3](#)
- [Jeremiah 11:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 02:17-18](#)
- [Matthew 16:13-16](#)
- [Matthew 27:9-10](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***19:17** Once, the prophet **Jeremiah** was put into a dry well and left there to die. He sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had mercy on him and ordered his servants to pull **Jeremiah** out of the well before he died. ***21:05** Through the prophet **Jeremiah**, God promised that he would make a New Covenant, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3414, G2408

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 35:25](#)

- [2 Chronicles 36:11-12](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36:20-21](#)

Jericho

Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- As all Canaanites did, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: Canaan, [Jordan River](#), Joshua, [miracle](#), [Salt Sea](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:77-79
- Joshua 02:1-3
- Joshua 07:2-3
- [Luke 18:35-37](#)
- [Mark 10:46-48](#)
- [Matthew 20:29-31](#)
- Numbers 22:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

***15:01** Joshua sent two spies to the Canaanite city of **Jericho**. ***15:03** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of **Jericho**. ***15:05** Then the walls around **Jericho** fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3405, G2410

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 28:14-15](#)

Jeroboam

Facts:

Jeroboam son of Nebat was the first king of the northern kingdom of Israel around 900-910 BC. Another Jeroboam, son of King Jehoash, ruled over Israel about 120 years later.

- Yahweh gave Jeroboam son of Nebat a prophecy that he would become king after Solomon and that he would rule ten tribes of Israel.
- When Solomon died, the ten northern tribes of Israel rebelled against Solomon's son Rehoboam and instead made Jeroboam their king, leaving Rehoboam as king of only the southern two tribes, Judah and Benjamin.
- Jeroboam became a wicked king who led the people away from worshiping Yahweh and instead set up idols for them to worship. All the other kings of Israel followed Jeroboam's example and were evil like he was.
- Almost 120 years later, another King Jeroboam began ruling the northern kingdom of Israel. This Jeroboam was the son of King Jehoash and was wicked like all the previous kings of Israel had been.
- In spite of the Israelite's wickedness, God had mercy on them and helped this King Jeroboam to gain land and establish boundaries for their territory.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [false god](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:16-17
- 1 Kings 12:1-2
- [2 Chronicles 09:29-31](#)
- 2 Kings 03:1-3
- [Amos 01:1-2](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named **Jeroboam** to be their king.
- **18:09** **Jeroboam** rebelled against God and caused the people to sin. He built two idols for his people to worship instead of worshiping God at the Temple in the kingdom of Judah.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3379

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 9:29-31
- 2 Chronicles 10:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 10:12-14
- 2 Chronicles 11:2-4
- 2 Chronicles 12:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 13:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 13:13-15

Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name “Jerusalem” is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include “Salem” “city of Jebus,” and “Zion.” Both “Jerusalem” and “Salem,” have the root meaning of “peace.”
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called “Zion” which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David’s son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going “up” to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Christ](#), [David](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jesus](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#))

Bible References:

- [Galatians 04:26-27](#)
- [John 02:13-14](#)
- [Luke 04:9-11](#)
- [Luke 13:4-5](#)
- [Mark 03:7-8](#)
- [Mark 03:20-22](#)
- [Matthew 03:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 04:23-25](#)
- [Matthew 20:17-19](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:05** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:02** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.

- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:02** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G2414, G2415, G2419

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 1:2
- 2 Chronicles 2:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 2:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 5:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 6:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 8:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 9:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 9:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 11:1
- 2 Chronicles 12:2-4
- 2 Chronicles 13:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 14:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 17:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 19:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 20:5-7
- 2 Chronicles 20:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 20:27-28
- 2 Chronicles 21:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 21:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 22:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 24:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 24:6-7

- 2 Chronicles 24:23-24
- 2 Chronicles 25:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 25:23-24
- 2 Chronicles 26:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 27:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 27:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 28:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 28:24-25
- 2 Chronicles 29:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 29:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 30:1
- 2 Chronicles 30:10-12
- 2 Chronicles 30:21-22
- 2 Chronicles 32:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 32:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 33:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 33:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 33:21-23
- 2 Chronicles 34:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 34:22
- 2 Chronicles 35:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 35:23-24
- 2 Chronicles 36:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 36:18-19

Jesse

Facts:

Jesse was the father of King David and the grandson of Ruth and Boaz.

- Jesse was from the tribe of Judah.
- He was an “Ephrathite,” which means he was from the town of Ephrathah (Bethlehem).
- The prophet Isaiah prophesied about a “shoot” or “branch” that would come from the “root of Jesse” and bear fruit. This refers to Jesus, who was a descendant of Jesse.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), Boaz, [descendant](#), [fruit](#), Jesus, [king](#), [prophet](#), Ruth, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:9-12
- 1 Kings 12:16-17
- 1 Samuel 16:1
- [Luke 03:30-32](#)
- [Matthew 01:4-6](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3448, G2421

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 10:16](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11:18-19](#)

Jew, Jewish, Jews

Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.
- Often the phrase "the Jews" refers to the leaders of the Jews, not all the Jewish people. In those contexts, some translations add "leaders of" to make this clear.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Babylon](#), Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- [Acts 02:5-7](#)
- [Acts 10:27-29](#)
- [Acts 14:5-7](#)
- [Colossians 03:9-11](#)
- [John 02:13-14](#)
- [Matthew 28:14-15](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:11** The Israelites were now called **Jews** and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of **Jews** returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- **37:10** Many of the **Jews** believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- **37:11** But the religious leaders of the **Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **40:02** Pilate commanded that they write, "King of the **Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began preaching to the **Jews** in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3054, H3061, H3062, H3064, H3066, G2450, G2451, G2452, G2453, G2454

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 32:18-19](#)

Jezreel, Jezreelite

Definition:

Jezreel was an important Israelite city in the territory of the Issachar tribe, located southwest of the Salt Sea.

- The city of Jezreel is one of the western points in the Plain of Megiddo, which is also called the “Valley of Jezreel.”
- Several kings of Israel had their palaces in the city of Jezreel.
- Naboth’s vineyard was located near King Ahab’s palace in Jezreel. The prophet Elijah prophesied against Ahab there.
- Ahab’s evil wife Jezebel was killed in Jezreel.
- Many other significant events happened in this city, including several battles.

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Elijah](#), [Issachar](#), [Jezebel](#), [palace](#), [Salt Sea](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:11-14
- 1 Samuel 25:43-44
- 2 Kings 08:28-29
- 2 Samuel 02:1-3
- Judges 06:33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3157, H3158, H3159

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 22:6](#)

Joash

Facts:

Joash was the name of several men in the Old Testament.

- One Joash was the father of the Israelite deliverer Gideon.
- Another man named Joash was a descendant of Jacob's youngest son, Benjamin.
- The most well-known Joash became king of Judah at the age of seven. He was the son of Ahaziah, king of Judah, who had been murdered.
- When Joash was a very young child, his aunt saved him from being killed by hiding him away until he was old enough to be crowned king.
- King Joash was a good king who at first obeyed God. But he did not remove the high places, and the Israelites started worshiping idols again.
- King Joash ruled Judah during some of the years that King Jehoash was ruling Israel. They were two distinct kings.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahaziah](#), [altar](#), [Benjamin](#), [false god](#), [Gideon](#), [high places](#), [false god](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:10-12
- [2 Chronicles 18:25-27](#)
- 2 Kings 11:1-3
- [Amos 01:1-2](#)
- Judges 06:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3101, H3135

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 18:25-27](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24:20-22](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25:25-26](#)

Joppa

Facts:

In Bible times, the city of Joppa was an important commercial seaport located on the Mediterranean Sea, south of the Plain of Sharon.

- The ancient site of Joppa is the location of the present-day city of Jaffa, which is now part of the city of Tel Aviv.
- In the Old Testament, Joppa was the city where Jonah got on a boat that was going to Tarshish.
- In the New Testament, a Christian woman named Tabitha died in Joppa, and Peter brought her back to life.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: the sea, [Jerusalem](#), Sharon, Tarshish)

Bible References:

- [Acts 09:36-37](#)
- [Acts 10:7-8](#)
- [Acts 11:4-6](#)
- [Acts 11:11-14](#)
- [Jonah 01:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3305, G2445

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 2:15-16](#)

Joram

Facts:

Joram son of Ahab was a king of Israel. He was also sometimes referred to as “Jehoram.”

- King Joram of Israel reigned at the same time as King Jehoram of Judah.
- Joram was an evil king who worshiped false gods and caused Israel to sin.
- King Joram of Israel also reigned during the time of the prophets Elijah and Obadiah.
- Another man named Joram was the son of King Tou of Hamath when David was king.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [David](#), [Elijah](#), [Hamath](#), [Jehoram](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Obadiah](#), [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:10-12
- [2 Chronicles 22:4-5](#)
- 2 Kings 01:17-18
- 2 Kings 08:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3088, H3141, G2496

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 22:4-5](#)

Jordan River, Jordan

Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on its west from Jordan on its east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as “the Jordan.”

(See also: Canaan, [Salt Sea](#), Sea of Galilee)

Bible References:

- Genesis 32:9-10
- [John 01:26-28](#)
- [John 03:25-26](#)
- [Luke 03:3](#)
- [Matthew 03:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 03:13-15](#)
- [Matthew 04:14-16](#)
- [Matthew 19:1-2](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***15:02** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land. ***15:03** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho. ***19:14** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3383, G2446

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 4:17-18](#)

Josiah

Facts:

Josiah was a godly king who reigned over the kingdom of Judah for thirty-one years. He led the people of Judah to repent and worship Yahweh.

- After his father King Amon was killed, Josiah became king over Judah at eight years of age.
- In the eighteenth year of his reign, King Josiah ordered Hilkiah the high priest to rebuild the temple of the Lord. While this was being done, the books of the Law were found.
- When the books of the Law were read to Josiah, he was grieved at how his people were disobeying God. He ordered that all the places of idol worship be destroyed and that the priests of the false gods be killed.
- He also ordered the people to start celebrating the Passover feast again.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [false god](#), [Judah](#), [law](#), [Passover](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 03:13-14](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33:24-25](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34:1-3](#)
- [Jeremiah 01:1-3](#)
- [Matthew 01:9-11](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: [H2977](#), [G2502](#)

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 33:24-25](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34:8-9](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34:33](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35:1-2](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35:16-17](#)

Jotham

Definition:

In the Old Testament, there were three men with the name Jotham.

- One man named Jotham was the youngest son of Gideon. Jotham helped defeat his older brother Abimelech, who had killed all the rest of their brothers.
- Another man named Jotham was a king over Judah for sixteen years following the death of his father Uzziah (Azariah).
- Like his father, King Jotham obeyed God and was a good king.
- However, by not removing the places of idol worship he caused the people of Judah to later turn away from God again.
- Jotham is also one of the ancestors listed in the genealogy of Jesus Christ in the book of Matthew.

(See also: Abimelech, [Ahaz](#), Gideon, [Uzziah](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 26:21](#)
- [2 Kings 15:4-5](#)
- [Isaiah 01:1](#)
- [Judges 09:5-6](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3147

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 26:21](#)
- [2 Chronicles 27:1-2](#)
- [2 Chronicles 27:6-7](#)

joy, joyful, joyfully, joyfulness, enjoy, enjoys, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, rejoice, rejoices, rejoiced, rejoicing

Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: [metonymy](#))

Bible References:

- [Nehemiah 08:9-10](#)
- [Psalm 048:1-3](#)
- [Isaiah 56:6-7](#)
- [Jeremiah 15:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 02:9-10](#)
- [Luke 15:6-7](#)
- [Luke 19:37-38](#)
- [John 03:29-30](#)
- [Acts 16:32-34](#)

- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:22-24
- Philippians 04:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 05:15-18
- Philemon 01:4-7
- James 01:1-3
- 3 John 01:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:04** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:07** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H1750, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5938, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G2165, G2167, G2620, G2744, G2745, G3685, G4640, G4796, G4913, G5463, G5479

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 6:40-42
- 2 Chronicles 15:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 20:27-28
- 2 Chronicles 20:27-28
- 2 Chronicles 23:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 29:35-36
- 2 Chronicles 30:21-22
- 2 Chronicles 30:25-27

Judah

Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah."

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Jew](#), [Judah](#), Judea, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 01:9-10
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:1-2
- [Luke 03:33-35](#)
- Ruth 01:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 2:6-7](#)
- [2 Chronicles 9:10](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14:5-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15:1-2](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16:11-12](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18:9-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18:28-30](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20:3-4](#)

- 2 Chronicles 20:24
- 2 Chronicles 21:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 21:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 22:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 22:6
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 24:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 24:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 24:23-24
- 2 Chronicles 25:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 25:27-28
- 2 Chronicles 27:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 28:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 29:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 31:1
- 2 Chronicles 31:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 36:22-23

Judah, kingdom of Judah

Facts:

The tribe of Judah was the largest of the twelve tribes of Israel. The kingdom of Judah was made up of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin.

- After King Solomon died, the nation of Israel was divided into two kingdoms: Israel and Judah. The kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom, located west of the Salt Sea.
- The capital city of the kingdom of Judah was Jerusalem.
- Eight kings of Judah obeyed Yahweh and led the people to worship him. The other kings of Judah were evil and led the people to worship idols.
- Over 120 years after Assyria defeated Israel (the northern kingdom), Judah was conquered by the nation of Babylon. The Babylonians destroyed the city and the temple, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives.

(See also: [Judah](#), [Salt Sea](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 30:26-28
- 2 Samuel 12:7-8
- [Hosea 05:14-15](#)
- [Jeremiah 07:33-34](#)
- Judges 01:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

***18:07** Only two tribes remained faithful to him (Rehoboam). These two tribes became the **kingdom of Judah**.\ ***18:10** The **kingdoms of Judah** and Israel became enemies and often fought against each other.\ ***18:13** The **kings of Judah** were descendants of David. Some of these kings were good men who ruled justly and worshiped God. But most of **Judah's** kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols.\ ***20:01** The **kingdoms of Israel and Judah** both sinned against God.\ ***20:05** The people in the **kingdom of Judah** saw how God had punished the people of the kingdom of Israel for not believing and obeying him. But they still worshiped idols, including the gods of the Canaanites.\ ***20:06** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the Babylonians, to attack the **kingdom of Judah**.\ ***20:09** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of **the kingdom of Judah** to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.\

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4438, H3063

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 11:1
- 2 Chronicles 12:2-4
- 2 Chronicles 13:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 13:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 14:1-4
- 2 Chronicles 16:1
- 2 Chronicles 17:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 19:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 25:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 25:13
- 2 Chronicles 25:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 26:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 27:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 28:19-21
- 2 Chronicles 28:26-27
- 2 Chronicles 30:1
- 2 Chronicles 30:23-24
- 2 Chronicles 32:1
- 2 Chronicles 32:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 34:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 34:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 34:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 35:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 35:26
- 2 Chronicles 36:3-4

judge, judges

Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
- After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called “judges” to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
- The term “judge” could also be called “decision-maker” or “leader” or “deliverer” or “governor,” depending on the context.

(See also: [governor](#), [judge](#), [law](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 04:6-8](#)
- [Acts 07:26-28](#)
- [Luke 11:18-20](#)
- [Luke 12:13-15](#)
- [Luke 18:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 05:25-26](#)
- [Ruth 01:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H8196, H8199, H8201, G350, G1252, G1348, G2919, G2922, G2923

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 1:2](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19:4-5](#)

judge, judges, judgment, judgments

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: [decree](#), [judge](#), judgment day, [just](#), [law](#), [law](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 04:17-18](#)
- [1 Kings 03:7-9](#)
- [Acts 10:42-43](#)
- [Isaiah 03:13-15](#)
- [James 02:1-4](#)
- [Luke 06:37](#)
- [Micah 03:9-11](#)
- [Psalm 054:1-3](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G144, G350, G968, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1349, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4232

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 1:8-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 6:22-23](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19:6-7](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19:8-9](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20:8-9](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22:7-8](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24:23-24](#)

just, justice, unjust, unjustly, injustice, justly, justify, justification

Definition:

“Just” and “justice” refer to treating people fairly according to God’s laws. Human laws that reflect God’s standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be “just” is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God’s eyes.
- To act “justly” means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God’s laws.
- To receive “justice” means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term “just” has the broader meaning of “righteous” or “following God’s laws.”

The terms “unjust” and “unjustly” refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An “injustice” is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being “partial” or “prejudiced” because he is not treating people equally.

The terms “justify” and “justification” refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- “Justification” refers to what God does when he forgives a person’s sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “just” could include “morally right” or “fair.”
- The term “justice” could be translated as “fair treatment” or “deserved consequences.”
- To “act justly” could be translated as “treat fairly” or “behave in a just way.”
- In some contexts, “just” could be translated as “righteous” or “upright.”
- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as, “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))

- Other ways to translate “justify” could include “declare (someone) to be righteous” or “cause (someone) to be righteous.”
- The term “justification” could be translated as “being declared righteous” or “becoming righteous” or “causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “resulting in justification” could be translated as “so that God justified many people” or “which resulted in God causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “for our justification” could be translated as “in order that we could be made righteous by God.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [guilt](#), [judge](#), [righteous](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16-17
- 1 Chronicles 18:14-17
- [Isaiah 04:3-4](#)
- [Jeremiah 22:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 18:16-17](#)
- [Micah 03:8](#)
- [Matthew 05:43-45](#)
- [Matthew 11:18-19](#)
- [Matthew 23:23-24](#)
- [Luke 18:3-5](#)
- [Luke 18:6-8](#)
- [Luke 18:13-14](#)
- [Luke 21:20-22](#)
- [Luke 23:39-41](#)
- [Acts 13:38-39](#)
- [Acts 28:3-4](#)
- [Romans 04:1-3](#)
- [Galatians 03:6-9](#)
- [Galatians 03:10-12](#)
- [Galatians 05:3-4](#)
- [Titus 03:6-7](#)
- [Hebrews 06:9-10](#)
- [James 02:21-24](#)
- [Revelation 15:3-4](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:09** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H2555, H3477, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G91, G93, G94, G1342, G1344, G1345, G1346, G1347, G1738

Uses:

- **2 Chronicles 9:7-8**

kind, kinds, kindness, kindnesses

Definition:

The terms “kind” and “kinds” refer to groups or classifications of things that are connected by shared characteristics.

- In the Bible, this term is specifically used to refer to the distinctive kinds of plants and animals that God made when he created the world.
- Often there are many different variations or species within each “kind.” For example, horses, zebras, and donkeys are all members of the same “kind,” but they are different species.
- The main thing that distinguishes each “kind” as a separate group is that members of that group can reproduce more of their same “kind.” Members of different kinds cannot do that with each other.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate this term could include “type” or “class” or “group” or “animal (plant) group” or “category.”

Bible References:

- Genesis 01:20-21
- Genesis 01:24-25
- [Mark 09:28-29](#)
- [Matthew 13:47-48](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2178, H3978, H4327, G1085, G5449

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 2:6-7](#)

king, kings, kingdom, kingdoms, kingship, kingly

Definition:

The term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

- A king was usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
- When a king died, it was usually his oldest son who became the next king.
- In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
- Rarely the term “king” was used to refer to someone who was not a true king, such as “King Herod” in the New Testament.
- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
- The “kingdom of God” refers to God’s rule over his people.
- Jesus was called “king of the Jews,” “king of Israel,” and “king of kings.”
- When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
- This term could also be translated as “supreme chief” or “absolute leader” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” could be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: [authority](#), Herod Antipas, [kingdom](#), kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 06:15-16](#)
- [2 Kings 05:17-19](#)
- [2 Samuel 05:3-5](#)
- [Acts 07:9-10](#)
- [Acts 13:21-22](#)
- [John 01:49-51](#)
- [Luke 01:5-7](#)
- [Luke 22:24-25](#)
- [Matthew 05:33-35](#)
- [Matthew 14:8-9](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly. ***16:01** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them. ***16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had. ***17:05** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him. ***21:06** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**. ***48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 1:8-11
- 2 Chronicles 2:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 4:11-13
- 2 Chronicles 5:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 6:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 7:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 8:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 9:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 9:17-18
- 2 Chronicles 10:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 10:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 11:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 12:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 13:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 14:1-4
- 2 Chronicles 16:1
- 2 Chronicles 16:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 16:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 17:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 18:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 19:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 20:34
- 2 Chronicles 21:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 22:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 22:10-12
- 2 Chronicles 24:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 24:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 24:27
- 2 Chronicles 25:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 25:23-24
- 2 Chronicles 26:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 26:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 28:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 28:26-27
- 2 Chronicles 30:23-24
- 2 Chronicles 31:11-13

- 2 Chronicles 32:1
- 2 Chronicles 32:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 33:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 33:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 34:14-16
- 2 Chronicles 35:10-12
- 2 Chronicles 36:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 36:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 36:20-21

kingdom of Israel

Facts:

What had been the northern part of the nation of Israel became the kingdom of Israel when the twelve tribes of Israel were divided into two kingdoms after Solomon died.

- The kingdom of Israel in the north had ten tribes, and the kingdom of Judah in the south had two tribes.
- The capital city of the kingdom of Israel was Samaria. It was about 50 km from Jerusalem, the capital city of the kingdom of Judah.
- All the kings of the kingdom of Israel were evil. They influenced the people to to serve idols and false gods.
- God sent the Assyrians to attack the kingdom of Israel. Many Israelites were captured and taken away to live in Assyria.
- The Assyrians brought foreigners to live among the remaining people of the kingdom of Israel. These foreigners intermarried with the Israelites, and their descendants became the Samaritan people.

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Jerusalem](#), [kingdom](#), [Samaria](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 35:18-19](#)
- [Jeremiah 05:10-13](#)
- [Jeremiah 09:25-26](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their kingdom in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom of Israel**. ***18:10** The **kingdoms of Judah and Israel** became enemies and often fought against each other. ***18:11** In the new **kingdom of Israel**, all the kings were evil. ***20:01** The **kingdoms of Israel** and Judah both sinned against God. ***20:02** The **kingdom of Israel** was destroyed by the Assyrian Empire, a powerful, cruel nation. The Assyrians killed many people in the **kingdom of Israel**, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country. ***20:04** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the **kingdom of Israel** had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called Samaritans.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H4410, H4467, H4468

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 11:1
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 13:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 16:1
- 2 Chronicles 17:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 25:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 25:17
- 2 Chronicles 25:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 27:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 28:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 28:19-21
- 2 Chronicles 28:26-27
- 2 Chronicles 30:1
- 2 Chronicles 34:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 34:33
- 2 Chronicles 35:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 35:26
- 2 Chronicles 36:8

kingdom, kingdoms

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), [kingdom of God](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [priest](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 02:10-12](#)
- [2 Timothy 04:17-18](#)
- [Colossians 01:13-14](#)
- [John 18:36-37](#)
- [Mark 03:23-25](#)
- [Matthew 04:7-9](#)
- [Matthew 13:18-19](#)
- [Matthew 16:27-28](#)
- [Revelation 01:9-11](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation."
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon's death.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 2:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 2:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 7:16-18
- 2 Chronicles 9:19-21
- 2 Chronicles 11:1
- 2 Chronicles 14:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 20:29-30
- 2 Chronicles 21:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 22:9
- 2 Chronicles 23:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 29:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 32:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 36:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 36:22-23

know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, foreknowledge

Definition:

To “know” means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression “make known” is an expression that means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), reveal, understand, [wise](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 02:12-13](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:46-47](#)
- [2 Corinthians 02:14-15](#)
- [2 Peter 01:3-4](#)

know, knows, knew, knowing, knowledge, known, make known, makes known, made known, unknown, foreknew, j

- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:4-5
- Luke 01:76-77

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G50, G56, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1231, G1492, G1921, G1922, G1987, G2467, G2589, G3877, G4267, G4894

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 1:8-11
- 2 Chronicles 6:28-31

labor, labors, labored, laborer, laborers

Definition:

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word “labor” is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include “work” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or to “work hard.”

(See also: hard, labor pains)

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 02:7-9](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 03:4-5](#)
- [Galatians 04:10-11](#)
- [James 05:4-6](#)
- [John 04:37-38](#)
- [Luke 10:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 10:8-10](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H213, H3018, H3021, H3022, H3023, H3205, H5447, H4522, H4639, H5445, H5647, H5656, H5998, H5999, H6001, H6089, H6468, H6635, G75, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2872, G2873, G4704, G4866, G4904, G5389

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 8:7-8](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24:13-14](#)

lamb, Lamb of God

Definition:

The term “lamb” refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “a young sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 12:1-3
- [Ezra 08:35-36](#)
- [Isaiah 66:3](#)
- [Jeremiah 11:18-20](#)
- [John 01:29-31](#)
- [John 01:35-36](#)
- Leviticus 14:21-23
- Leviticus 17:1-4
- [Luke 10:3-4](#)
- [Revelation 15:3-4](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***05:07** As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, "Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?" ***11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it. ***24:06** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, "Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world." ***45:08** He read, "They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word." ***48:08** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place. ***48:09** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7716, G721, G2316

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 30:13-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30:16-17](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35:1-2](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35:10-12](#)

lament, laments, lamentation

Definition:

The terms “lament” and “lamentation” refer to a strong expression of mourning, sorrow, or grief.

- Sometimes this includes deep regret for sin, or compassion for people who have experienced disaster.
- A lamentation could include moaning, weeping, or wailing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “lament” could be translated as to “deeply mourn” or to “wail in grief” or to “be sorrowful.”
- A “lamentation” (or a “lament”) could be translated as “loud wailing and weeping” or “deep sorrow” or “sorrowful sobbing” or “mournful moaning.”

Bible References:

- [Amos 08:9-10](#)
- [Ezekiel 32:1-2](#)
- [Jeremiah 22:17-19](#)
- [Job 27:15-17](#)
- [Lamentations 02:5-6](#)
- [Lamentations 02:8-9](#)
- [Micah 02:3-5](#)
- [Psalm 102:1-2](#)
- [Zechariah 11:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H56, H421, H578, H592, H1058, H4553, H5091, H5092, H5594, H6088, H6969, H7015, H8567, G2354, G2355, G2870, G2875

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 35:25](#)

lamp, lamps

Definition:

The term “lamp” generally refers to something that produces light. The lamps used in Bible times were usually oil lamps.

The type of lamp that was used in Bible times is a small container with a fuel source, usually oil, that gives light when it burns.

- An ordinary oil lamp usually consisted of a common piece of pottery filled with olive oil, with a wick placed in the oil to burn.
- For some lamps, the pot or jar was oval, with one end pinched close together to hold the wick.
- An oil lamp could be carried or placed on a stand so that its light could fill a room or house.
- In scripture, lamps are used in several figurative ways as symbols of light and life.

(See also: [lampstand](#), [life](#), light)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:34-36
- Exodus 25:3-7
- [Luke 08:16-18](#)
- [Matthew 05:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 06:22-24](#)
- [Matthew 25:1-4](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3940, H3974, H4501, H5215, H5216, G2985, G3088

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 4:19-21](#)

lampstand, lampstands

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lampstand” generally refers to a structure on which a lamp is placed in order to provide light to a room.

- A simple lampstand usually held one lamp and was made of clay, wood, or metal (such as bronze, silver, or gold.)
- In the Jerusalem temple there was a special gold lampstand which had seven branches for holding seven lamps.

Translation Suggestions

- This term could be also translated as “lamp pedestal” or “structure for holding a lamp” or “lamp holder.”
- For the temple lampstand, this could be translated as “seven-lamp lampstand” or “gold pedestal with seven lamps.”
- It would also be helpful in a translation to include pictures of a simple lampstand and a seven-branch lampstand in the relevant Bible passages.

(See also: [bronze](#), [gold](#), [lamp](#), light, [silver](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- [Daniel 05:5-6](#)
- [Exodus 37:17-19](#)
- [Mark 04:21-23](#)
- [Matthew 05:15-16](#)
- [Revelation 01:12-13](#)
- [Revelation 01:19-20](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4501, G3087

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 4:7-8](#)
- [2 Chronicles 4:19-21](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13:10-11](#)

law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms “law” and “God’s law” are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
- the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
- all the laws given to Moses
- the first five books of the Old Testament
- the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
- all of God’s instructions and will
- The phrase “the law and the prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”)

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws,” since they refer to many instructions.
- The “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions.”
- The phrase “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: instruct, [Moses](#), Ten Commandments, lawful, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 15:5-6](#)
- [Daniel 09:12-14](#)
- [Exodus 28:42-43](#)
- [Ezra 07:25-26](#)
- [Galatians 02:15-16](#)
- [Luke 24:44](#)
- [Matthew 05:17-18](#)
- [Nehemiah 10:28-29](#)

- [Romans 03:19-20](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.\
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.\
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.\
- **16:01** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.\
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.\
- **27:01** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"\
- **28:01** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."\<

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G2316, G3551, G3565

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 6:16-17](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12:1](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14:1-4](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15:3-5](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17:7-9](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23:18-19](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25:3-4](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30:16-17](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31:2-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31:20-21](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33:7-9](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34:14-16](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35:10-12](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35:26](#)

law, laws, lawgiver, lawbreaker, lawbreakers, lawsuit, lawyer, principle, principled, principles

Definition:

A “law” is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A “principle” is a guideline for decision-making and behavior.

- Both “law” and “principle” can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person’s behavior.
- This meaning of “law” is different from its meaning in the term “law of Moses,” where it refers to commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
- When a general law is being referred to, “law” could be translated as “principle” or “general rule.”

(See also: [law](#), [law](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:1-2
- [Esther 03:8-9](#)
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Genesis 26:4-5
- [John 18:31-32](#)
- [Romans 07:1](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1285, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2708, H2710, H4687, H4941, H6310, H7560, H8451, G1785, G3548, G3551, G4747

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 19:10](#)

Lebanon

Facts:

Lebanon is a beautiful mountainous region located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, north of Israel. In Bible times this region was thickly wooded with fir trees, such as cedar and cypress.

- King Solomon sent workers to Lebanon to harvest cedar trees for use in building God's temple.
- Ancient Lebanon was inhabited by Phoenician people, who were skilled builders of ships that were used for a successful trading industry.
- The cities of Tyre and Sidon were located in Lebanon. It was in these cities that a valuable purple dye was first used.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [cedar](#), cypress, fir, Phoenicia)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:32-34
- [2 Chronicles 02:8-10](#)
- Deuteronomy 01:7-8
- [Psalms 029:3-5](#)
- [Zechariah 10:8-10](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3844

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 2:8-10](#)
- [2 Chronicles 2:15-16](#)
- [2 Chronicles 8:5-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 9:15-16](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25:18-19](#)

leper, lepers, leprosy, leprous

Definition:

The term “leprosy” is used in the Bible to refer to several different skin diseases. A “leper” is a person who has leprosy. The term “leprous” describes a person or body part that is infected with leprosy.

- Certain kinds of leprosy cause the skin to become discolored with white patches, as when Miriam and Naaman had leprosy.
- In modern times, leprosy often causes hands, feet, and other body parts to become damaged and deformed.
- According to the instructions that God gave to the Israelites, when a person had leprosy, he was considered “unclean” and had to stay away from other people so that they would not become infected with the disease.
- A leper would often call out “unclean” so that others would be warned not to come near him.
- Jesus healed many lepers, and also people who had other kinds of diseases.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “leprosy” in the Bible can be translated as “skin disease” or “dreaded skin disease.”
- Ways to translate “leprous” could include “full of leprosy” or “infected with skin disease” or “covered with skin sores.”

(See also: Miriam, Naaman, [clean](#))

Bible References:

- [Luke 05:12-13](#)
- [Luke 17:11-13](#)
- [Mark 01:40-42](#)
- [Mark 14:3-5](#)
- [Matthew 08:1-3](#)
- [Matthew 10:8-10](#)
- [Matthew 11:4-6](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6879, H6883, G3014, G3015

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 26:19-20](#)

Levi, Levite, Levites, Levitical

Definition:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term “Levite” refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named “Levi” were ancestors of Jesus, and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus’ disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: Matthew, [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), [temple](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 08:3-5
- [Acts 04:36-37](#)
- Genesis 29:33-34
- [John 01:19-21](#)
- [Luke 10:31-32](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3878, H3879, H3881, G3017, G3018, G3019, G3020

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 5:4-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 8:14-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11:13-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13:8-9](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17:7-9](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19:8-9](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19:11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20:14-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23:1-3](#)

- 2 Chronicles 23:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 24:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 29:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 29:12-14
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 30:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 34:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 34:29-30
- 2 Chronicles 35:3-4

life, live, lived, lives, living, alive

Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by “physical life” and “spiritual life.”

1. Physical life

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam’s body, and he became a living being.
- A “life” can also refer to an individual person as in “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan, as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive, as in “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

2. Spiritual life

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus with God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called “eternal life” to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives’ could be translated as “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about being alive spiritually, “life” could be translated as “spiritual life” or “eternal life,” depending on the context.
- The concept of “spiritual life” could also be translated as “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Peter 01:3-4](#)
- [Acts 10:42-43](#)
- [Genesis 02:7-8](#)
- [Genesis 07:21-22](#)
- [Hebrews 10:19-22](#)
- [Jeremiah 44:1-3](#)
- [John 01:4-5](#)
- [Judges 02:18-19](#)
- [Luke 12:22-23](#)
- [Matthew 07:13-14](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were **living** in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:05** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 1:8-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 6:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 6:21](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10:6-7](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25:11-12](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31:4-5](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36:15-16](#)

lions, lion, lioness, lionesses

Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, that has animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [David](#), leopard, Samson, [sheep](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:22-23
- 1 Kings 07:27-29
- [Proverbs 19:11-12](#)
- [Psalms 017:11-12](#)
- [Revelation 05:3-5](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H738, H739, H744, H3715, H3833, H3918, H7826, H7830, G3023

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 9:17-18](#)

locust, locusts

Facts:

The term “locust” refers to a type of large, flying grasshopper that sometimes flies with many other of its kind in a very destructive swarm that eats all vegetation.

- Locusts and other grasshoppers are large, straight-winged insects with long, jointed back legs that give them the ability to jump a long distance way.
- In the Old Testament, swarming locusts were referred to figuratively as a symbol or picture of the overwhelming devastation that would come as a result of Israel’s disobedience.
- God sent locusts as one of the ten plagues against the Egyptians.
- The New Testament says that locusts were a main source of food for John the Baptist while he was living in the desert.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [captive](#), [Egypt](#), [Israel](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [plague](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 06:28-31](#)
- Deuteronomy 28:38-39
- Exodus 10:3-4
- [Mark 01:4-6](#)
- [Proverbs 30:27-28](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H697, H1357, H1462, H1501, H2284, H3218, H5556, H6767, G200

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 6:28-31](#)

loins

Definition:

The term “loins” refers to the part of the body of an animal or person that is between the lower ribs and the hip bones, also known as the lower abdomen.

- The expression “gird up the loins” refers to preparing to work hard. It comes from the custom of tucking the bottom of one’s robe into a belt around the waist in order to move with ease.
- The term “loins” is often used in the Bible to refer to the lower back part of an animal that was sacrificed.
- In the Bible, the term “loins” often refers figuratively and euphemistically to a man’s reproductive organs as the source of his descendants. (See: [euphemism](#))
- The expression “will come from your loins” could also be translated as, “will be your offspring” or “will be born from your seed” or “God will cause to come from you.” (See: [euphemism](#))
- When referring to a part of the body, this could also be translated as “abdomen” or “hips” or “waist,” depending on the context.

(See also: [descendant](#), gird, offspring)

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 01:13-14](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06:7-9](#)
- Deuteronomy 33:11
- Genesis 37:34-36
- [Job 15:27-28](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2504, H2783, H3409, H3689, H4975, G3751

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 6:7-9](#)

lord, lords, Lord, master, masters, sir, sirs

Definition:

The term “lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULB and UDB, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: **God**, Jesus, **ruler**, **Yahweh**)

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:1-2
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:1-4
- Lamentations 02:1-2
- Ezekiel 18:29-30
- Daniel 09:9-11
- Daniel 09:17-19
- Malachi 03:1-3
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 06:22-23
- Ephesians 06:9
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Hebrews 12:14-17
- James 02:1-4
- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- Jude 01:5-6
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:07** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:03** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962, G1203, G2962

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 2:13-14](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13:6-7](#)

love, loves, loving, loved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
2. Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
3. When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
4. In the ULB, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
5. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
6. This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
7. The term can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.
8. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.
9. In the figurative expression “Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated,” the term “loved” refers to God's choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as “chosen.” Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn't given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term “hated” is used figuratively here to mean “rejected” or “not chosen.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.

- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 13:4-7](#)
- [1 John 03:1-3](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 04:9-12](#)
- [Galatians 05:22-24](#)
- [Genesis 29:15-18](#)
- [Isaiah 56:6-7](#)
- [Jeremiah 02:1-3](#)
- [John 03:16-18](#)
- [Matthew 10:37-39](#)
- [Nehemiah 09:32-34](#)
- [Philippians 01:9-11](#)
- [Song of Solomon 01:1-4](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:02** The law expert replied that God’s law says, “**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself.”
- **33:08** “The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God.”
- **36:05** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- **39:10** “Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- **47:01** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:01** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:03** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:04** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:07** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:09** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5381, G5382, G5383, G5388

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 2:11-12](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11:20-21](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26:9-10](#)

lute, lyre, lyres

Definition:

A lute and a lyre are small, stringed, musical instruments that were used by the Israelites to worship God.

- A lyre looks like a small harp, having strings strung across an open frame.
- A lute is very similar to a modernday acoustic guitar, having a wooden sound box and an extended neck on which strings are strung.
- In playing a lute or a lyre, certain strings are held down with the fingers of one hand while these and other strings are plucked or strummed with the other hand.
- The lute, lyre, and harp are all played by strumming or plucking the strings.
- The number of strings varied, but the Old Testament specifically mentions instruments that had ten strings.

(See also: [harp](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:11-12
- 1 Samuel 10:5-6
- [2 Chronicles 05:11-12](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3658, H5035, H5443

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 5:11-12](#)
- [2 Chronicles 9:10](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20:27-28](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29:25-26](#)

Manasseh

Facts:

There were five men by the name of Manasseh in the Old Testament:

- Manasseh was the name of Joseph's firstborn son.
- Both Manasseh and his younger brother Ephraim were adopted by Joseph's father, Jacob which gave their descendants the privilege of being among the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The descendants of Manasseh formed one of the tribes of Israel.
- The tribe of Manasseh was often called the "half-tribe of Manasseh" because only part of the tribe settled in the land of Canaan, on the west side of the Jordan River. The other part of the tribe settled on the east side of the Jordan.
- One of the kings of Judah was also named Manasseh.
- King Manasseh was an evil king who sacrificed his own children as burnt offerings to false gods.
- God punished King Manasseh by allowing him to be captured by an enemy army. Manasseh turned back to God and destroyed the altars where idols were worshiped.
- Two men named Manasseh lived during the time of Ezra. These men were required to divorce their pagan wives, who had influenced them to worship false gods.
- One other Manasseh was the grandfather of some Danites who were priests for false gods.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [altar](#), [Dan](#), [Ephraim](#), [Ezra](#), [false god](#), [Jacob](#), [Judah](#), [pagan](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 15:8-9](#)
- Deuteronomy 03:12-13
- Genesis 41:50-52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- Judges 01:27-28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4519, H4520, G3128

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 15:8-9](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30:1](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31:1](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32:32-33](#)

- 2 Chronicles 33:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 33:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 34:6-7

mercy, merciful

Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See also: [compassion](#), [forgive](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 01:3-5](#)
- [1 Timothy 01:12-14](#)
- [Daniel 09:17-19](#)
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 19:16-17
- [Hebrews 10:28-29](#)
- [James 02:12-13](#)
- [Luke 06:35-36](#)
- [Matthew 09:27-28](#)
- [Philippians 02:25-27](#)
- [Psalms 041:4-6](#)
- [Romans 12:1-2](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.

- **19:17** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **20:12** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **27:11** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **32:11** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”
- **34:09** “But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2551, H2603, H2604, H2616, H2617, H2623, H3722, H3727, H4627, H4819, H5503, H5504, H5505, H5506, H6014, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, G1653, G1655, G1656, G2433, G2436, G3628, G3629, G3741, G4698

Uses:

- **2 Chronicles 30:7-9**

messenger, messengers

Facts:

The term “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: [angel](#), [apostle](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 06:21
- 2 Kings 01:1-2
- [Luke 07:27-28](#)
- [Matthew 11:9-10](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G32, G652

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 18:12-14](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25:17](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28:16-18](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30:1](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34:29-30](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36:15-16](#)

might, mighty, mightier, mightily

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, [miracle](#), [power](#), strength)

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:22-25](#)
- Genesis 06:4
- [Mark 09:38-39](#)
- [Matthew 11:23-24](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H46, H47, H117, H193, H202, H352, H386, H410, H430, H533, H650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1370, H1396, H1397, H1401, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2394, H2428, H3201, H3524,

H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H5807, H5868, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H6697, H6743, H7227, H7580, H7989, H8623, H8624, H8632, G972, G1411, G1413, G1414, G1415, G1498, G1752, G1754, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2900, G2904, G3168, G3173, G5082

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 6:32-33](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13:8-9](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26:11-13](#)

mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likeminded

Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression “keep in mind” could be translated as “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”
- The expression “double-minded” could also be translated as “doubting” or “unable to decide” or “with conflicting thoughts.”

(See also: [believe](#), [heart](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

- [Luke 10:25-28](#)
- [Mark 06:51-52](#)
- [Matthew 21:28-30](#)
- [Matthew 22:37-38](#)
- [James 04:08](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3629, H3820, H3824, H5162, H7725, G1271, G1374, G3328, G3525, G3540, G3563, G4993, G5590

mind, minds, minded, mindful, remind, reminds, reminded, reminder, reminders, reminding, likemindedtranslation

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 6:40-42](#)

miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs

Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: [power](#), [prophet](#), [apostle](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Thessalonians 02:8-10](#)
- [Acts 04:15-18](#)
- [Acts 04:21-22](#)
- [Daniel 04:1-3](#)
- [Deuteronomy 13:1-3](#)

- Exodus 03:19-22
- [John 02:11](#)
- [Matthew 13:57-58](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:08** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:06** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."
- **49:02** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540,, G880, G1213, G1229, G1411, G1569, G1718, G1770, G1839, G2285, G2296, G2297, G3167, G3902, G4591, G4592, G5059

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 32:24-26](#)

Mizpah

Facts:

Mizpah is the name of several towns mentioned in the Old Testament. It means, “look-out point” or “watchtower.”

- When David was being pursued by Saul, he left his parents in Mizpah, under the protection of the king of Moab.
- One city called Mizpah was located on the border between the kingdoms of Judah and Israel. It was a major military center.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Moab](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:20-22
- 1 Samuel 07:5-6
- 1 Samuel 07:10-11
- [Jeremiah 40:5-6](#)
- Judges 10:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4708, H4709

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 16:4-6](#)

Moab, Moabite, Moabites

Facts:

Moab was the son of Lot's elder daughter. It also became the name of the land where he and his family lived. The term "Moabite" refers to a person who is descended from Moab or who lives in the country of Moab.

- The country of Moab was located east of the Salt Sea.
- Moab was southeast from the town of Bethlehem where Naomi's family lived.
- The people in Bethlehem called Ruth a "Moabites" because she was a woman from the country of Moab. This term could also be translated as "Moabite woman" or "woman from Moab."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), Judea, Lot, Ruth, [Salt Sea](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 19:36-38
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Ruth 01:1-2
- Ruth 01:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4124, H4125

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 20:1-2](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20:10-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20:22-23](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24:25-26](#)

mock, mocks, mocked, mocking, mocker, mockers, mockery, ridicule, ridiculed, scoff at, scoffed at

Definition:

The terms “mock,” ridicule,” and “scoff at” all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people’s words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term “scoff at” can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
- A “mocker” is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.

Bible References:

- [2 Peter 03:3-4](#)
- [Acts 02:12-13](#)
- [Galatians 06:6-8](#)
- [Genesis 39:13-15](#)
- [Luke 22:63-65](#)
- [Mark 10:32-34](#)
- [Matthew 09:23-24](#)
- [Matthew 20:17-19](#)
- [Matthew 27:27-29](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***21:12** Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, **mock**, and beat the Messiah. ***39:05** The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, “He deserves to die!” Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and **mocked** him. ***39:12** The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!” ***40:04** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God?” ***40:05** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd **mocked** Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1422, H2048, H2049, H2778, H2781, H3213, H3887, H3931, H3932, H3933, H3934, H3944, H3945, H4167, H4485, H4912, H5058, H5607, H5953, H6026, H6711, H7046, H7048, H7814, H7832, H8103, H8148, H8437, H8595, G1592, G1701, G1702, G1703, G2301, G2606, G3456, G5512

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 30:10-12](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32:16-17](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36:15-16](#)

Moses

Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Miriam, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:20-21](#)
- [Acts 07:29-30](#)
- Exodus 02:9-10
- Exodus 09:1-4
- [Matthew 17:3-4](#)
- [Romans 05:14-15](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***09:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire. ***12:05** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you." ***12:07** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters. ***12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God. ***13:07** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G3475

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 1:2
- 2 Chronicles 5:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 8:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 24:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 33:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 34:14-16
- 2 Chronicles 35:5-6

mourn, mourns, mourned, mourning, mourner, mourners, mournful, mournfully

Facts:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: sackcloth, [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 01:11-13
- Genesis 23:1-2
- [Luke 07:31-32](#)
- [Matthew 11:16-17](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H56, H57, H60, H205, H578, H584, H585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1669, H1671, H1897, H1899, H1993, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6937, H6941, H6969, H7300, H8386, G2354, G2875, G3602, G3996, G3997

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 35:23-24](#)

name, names, named

Definition:

In the Bible, the word “name” was used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
- The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: [call](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 02:12-14](#)
- [2 Timothy 02:19-21](#)
- [Acts 04:5-7](#)
- [Acts 04:11-12](#)
- [Acts 09:26-27](#)
- [Genesis 12:1-3](#)
- [Genesis 35:9-10](#)
- [Matthew 18:4-6](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 2:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 6:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 7:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 12:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 13:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 14:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 20:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 28:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 31:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 33:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 35:3-4

Naphtali

Facts:

Naphtali was the sixth son of Jacob. His descendants formed the tribe of Naphtali, which was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- Sometimes the name Naphtali was used to refer to the land where the tribe lived. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- The land of Naphtali was located in the northern part of Israel, next to the tribes of Dan and Asher. its eastern border was on the western shoreline of the Sea of Chinnereth.
- This tribe was mentioned in both the Old and New Testaments of the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asher](#), [Dan](#), [Jacob](#), Sea of Galilee, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:15-17
- Deuteronomy 27:13-14
- [Ezekiel 48:1-3](#)
- Genesis 30:7-8
- Judges 01:33
- [Matthew 04:12-13](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5321, G3508

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 16:4-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34:6-7](#)

Nathan

Facts:

Nathan was a faithful prophet of God who lived while David was king over Israel.

- God sent Nathan to confront David after David sinned grievously against Uriah.
- Nathan rebuked David in spite of the fact that David was the king.
- David repented of his sin after Nathan confronted him.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), [faithful](#), [prophet](#), [Uriah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 17:1-2
- [2 Chronicles 09:29-31](#)
- 2 Samuel 12:1-3
- [Psalm 051:1-2](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***17:07** God sent the prophet **Nathan** to David with this message, “Because you are a man of war, you will not build this Temple for me.” ***17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the prophet **Nathan** to tell David how evil his sin was.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5416, G3481

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 9:29-31](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29:25-26](#)

nation, nations

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Babylon](#), Canaan, Gentile, Greek, [people group](#), [Philistines](#), Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- [2 Chronicles 15:6-7](#)
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- [Acts 02:5-7](#)
- [Acts 13:19-20](#)
- [Acts 17:26-27](#)
- [Acts 26:4-5](#)
- [Daniel 03:3-5](#)
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29

- Genesis 35:11-13
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 07:2-5
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43-44
- Romans 04:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H249, H523, H524, H776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 15:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 20:5-7
- 2 Chronicles 20:29-30
- 2 Chronicles 32:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 32:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 33:1-3

Nebuchadnezzar

Facts:

Nebuchadnezzar was a king of the Babylonian Empire whose powerful army conquered many people groups and nations.

- Under Nebuchadnezzar's leadership, the Babylonian army attacked and conquered the kingdom of Judah, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives. The captives were forced to live there for a period of 70 years known as the "Babylonian Exile."
- One of the exiles, Daniel, interpreted some of King Nebuchadnezzar's dreams.
- Three other captured Israelites, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, were thrown into a fiery furnace when they refused to bow down to a gigantic gold statue that Nebuchadnezzar had made.
- King Nebuchadnezzar was very arrogant and worshiped false gods. When he conquered Judah, he stole many gold and silver objects from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Because Nebuchadnezzar was proud and refused to turn away from worshiping false gods, Yahweh caused him to be destitute for seven years, living like an animal. After the seven years, God restored Nebuchadnezzar when he humbled himself and praised the one true God, Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: arrogant, [Azariah](#), [Babylon](#), Hananiah, Mishael)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:13-15
- 2 Kings 25:1-3
- [Daniel 01:1-2](#)
- [Daniel 04:4-6](#)
- [Ezekiel 26:7-8](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***20:06** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent **Nebuchadnezzar**, king of the Babylonians, to attack the kingdom of Judah. ***20:06** The king of Judah agreed to be **Nebuchadnezzar's** servant and pay him a lot of money every year. ***20:08** To punish the king of Judah for rebelling, **Nebuchadnezzar's** soldiers killed the king's sons in front of him and then made him blind. ***20:09** **Nebuchadnezzar** and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5019, H5020

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 36:5-7](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36:13-14](#)

Negev

Facts:

The Negev is a desert region in the southern part of Israel, southwest of the Salt Sea.

- The original word means “the South,” and some English versions translate it this way.
- It could be that the “South” is not located where the Negev Desert is today.
- When Abraham lived in the city of Kadesh, he was in the Negev or southern region.
- Isaac was living in the Negev when Rebekah traveled to meet him and become his wife.
- The Jewish tribes of Judah and Simeon lived in this southern region.
- The largest city in the Negev region was Beersheba.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Beersheba](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Kadesh](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Simeon](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 12:8-9
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Genesis 24:61-62
- Joshua 03:14-16
- Numbers 13:17-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5045, H6160

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 28:16-18](#)

neighbor, neighbors, neighborhood, neighboring

Definition:

The term “neighbor” usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A “neighbor” is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term “neighbor” figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means “person who lives nearby.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [parable](#), [people group](#), [Samaria](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:26-28](#)
- [Ephesians 04:25-27](#)
- [Galatians 05:13-15](#)
- [James 02:8-9](#)
- [John 09:8-9](#)
- [Luke 01:56-58](#)
- [Matthew 05:43-45](#)
- [Matthew 19:18-19](#)
- [Matthew 22:39-40](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5997, H7138, H7453, H7468, H7934, G1069, G2087, G4040, G4139

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 6:22-23](#)

new moon, new moons

Definition:

The term “new moon” refers to the moon when it looks like a small, crescent-shaped sliver of light. This is the beginning phase of the moon as it moves in its orbit around the planet Earth at sunset. It also refers to the first day a new moon should be visible after the moon has been dark for a few days.

- In ancient times, new moons marked the beginnings of certain time periods, such as months.
- The Israelites celebrated a new moon festival that was marked by the blowing of a ram’s horn.
- The Bible also refers to this time as the “beginning of the month.”

(See also: month, [earth](#), [festival](#), horn, [sheep](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:30-31
- 1 Samuel 20:4-5
- 2 Kings 04:23-24
- [Ezekiel 45:16-17](#)
- [Isaiah 01:12-13](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2320, G3376, G3561

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 2:4-5](#)
- [2 Chronicles 8:12-13](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31:2-3](#)

noble, nobles, nobleman, noblemen**Definition:**

The term “noble” refers to something that is excellent and of high quality. A “nobleman” is a person who belongs to a high political or social class. A man “of noble birth” is one who was born a nobleman.

- A nobleman was often an officer of the state, a close servant to the king.
- The term “nobleman” could also be translated by, “king’s official” or “government officer.”

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 23:20-21](#)
- [Daniel 04:36-37](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 10:16-17](#)
- [Luke 19:11-12](#)
- [Psalm 016:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H117, H678, H1281, H1419, H2715, H3358, H3513, H5057, H5081, H6440, H6579, H7336, H7261, H8282, H8269, H8321, G937, G2104, G2903

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 23:20-21](#)

oath, oaths, swear, swears, swearing, swear by, swears by

Definition:

In the Bible, an oath is a formal promise to do something. The person making the oath is required to fulfill that promise. An oath involves a commitment to being faithful and truthful.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In the Bible, the term “swear” means to speak an oath.
- The term “swear by” means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Sometimes these terms are used together, as in “swear an oath.”
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham’s relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
- A modern-day meaning of the word “swear” means is “use foul language.” This is not its meaning in the Bible.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “an oath” could also be translated as “a pledge” or “a solemn promise.”
- To “swear” could be translated as to “formally promise” or to “pledge” or to “commit to do something.”
- Other ways to translate “swear by my name” could include “make a promise using my name to confirm it.”
- To “swear by heaven and earth” could be translated as to, “promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it.”
- Make sure the translation of “swear” or “oath” does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, [covenant](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:22-24
- Genesis 24:1-4
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:29-31
- [Luke 01:72-75](#)
- [Mark 06:26-29](#)

- Matthew 05:36-37
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:71-72

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G332, G3660, G3727, G3728

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 6:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 15:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 18:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 36:13-14

obey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disobedience, disobedient

Definition:

The term “obey” means to do what is required or commanded. The term “obedient” describes someone who obeys. “Obedience” is the characteristic that an obedient person has. Sometimes the command is about not doing something, as in “do not steal.”

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
- For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate obey could include a word or phrase that means “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: citizen, [command](#), disobey, [kingdom](#), [law](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 05:29-32](#)
- [Acts 06:7](#)
- [Genesis 28:6-7](#)
- [James 01:22-25](#)
- [James 02:10-11](#)
- [Luke 06:46-48](#)
- [Matthew 07:26-27](#)
- [Matthew 19:20-22](#)
- [Matthew 28:20](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **05:06** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **05:10** “Because you (Abraham) have **obeyed** me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **05:10** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **13:07** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

translation *Wordsobey, obeys, obeyed, obeying, obedience, obedient, obediently, disobey, disobeys, disobeyed, disob*

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H2388, H3349, H4928, H6213, H7181, H8085, H8086, H8104, G191, G544, G3980, G3982, G4198, G5083, G5084, G5218, G5219, G5255, G5292, G5293, G5442

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 26:4-5](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31:4-5](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34:20-21](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34:31-32](#)

oil

Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: olive, [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 01:21-22
- Exodus 29:1-2
- Leviticus 05:11
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- [Mark 06:12-13](#)
- [Matthew 25:7-9](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1880, H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G1637, G3464

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 2:8-10](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11:11-12](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31:4-5](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32:27-29](#)

Omri

Facts:

Omri was an army commander who became the sixth king of Israel.

- King Omri reigned for 12 years in the city of Tirzah.
- Like all the kings of Israel before him, Omri was a very evil king who led the people of Israel into more idol worship.
- Omri was also the father of King Ahab.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Israel](#), [Jeroboam](#), Tirzah)

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 22:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6018

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 22:1-3](#)

oppress, oppresses, oppressed, oppressing, oppression, oppressive, oppressor, oppressors

Definition:

The terms “oppress” and “oppression” refer to treating people harshly. An “oppressor” is a person who oppresses people.

- The term “oppression” especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term “oppressed” describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “oppress” could be translated as, “severely mistreat” or “cause to be heavily burdened” or “put under miserable bondage” or “rule harshly.”
- Ways to translate “oppression” could include “heavy suppression and bondage” or “burdensome control.”
- The phrase “the oppressed” could be translated as “oppressed people” or “people in terrible bondage” or “those who are treated harshly.”
- The term “oppressor” could be translated as “person who oppresses” or “nation who controls and rules harshly” or “persecutor.”

(See also: bind, enslave, persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:6-7
- [Ecclesiastes 04:1](#)
- [Job 10:1-3](#)
- Judges 02:18-19
- [Nehemiah 05:14-15](#)
- [Psalms 119:133-134](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1790, H1792, H2541, H2555, H3238, H3905, H3906, H4642, H4939, H5065, H6115, H6125, H6184, H6206, H6216, H6217, H6231, H6233, H6234, H6693, H7429, H7533, H7701, G2616, G2669

translation Words oppress, oppresses, oppressed, oppressing, oppression, oppressive, oppressor, oppressors

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 16:9-10](#)

pagan, pagans

Definition:

In Bible times, the term “pagan” was used to describe people who worshiped false gods instead of Yahweh.

- Anything associated with these people, such as the altars where they worshiped, the religious rituals they performed, and their beliefs, were also called “pagan.”
- Pagan belief systems often included the worship of false gods and the worship of nature.
- Some pagan religions included sexually immoral rituals or the killing of human beings as part of their worship.

(See also: [altar](#), [false god](#), [sacrifice](#), [worship](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 10:20-22](#)
- [1 Corinthians 12:1-3](#)
- [2 Kings 17:14-15](#)
- [2 Kings 21:4-6](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1471, G1484, G1494

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 33:4-6](#)

palace, palaces

Definition:

The term “palace” refers to the building or house where a king lived, along with his family members and servants.

- The high priest also lived in a palace complex, as mentioned in the New Testament.
- Palaces were very ornate, with beautiful architecture and furnishings.
- The buildings and furnishings of a palace were constructed of stone or wood, and often were overlaid with expensive wood, gold, or ivory.
- Many other people also lived and worked in the palace complex, which usually included several buildings and courtyards.

(See also: [courtyard](#), [high priest](#), [king](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 28:7-8](#)
- [2 Samuel 11:2-3](#)
- [Daniel 05:5-6](#)
- [Matthew 26:3-5](#)
- [Psalms 045:8-9](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H643, H759, H1001, H1002, H1004, H1055, H1406, H1964, H1965, H2038, H2918, H8651, G833, G933, G4232

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 2:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28:7-8](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36:18-19](#)

palm, palms

Definition:

The term “palm” refers to a type of tall tree with long, flexible, leafy branches extending from the top in a fan-like pattern.

- The palm tree in the Bible usually refers to a type of palm tree that produces a fruit called a “date.” The leaves have a feather-like pattern.
- Palm trees typically grow in places that have a hot, humid climate. Their leaves stay green all year long.
- As Jesus was entering Jerusalem riding on a donkey, the people laid palm branches on the ground in front of him.
- Palm branches signified peace and the celebration of a victory.

(See also: [donkey](#), [Jerusalem](#), [peace](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:29-30
- [Ezekiel 40:14-16](#)
- [John 12:12-13](#)
- Numbers 33:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3712, H8558, H8560, H8561, G5404

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 3:4-5](#)

Passover

Facts:

The “Passover” is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

- The name of this festival comes from the fact that God “passed over” the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
- The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
- God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God “passed over” their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Passover” could be translated by combining the words “pass” and “over” or another combination of words that has this meaning.
- It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 05:6-8](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30:13-15](#)
- [2 Kings 23:21-23](#)
- [Deuteronomy 16:1-2](#)
- [Exodus 12:26-28](#)
- [Ezra 06:21-22](#)
- [John 13:1-2](#)
- [Joshua 05:10-11](#)
- [Leviticus 23:4-6](#)
- [Numbers 09:1-3](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:14** God commanded the Israelites to remember his victory over the Egyptians and their deliverance from slavery by celebrating the **Passover** every year.
- **38:01** Every year, the Jews celebrated the **Passover**. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier.
- **38:04** Jesus celebrated the **Passover** with his disciples.

- **48:09** When God saw the blood, he passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. This event is called the **Passover**.
- **48:10** Jesus is our **Passover** Lamb. He was perfect and sinless and was killed at the time of the **Passover** celebration.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6453, G3957

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 30 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30:1](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30:13-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35:1-2](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35:10-12](#)

peace, peaceful, peacefully, peaceable, peacemakers

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 05:1-3](#)
- [Acts 07:26-28](#)
- [Colossians 01:18-20](#)
- [Colossians 03:15-17](#)
- [Galatians 05:22-24](#)
- [Luke 07:48-50](#)
- [Luke 12:51-53](#)
- [Mark 04:38-39](#)
- [Matthew 05:9-10](#)
- [Matthew 10:11-13](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***15:06** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.

***15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders. ***16:03** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land. ***21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people. ***48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He

will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever. *50:17 Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5117, H7521, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G269, G425, G31514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 14:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 15:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 15:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 18:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 20:29-30
- 2 Chronicles 34:26-28

Pentecost, Festival of Weeks

Facts:

The “Festival of Weeks” was a Jewish festival that took place fifty days after Passover. It was later referred to as “Pentecost.”

- The Feast of Weeks was seven weeks (fifty days) after the Feast of Firstfruits. In the New Testament times, this festival was called “Pentecost” which has “fifty” as part of its meaning.
- The Festival of Weeks was held to celebrate the beginning of the grain harvest. It was also a time to remember when God first gave the Law to the Israelites on the tablets of stone given to Moses.
- In the New Testament, the Day of Pentecost is especially significant because it was when the believers of Jesus received the Holy Spirit in a new way.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [festival](#), [firstfruits](#), [harvest](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [raise](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 08:12-13](#)
- [Acts 02:1-4](#)
- [Acts 20:15-16](#)
- Deuteronomy 16:16-17
- Numbers 28:26-28

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2282, H7620, G4005

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 8:12-13](#)

people group, peoples, the people, a people

Definition:

The term “peoples” or “people groups” refers to groups of people who share a common language and culture. The phrase “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- When God set apart “a people” for himself, it means that he chose certain people to belong to him and serve him.
- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, a phrase such as “your people” can mean “your people group” or “your family” or “your relatives.”
- The term “peoples” is often used to refer to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [nation](#), [tribe](#), world)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:51-53
- 1 Samuel 08:6-7
- Deuteronomy 28:9-10

- Genesis 49:16-18
- Ruth 01:16-18

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **21:02** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:03** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H249, H523, H524, H776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G246, G1074, G1085, G1218, G1484, G2560, G2992, G3793

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 1:8-11
- 2 Chronicles 5:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 5:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 6:24-25
- 2 Chronicles 9:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 10:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 10:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 16:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 17:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 26:21
- 2 Chronicles 28:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 29:12-14
- 2 Chronicles 32:6-8

- 2 Chronicles 32:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 32:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 34:33
- 2 Chronicles 35:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 35:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 35:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 36:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 36:13-14

people of God, my people

Definition:

The term “people of God” refers to people whom God has called out from the world to have a special relationship with him.

- When God says “my people” he is talking about the people whom he has chosen and who have a relationship with him.
- God’s people are chosen by him and are set apart from the world to live in a way that is pleasing to him. He also calls them his children.
- In the Old Testament, “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel which was chosen by God and set apart from among the other nations of the world to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, “people of God” especially refers to all those who believe in Jesus and are called the Church. This includes both Jews and Gentiles.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- When God says “my people” other ways to translate it could include “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [people group](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- [Acts 07:33-34](#)
- [Acts 07:51-53](#)
- [Acts 10:36-38](#)
- [Daniel 09:24-25](#)
- [Isaiah 02:5-6](#)
- [Jeremiah 06:20-22](#)
- [Joel 03:16-17](#)
- [Micah 06:3-5](#)
- [Revelation 13:7-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H5971, G2316, G2992

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 01 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 1:8-11
- 2 Chronicles 2:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 6:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 6:34-35
- 2 Chronicles 7:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 21 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 23:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 31:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 35:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 36:15-16

perfect, perfected, perfecter, perfection, perfectly

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “perfect” means to be mature in our Christian life. To perfect something means to work at it until it is excellent and without flaws.

- Being perfect and mature means that a Christian is obedient, not sinless.
- The term “perfect” also has the meaning of being “complete” or “whole.”
- The New Testament Book of James states that persevering through trials will produce completeness and maturity in the believer.
- When Christians study the Bible and obey it, they will become more spiritually perfect and mature because they will be more like Christ in their character.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “without flaw” or “without error” or “flawless” or “without fault” or “not having any faults.”

Bible References:

- [Hebrews 12:1-3](#)
- [James 03:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 05:46-48](#)
- [Psalms 019:7-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H724, H998, H1584, H1585, H3632, H3634, H4357, H4359, H4512, H8003, H8502, H8503, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G195, G197, G199, G739, G1295, G2005, G2675, G2676, G2677, G3647, G5046, G5047, G5048, G5050, G5052

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 16:9-10](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19:8-9](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25:1-2](#)

Perizzite

Facts:

The Perizzites were one of several people groups in the land of Canaan. Little is known about this group as to who their ancestors were or what part of Canaan they lived in.

- The Perizzites are mentioned most frequently in the Old Testament Book of Judges, where it is recorded that the Perizzites intermarried with the Israelites and influenced them to worship false gods.
- Note that the clan of Perez, called the “Perezites,” was a different people group from the Perizzites. It may be necessary to spell the names very differently to make this clear.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, [false god](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- [2 Chronicles 08:7-8](#)
- Exodus 03:16-18
- Genesis 13:5-7
- Joshua 03:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6522

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 8:7-8](#)

Persia, Persians

Definition:

Persia was a country that also became a powerful empire founded by Cyrus the Great in 550 BC. The country of Persia was located southeast of Babylonia and Assyria in a region that is now the modern-day country of Iran.

- The people of Persia were called “Persians.”
- Under King Cyrus’ decree, the Jews were freed from their captivity in Babylon and allowed to go home, and the temple in Jerusalem was rebuilt, with funds provided by the Persian Empire.
- King Artaxerxes was the ruler of the Persian Empire when Ezra and Nehemiah went back to Jerusalem to rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- Esther became a queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.

(See also: Ahasuerus, Artaxerxes, [Assyria](#), [Babylon](#), [Cyrus](#), Esther, Ezra, Nehemiah)

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 36:20-21](#)
- [Daniel 10:12-13](#)
- [Esther 01:3-4](#)
- [Ezekiel 27:10-11](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6539, H6540, H6542, H6543

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 36:20-21](#)

perverse, perversely, perversion, perversions, perversities, pervert, perverts, perverted, perverting

Definition:

The term “perverse” is used to describe a person or action that is morally crooked or twisted. The term “perversely” means “in a perverse manner.” To “pervert” something means to twist it or turn it away from what is right or good.

- Someone or something that is perverse has deviated from what is good and right.
- In the Bible, the Israelites acted perversely when they disobeyed God. They often did this by worshiping false gods.
- Any action which is against God’s standards or behavior is considered perverse.
- Ways to translate “perverse” could include “morally twisted” or “immoral” or “turning away from God’s straight path,” depending on the context.
- “Perverse speech” could be translated as “speaking in an evil way” or “deceitful talk” or “immoral way of talking.”
- “Perverse people” could be described as “immoral people” or “people who are morally deviant” or “people who continually disobey God.”
- The phrase “acting perversely” could be translated as “behaving in an evil way” or “doing things against God’s commands” or “living in a way that rejects God’s teachings.”
- The term “pervert” could also be translated as “cause to be corrupt” or “turn into something evil.”

(See also: corrupt, [deceive](#), disobey, [evil](#), [turn](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:46-47
- 1 Samuel 20:30-31
- [Job 33:27-28](#)
- [Luke 23:1-2](#)
- [Psalms 101:4-6](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1942, H2015, H3399, H3868, H3891, H4297, H5186, H5557, H5558, H5753, H5766, H5773, H5791, H5999, H6140, H6141, H8138, H8397, H8419, G654, G1294, G3344, G3346, G3859, G4106

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 6:36-39](#)

Pharaoh, king of Egypt

Facts:

In ancient times, the kings who ruled over the country of Egypt were called pharaohs.

- Altogether, over 300 pharaohs ruled Egypt for more than 2,000 years.
- These Egyptians kings were very powerful and wealthy.
- Several of these pharaohs are mentioned in the Bible.
- Often this title is used as a name rather than as a title. In these cases, it is capitalized and written as “Pharaoh.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [egypt](#), [king](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:9-10](#)
- [Acts 07:11-13](#)
- [Acts 07:20-21](#)
- Genesis 12:14-16
- Genesis 40:6-8
- Genesis 41:25-26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** One night, the **Pharaoh**, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **08:08 Pharaoh** was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!
- **09:02** So the **Pharaoh** who was ruling over Egypt at that time made the Israelites slaves to the Egyptians.
- **09:13** “I will send you to **Pharaoh** so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt.”
- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed **Pharaoh** that he is more powerful than **Pharaoh** and all of Egypt’s gods.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4428, H4714, H6547, G5328

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 8:11](#)

Philistines

Facts:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means “people of the sea.”

- There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
- The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
- The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
- King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ashdod](#), [Ashkelon](#), [David](#), [Ekron](#), [Gath](#), [Gaza](#), [Goliath](#), [Salt Sea](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 13:3-4
- [2 Chronicles 09:25-26](#)
- Genesis 10:11-14
- [Psalm 056:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6429, H6430

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 9:25-26](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17:10-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21:16-17](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26:6-8](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28:16-18](#)

plague, plagues

Definition:

Plagues are events which cause suffering or death to a large number of people. Often a plague is a disease that spreads quickly and causes many people to die before it can be stopped.

- Many plagues have natural causes, but some were sent by God to punish people for sin.
- In the time of Moses, God sent ten plagues against Egypt to force Pharaoh to let Israel leave Egypt. These plagues included water turning into blood, physical diseases, destruction of crops by insects and hail, three days of complete darkness, and death of the firstborn sons.
- This could also be translated as “widespread disasters” or “widespread disease,” depending on the context.

(See also: hail, [Israel](#), [Moses](#), [Pharaoh](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 24:13-14
- Exodus 09:13-14
- Genesis 12:17-20
- [Luke 21:10-11](#)
- [Revelation 09:18-19](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1698, H4046, H4194, H4347, H5061, H5062, H5063, H7752, G3061, G3148, G4127

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 6:28-31](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21:12-15](#)

pomegranate, pomegranates

Facts:

A pomegranate is a kind of fruit that has a thick, tough skin filled with many seeds that are covered with edible red pulp.

- The outer rind is reddish in color and the pulp surrounding the seeds is shiny and red.
- Pomegranates are very commonly grown in countries with a hot, dry climate, such as Egypt and Israel.
- Yahweh promised the Israelites that Canaan was a land with abundant water and fertile soil so that food was plentiful there, including pomegranates.
- The construction of Solomon's temple included bronze decorations in the shape of pomegranates.

(See also: [bronze](#), [Canaan](#), [Egypt](#), [Solomon](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 25:16-17
- Deuteronomy 08:7-8
- [Jeremiah 52:22-23](#)
- Numbers 13:23-24 [Egypt](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7416

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 3:15-17](#)
- [2 Chronicles 4:11-13](#)

possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess

Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “possess” could also be translated as “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as, “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as, “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: Canaan, [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:70
- 1 Kings 09:17-19
- [Acts 02:43-45](#)
- Deuteronomy 04:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37

translationWords *possess, possesses, possessed, possessing, possession, possessions, dispossess*

- [Matthew 13:44-46](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H270, H272, H834, H2505, H2631, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H4736, H5157, H5159, H5459, H7069, G1139, G2192, G2697, G2722, G2932, G2933, G2935, G4047, G5224, G5564

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 8:5-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31:2-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32:27-29](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35:7-9](#)

power, powers

Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”
- An expression like “save us from the power of our enemies” could be translated as “save us from being oppressed by our enemies” or “rescue us from being controlled by our enemies.” In this case, “power” has the meaning of using one’s strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), Jesus, [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 01:4-5](#)
- [Colossians 01:11-12](#)
- [Genesis 31:29-30](#)
- [Jeremiah 18:21-23](#)
- [Jude 01:24-25](#)
- [Judges 02:18-19](#)
- [Luke 01:16-17](#)
- [Luke 04:14-15](#)
- [Matthew 26:62-64](#)
- [Philippians 03:20-21](#)
- [Psalm 080:1-3](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:05** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”

- **26:01** After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **32:15** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you."
- **43:06** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know."
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H410, H1369, H2220, H2428, H2429, H2632, H3027, H3028, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6184, H7786, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8280, H8592, H8633, G1411, G1415, G1756, G1849, G1850, G2478, G2479, G2904, G3168

Uses:

- **2 Chronicles 13:19-22**
- **2 Chronicles 17:12-13**
- **2 Chronicles 20:12-13**
- **2 Chronicles 25:7-8**
- **2 Chronicles 26:6-8**
- **2 Chronicles 26:11-13**
- **2 Chronicles 27:6-7**
- **2 Chronicles 32:2-3**
- **2 Chronicles 32:13-15**

praise, praises, praised, praising, praiseworthy

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to “praise” could also be translated as to “speak well of” or to “highly honor with words” or to “say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: [worship](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Corinthians 01:3-4](#)
- [Acts 02:46-47](#)
- [Acts 13:48-49](#)
- [Daniel 03:28](#)
- [Ephesians 01:3-4](#)
- [Genesis 49:8](#)
- [James 03:9-10](#)
- [John 05:41-42](#)
- [Luke 01:46-47](#)
- [Luke 01:64-66](#)
- [Luke 19:37-38](#)
- [Matthew 11:25-27](#)
- [Matthew 15:29-31](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army. ***17:08** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings. ***22:07** Zechariah said, ”**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people! ***43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other. ***47:08** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H6953, H7121, H7150, G1229, G1256, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G3853, G3955, G4283, G4296

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 5:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 8:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 20:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 20:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 23:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 29:29-30
- 2 Chronicles 30:21-22

pray, prayer, prayers, prayed

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [false god](#), [forgive](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 03:8-10](#)
- [Acts 08:24](#)
- [Acts 14:23-26](#)
- [Colossians 04:2-4](#)
- [John 17:9-11](#)
- [Luke 11:1](#)
- [Matthew 05:43-45](#)
- [Matthew 14:22-24](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***06:05** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins. ***13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them. ***19:08** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!” ***21:07** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people. ***38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation. ***43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other. ***49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H5315, H5375, H6293, H6419, H6739, H6963, H7121, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 6:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 6:34-35
- 2 Chronicles 7:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 30:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 30:25-27
- 2 Chronicles 33:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 33:18-20

priest, priests, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#), [chief priests](#), [high priest](#), mediator, [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 06:40-42](#)
- [Genesis 14:17-18](#)
- [Genesis 47:20-22](#)

- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31-32
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 08:4
- Matthew 12:3-4
- Micah 03:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 01:4-6

Examples from the Bible stories:

***04:07** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High" ***13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**. ***19:07** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire. ***21:07** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 4:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 5:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 5:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 6:40-42
- 2 Chronicles 7:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 8:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 11:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 15:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 17:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 19:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 22:10-12
- 2 Chronicles 23 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 23:18-19

- 2 Chronicles 24 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 24:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 26 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 26:16-18
- 2 Chronicles 29:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 30:23-24
- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 34:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 34:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 34:29-30
- 2 Chronicles 35:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 35:10-12
- 2 Chronicles 36:13-14

prince, princes, princess, princesses

Definition:

A “prince” is the son of a king. A “princess” is a daughter of a king.

- The term “prince” is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham’s wealth and importance, he was referred to as a “prince” by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term “prince” is used in the expressions “prince of Persia” and “prince of Greece,” which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a “prince” in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as “the prince of this world.”
- Jesus is called the “Prince of Peace” and the “Prince of Life.”
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as “Lord and Christ” and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as “Prince and Savior,” showing the parallel meaning of “Lord” and “Prince.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “prince” could include, “king’s son” or “ruler” or “leader” or “chieftain” or “captain.”
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, “spirit ruler” or “leading angel.”
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, “evil spirit ruler” or “powerful spirit leader” or “ruling spirit,” depending on the context.

(See also: [angel](#), [authority](#), Christ, demon, [lord](#), [power](#), [ruler](#), Satan, Savior, [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 05:29-32](#)
- Genesis 12:14-16
- Genesis 49:26
- [Luke 01:52-53](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H117, H324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7101, H7261, H7333, H7336, H7786, H7991, H8269, H8282, H8323, G747, G758, G1413, G2232, G3175

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 1:2
- 2 Chronicles 6:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 12:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 32:30-31

prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons, imprison, imprisons, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonments

Definition:

The term “prison” refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A “prisoner” is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term “imprisoned” means “kept in a prison” or “kept in captivity.”
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another word for “prison” is “jail.”
- This term could also be translated as “dungeon” in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term “prisoners” can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be “captives.”
- Other ways to translate “imprisoned” could be, “kept as a prisoner” or “kept in captivity” or “held captive.”

(See also: [captive](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 25:4-5](#)
- [Ephesians 04:1-3](#)
- [Luke 12:57-59](#)
- [Luke 22:33-34](#)
- [Mark 06:16-17](#)
- [Matthew 05:25-26](#)
- [Matthew 14:3-5](#)
- [Matthew 25:34-36](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H612, H613, H615, H616, H631, H1004, H1540, H3608, H3628, H3947, H4115, H4307, H4455, H4525, H4929, H5470, H6115, H6495, H7617, H7622, H7628, G1198, G1199, G1200, G1201, G1202, G1210, G2252, G3612, G4788, G4869, G5083, G5084, G5438, G5439

prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons, imprison, imprisons, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonmentstranslationV

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 16:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 18:25-27
- 2 Chronicles 28:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 30:7-9

proclaim, proclaims, proclaimed, proclaiming, proclamation, proclamations

Definition:

To proclaim is to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: preach)

Bible References:

- [Acts 09:20-22](#)
- [Acts 13:38-39](#)
- [Jonah 03:1-3](#)
- [Luke 04:18-19](#)
- [Mark 01:14-15](#)
- [Matthew 10:26-27](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G518, G591, G1229, G1861, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3142, G3853, G4135

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 20:3-4](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24:8-10](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30:4-5](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36:22-23](#)

promise, promises, promised

Definition:

A promise is a pledge to do a certain thing. When someone promises something, it means he is committing to do something.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.
- A promise is often accompanied by an oath to confirm that it will be done.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- [Galatians 03:15-16](#)
- [Genesis 25:31-34](#)
- [Hebrews 11:8-10](#)
- [James 01:12-13](#)
- [Numbers 30:1-2](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, “I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”¹
- **03:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- **05:04** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **08:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:01** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H562, H1696, H8569, G1843, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 1:8-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 6:10-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21:6-7](#)

prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: [Baal](#), divination, [false god](#), false prophet, [fulfill](#), [law](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 02:14-16](#)
- [Acts 03:24-26](#)
- [John 01:43-45](#)
- [Malachi 04:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 01:22-23](#)

- Matthew 02:17-18
- Matthew 05:17-18
- Psalm 051:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:01** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:09** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:05** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:07** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God. *

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 9:29-31
- 2 Chronicles 12:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 12:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 13:19-22
- 2 Chronicles 15:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 16:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 18:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 18:12-14
- 2 Chronicles 19:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 20:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 20:35-37
- 2 Chronicles 24:17-19

- [2 Chronicles 24:27](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25:14-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26:22-23](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28:9-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29:25-26](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32:20-21](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32:32-33](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34:22](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35:18-19](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36:11-12](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36:15-16](#)

prosper, prospered, prospering, prosperity, prosperous**Definition:**

The term “prosper” generally refers to living well and can refer to prospering physically or spiritually. When people or a country are “prosperous,” it means they are wealthy and have all that they need to be successful. They are experiencing “prosperity.”

- The term “prosperous” often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term “prosperous” also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A “prosperous” city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God’s teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term “prosper” could also be translated as “succeed spiritually” or “be blessed by God” or “experience good things” or “live well.”
- The term “prosperous” could also be translated as “successful” or “wealthy” or “spiritually fruitful.”
- “Prosperity” could also be translated as “well-being” or “wealth” or “success” or “abundant blessings.”

(See also: [bless](#), [fruit](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:22-23
- Deuteronomy 23:5-6
- [Job 36:10-12](#)
- Leviticus 25:26-28
- [Psalms 001:3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1129, H1767, H1878, H1879, H2428, H2896, H2898, H3027, H3190, H3444, H3498, H3787, H4195, H5381, H6500, H6509, H6555, H6743, H6744, H7230, H7487, H7919, H7951, H7961, H7963, H7965, G2137

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 26:4-5](#)

prostitute, prostituted, prostitutes, harlot, whored

Definition:

The terms “prostitute” and “harlot” both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word “prostitute” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression “play the harlot” means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To “prostitute oneself” to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: adultery, [false god](#), sexual immorality, [false god](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 34:30-31
- Genesis 38:21-23
- [Luke 15:28-30](#)
- [Matthew 21:31-32](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2154, H2181, H2183, H2185, H6945, H6948, H8457, G4204

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 21:11](#)

proud, proudly, pride, prideful

Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as, “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” or “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: arrogant, [humble](#), [joy](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 03:6-7](#)
- [2 Corinthians 01:12-14](#)
- [Galatians 06:3-5](#)
- [Isaiah 13:19-20](#)
- [Luke 01:50-51](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***04:02** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said. ***34:10** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1341, H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1348, H1349, H1361, H1362, H1363, H1364, H1396, H1466, H1467, H1984, H2086, H2087, H2102, H2103, H2121, H3093, H3238, H3513, H4062, H1431, H4791, H5965, H6580, H7293, H7295, H7312, H7342, H7311, H7407, H7830, H8597, G212, G1391, G1392, G2744, G2745, G2746, G3173, G5187, G5229, G5243, G5244, G5308, G5309, G5426, G5450

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 25:18-19](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32:24-26](#)

proverb, proverbs

Definition:

A proverb is a short statement that expresses some wisdom or truth.

- Proverbs are powerful because they are easy to remember and repeat.
- Often a proverb will include practical examples from everyday life.
- Some proverbs are very clear and direct, while others are more difficult to understand.
- King Solomon was known for his wisdom and wrote over 1,000 proverbs.
- Jesus often used proverbs or parables when he taught people.
- Ways to translate “proverb” could include “wise saying” or “true word.”

(See also: [Solomon](#), [true](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 04:32-34](#)
- [1 Samuel 24:12-13](#)
- [2 Peter 02:20-22](#)
- [Luke 04:23-24](#)
- [Proverbs 01:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2420, H4911, H4912, G3850, G3942

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 7:19-20](#)

punish, punishes, punished, punishing, punishment, unpunished

Definition:

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: [just](#), [repent](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 04:17-18](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 01:9-10](#)
- [Acts 04:21-22](#)
- [Acts 07:59-60](#)
- [Genesis 04:13-15](#)
- [Luke 23:15-17](#)
- [Matthew 25:44-46](#)

their

Examples from the Bible stories:

***13:07** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them. ***16:02** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them. ***19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them. ***48:06** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed. ***48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s **punishment** passes over him. ***49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that

he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever. ***49:11** Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3027, H3256, H4148, H4941, H5221, H5414, H6031, H6064, H6213, H6485, H7999, H8199, G1349, G1556, G1557, G2849, G3811, G5097

Uses:

- **2 Chronicles 10:10-11**

pure, purify, purification

Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: [atonement](#), [clean](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 01:5-8](#)
- [Exodus 31:6-9](#)
- [Hebrews 09:13-15](#)
- [James 04:8-10](#)
- [Luke 02:22-24](#)
- [Revelation 14:3-5](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G48, G49, G53, G54, G1506, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2514

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 3:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 9:19-21
- 2 Chronicles 30:16-17

purple

Facts:

The term “purple” is the name of a color that is a mixture of blue and red.

- In ancient times, purple was a rare and highly valuable color of dye that was used to dye the clothing of kings and other high officials.
- Because it was costly and time-consuming to produce this dye, purple clothing was considered a sign of wealth, distinction, and royalty.
- Purple was also one of the colors used for the curtains in the tabernacle and temple, and for the ephod worn by the priests.
- Purple dye was extracted from a kind of sea snail by either crushing or boiling the snails or by causing them to release the dye while still alive. This was an expensive process.
- Roman soldiers put a purple royal robe on Jesus before his crucifixion, to mock him for his claim to be King of the Jews.
- Lydia from the town of Philippi was a woman who made her living by selling purple cloth.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: ephod, Philippi, [royal](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 02:13-14](#)
- [Daniel 05:7](#)
- [Daniel 05:29-31](#)
- [Proverbs 31:22-23](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H710, H711, H713, H8438, H8504, G4209, G4210, G4211

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 2:6-7](#)

queen, queens

Definition:

A queen is either the female ruler of a country or the wife of a king.

- Esther became the queen of the Persian empire when she married King Ahasuerus.
- Queen Jezebel was the evil wife of King Ahab.
- The Queen of Sheba was a famous ruler who came to visit King Solomon.
- A term such as “queen mother” usually referred to the mother or grandmother of a ruling king or the widow of the previous king. A queen mother had much influence; Athaliah, for example, influenced the people to worship idols.

(See also: Ahasuerus, [Athaliah](#), Esther, [king](#), [Persia ruler](#), [Sheba](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:10
- 1 Kings 11:18-19
- 2 Kings 10:12-14
- [Acts 08:26-28](#)
- [Esther 01:16-18](#)
- [Luke 11:31](#)
- [Matthew 12:42](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1404, H1377, H4410, H4427, H4433, H4436, H4438, H4446, H7694, H8282, G938

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 9:1-2](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15:16-17](#)

raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose

Definition:

raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The figurative phrase “raise up” means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as to “cause to appear” or to “appoint” or to “bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as, “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: resurrection, [appoint](#), exalt)

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 06:40-42](#)

- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 10:39-41
- Colossians 03:1-4
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:1-3
- Judges 02:18-19
- Luke 07:21-23
- Matthew 20:17-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- **41:05** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:07** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:05** " You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:04** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:02** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6209, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, H7721, G305, G386, G393, G450, G1096, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 6:40-42
- 2 Chronicles 13:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 20:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 36:15-16

Ramah

Facts:

Ramah was an ancient Israelite city located about 8 km from Jerusalem. It was in the region where the tribe of Benjamin lived.

- Ramah was where Rachel died after giving birth to Benjamin.
- When the Israelites were taken captive to Babylon, they were first brought to Ramah before being moved to Babylon.
- Ramah was the home of Samuel's mother and father.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Benjamin](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:25-27
- 1 Samuel 02:11
- [2 Chronicles 16:1](#)
- [Jeremiah 31:15](#)
- Joshua 18:25-28
- [Matthew 02:17-18](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7414, G4471

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 16:1](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16:4-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22:6](#)

Ramoth

Facts:

Ramoth was an important city in the mountains of Gilead near the Jordan River. It was also called Ramoth Gilead.

- Ramoth belonged to the Israelite tribe of Gad and was designated as a city of refuge.
- King Ahab of Israel and King Jehoshaphat of Judah waged war against the king of Aram at Ramoth. Ahab was killed in that battle.
- Sometime later, King Ahaziah and King Joram tried to take the city of Ramoth from the king of Aram.
- Ramoth Gilead was where Jehu was anointed king over Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Ahaziah](#), [Aram](#), [Gad](#), [Jehoshaphat](#), [Jehu](#), [Joram](#), [Jordan River](#), [Judah](#), [refuge](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:71-73
- 1 Kings 22:3-4
- [2 Chronicles 18:1-3](#)
- 2 Kings 08:28-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7216, H7418, H7433

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 18:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18:12-14](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22:4-5](#)

rebel, rebels, rebelled, rebelling, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to “rebel” could also be translated as to “disobey” or to “revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14-15
- [1 Timothy 01:9-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10:17-19](#)
- [Acts 21:37-38](#)
- [Luke 23:18-19](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***14:14** After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead. ***18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam. ***18:09** Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin. ***18:13** Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods. ***20:07** But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon. ***45:03** Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G3893, G4955

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 13:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 36:13-14

receive, receives, received, receiving, receiver

Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” could be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression “you will receive power” could be translated as “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could be translated as “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “was healed by God so that he was able to see.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [lord](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 05:9-10](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 01:6-7](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 04:1-2](#)
- [Acts 08:14-17](#)
- [Jeremiah 32:33-35](#)
- [Luke 09:5-6](#)
- [Malachi 03:10-12](#)
- [Psalms 049:14-15](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace

between God and people.

- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, **receive** my spirit."
- **49:06** He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- **49:13** God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1878, H2505, H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G568, G588, G618, G1183, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2210, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G3970, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G4732, G5264, G5274, G5562

Uses:

- **2 Chronicles 30:16-17**
- **2 Chronicles 35:10-12**

Rehoboam

Facts:

Rehoboam was one of the sons of King Solomon, and he became the king of the nation of Israel after Solomon died.

- At the beginning of his reign, Rehoboam was severe with his people, so ten of the tribes of Israel rebelled against him and formed the “kingdom of Israel” in the north.
- Rehoboam continued as king of the southern kingdom of Judah, which consisted of the remaining two tribes, Judah and Benjamin.
- Rehoboam was a wicked king who did not obey Yahweh, but worshiped false gods.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [kingdom of Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:10-12
- 1 Kings 11:41-43
- 1 Kings 14:21-22
- [Matthew 01:7-8](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***18:05** After Solomon died, his son, **Rehoboam**, became king. **Rehoboam** was a foolish man. ***18:06** **Rehoboam** answered foolishly and told them, “You thought my father Solomon made you work hard, but I will make you work harder than he did, and I will punish you more harshly than he did.” ***18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against **Rehoboam**. Only two tribes remained faithful to him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7346, G4497

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 9:29-31](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10:1-2](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11:1](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12:1](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12:15-16](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13:6-7](#)

reign, reigns, reigned, reigning

Definition:

The term to “reign” means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king.”

(See also: [kingdom](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 02:11-13](#)
- [Genesis 36:34-36](#)
- [Luke 01:30-33](#)
- [Luke 19:26-27](#)
- [Matthew 02:22-23](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, H6113, H7287, H7786, G757, G936, G2231, G4821

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 3:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10:17-19](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12:1](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12:13-14](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15:10-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15:18-19](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16:1](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17:7-9](#)
- [2 Chronicles 20:31-33](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21:4-5](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21:18-20](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22:10-12](#)

- 2 Chronicles 23:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 24:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 25:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 26:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 27:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 28:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 29:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 33:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 33:21-23
- 2 Chronicles 36:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 36:9-10

remnant

Definition:

The term “remnant” literally refers to people or things that are “remaining” or “left over” from a larger amount or group.

- Often a “remnant” refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
- Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who would survive attacks from outsiders and live to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
- Paul talks about there being a “remnant” of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
- The term “remnant” implies that there were other people who did not remain faithful or who did not survive or who were not chosen.

Translation Suggestions:

- A phrase such as “the remnant of this people” could be translated as “the rest of these people” or “the people who remain faithful” or “the people who are left.”
- The “whole remnant of people” could be translated by “all the rest of the people” or “the remaining people.”

Bible References:

- [Acts 15:15-18](#)
- [Amos 09:11-12](#)
- [Ezekiel 06:8-10](#)
- [Genesis 45:7-8](#)
- [Isaiah 11:10-11](#)
- [Micah 04:6-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3498, H3499, H5629, H6413, H7604, H7605, H7611, H8281, H8300, G2640, G3005, G3062

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 30:6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34:8-9](#)

repent, repents, repented, repentance

Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “turning away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [sin](#), [turn](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 03:19-20](#)
- [Luke 03:3](#)
- [Luke 03:8](#)
- [Luke 05:29-32](#)
- [Luke 24:45-47](#)
- [Mark 01:14-15](#)
- [Matthew 03:1-3](#)
- [Matthew 03:10-12](#)
- [Matthew 04:17](#)
- [Romans 02:3-4](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:02** After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- **17:13** David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- **19:18** They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- **24:02** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”

- **42:08** “”It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins. ”
- **44:05** ”So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5150, H5162, H5164, G278, G3338, G3340, G3341

Uses:

- **2 Chronicles 6:36-39**

report, reports, reported

Definition:

The term to “report” means to tell people about something that happened, often giving details about that event. A “report” is what is told, and can be spoken or written.

- “Report” could also be translated as “tell” or “explain” or “tell the details of.”
- The expression “Report this to no one” could be translated as, “Don’t talk about this with anyone” or “Don’t tell anyone about this.”
- Ways to translate “a report” could include “an explanation” or “a story” or “a detailed account,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

- [Acts 05:22-23](#)
- [John 12:37-38](#)
- [Luke 05:15-16](#)
- [Luke 08:34-35](#)
- [Matthew 28:14-15](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1681, H1696, H1697, H5046, H7725, H8034, H8052, H8085, H8088, G189, G191, G312, G518, G987, G1225, G1310, G1426, G1834, G2036, G2162, G2163, G3004, G3056, G3140, G3141, G3377

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 9:5-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34:14-16](#)

rest, rests, rested, resting, restless

Definition:

The term to “rest” literally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. The phrase “the rest of” refers to the remainder of something. A “rest” is to stop working.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- A boat that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” or “landed” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “rest (oneself)” could also be translated as to “stop working” or to “refresh himself” or to “stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: [remnant](#), [Sabbath](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 06:40-42](#)
- [Genesis 02:1-3](#)
- [Jeremiah 06:16-19](#)
- [Matthew 11:28-30](#)
- [Revelation 14:11-12](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H14, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677,

H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G372, G373, G425, G1515, G1879, G1954, G1981, G2270, G2663, G2664, G2681, G2838, G3062, G4520

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 6:40-42](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36:20-21](#)

restore, restores, restored, restoration**Definition:**

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original and better condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- Other expressions for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration” could be translated as “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:8-10
- Acts 03:21-23
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Leviticus 06:5-7
- Luke 19:8-10
- Matthew 12:13-14
- Psalm 080:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7725, H7999, H8421, G600, G2675

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 11:1

- [2 Chronicles 24:4-5](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26:1-3](#)

reward, rewards, rewarded, rewarding, rewarder**Definition:**

The term “reward” refers to what a person receives because of something he has done, either good or bad. To “reward” someone is to give someone something he deserves.

- A reward can be a good or positive thing that a person receives because he has done something well or because he has obeyed God.
- Sometimes a reward can refer to negative things that may result from bad behavior, such as the statement “the reward of the wicked.” In this context “reward” refers to the punishment or negative consequences they receive because of their sinful actions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “reward” could be translated as “payment” or “something that is deserved” or “punishment.”
- To “reward” someone could be translated by to “repay” or to “punish” or to “give what is deserved.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to wages. A reward is not specifically about earning money as part of a job.

(See also: [punish](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 32:5-6
- [Isaiah 40:9-10](#)
- [Luke 06:35-36](#)
- [Mark 09:40-41](#)
- [Matthew 05:11-12](#)
- [Matthew 06:3-4](#)
- [Psalms 127:3-5](#)
- [Revelation 11:18](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H319, H866, H868, H1576, H1578, H1580, H4864, H4909, H4991, H5023, H6118, H6468, H6529, H7809, H7810, H7936, H7938, H7939, H7966, H7999, H8011, H8021, G469, G514, G591, G2603, G3405, G3406, G3408

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 15:6-7](#)

right hand

Definition:

The figurative expression “right hand” refers to the place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand is also used as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting “at the right hand of” God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person’s right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph’s son Ephraim).
- To “serve at the right hand” of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term “right hand” literally refers to a person’s right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus’ right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term “right hand” does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression “at the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of” or “in the place of honor beside” or “in the position of strength” or “ready to help.”
- Ways to translate “with his right hand” could include “with authority” or “using power” or “with his amazing strength.”
- The figurative expression “his right hand and his mighty arm” uses two ways of emphasizing God’s power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be “his amazing strength and mighty power.” (See: [parallelism](#))
- The expression “their right hand is falsehood” could be translated as, “even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies” or “their place of honor is corrupted by deception” or “they use lies to make themselves powerful.”

(See also: [accuse](#), [evil](#), [honor](#), [mighty](#), [punish](#), [rebel](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 02:32-33](#)
- [Colossians 03:1-4](#)
- [Galatians 02:9-10](#)
- [Genesis 48:14-16](#)
- [Hebrews 10:11-14](#)
- [Lamentations 02:3-4](#)

- Matthew 25:31-33
- Matthew 26:62-64
- Psalms 044:3-4
- Revelation 02:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3225, H3231, H3233, G1188

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 3:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 18:17-18

righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: [parallelism](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good”
- Sometimes “the righteous” was used figuratively and referred to “people who think they are good” or “people who seem to be righteous.”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: *evil, faithful, good, holy, integrity, just, law, law, obey, pure, righteous, sin, unlawful*)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:15-16
- Job 01:6-8
- Psalms 037:28-30
- Psalms 049:14-15
- Psalms 107:41-43
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:12-13
- Malachi 02:5-7
- Matthew 06:1-2
- Acts 03:13-14
- Romans 01:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 06:9-11
- Galatians 03:6-9
- Colossians 03:22-25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10
- 2 Timothy 03:16-17
- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 1 John 01:8-10
- 1 John 05:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **04:08** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God’s promise.
- **17:02** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.

- **23:01** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118, G3716, G3717

Uses:

- **2 Chronicles 6:22-23**
- **2 Chronicles 9:7-8**
- **2 Chronicles 12:5-6**

royal, royalty

Definition:

The term “royal” describes people and things associated with a king or queen.

- Examples of things that could be called “royal” include a king’s clothing, palace, throne, and crown.
- A king or queen usually lived in a royal palace.
- A king wore special clothing, sometimes called “royal robes.” Often a king’s robes were purple, this color could only be produced by a rare and expensive type of dye.
- In the New Testament, believers in Jesus were called a “royal priesthood.” Other ways to translate this could include “priests who serve God the King” or “called to be priests for God the King.”
- The term “royal” could also be translated as “kingly” or “belonging to a king.”

(See also: [king](#), [palace](#), [priest](#), [purple](#), [queen](#), robe)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:13
- [2 Chronicles 18:28-30](#)
- [Amos 07:12-13](#)
- Genesis 49:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H643, H1935, H4410, H4428, H4430, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H7985, H8237, G933, G934, G937

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 18:28-30](#)

ruin, ruins, ruined

Definition:

To “ruin” something means to spoil, destroy, or cause to be useless. The term “ruin” or “ruins” refers to the rubble and spoiled remains of something that has been destroyed.

- The prophet Zephaniah spoke about the day of God’s wrath as a “day of ruin” when the world will be judged and punished.
- The book of Proverbs says that ruin and destruction await those who are ungodly.
- Depending on the context, to “ruin” could be translated as to “destroy” or to “spoil” or to “make useless” or to “break.”
- The term “ruin” or “ruins” could be translated as “rubble” or “broken-down buildings” or “destroyed city” or “devastation” or “brokenness” or “destruction,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 12:7-8](#)
- [2 Kings 19:25-26](#)
- [Acts 15:15-18](#)
- [Isaiah 23:13-14](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6, H1197, H1530, H1820, H1942, H2034, H2040, H2717, H2719, H2720, H2723, H2930, H3510, H3765, H3782, H3832, H4072, H4288, H4383, H4384, H4654, H4658, H4876, H4889, H5221, H5557, H5754, H5856, H6365, H7451, H7489, H7582, H7591, H7612, H7701, H7703, H7843, H8047, H8074, H8077, H8414, H8510, G2679, G2692, G3639, G4485

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 12:7-8](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34:6-7](#)

rule, rules, ruled, ruler, rulers, ruling, rulings, overrules, overruled

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who “rules,” and his authority is his “rule.”

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a “ruler,” as in the phrase “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action to “rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#), [king](#), [synagogue](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 03:17-18](#)
- [Acts 07:35-37](#)
- [Luke 12:11-12](#)
- [Luke 23:35](#)
- [Mark 10:41-42](#)
- [Matthew 09:32-34](#)
- [Matthew 20:25-28](#)
- [Titus 03:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H1166, H1167, H1404, H2708, H2710, H3027, H3548, H3920, H4043, H4410, H4427, H4428, H4438, H4467, H4474, H4475, H4623, H4910, H4941, H5057, H5065, H5387, H5401, H5461, H5715, H6113, H6213, H6485, H6957, H7101, H7218, H7287, H7300, H7336, H7786, H7860, H7980, H7981, H7985, H7989, H7990, H8199, H8269, H8323, H8451, G746, G752, G755, G757, G758, G932, G936, G1018, G1203, G1299, G1778, G1785, G1849, G2232, G2233, G2525, G2583, G2888, G2961, G3545, G3841, G4165, G4173, G4291

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 1:1](#)

- 2 Chronicles 8:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 9:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 11:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 12:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 13:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 17:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 25:3-4

Sabbath

Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [rest](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 31:2-3](#)
- [Acts 13:26-27](#)
- [Exodus 31:12-15](#)
- [Isaiah 56:6-7](#)
- [Lamentations 02:5-6](#)
- [Leviticus 19:1-4](#)
- [Luke 13:12-14](#)
- [Mark 02:27-28](#)
- [Matthew 12:1-2](#)
- [Nehemiah 10:32-33](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:05** “Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”

- **26:02** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **41:03** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4868, H7676, H7677, G4315, G4521

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 2:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 8:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 23:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 36:20-21

sacrifice, sacrifices, sacrificed, sacrificing, offering, offerings

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.
- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin. Animal sacrifices could never do that.
- The figurative expression “offer yourselves as a living sacrifice” means, “live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him.”

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), [drink offering](#), [false god](#), [fellowship offering](#), [freewill offering](#), [peace offering](#), [priest](#), [sin offering](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 04:6-8](#)
- [Acts 07:41-42](#)
- [Acts 21:25-26](#)
- [Genesis 04:3-5](#)
- [James 02:21-24](#)
- [Mark 01:43-44](#)
- [Mark 14:12-14](#)
- [Matthew 05:23-24](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **05:06** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:08** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H817, H819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4469, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G266, G334, G1049, G1435, G1494, G2378, G2380, G3646, G4376, G5485

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 1:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 2:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 5:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 7:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 7:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 11:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 24:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 28:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 28:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 29:29-30
- 2 Chronicles 30:21-22
- 2 Chronicles 31:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 31:11-13

- 2 Chronicles 31:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 32:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 33:21-23
- 2 Chronicles 34:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 35:7-9

saint, saints

Definition:

The term “saints” literally means “holy ones” and refers to believers in Jesus.

- Later in church history, a person known for his good works was given the title “saint,” but that was not how this term was used during New Testament times.
- Believers in Jesus are saints or holy ones, not because of what they have done, but rather because of their faith in the saving work of Jesus Christ. He is the one who makes them holy.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “saints” could include “holy ones” or “holy people” or “holy believers in Jesus” or “set apart ones.”
- Be careful not to use a term that refers to people of only one Christian group.

(See also: [holy](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 05:9-10](#)
- [2 Corinthians 09:12-15](#)
- [Revelation 16:4-7](#)
- [Revelation 20:9-10](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2623, H6918, H6922, G40

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 6:40-42](#)

Salt Sea, Dead Sea

Facts:

The Salt Sea (also called the Dead Sea) was located between southern Israel on its west and Moab on its east.

- The Jordan River flows south into the Salt Sea.
- Because it is smaller than most seas, it could be called “Salt Lake.”
- This sea has such a high concentration of minerals (or “salts”) that nothing can live in its waters. Its lack of plants and animals is the cause of the name “Dead Sea.”
- In the Old Testament, this sea is also called the “Sea of Arabah” and the “Sea of Negev” because of its location near the regions of Arabah and Negev.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ammon](#), Arabah, , [Jordan River](#), [Moab](#), [Negev](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 20:1-2](#)
- Deuteronomy 03:17
- Joshua 03:14-16
- Numbers 34:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3220, H4417

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 20:1-2](#)

Samaria, Samaritan

Facts:

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The region was located between the Plain of Sharon on its west and the Jordan River on its east.

- In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
- When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region, moving them far away to different cities in Assyria.
- The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
- Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
- The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
- In New Testament times, the region of Samaria was bordered by the region of Galilee on its north and the region of Judea on its south.

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Galilee](#), [Judea](#), [Sharon](#), [kingdom of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 08:1-3](#)
- [Acts 08:4-5](#)
- [John 04:4-5](#)
- [Luke 09:51-53](#)
- [Luke 10:33-35](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***20:04** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called **Samaritans**. ***27:08** "The next person to walk down that road was a **Samaritan**. (**Samaritans** were the descendants of Jews who had married people from other nations. **Samaritans** and Jews hated each other.)" ***27:09** "The **Samaritan** then lifted the man onto his own donkey and took him to a roadside inn where he took care of him." ***45:07** He (Philip) went to **Samaria** where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8111, H8115, H8118, G4540, G4541, G4542

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 18:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 22:9
- 2 Chronicles 25:13
- 2 Chronicles 25:23-24
- 2 Chronicles 28:7-8

Samuel

Facts:

Samuel was a prophet and the last judge of Israel. He anointed both Saul and David as kings over Israel.

- Samuel was born to Elkanah and Hannah in the town of Ramah.
- Hannah had been barren, so she had prayed earnestly that God would give her a son. Samuel was the answer to that prayer.
- Hannah promised that if, in answer to her desperate prayer that God would give her a male child, her request was granted, she would dedicate her son to Yahweh.
- To fulfill her promise to God, when Samuel was a young boy, Hannah sent him to live with and help Eli the priest in the temple.
- God raised up Samuel to be a great prophet.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Hannah, [judge](#), [prophet](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 01:19-20
- 1 Samuel 09:23-24
- 1 Samuel 12:16-18
- [Acts 03:24-26](#)
- [Acts 13:19-20](#)
- [Hebrews 11:32-34](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8050, G4545

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 35:18-19](#)

sanctuary

Definition:

The term “sanctuary” literally means “holy place” and refers to a place that God has made sacred and holy. It also can refer to a place that provides protection and safety.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sanctuary” was often used to refer to the tabernacle or temple building where the “holy place” and “most holy place” were located.
- God referred to the sanctuary as the place where he lived among his people, the Israelites.
- He also called himself a “sanctuary” or safe place for his people where they can find protection.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term has a basic meaning of “holy place” or “place that is set apart.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sanctuary” could be translated as “holy place” or “sacred building” or “God’s holy dwelling place” or “holy place of protection” or “sacred place of safety.”
- The phrase “shekel of the sanctuary” could be translated as “kind of shekel given for the tabernacle” or “shekel used in paying the tax to take care of the temple.”
- Note: Be careful that the translation of this term does not refer to a worship room in a modern-day church.

(See also: [holy](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [holy](#), [set apart](#), [tabernacle](#), [tax](#), [temple](#),)

Bible References:

- [Amos 07:12-13](#)
- [Exodus 25:3-7](#)
- [Ezekiel 25:3-5](#)
- [Hebrews 08:1-2](#)
- [Luke 11:49-51](#)
- [Numbers 18:1-2](#)
- [Psalms 078:67-69](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4720, H6944, G39

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 36:17](#)

sandal, sandals

Definition:

A sandal is a simple flat-soled shoe held onto the foot by straps that go around the foot or ankle. Sandals are worn by both men and women.

- A sandal was sometimes used to confirm a legal transaction, such as the selling of property: one man would take off a sandal and give it to the other.
- Removing one's shoes or sandals was also a sign of respect and reverence, especially in God's presence.
- John said that he was not worthy to even untie Jesus' sandals, which would have been the task of a lowly servant or slave.

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:33-34](#)
- Deuteronomy 25:9-10
- [John 01:26-28](#)
- Joshua 05:14-15
- [Mark 06:7-9](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5274, H5275, H8288, G4547, G5266

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 28:14-15](#)

Saul (OT)

Facts:

Saul was an Israelite man whom God chose to become the first king of Israel.

- Saul was tall and handsome, and a powerful soldier. He was the kind of man that the Israelites wanted to be their king.
- Although he served God at first, Saul later became proud and disobeyed God. As a result, God appointed David to take Saul's place as king and allowed Saul to be killed in battle.
- In the New Testament, there was a Jew named Saul who was also known as Paul and who became an apostle of Jesus Christ.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [king](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1-3
- 1 Samuel 09:1-2
- 2 Samuel 01:1-2
- [Acts 13:21-22](#)
- [Psalm 018:1](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***17:01 Saul** was the first king of Israel. He was tall and handsome, just like the people wanted. **Saul** was a good king for the first few years that he ruled over Israel. But then he became a wicked man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place. ***17:04 Saul** became jealous of the people's love for David. **Saul** tried many times to kill him, so David hid from **Saul**. ***17:05** Eventually, **Saul** died in battle, and David became king of Israel.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7586, G4549

save, saves, saved, safe, salvation

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: cross, deliver, [punish](#), [sin](#), Savior)

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:16-18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- [Psalms 080:1-3](#)
- [Jeremiah 16:19-21](#)
- [Micah 06:3-5](#)
- [Luke 02:30-32](#)

- Luke 08:36-37
- Acts 04:11-12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 02:20-21
- Romans 01:16-17
- Romans 10:8-10
- Ephesians 06:17-18
- Philippians 01:28-30
- 1 Timothy 01:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:08** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:02** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:05** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:08** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H983, H2421, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8668, G803, G804, G806, G1295, G1508, G4982, G4991, G4992, G5198

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 6:40-42
- 2 Chronicles 20:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 32:22-23

scribe, scribes

Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copying important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was “expert in Jewish law.”

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term translated “scribes” was also translated as “teachers of the Law.”
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the “Pharisees,” and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: [law](#), Pharisee)

Bible References:

- [Acts 04:5-7](#)
- [Luke 07:29-30](#)
- [Luke 20:45-47](#)
- [Mark 01:21-22](#)
- [Mark 02:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 05:19-20](#)
- [Matthew 07:28-29](#)
- [Matthew 12:38-40](#)
- [Matthew 13:51-53](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5608, H5613, H7083, G1122

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 24:11-12](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26:11-13](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34:14-16](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34:17-19](#)

seek, seeks, seeking, sought

Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. The past tense is “sought.” It can also mean “try hard” or “make an effort” to do something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity to do something can mean to “try to find a time” to do it.
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- To “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “try to get favor” or to “do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: [just](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:13-14
- [Acts 17:26-27](#)
- [Hebrews 11:5-6](#)
- [Luke 11:9-10](#)
- [Psalms 027:7-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H2713, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G327, G1567, G1934, G2052, G2212

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 14:7-8](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15:1-2](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34:1-3](#)

send, sends, sent, sending, send out, sends out, sent out, sending out

Definition:

To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean to “cause...to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as to “send word” or to “send a message,” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently used the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father, who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as “the one who commis

(See also: [appoint](#), redeem)

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:33-34](#)
- [Acts 08:14-17](#)
- [John 20:21-23](#)
- [Matthew 09:37-38](#)
- [Matthew 10:5-7](#)
- [Matthew 10:40-41](#)
- [Matthew 21:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H935, H1540, H1980, H2199, H2904, H3318, H3474, H3947, H4916, H4917, H5042, H5130, H5375, H5414, H5674, H6963, H7368, H7725, H7964, H7971, H7972, H7993, H8421, H8446, G782, G375, G630, G649, G652, G657, G1026, G1032, G1544, G1599, G1821, G3333, G3343, G3936, G3992, G4311, G4341, G4369, G4842, G4882

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 2:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 2:13-14](#)
- [2 Chronicles 6:26-27](#)
- [2 Chronicles 10:3-5](#)

- 2 Chronicles 16:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 17:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 25:17
- 2 Chronicles 32:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 36:15-16

Sennacherib

Facts:

Sennacherib was a powerful king of Assyria who caused Nineveh to become a rich, important city.

- King Sennacherib is known for his wars against Babylon and the kingdom of Judah.
- He was a very arrogant king and he ridiculed Yahweh.
- Sennacherib attacked Jerusalem during the time of King Hezekiah.
- Yahweh caused Sennacherib's army to be destroyed.
- The Old Testament books of Kings and Chronicles record some of the events of Sennacherib's reign.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Babylon](#), [Hezekiah](#), [Judah](#), [mock](#), [Nineveh](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 32:1](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32:16-17](#)
- [2 Kings 18:13-15](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: Sennacherib

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 32:1](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32:16-17](#)

serve, serves, served, serving, service, services, eyeservice**Definition:**

The term “serve” means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to “worship.”

- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.”
- When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- The term “service” refers to the act of serving. It can also be used to refer to a “meeting” of Christians as they worship God together.
- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses.
- Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [law](#), [servant](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 02:3-5](#)
- [Acts 06:2-4](#)
- [Genesis 25:23](#)
- [Luke 04:8](#)
- [Luke 12:37-38](#)
- [Luke 22:26-27](#)
- [Mark 08:7-10](#)
- [Matthew 04:10-11](#)
- [Matthew 06:22-24](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H327, H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G1247, G1248, G1398, G1402,

G1438, G1983, G2064, G2212, G2323, G2999, G3000, G3009, G4337, G4342, G4754, G5087, G5256### Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 5:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 7:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 8:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 10:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 12:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 13:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 17:14-16
- 2 Chronicles 22:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 23:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 24:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 24:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 29:35-36
- 2 Chronicles 30:21-22
- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 31:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 33:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 35:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 35:10-12

set apart

Definition:

The term “set apart” means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to “set apart” some person or thing means to make it “set apart.”

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- To “sanctify” someone means to set apart that person for God’s service.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate to “set apart” could include to “specially select” or to “separate from among you” or to “take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: [holy](#), [sanctify](#), [appoint](#))

Bible References:

- [Ephesians 03:17-19](#)
- [Exodus 31:12-15](#)
- [Judges 17:12-13](#)
- [Numbers 03:11-13](#)
- [Philippians 01:1-2](#)
- [Romans 01:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2764, H4390, H5674, H6918, H6942, H6944, G37, G38, G40, G873

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 2:4-5](#)
- [2 Chronicles 5:1](#)
- [2 Chronicles 7:7](#)
- [2 Chronicles 7:16-18](#)

- [2 Chronicles 7:19-20](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31:6-8](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35:3-4](#)

Sheba

Facts:

In ancient times, Sheba was an ancient civilization or region of land that was located somewhere in southern Arabia.

- The region or country of Sheba was probably located near what are now the present-day countries of Yemen and Ethiopia. Its inhabitants were probably descendants of Ham.
- The Queen of Sheba came to visit King Solomon when she heard the fame of his riches and wisdom.
- There were also several men named “Sheba” listed in genealogies in the Old Testament. It is possible that the name of the region of Sheba came from one of these men.
- The city of Beersheba was shortened to Sheba one time in the Old Testament.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Arabia](#), [Beersheba](#), [Ethiopia](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:8-10
- 1 Kings 10:1-2
- [Isaiah 60:6-7](#)
- [Psalms 072:8-10](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5434, H7614

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 9:1-2](#)

Shechem

Facts:

Shechem was a town in Canaan located about 40 miles north of Jerusalem. Shechem was also the name of a man in the Old Testament.

- The town of Shechem was where Jacob settled after being reconciled to his brother Esau.
- Jacob bought land from the sons of Hamor the Hivite in Shechem. This land later became his family burial ground and the place where his sons buried him.
- Hamor's son Shechem raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, resulting in Jacob's sons killing all the men in the town of Shechem.

(Translation suggestions: Hamor

(See also: Canaan, Esau, Hamor, [Hivite](#), [Jacob](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:14-16](#)
- Genesis 12:6-7
- Genesis 33:18-20
- Genesis 37:12-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7928, H7930

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 10:1-2](#)

shepherd, shepherds, shepherded, shepherding

Definition:

A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb to “shepherd” means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water. Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.

- This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people’s spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live.
- In the Old Testament, God was called the “shepherd” of his people because he took care of all their needs and protected them. He also led and guided them. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Moses was a shepherd for the Israelites as he guided them spiritually in their worship of Yahweh and led them physically on their journey to the land of Canaan.
- In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the “good shepherd.” The apostle Paul also referred to him as the “great shepherd” over the Church.
- Also, in the New Testament, the term “shepherd” was used to refer to a person who was a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as “pastor” is the same word that is translated as “shepherd.” The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

Translation Suggestions

- When used literally, the action “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- The person “shepherd” could be translated as “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- In some contexts, “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- The spiritual expression to “shepherd” could be translated as to “take care of” or to “spiritually nourish” or to “guide and teach” or to “lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep).”
- In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for “shepherd” in the translation of this term.

(See also: [believe](#), Canaan, church, [Moses](#), pastor, [sheep](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:24

- Luke 02:8-9
- Mark 06:33-34
- Mark 14:26-27
- Matthew 02:4-6
- Matthew 09:35-36
- Matthew 25:31-33
- Matthew 26:30-32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:11** Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.
- **17:02** David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- **23:06** That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- **23:08** The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6629, H7462, H7469, H7473, G750, G4165, G4166

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 14:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 18:15-16

shield, shields, shielded

Definition:

A shield was an object held by a soldier in battle to protect himself from being injured by the enemy's weapons. To "shield" someone means to protect that person from harm.

- Shields were often circular or oval, were made of materials such as leather, wood, or metal, and were sturdy and thick enough to keep a sword or arrow from piercing them.
- Using this term as a metaphor, the Bible refers to God as a protective shield for his people. (See: Metaphor)
- Paul talked about the "shield of faith," which is a figurative way of saying that having faith in Jesus and living out that faith in obedience to God will protect believers from the spiritual attacks of Satan.

(See also: faith, **obey**, Satan, **spirit**)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:25-26
- **2 Chronicles 23:8-9**
- 2 Samuel 22:36-37
- Deuteronomy 33:29
- **Psalms 018:35-36**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2653, H3591, H4043, H5437, H5526, H6793, H7982, G2375

Uses:

- **2 Chronicles 12:9-10**
- **2 Chronicles 14:7-8**
- **2 Chronicles 17:17-19**
- **2 Chronicles 23:8-9**
- **2 Chronicles 26:14-15**

Shiloh

Facts:

Shiloh was a walled Canaanite city that was conquered by the Israelites under the leadership of Joshua.

- The city of Shiloh was located west of the Jordan River and northeast of the city of Bethel.
- During the time that Joshua was leading Israel, the city of Shiloh was a meeting place for the people of Israel.
- The twelve tribes of Israel met together at Shiloh to hear Joshua tell them which portion of the land of Canaan had been assigned to each of them.
- Before any temple was built in Jerusalem, Shiloh was the place where the Israelites came to sacrifice to God.
- When Samuel was a young boy, his mother Hannah took him to live in Shiloh to be trained by the priest Eli to serve Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethel](#), [dedicate](#), [Hannah](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Jordan River](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), [Samuel](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:26-27
- 1 Samuel 01:9-10
- Joshua 18:1-2
- Judges 18:30-31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7886, H7887

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 9:29-31](#)

siege, besiege, besieged, besiegers, besieging, siegeworks**Definition:**

A “siege” occurs when an attacking army surrounds a city and keeps it from receiving any supplies of food and water. To “besiege” a city or to put it “under siege” means to attack it by means of a siege.

- When the Babylonians came to attack Israel, they used the tactic of a siege against Jerusalem to weaken the people inside the city.
- Often during a siege, ramps of dirt are gradually constructed to enable the attacking army to cross over the city walls and invade the city.
- To “besiege” a city can also be expressed as to “lay siege” to it or to “perform a siege” on it.
- The term “besieged” has the same meaning as the expression “under siege.” Both these expressions describe a city that an enemy army is surrounding and besieging.

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 20:1
- 1 Kings 20:1-3
- 1 Samuel 11:1-2
- [Jeremiah 33:4-5](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4692, H4693, H5341, H5437, H5564, H6693, H6696, H6887

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 32:9-10](#)

sign, signs, proof, reminder

Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- “Reminders” are signs that “remind” people by helping them remember something, often something that was promised:
 - The rainbows God creates in the sky are signs to remind people that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
 - God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
 - An angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
 - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
 - The miracles performed by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God’s message.
 - The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](#), [apostle](#), [Christ](#), [covenant](#), [circumcise](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 02:18-19](#)
- [Exodus 04:8-9](#)
- [Exodus 31:12-15](#)
- [Genesis 01:14-15](#)
- [Genesis 09:11-13](#)
- [John 02:17-19](#)

- [Luke 02:10-12](#)
- [Mark 08:11-13](#)
- [Psalms 089:5-6](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G364, G880, G1213, G1229, G1718, G1730, G1732, G1770, G3902, G4102, G4591, G4592, G4953, G4973, G5280

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32:30-31](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35 General Notes](#)

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 02:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- [Acts 03:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 26:14-16](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G693, G694, G695, G696, G1406

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 1:14-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 2:6-7](#)
- [2 Chronicles 5:1](#)
- [2 Chronicles 9:13-14](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15:18-19](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16:2-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17:10-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24:13-14](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25:5-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32:27-29](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36:3-4](#)

Simeon

Facts:

In the Bible, there were several men named Simeon.

- In the Old Testament, the second son of Jacob (Israel) was named Simeon. His mother was Leah. His descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The tribe of Simeon occupied part of the southernmost territory in the promised land of Canaan. Its land was entirely surrounded by the land that belonged to Judah.
- When Joseph and Mary brought the baby Jesus to the temple in Jerusalem to dedicate him to God, an elderly man named Simeon praised God for allowing him to see the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, Christ, [dedicate](#), [Jacob](#), [Judah](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:33-34
- Genesis 34:24-26
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Genesis 43:21-23
- [Luke 02:25-26](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8095, H8099, G4826

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 15:8-9](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34:6-7](#)

sin offering, sin offerings

Definition:

The “sin offering” was one of several sacrifices that God required the Israelites to offer.

- This offering involved sacrificing a bull, burning its blood and fat on the altar, and taking the rest of the animal’s body and burning it on the ground outside the Israelite camp.
- The complete burning up of this animal sacrifice shows how holy God is and how terrible sin is.
- The Bible teaches that in order for there to be a cleansing from sin, blood must be shed to pay the cost for the sin that was committed.
- Animal sacrifices could not permanently bring about forgiveness of sin.
- Jesus’ death on the cross paid the penalty for sin, for all time. He was the perfect sin offering.

(See also: [altar](#), [cow](#), [forgive](#), [sacrifice](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 29:20-21](#)
- Exodus 29:35-37
- [Ezekiel 44:25-27](#)
- Leviticus 05:11
- Numbers 07:15-17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2401, H2402, H2398, H2403

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 29:20-21](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29:22-24](#)

sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- In expressions like “slaves to sin” or “ruled by sin,” the term “sin” could be translated as “disobedience” or “evil desires and actions.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, [evil](#), [flesh](#), tax collector)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 1 John 02:1-3
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19-20
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Genesis 04:6-7
- Hebrews 12:1-3
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- Jeremiah 18:21-23
- Leviticus 04:13-15
- Luke 15:17-19
- Matthew 12:31-32
- Romans 06:22-23
- Romans 08:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 6:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 6:36-39
- 2 Chronicles 7:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 16 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 25:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 28:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 28:19-21
- 2 Chronicles 33:18-20

slaughter, slaughters, slaughtered, slaughtering

Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called “slaughter.”

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression “the slaughter was very great” could be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: [angel](#), [cow](#), [disobey](#), [Ezekiel](#), [servant](#), [slay](#))

Bible References:

- [Ezekiel 21:10-11](#)
- [Hebrews 07:1-3](#)
- [Isaiah 34:1-2](#)
- [Jeremiah 25:34-36](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2027, H2028, H2076, H2491, H2873, H2874, H2878, H4046, H4293, H4347, H4660, H5221, H6993, H7524, H7819, H7821, G2871, G4967, G4969, G5408

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 13:16-18](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25:14-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28:5-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30:16-17](#)

Solomon

Facts:

Solomon was one of King David's sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

- When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
- Solomon is also well known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
- Although Solomon ruled wisely in the first years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshiping their gods.
- Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms, Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bathsheba, [David](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:47-50](#)
- [Luke 12:27-28](#)
- [Matthew 01:7-8](#)
- [Matthew 06:27-29](#)
- [Matthew 12:42](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***17:14** Later, David and Bathsheba had another son, and they named him **Solomon**. ***18:01** After many years, David died, and his son **Solomon** began to rule. God spoke to **Solomon** and asked him what he wanted most. When **Solomon** asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world. **Solomon** learned many things and was a very wise judge. God also made him very wealthy. ***18:02** In Jerusalem, **Solomon** built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. ***18:03** But **Solomon** loved women from other countries. ... When **Solomon** was old, he also worshiped their gods. ***18:04** God was angry with **Solomon** and, as a punishment for **Solomon's** unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after **Solomon's** death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8010, G4672

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 1:1
- 2 Chronicles 2:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 4:11-13
- 2 Chronicles 5:1
- 2 Chronicles 6:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 7:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 7:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 8:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 8:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 9:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 9:10
- 2 Chronicles 9:29-31
- 2 Chronicles 10:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 11:2-4
- 2 Chronicles 12:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 13:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 30:25-27
- 2 Chronicles 33:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 35:3-4

son, sons**Definition:**

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- “Son” was often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
- The term “son” can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger than the speaker.
- Sometimes “sons of God” was used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
- God called Israel his “firstborn son.” This refers to God’s choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God’s message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
- The phrase “son of” often has the figurative meaning “person having the characteristics of.” Examples of this include “sons of the light,” “sons of disobedience,” “a son of peace,” and “sons of thunder.”
- The phrase “son of” is also used to tell who a person’s father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term “descendant” could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the “descendant of David” or in genealogies where sometimes “son” referred to a male descendant who was not an actual son.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.
- The figurative expression “son of” could also be translated as “someone who has the characteristics of” or “someone who is like” or “someone who has” or “someone who acts like.”

(See also: [Azariah](#), [descendant](#), [ancestor](#), firstborn, Son of God, sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:14-17
- 1 Kings 13:1-3
- 1 Thessalonians 05:4-7
- Galatians 04:6-7
- Hosea 11:1-2
- Isaiah 09:6-7
- Matthew 03:16-17
- Matthew 05:9-10
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **04:09** God said, "I will give you a **son** from your own body."
- **05:05** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's **son**.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, "Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me."
- **09:07** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:06** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:04** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 34:12-13

sorcerer, sorcerers, sorceress, sorcery, sorceries, witchcraft**Definition:**

“Sorcery” or “witchcraft” refers to using magic, which involves doing powerful things through the help of evil spirits. A “sorcerer” is someone who does these powerful, magical things.

- The use of magic and sorcery can involve both beneficial things (such as healing someone) and harmful things (such as putting a curse on someone). But all kinds of sorcery are wrong, because they use the power of evil spirits.
- In the Bible, God says that the use of sorcery is as evil as other terrible sins (such as adultery, worshiping idols, and child sacrifice).
- The terms “sorcery” and “witchcraft” could also be translated as “evil spirit power” or “casting spells.”
- Possible ways to translated “sorcerer” could include “worker of magic” or “person who casts spells” or “person who does miracles using evil spirit power.”
- Note that “sorcery” has a different meaning than the term “divination,” which refers to attempting to contact the spirit world.

(See also: adultery, demon, divination, [false god](#), magic, [sacrifice](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 08:9-11](#)
- [Exodus 07:11-13](#)
- [Galatians 05:19-21](#)
- [Revelation 09:20-21](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3784, H3785, H3786, H6049, G3095, G3096, G3097, G5331, G5332, G5333

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 33:4-6](#)

soul, souls

Definition:

The soul is the inner, invisible, and eternal part of a person. It refers to the non-physical part of a person.

- The terms “soul” and “spirit” may be two different concepts, or they may be two terms that refer to the same concept.
- When a person dies, his soul leaves his body.
- The word “soul” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to the whole person. For example, “the soul who sins” means “the person who sins” and “my soul is tired” means, “I am tired.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “soul” could also be translated as “inner self” or “inner person.”
- In some contexts, “my soul” could be translated as “I” or “me.”
- Usually the phrase “the soul” can be translated as “the person” or “he” or “him,” depending on the context.
- Some languages might only have one word for the concepts “soul” and “spirit.”
- In Hebrews 4:12, the figurative phrase “dividing soul and spirit” could mean “deeply discerning or exposing the inner person.”

(See also: [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Peter 02:7-9](#)
- [Acts 02:27-28](#)
- [Acts 02:40-42](#)
- [Genesis 49:5-6](#)
- [Isaiah 53:10-11](#)
- [James 01:19-21](#)
- [Jeremiah 06:16-19](#)
- [Jonah 02:7-8](#)
- [Luke 01:46-47](#)
- [Matthew 22:37-38](#)
- [Psalms 019:7-8](#)
- [Revelation 20:4](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5082, H5315, H5397, G5590

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 6:36-39
- 2 Chronicles 15:12-13

spear, spears, spearmen

Definition:

A spear is a weapon with a long wooden handle and sharp metal blade on one end that is thrown a long distance.

- Spears were commonly used for war in biblical times. They are sometimes still used in present-day conflicts between certain people groups.
- A spear was used by a Roman soldier to pierce the side of Jesus while he hung on the cross.
- Sometimes people throw spears to catch fish or other prey to eat.
- Similar weapons are the “javelin” or “lance.”
- Make sure that the translation of “spear” is different from the translation of “sword,” which is a weapon that is used for thrusting or stabbing, not throwing. Also, a sword has a long blade with a handle, while a spear has a small blade on the end of a long shaft.

(See also: prey, Rome, [sword](#), warrior)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 13:19-21
- 2 Samuel 21:18-19
- [Nehemiah 04:12-14](#)
- [Psalm 035:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1265, H2595, H3591, H6767, H7013, H7420, G3057

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 11:11-12](#)
- [2 Chronicles 14:7-8](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26:14-15](#)

spirit, spirits, spiritual

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings, which give nourishment to a person’s spirit, and “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The figurative expression “spiritual milk” could also be translated as “basic teachings from God” or “God’s teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does).”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives

(See also: [angel](#), [demon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:3-5
- 1 John 04:1-3
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23-24
- Acts 05:9-11
- Colossians 01:9-10
- Ephesians 04:23-24
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:3-4
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:39-41
- Philippians 01:25-27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 9:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 18:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 20:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 21:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 33:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 36:22-23

statute, statutes

Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” and “command” and “law” and “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh’s statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: [command](#), [decree](#), [law](#), ordinance, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 06:20-23
- [Ezekiel 33:14-16](#)
- Numbers 19:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H2708, H6490, H7010

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 7:16-18](#)
- [2 Chronicles 7:19-20](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19:10](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33:7-9](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34:31-32](#)

stone, stones, stoning

Definition:

A stone is a small rock. To “stone” someone is to throw stones and larger rocks at that person with the intention of killing him. A “stoning” is an event in which someone was stoned.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- In the New Testament, Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed for testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: adultery, commit, crime, [death](#), Lystra, [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:57-58](#)
- [Acts 07:59-60](#)
- [Acts 14:5-7](#)
- [Acts 14:19-20](#)
- [John 08:4-6](#)
- [Luke 13:34-35](#)
- [Luke 20:5-6](#)
- [Matthew 23:37-39](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H68, H69, H810, H1382, H1496, H1530, H2106, H2672, H2687, H2789, H4676, H4678, H5553, H5601, H5619, H6344, H6443, H6697, H6864, H6872, H7275, H7671, H8068, G2642, G2991, G3034, G3035, G3036, G3037, G4074, G4348, G5586

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 10:17-19](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24:20-22](#)

storehouse, storehouses

Definition:

A “storehouse” is a large building that is used for keeping food or other things, often for a long time.

- In the Bible a “storehouse” was usually used to store extra grain and other food to be used later when there was a famine.
- This term was also used figuratively to refer to all the good things that God wants to give to his people.
- The storehouses of the temple contained valuable things that had been dedicated to Yahweh, such as gold and silver. Some of these things used to repair and maintain the temple were also kept there.
- Other ways to translate “storehouse” could include “a building for storing grain” or “place for keeping food” or “room for keeping valuable things safe.”

(See also: [consecrate](#), [dedicate](#), [famine](#), [gold](#), [grain](#), [silver](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 16:2-3](#)
- [Luke 03:17](#)
- [Matthew 03:10-12](#)
- [Psalms 033:7-9](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H214, H618, H624, H4035, H4200, H4543, G596

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 16:2-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31:11-13](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32:27-29](#)

stronghold, strongholds, fortifications, fortified, fortress, fortresses

Definition:

The terms “stronghold” and “fortress” both refer to places that are well protected against an attack by enemy soldiers. The term “fortified” describes a city or other place that has been made safe from attack.

- Often, strongholds and fortresses were manmade structures with defensive walls. They could also have been places with natural protective barriers such as rocky cliffs or high mountains.
- People fortified strongholds by building thick walls or other structures that made it difficult for an enemy to break through.
- “Stronghold” or “fortress” could be translated as “securely strong place” or “strongly protected place.”
- The term “fortified city” could be translated as “securely protected city” or “strongly built city.”
- This term was also used figuratively to refer to God as a stronghold or fortress for those who trust in him. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Another figurative meaning for the term “stronghold” referred to something that someone wrongly trusted in for security, such as a false god or other thing that was worshiped instead of Yahweh. This could be translated as “false strongholds.”
- This term should be translated differently from “refuge,” which emphasizes safety more than the concept of being fortified.

(See also: [false god](#), [false god](#), [refuge](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Corinthians 10:3-4](#)
- [2 Kings 08:10-12](#)
- [2 Samuel 05:8-10](#)
- [Acts 21:34-36](#)
- [Habakkuk 01:10-11](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H490, H553, H759, H1001, H1002, H1003, H1219, H1225, H2388, H4013, H4026, H4581, H4526, H4679, H4685, H4686, H4692, H4693, H4694, H4869, H5794, H5797, H5800, H6438, H6696, H6877, H7682, G3794

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 11:11-12](#)

- 2 Chronicles 17:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 32:1

Succoth

Definition:

Succoth was the name of two Old Testament cities. The word, “succoth” (or “sukkoth”) means “shelters.”

- The first city called Succoth was located on the east side of the Jordan River.
- Jacob stayed at Succoth with his family and flocks, building shelters for them there.
- Hundreds of years later, Gideon and his exhausted men stopped at Succoth as they were chasing the Midanites, but the people there refused to give them any food.
- The second Succoth was located on the northern border of Egypt and was a place where the Israelites stopped after they crossed the Red Sea as they were escaping from slavery in Egypt.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 07:46-47
- Exodus 12:37-40
- Joshua 13:27-28
- Judges 08:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5523, H5524

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 4:17-18](#)

suffer, suffers, suffered, suffering, sufferings

Definition:

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 02:14-16](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 01:3-5](#)
- [2 Timothy 01:8-11](#)
- [Acts 07:11-13](#)
- [Isaiah 53:10-11](#)
- [Jeremiah 06:6-8](#)
- [Matthew 16:21-23](#)
- [Psalms 022:24-25](#)
- [Revelation 01:9-11](#)
- [Romans 05:3-5](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:13** God said, “I have seen the **suffering** of my people.”
- **38:12** Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**.”

- **42:03** He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- **42:07** He (Jesus) said, "It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day."
- **44:05** "Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die."
- **46:04** God said, "I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake."
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H943, H1741, H1934, H4342, H4531, H4912, H5142, H5254, H5375, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6064, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7661, G91, G941, G971, G2210, G2346, G2347, G3804, G3958, G4310, G4778, G4841, G5004, G5723

Uses:

- **2 Chronicles 15:6-7**
- **2 Chronicles 28:22-23**

sword, swords, swordsmen

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 12:1-2](#)
- [Genesis 27:39-40](#)
- [Genesis 34:24-26](#)
- [Luke 02:33-35](#)
- [Luke 21:23-24](#)
- [Matthew 10:34-36](#)
- [Matthew 26:55-56](#)
- [Revelation 01:14-16](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H19, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 20:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 21:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 21:12-15
- 2 Chronicles 23:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 23:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 29:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 32:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 36:17

tabernacle

Definition:

The tabernacle was a special tent-like structure where the Israelites worshiped God during the 40 years they traveled around in the desert.

- God had given the Israelites detailed instructions for building this large tent, which had two rooms and was surrounded by an enclosed courtyard.
- Each time the Israelites moved to a different place in the desert to live, the priests would take the tabernacle apart and carry it to their next campsite. Then they would set it up again in the center of their new camp.
- The tabernacle was constructed of wood frames hung with curtains made of cloth, goat hair, and animal skins. The courtyard surrounding it was enclosed with more curtains.
- The two sections of the tabernacle were the Holy Place (where the altar for burning incense was located) and the Most Holy Place (where the ark of the covenant was kept).
- The courtyard of the tabernacle had an altar for burning animal sacrifices and a special washbasin for ritual cleansing.
- The Israelites stopped using the tabernacle when the temple was built in Jerusalem by Solomon.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “tabernacle” means “dwelling place.” Other ways to translate it could include, “sacred tent” or “tent where God was” or “God’s tent.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “temple.”

(See also: [altar](#), altar of incense, [ark of the covenant](#), [temple](#), [tent of meeting](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:28-30
- [2 Chronicles 01:2-5](#)
- [Acts 07:43](#)
- [Acts 07:44-46](#)
- Exodus 38:21-23
- Joshua 22:19-20
- Leviticus 10:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H168, H4908, H5520, H5521, H5522, H7900, G4633, G4634, G4636, G4638

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 1:2](#)

tax, taxes, taxed, taxation, taxpayers**Definition:**

The terms “tax” and “taxes” refer to money or goods that people pay to a government that is in authority over them.

- The amount of money that is paid as a tax is usually based on the value of an item or on how much a person’s property is worth.
- If taxes are not paid, the government can take legal action against a person to get the money that is owed.
- Joseph and Mary traveled to Bethlehem to be counted in the census held to tax everyone living in the Roman empire.
- The term “tax” could also be translated as, “required payment” or “government money” or “temple money,” depending on the context.
- To “pay taxes” could also be translated as to “pay money to the government” or “receive money for the government” or “make the required payment.” To “collect taxes” could be translated as to “receive money for the government.”
- A “tax collector” is someone who works for the government and receives the money that people are required to pay it.

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), census, citizen, Rome, tax collector)

Bible References:

- [Luke 20:21-22](#)
- [Mark 02:13-14](#)
- [Matthew 09:7-9](#)
- Numbers 31:28-29
- [Romans 13:6-7](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2670, H4060, H4371, H4522, H4864, H6186, G583, G5411

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 24:6-7](#)

temple

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [tabernacle](#), [courtyard](#), [Zion](#), [house](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 03:1-3](#)
- [Acts 03:7-8](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:18-20](#)
- [Luke 19:45-46](#)
- [Nehemiah 10:28-29](#)
- [Psalm 079:1-3](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:06** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:02** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered

sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.

- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:04** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:07** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1964, H1965, H7541, G1493, G2411, G3485

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 02 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 03 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 3:15-17](#)
- [2 Chronicles 04 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 4:7-8](#)
- [2 Chronicles 4:22](#)
- [2 Chronicles 05 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 06 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 6:18-20](#)
- [2 Chronicles 07 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 7:21-22](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23:10-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 27:1-2](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29:15-17](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31:2-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34:8-9](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34:10-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35:20-21](#)

tent of meeting

Facts:

The term “tent of meeting” refers to a tent which was a temporary place where God met with Moses before the tabernacle was built.

- The tent of meeting was set up outside the camp of the Israelites.
- When Moses went into the tent of meeting to meet with God, a pillar of cloud would stand at the entrance to the tent as a sign of God’s presence there.
- After the Israelites built the tabernacle, the temporary tent was no longer needed and the term “tent of meeting” was sometimes used to refer to the tabernacle.

(See also: [Israel](#), [Moses](#), [pillar](#), [tabernacle](#), [tent](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:28-29
- Joshua 19:51
- Leviticus 01:1-2
- Numbers 04:31-32

Examples from the Bible stories:

***13:08** God gave the Israelites a detailed description of a tent he wanted them to make. It was called the **Tent of Meeting**, and it had two rooms, separated by a large curtain. ***13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God’s law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the **Tent of Meeting** as a sacrifice to God. ***14:08** God was very angry and came to the **Tent of Meeting**. ***18:02** Instead of at the **Tent of Meeting**, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the Temple.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H168, H4150

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 1:2](#)
- [2 Chronicles 5:4-6](#)

tent, tents, tentmakers

Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents constructed from sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he supported himself by making tents.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses" or even "bodies." (See: [synecdoche](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), Canaan, [curtain](#), Paul, Sinai, [tabernacle](#), [tent of meeting](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:10
- [Daniel 11:44-45](#)
- Exodus 16:16-18
- Genesis 12:8-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H167, H168, H2583, H3407, H6898

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 10:16](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24:6-7](#)

tenth, tenths, tithe, tithes

Definition:

The terms “tenth” and “tithe” refer to “ten percent” or “one-out-of-ten portion” of one’s money, crops, livestock, or other possessions, which is given to God.

- In the Old Testament, God instructed the Israelites to set aside a tenth of their belongings to give as an offering of thanksgiving to him.
- This offering was used to support the Levite tribe of Israel who served the Israelites as priests and caretakers of the tabernacle and later, the temple.
- In the New Testament, God does not require giving a tithe, but instead he instructs believers to generously and cheerfully help people in need and support the work of Christian ministry.
- This could also be translated as “one-tenth” or “one out of ten.”

(See also: [believe](#), [Israel](#), [Levite](#), livestock, Melchizedek, minister, [sacrifice tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 14:19-20
- Genesis 28:20-22
- [Hebrews 07:4-6](#)
- [Isaiah 06:13](#)
- [Luke 11:42](#)
- [Luke 18:11-12](#)
- [Matthew 23:23-24](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4643, H6237, H6241, G586, G1181, G1183

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 31:4-5](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31:6-8](#)

terror, terrorize, terrorized, terrors, terrify, terrified, terrifying**Definition:**

The term “terror” refers to a feeling of extreme fear. To “terrify” someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A “terror” is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as “terrifying.” This term could be translated as, “fear-causing” or “terror-producing.”
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The “terror of Yahweh” could be translated as “the terrifying presence of Yahweh” or “the dreaded judgment of Yahweh” or “when Yahweh causes great fear.”
- Ways to translate “terror” could also include “extreme fear” or “deep dread.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [fear](#), [judge](#), [plague](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 02:24-25
- Exodus 14:10-12
- [Luke 21:7-9](#)
- [Mark 06:48-50](#)
- [Matthew 28:5-7](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H367, H926, H928, H1091, H1161, H1204, H1763, H2111, H2189, H2283, H2731, H2847, H2851, H2865, H3372, H3707, H4032, H4048, H4172, H4288, H4637, H6184, H6206, H6343, H6973, H8541, G1629, G1630, G2258, G4422, G4426, G5401

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 14:14-15](#)

test, tests, tested

Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “test” could also be translated as, to “challenge” or to “cause to experience difficulties” or to “prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as to “test” or to “set up a challenge” or to “force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: tempt)

Bible References:

- [1 John 04:1-3](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 05:19-22](#)
- [Acts 15:10-11](#)
- [Genesis 22:1-3](#)
- [Isaiah 07:13-15](#)
- [James 01:12-13](#)
- [Lamentations 03:40-43](#)
- [Malachi 03:10-12](#)
- [Philippians 01:9-11](#)
- [Psalm 026:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G1242, G1263, G1303, G1957, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G4303, G4828, G6020

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 9:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 32:30-31

testimony, testify, witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses

Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”

- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [guilt](#), [judge](#), [prophet](#), [testimony](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:27-29
- [Micah 06:3-5](#)
- [Matthew 26:59-61](#)
- [Mark 01:43-44](#)
- [John 01:6-8](#)
- [John 03:31-33](#)
- [Acts 04:32-33](#)
- [Acts 07:44-46](#)
- [Acts 13:30-31](#)
- [Romans 01:8-10](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 02:10-12](#)
- [1 Timothy 05:19-20](#)
- [2 Timothy 01:8-11](#)
- [2 Peter 01:16-18](#)
- [1 John 05:6-8](#)
- [3 John 01:11-12](#)
- [Revelation 12:11-12](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, “We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?”
- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things.”
- **43:07** “We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4303, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577, G6020

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 24:17-19](#)

thresh, threshes, threshed, threshing

Definition:

The terms “thresh” and “threshing” refer to the first part of the process of separating wheat grain from the rest of the wheat plant.

- Threshing the wheat plant loosens the grain from the straw and the chaff. Afterwards the grain is “winnowed” to completely separate the grain from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a “threshing floor” was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A “threshing cart” or “threshing wheel” was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A “threshing sledge” or “threshing board” was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: chaff, [grain](#), winnow)

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 03:1-3](#)
- [2 Kings 13:6-7](#)
- [2 Samuel 24:15-16](#)
- [Daniel 02:34-35](#)
- [Luke 03:17](#)
- [Matthew 03:10-12](#)
- [Ruth 03:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H212, H4173, H1637, H1758, H1786, H1869, H2251, G248

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 3:1-3](#)

threshold, thresholds

Definition:

The term “threshold” refers to the bottom part of a doorway or the part of a building that is just inside the door.

- Sometimes a threshold is a strip of wood or stone that must be stepped over in order to enter a room or building.
- Both a gate and the opening to a tent can also have a threshold.
- This term should be translated with a term in the project language that refers to the place at the very entrance to a home that a person steps across.
- If there is no term for this, “threshold” could also be translated as “doorway” or “opening” or “entranceway,” depending on the context.

(See also: [gate](#), [tent](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:17-19
- [Ezekiel 09:3-4](#)
- [Isaiah 06:4-5](#)
- [Proverbs 17:19-20](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H624, H4670, H5592

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 3:6-7](#)

throne, thrones, enthroned

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word “throne” is often used figuratively to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power. (See: [metonymy](#))
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: [authority](#), [power](#), [king](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

- [Colossians 01:15-17](#)
- [Genesis 41:39-41](#)
- [Luke 01:30-33](#)
- [Luke 22:28-30](#)
- [Matthew 05:33-35](#)
- [Matthew 19:28](#)
- [Revelation 01:4-6](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3427, H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G968, G2362

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 6:10-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 9:7-8](#)
- [2 Chronicles 9:17-18](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18:9-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18:17-18](#)

transgress, transgresses, transgression

Definition:

The term “transgression” refers to the breaking of a command, rule, or moral code. To “transgress” is to commit a “transgression.”

- Figuratively, to “transgress” can also be described as to “cross a line,” that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.
- The terms “transgression,” “sin,” “iniquity,” and “trespass” all include the meaning of acting against God’s will and disobeying his commands.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “transgress” could be translated as to “sin” or to “disobey” or to “rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See: [parallelism](#))

(See also: [sin](#), [trespass](#), [iniquity](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 04:3-6](#)
- [Daniel 09:24-25](#)
- [Galatians 03:19-20](#)
- [Galatians 06:1-2](#)
- [Numbers 14:17-19](#)
- [Psalm 032:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H898, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G458, G459, G3845, G3847, G3848, G3928

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 24:20-22](#)

trespass, trespasses, trespassed

Definition:

To “trespass” means to break a law or to violate the rights of another person. A “trespass” is the action of “trespassing.”

- A trespass can be a violation of moral or civil law or a sin committed against another person.
- This term is related to the terms “sin,” and “transgress,” especially as it relates to disobeying God.
- All sins are trespasses against God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “trespass against” could be translated as to “sin against” or to “break the rule.”
- Some languages may have an expression like “cross the line” that could be used to translate “trespass.”
- Consider how this term fits with the meaning of the surrounding Bible text and compare it to other terms that have a similar meaning, such as “transgress” and “sin.”

(See also: disobey, [iniquity](#), [sin](#), [transgress](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 25:27-28
- [2 Chronicles 26:16-18](#)
- [Colossians 02:13-15](#)
- [Ephesians 02:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 15:7-8](#)
- [Romans 05:16-17](#)
- [Romans 05:20-21](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H816, H817, H819, H2398, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G264, G3900

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 26:16-18](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28:12-13](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29:6-7](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30:7-9](#)

- [2 Chronicles 33:18-20](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36:13-14](#)

tribe, tribes, tribal, tribesmen

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: clan, [nation](#), [people group](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:13-16
- Genesis 49:16-18
- [Luke 02:36-38](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G1429, G5443

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 5:2-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 6:4-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11:16-17](#)
- [2 Chronicles 12:13-14](#)
- [2 Chronicles 33:7-9](#)

tribute

Definition:

The term “tribute” refers to a gift from one ruler to another ruler, for the purpose of protection and for good relations between their nations.

- A tribute can also be a payment that a ruler or government requires from the people, such as a toll or tax.
- In Bible times, traveling kings or rulers sometimes paid a tribute to the king of the region they were traveling through to make sure they would be protected and safe.
- Often the tribute would include things besides money, such as foods, spices, rich clothing, and expensive metals such as gold.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “tribute” could be translated as “official gifts” or “special tax” or “required payment.”

(See also: [gold](#), [king](#), [ruler](#), [tax](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:1-2
- [2 Chronicles 09:22-24](#)
- 2 Kings 17:1-3
- [Luke 23:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1093, H4060, H4061, H4371, H4503, H4522, H4530, H4853, H6066, H7862, G1323, G2778, G5411

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 9:22-24](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17:5-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17:10-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26:6-8](#)

trouble, troubles, troubled, troubling, troublemaker, troublesome

Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: [afflict](#), persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- [2 Chronicles 25:18-19](#)
- [Luke 24:38-40](#)
- [Matthew 24:6-8](#)
- [Matthew 26:36-38](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H205, H598, H926, H927, H928, H1204, H1205, H1607, H1644, H1804, H1993, H2000, H2113, H2189, H2560, H2960, H4103, H5590, H5753, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7481, H7489, H7515, H7561, H8513,

G387, G1298, G1613, G1776, G2346, G2347, G2350, G2360, G2553, G2873, G3636, G3926, G3930, G3986, G4423, G4660, G5015, G5016, G5182

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 15:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 15:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 25:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 28:19-21
- 2 Chronicles 32:18-19

true, truth, truths

Definition:

The term “truth” refers to one or more concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said. Such concepts are said to be “true.”

- True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
- To say that a prophecy “came true” or “will come true” mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- God’s word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [prophet](#), understand)

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 05:6-8](#)
- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 John 02:7-8](#)
- [3 John 01:5-8](#)
- [Acts 26:24-26](#)
- [Colossians 01:4-6](#)
- [Genesis 47:29-31](#)
- [James 01:17-18](#)
- [James 03:13-14](#)
- [James 05:19-20](#)

- [Jeremiah 04:1-3](#)
- [John 01:9](#)
- [John 01:16-18](#)
- [John 01:49-51](#)
- [John 03:31-33](#)
- [Joshua 07:19-21](#)
- [Lamentations 05:19-22](#)
- [Matthew 08:8-10](#)
- [Matthew 12:15-17](#)
- [Psalm 026:1-3](#)
- [Revelation 01:19-20](#)
- [Revelation 15:3-4](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***02:04** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true**! You will not die." ***14:06** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is **true** that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!" ***16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the **true** God. ***31:08** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God." ***39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H199, H389, H403, H529, H530, H543, H544, H551, H571, H935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G225, G226, G227, G228, G230, G1103, G3303, G3483, G3689, G4103, G4137

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 6:16-17](#)
- [2 Chronicles 9:5-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15:3-5](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18:15-16](#)

trumpet, trumpets, trumpeters

Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel’s public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: [angel](#), [assembly](#), [earth](#), horn, [Israel](#), [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
- 2 Kings 09:11-13
- Exodus 19:12-13
- [Hebrews 12:18-21](#)
- [Matthew 06:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 24:30-31](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G4536, G4537, G4538

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 5:11-12](#)
- [2 Chronicles 7:4-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13:12](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13:13-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23:12-13](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29:25-26](#)

trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: [believe](#), confidence, faith, [faithful](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
- [1 Timothy 04:9-10](#)
- [Hosea 10:12-13](#)
- [Isaiah 31:1-2](#)
- [Nehemiah 13:12-14](#)
- [Psalm 031:5-7](#)
- [Titus 03:8](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [12:12](#) When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- [14:15](#) Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [17:02](#) David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [34:06](#) Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3872, G3982, G4006, G4100, G4276

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 13 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 14 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 16 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 17 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 20 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 20:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 25 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 27 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 31:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 32 General Notes

turn, turns, turn away, turns away, turn back, turns back, turned, turned away, turned back, turning, turning away, turning back, returns, returned, returning, return back

Definition:

To “turn” means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

- The term “turn” can also mean “turn around” to look behind or to face a different direction.
- To “turn back” or “turn away” means to “go back” or “go away” or “cause to go away.”
- To “turn away from” can mean to “stop” doing something or to reject someone.
- To “turn toward” someone means to look directly at that person.
- To “turn and leave” or “turn his back to leave” means to “go away.”
- To “turn back to” means to “start doing something again.”
- To “turn away from” means to “stop doing something.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “turn” can be translated as “change direction” or “go” or “move.”
- In some contexts, “turn” could be translated as “cause” (someone) to do something. To “turn (someone) away from” could be translated as “cause (someone) to go away” or “cause (someone) to stop.”
- The phrase “turn away from God” could be translated as “stop worshiping God.”
- The phrase “turn back to God” could be translated as “start worshiping God again.”
- When enemies “turn back,” it means they “retreat.” To “turn back the enemy” means to “cause the enemy to retreat.”
- Used figuratively, when Israel “turned to” false gods, they “started to worship” them. When they “turned away” from idols, they “stopped worshiping” them.
- When God “turned away from” his rebellious people, he “stopped protecting” or “stopped helping” them.
- The phrase “turn the hearts of the fathers to their children” could be translated as “cause fathers to care for their children again.”
- The expression “turn my honor into shame” could be translated as “cause my honor to become shame” or “dishonor me so that I am shamed” or “shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me.”
- “I will turn your cities into ruin” could be translated as “I will cause your cities to be destroyed” or “I will cause enemies to destroy your cities.”
- The phrase “turn into” could be translated as “become.” When Moses’ rod “turned into” a snake, it “became” a snake.” It could also be translated as “changed into.”

(See also: [false god](#), [leprosy](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:1-2
- Acts 07:41-42
- Acts 11:19-21
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 01:16-17
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Revelation 11:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H541, H1750, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3399, H3943, H4142, H4672, H4740, H4878, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5472, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H5844, H6437, H6801, H7227, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, G344, G387, G402, G576, G654, G665, G868, G1294, G1578, G1612, G1624, G1994, G2827, G3179, G3313, G3329, G3344, G3346, G4762, G5077, G5157, G5290, G6060

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 6:24-25
- 2 Chronicles 6:40-42
- 2 Chronicles 7:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 7:19-20
- 2 Chronicles 15:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 20:31-33
- 2 Chronicles 25:27-28
- 2 Chronicles 30:6
- 2 Chronicles 34:33
- 2 Chronicles 35:22
- 2 Chronicles 36:13-14

Tyre, Tyrians

Facts:

Tyre was an ancient Canaanite city located on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea in a region that is now part of the modern-day country of Lebanon. Its people were called “Tyrians.”

- Part of the city was located on an island in the sea, about one kilometer from the mainland.
- Because of its location and its valuable natural resources, such as cedar trees, Tyre had a prosperous trading industry and was very wealthy.
- King Hiram of Tyre sent wood from cedar trees and skilled laborers to help build a palace for King David.
- Years later, Hiram also sent King Solomon wood and skilled laborers to help build the temple. Solomon paid him with large amounts of wheat and olive oil.
- Tyre was often associated with the nearby ancient city of Sidon. These were the most important cities of the region of Canaan called Phoenicia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, [cedar](#), [Israel](#), the sea, Phoenicia, Sidon)

Bible References:

- [Acts 12:20-21](#)
- [Mark 03:7-8](#)
- [Matthew 11:20-22](#)
- [Matthew 15:21-23](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6865, H6876, G5183, G5184

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 2:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 2:11-12](#)

unleavened bread

Definition:

The term “unleavened bread” refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, “unleavened bread” represents the removal of sin from a person’s life in order to live in a way that honors God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “bread with no yeast” or “flat bread that did not rise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term “yeast, leaven.”
- In some contexts, the term “unleavened bread” refers to the “Feast of Unleavened Bread” and can be translated that way.

(See also: [bread](#), [Egypt](#), [feast](#), [Passover](#), [servant](#), [sin](#), [yeast](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 05:6-8](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30:13-15](#)
- [Acts 12:3-4](#)
- Exodus 23:14-15
- [Ezra 06:21-22](#)
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Judges 06:21
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- [Luke 22:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4682, G106

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 8:12-13](#)

- [2 Chronicles 30:13-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35:16-17](#)

Uzziah, Azariah

Facts:

Uzziah became king of Judah at the age of 16 and reigned 52 years, which was an unusually long reign. Uzziah was also known as “Azariah.”

- King Uzziah was well-known for his organized and skilled military. He had towers built to protect the city and had specially-designed weapons of war mounted on them to hurl arrows and large stones.
- As long as Uzziah served the Lord, he prospered. Toward the end of his reign, however, he became proud and he disobeyed the Lord by burning incense in the temple, which only the priest was permitted to do.
- Because of this sin, Uzziah became sick with leprosy and had to live separately from other people until the end of his reign.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Judah](#), [king](#), [leprosy](#), [reign](#), [watchtower](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 14:20-22
- [Amos 01:1-2](#)
- [Hosea 01:1-2](#)
- [Isaiah 06:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 01:7-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5814, H5818, H5838, H5839

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 26:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26:16-18](#)
- [2 Chronicles 27:1-2](#)

vine, vines

Definition:

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: grape, [vineyard](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 40:9-11
- Genesis 49:11-12
- [John 15:1-2](#)
- [Luke 22:17-18](#)
- [Mark 12:1-3](#)
- [Matthew 21:35-37](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5139, H1612, H8321, G288, G290, G1009, G1092

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 26:9-10](#)

vineyard, vineyards

Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Vineyard could be also translated as “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: [grape](#), [Israel](#), [vine](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 09:20-21
- [Luke 13:6-7](#)
- [Luke 20:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 20:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 21:40-41](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H64, H1612, H3657, H3661, H3754, H3755, H8284, G289, G290

virgin, virgins, virginity

Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See also: Christ, [Isaiah](#), Jesus, Mary)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15-16
- [Luke 01:26-29](#)
- [Luke 01:34-35](#)
- [Matthew 01:22-23](#)
- [Matthew 25:1-4](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**. ***22:04** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph. ***22:05** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?" ***49:01** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1330, H1331, H5959, G3932, G3933

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 36:17](#)

vision, visions, envision

Facts:

The term “vision” refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However, sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

Translation Suggestion

- The phrase “saw a vision” could be translated as “saw something unusual from God” or “God showed him something special.”
- Some languages may not have separate words for “vision” and “dream.” So a sentence such as “Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind” could be translated as something like “Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things.”

(See also: dream)

Bible References:

- [Acts 09:10-12](#)
- [Acts 10:3-6](#)
- [Acts 10:9-12](#)
- [Acts 12:9-10](#)
- [Luke 01:21-23](#)
- [Luke 24:22-24](#)
- [Matthew 17:9-10](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2376, H2377, H2378, H2380, H2384, H4236, H4758, H4759, H7203, H7723, H8602, G3701, G3705, G3706

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 9:29-31](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32:32-33](#)

walk, walks, walked, walking

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [honor](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 Kings 02:1-4](#)
- [Colossians 02:6-7](#)
- [Galatians 05:25-26](#)
- [Genesis 17:1-2](#)
- [Isaiah 02:5-6](#)
- [Jeremiah 13:8-11](#)
- [Micah 04:2-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1869, H1979, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, H4109, G1330, G1704, G3716, G4043, G4198, G4748

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 6:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 6:26-27
- 2 Chronicles 17:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 21:12-15
- 2 Chronicles 27:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 28:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 34:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 34:31-32

watchtower, watchtowers, tower

Definition:

The term “watchtower” refers to a tall structure built as a place from which guards could look out for any danger. These towers were often made of stone.

- Landowners sometimes built watchtowers from which they could guard their crops and protect them from being stolen.
- The towers often included rooms where the watchmen or family lived, so that they could guard the crops day and night.
- Watchtowers for cities were built higher than the city walls so that watchmen could see if any enemies were coming to attack the city.
- The term “watchtower” is also used as a symbol of protection from enemies. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [adversary](#), watch)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:25-27
- [Ezekiel 26:3-4](#)
- [Mark 12:1-3](#)
- [Matthew 21:33-34](#)
- [Psalm 062:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H803, H969, H971, H975, H1785, H2918, H4024, H4026, H4029, H4692, H4707, H4869, H6076, H6438, H6836, H6844, G4444

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 14:7-8](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26:9-10](#)
- [2 Chronicles 27:3-4](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32:5](#)

water, waters, watered, watering

Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: [life](#), [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [power](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 08:36-38](#)
- [Exodus 14:21-22](#)
- [John 04:9-10](#)
- [John 04:13-14](#)
- [John 04:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 14:28-30](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2222, H4325, H4529, H4857, H7301, H7783, H8248, G504, G4215, G4222, G5202, G5204

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 32:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 32:30-31

wheat

Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: [barley](#), [chaff](#), [grain](#), [seed](#), [thresh](#), [winnow](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 27:36-38](#)
- [Exodus 34:21-22](#)
- [John 12:23-24](#)
- [Luke 03:17](#)
- [Matthew 03:10-12](#)
- [Matthew 13:24-26](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H2406, G4621

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 2:8-10](#)
- [2 Chronicles 27:5](#)

will of God

Definition:

The “will of God” refers to God’s desires and plans.

- God’s will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
- It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
- The term to “will” means to “determine” or to “desire.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The “will of God” could also be translated as “what God desires” or “what God has planned” or “God’s purpose” or “what is pleasing to God.”

Bible References:

- [1 John 02:15-17](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 04:3-6](#)
- [Colossians 04:12-14](#)
- [Ephesians 01:1-2](#)
- [John 05:30-32](#)
- [Mark 03:33-35](#)
- [Matthew 06:8-10](#)
- [Psalms 103:20-22](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6310, H6634, H7522, G1012, G1013, G2307, G2308, G2309, G2596

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#)

wine, winepress, winepresses, wines, wineskin, wineskins, new wine**Definition:**

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: grape, [vine](#), [vineyard](#), winepress)

Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 05:23-25](#)
- [Genesis 09:20-21](#)
- [Genesis 49:11-12](#)
- [John 02:3-5](#)
- [John 02:9-10](#)
- [Matthew 09:17](#)
- [Matthew 11:18-19](#)

smashed

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G1098, G3631, G3820, G3943

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 2:8-10](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11:11-12](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31:4-5](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32:27-29](#)

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- In the Bible, the term “worldly wisdom” is a figurative way of referring to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: [obey](#), [fruit](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 06:2-4](#)
- [Colossians 03:15-17](#)
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Genesis 03:4-6
- [Isaiah 19:11-12](#)
- [Jeremiah 18:18-20](#)
- [Matthew 07:24-25](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:05** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:01** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:09** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G4678, G4679, G4680, G4920, G5428, G5429, G5430

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 01 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 1:8-11
- 2 Chronicles 2:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 09 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 9:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 9:22-24
- 2 Chronicles 10 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 11:22-23

word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, scripture, scriptures

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term “word of truth” is another way of referring to “God’s word,” which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

- God’s word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
- This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God’s word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God’s word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.”
- “Word of truth” could be translated as “God’s true message” or “God’s word, which is true.”
- It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: [prophet](#), [true](#), [word](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:1-3
- 1 Kings 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- Luke 08:11-13
- John 05:39-40
- Acts 06:2-4
- Acts 12:24-25
- Romans 01:1-3
- 2 Corinthians 06:4-7
- Ephesians 01:13-14
- 2 Timothy 03:16-17
- James 01:17-18
- James 02:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:07** In **God's word** he commands his people, 'Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.'
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, 'The seed is the **word of God**.'
- **42:03** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:07** Jesus said, 'I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled.' Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 11:2-4
- 2 Chronicles 12:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 29:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 30:10-12
- 2 Chronicles 35:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 36:20-21

word, words

Definition:

A “word” refers to something that someone has said.

- An example of this would be when the angel told Zechariah, “You did not believe my words,” which means, “You did not believe what I said.”
- This term almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.
- Sometimes “word” refers to speech in general, such as “powerful in word and deed” which means “powerful in speech and behavior.”
- Often in the Bible “the word” refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in “the word of God” or “the word of truth.”
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called “the Word.” For these last two meanings, see [word of God](#)

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways of translating “word” or “words” include “teaching” or “message” or “news” or “a saying” or “what was said.”

(See also: [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 04:1-2](#)
- [Acts 08:4-5](#)
- [Colossians 04:2-4](#)
- [James 01:17-18](#)
- [Jeremiah 27:1-4](#)
- [John 01:1-3](#)
- [John 01:14-15](#)
- [Luke 08:14-15](#)
- [Matthew 02:7-8](#)
- [Matthew 07:26-27](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H561, H562, H565, H1697, H1703, H3983, H4405, H4406, H6310, H6600, G518, G1024, G3050, G3054, G3055, G3056, G4086, G4487, G4935, G5023, G5542

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 6:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 9:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 10:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 32:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 34:26-28
- 2 Chronicles 35:22
- 2 Chronicles 36:15-16

works, deeds, work, acts

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “works,” “deeds,” and “acts” are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- The term “work” refers to doing labor or anything that is done to serve other people.
- God’s “works” and the “work of his hands” are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms “deeds” and “acts” are also used to refer to God’s miracles in expressions such as “mighty acts” or “marvelous deeds.”
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called “good fruit.”
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- A person’s “work” can be what he does to earn a living or to serve God. The Bible also refers to God as “working.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” or “deeds” could be “actions” or “things that are done.”
- When referring to God’s “works” or “deeds” and the “work of his hands,” these expressions could also be translated as “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “amazing things he does.”
- The expression “the work of God” could be translated as “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “the amazing things that God does” or “everything God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- The term “work” can also have the broader meaning of “service” or “ministry.” For example, the expression “your work in the Lord” could also be translated as, “what you do for the Lord.”
- The expression “examine your own work” could also be translated as “make sure what you are doing is God’s will” or “make sure that what you are doing pleases God.”
- The expression “the work of the Holy Spirit” could be translated as “the empowering of the Holy Spirit” or “the ministry of the Holy Spirit” or “the things that the Holy Spirit does.”

(See also: [fruit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 03:11-12](#)
- [Acts 02:8-11](#)
- [Daniel 04:36-37](#)
- [Exodus 34:10-11](#)

- Galatians 02:15-16
- James 02:14-17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 02:6-8
- Romans 03:27-28
- Titus 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G2041

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 2:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 2:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 4:11-13
- 2 Chronicles 5:1
- 2 Chronicles 8:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 10:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 13:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 15:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 16:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 16:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 19:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 22 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 24:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 25:16
- 2 Chronicles 28:26-27
- 2 Chronicles 29:34
- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 32:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 34:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 35:26
- 2 Chronicles 36 General Notes

worship

Definition:

To “worship” means to honor, praise and obey someone, especially God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- Some people worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [praise](#), [honor](#))

Bible References:

- [Colossians 02:18-19](#)
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19
- Exodus 03:11-12
- [Luke 04:5-7](#)
- [Matthew 02:1-3](#)
- [Matthew 02:7-8](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.” ***14:02** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things. ***17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices. ***18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols. ***25:07** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’” ***26:02** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**. ***47:01** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God. ***49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G1391, G1479, G2151, G2318, G2323, G2356, G3000, G3511, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 7:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 7:19-20
- 2 Chronicles 7:21-22
- 2 Chronicles 20:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 24:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 29:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 29:27-28
- 2 Chronicles 30:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 32:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 33:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 34:33
- 2 Chronicles 35:3-4

worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

Definition:

The term “worthy” describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To “have worth” means to be valuable or important. The term “worthless” means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term “unworthy” and the term “worthless” have related, but different meanings. To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be “worthless” means to not have any purpose or value.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Worthy” could be translated as “deserving” or “important” or “valuable.”
- The word “worth” could be translated as “value” or “importance.”
- The phrase to “have worth” could also be translated as to “be valuable” or to “be important.”
- The phrase “is worth more than” could be translated as “is more valuable than.”
- Depending on the context, the term, “unworthy” could also be translated as “unimportant” or “dishonorable” or “undeserving.”
- The term “worthless” could be translated as “with no value” or “with no purpose” or “worth nothing.”

(See also: [honor](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 22:3-4
- [2 Thessalonians 01:11-12](#)
- [Acts 13:23-25](#)
- [Acts 25:25-27](#)
- [Acts 26:30-32](#)
- [Colossians 01:9-10](#)
- [Jeremiah 08:18-19](#)
- [Mark 01:7-8](#)
- [Matthew 03:10-12](#)
- [Philippians 01:25-27](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H639, H1929, H3644, H4242, H4373, H4392, H4592, H4941, H6994, H7939, G514, G515, G516, G2425, G2661, G2735

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 13:6-7](#)

wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. It especially refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.

- In the Bible, "wrath" usually refers to God's anger toward those who sin against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage. God's wrath is just and holy.

(See also: [judge](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 01:8-10](#)
- [1 Timothy 02:8-10](#)
- [Luke 03:7](#)
- [Luke 21:23-24](#)
- [Matthew 03:7-9](#)
- [Revelation 14:9-10](#)
- [Romans 01:18-19](#)
- [Romans 05:8-9](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G2372, G3709, G3949, G3950

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 28:9-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29:8-9](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36:15-16](#)

written

Definition:

The phrase “as it is written” or “what is written” occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes “as it is written” refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated “as it is written in the Law of Moses” or “as the prophets wrote long ago” or “what it says in God’s laws that Moses wrote down long ago”.
- Another option is to keep “It is written” and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: [command](#), [law](#), [prophet](#), [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 05:13-15](#)
- [Acts 13:28-29](#)
- [Exodus 32:15-16](#)
- [John 21:24-25](#)
- [Luke 03:4](#)
- [Mark 09:11-13](#)
- [Matthew 04:5-6](#)
- [Revelation 01:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3789, H7559, G1125

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 9:29-31](#)
- [2 Chronicles 16:11-12](#)
- [2 Chronicles 28:26-27](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30:18-20](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31:2-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32:32-33](#)
- [2 Chronicles 34:20-21](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35:3-4](#)

Yahweh

Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name that he revealed when he spoke to Moses at the burning bush.

- The name “Yahweh” comes from the word that means, to “be” or to “exist.”
- Possible meanings of “Yahweh” include, “he is” or “I am” or “the one who causes to be.”
- This name reveals that God has always lived and will continue to live forever. It also means that he is always present.
- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULB and UDB texts always translates this term as, “Yahweh,” as it literally occurs in the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” does not ever occur in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even in quotes from the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.
- By adding the pronoun “I” or “me,” the ULB indicates to the reader that God is the speaker.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [Lord](#), [Moses](#), [reveal](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:19-20
- 1 Samuel 16:6-7
- Daniel 09:3-4
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 02:4-6
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 28:12-13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:3-4
- Isaiah 38:7-8
- Job 12:9-10
- Joshua 01:8-9
- Lamentations 01:4-5
- Leviticus 25:35-38
- Malachi 03:4-5
- Micah 02:3-5
- Micah 06:3-5
- Numbers 08:9-11
- Psalm 124:1-3
- Ruth 01:19-21
- Zechariah 14:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:14** God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **13:05** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 1:1

- 2 Chronicles 2:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 4:14-16
- 2 Chronicles 5:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 6:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 7:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 7:21-22
- 2 Chronicles 8:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 9:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 10:15
- 2 Chronicles 11:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 14:1-4
- 2 Chronicles 15:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 16:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 16:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 17:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 17:14-16
- 2 Chronicles 18:12-14
- 2 Chronicles 18:31-32
- 2 Chronicles 19:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 20:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 20:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 21:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 21:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 22:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 23:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 23:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 24:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 25:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 25:27-28
- 2 Chronicles 26:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 26:16-18
- 2 Chronicles 27:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 27:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 28:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 28:19-21
- 2 Chronicles 29:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 31:16
- 2 Chronicles 32:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 32:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 33:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 33:10-11

- 2 Chronicles 34:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 34:23-25
- 2 Chronicles 35:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 35:10-12
- 2 Chronicles 36:5-7
- 2 Chronicles 36:15-16

year, years

Definition:

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into 12 months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has 12 months. But an extra 13th month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is 11 days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: month)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:31-33
- Acts 19:8-10
- Daniel 08:1-2
- Exodus 12:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H7620, H7657, H8140, H8141, G1763, G2094

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 17:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 29:3-5

yoke, yokes, yoked

Definition:

A yoke is a piece of wood or metal attached to two or more animals to connect them for the purpose of pulling a plow or a cart. There are also several figurative meanings for this term.

- The term “yoke” is used figuratively to refer to something that joins people for the purpose of working together, such as in serving Jesus.
- Paul used the term “yokefellow” to refer to someone who was serving Christ as he was. This could also be translated as “fellow worker” or “fellow servant” or “coworker.”
- The term “yoke” is also often used figuratively to refer to a heavy load that someone has to carry, such as when being oppressed by slavery or persecution.
- In most contexts, it is best to translate this term literally, using the local term for a yoke that is used for farming.
- Other ways to translate the figurative use of this term could be, “oppressive burden” or “heavy load” or “bond,” depending on the context.

(See also: bind, burden, [oppress](#), persecute, [servant](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 15:10-11](#)
- [Galatians 05:1-2](#)
- [Genesis 27:39-40](#)
- [Isaiah 09:4-5](#)
- [Jeremiah 27:1-4](#)
- [Matthew 11:28-30](#)
- [Philippians 04:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3627, H4132, H4133, H5674, H5923, H6776, G2086, G2201, G2218, G4805

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 10:3-5](#)

Zadok

Facts:

Zadok was the name of an important high priest in Israel during the reign of King David.

- When Absalom rebelled against King David, Zadok supported David and helped bring the ark of the covenant back into Jerusalem.
- Years later, he also took part in the ceremony to anoint David's son Solomon as king.
- Two different men by the name of Zadok helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem during Nehemiah's time.
- Zadok was also the name of King Jotham's grandfather.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [David](#), [Jotham](#), [Nehemiah](#), [reign](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 24:1-3
- 1 Kings 01:26-27
- 2 Samuel 15:24-26
- [Matthew 01:12-14](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6659, G4524

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 27:1-2](#)
- [2 Chronicles 31:9-10](#)

Zebulun

Facts:

Zebulun was the last son born to Jacob and Leah and is the name of one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The Israelite tribe of Zebulun was given the land directly west of the Salt Sea.
- Sometimes the name “Zebulun” is also used to refer to the land where this Israelite tribe lived.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Leah](#), [Salt Sea](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Exodus 01:1-5
- Genesis 30:19-21
- [Isaiah 09:1-2](#)
- Judges 04:10
- [Matthew 04:12-13](#)
- [Matthew 04:14-16](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2074, H2075, G2194

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 30:10-12](#)

Zechariah (OT)

Facts:

Zechariah was a prophet who prophesied during the reign of King Darius I of Persia. The Old Testament book of Zechariah contains his prophecies, which urged the returning exiles to rebuild the temple.

- The prophet Zechariah lived during the same time period as Ezra, Nehemiah, Zerubbabel and Haggai. He was also mentioned by Jesus as the last of the prophets who were murdered during Old Testament times.
- Another man named Zechariah was a gatekeeper at the temple during the time of David.
- One of King Jehoshaphat's sons who was named Zechariah was murdered by his brother Jehoram.
- Zechariah was the name of a priest who was stoned by the people of Israel when he rebuked them for their idol worship.
- King Zechariah was the son of Jeroboam and he reigned over Israel for only six months before being murdered.

(Translation Suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Darius, Ezra, [Jehoshaphat](#), [Jeroboam](#), Nehemiah, Zerubbabel)

Bible References:

- [Ezra 05:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 23:34-36](#)
- [Zechariah 01:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2148

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 20:14-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 26:4-5](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29:1-2](#)

Zedekiah

Facts:

Zedekiah, son of Josiah, was the last king of Judah (597-587 B.C.). There are also several other men named Zedekiah in the Old Testament.

- King Nebuchadnezzar made Zedekiah king of Judah after capturing King Jehoiachin and taking him away to Babylon. Zedekiah later rebelled and as a result Nebuchadnezzar captured him and destroyed all of Jerusalem.
- Zedekiah, son of Kenaanah, was a false prophet during the time of King Ahab of Israel.
- A man named Zedekiah was one of those who signed an agreement to the Lord during the time of Nehemiah.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Ahab](#), [Babylon](#), [Ezekiel](#), [kingdom of Israel](#), [Jehoiachin](#), [Jeremiah](#), [Josiah](#), [Judah](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#), [Nehemiah](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:15-16
- [Jeremiah 37:1-2](#)
- [Jeremiah 39:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6667

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 18:9-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18:23-24](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36:9-10](#)

Zion, Mount Zion

Definition:

Originally, the term “Zion” or “Mount Zion” referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, “Zion” and “Mount Zion” became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: [metonymy](#))
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the “City of David.” This is different from David’s hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term “Zion” is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God’s spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [David](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Bethlehem](#), [Jebusites](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:4-6
- [Amos 01:1-2](#)
- [Jeremiah 51:34-35](#)
- [Psalm 076:1-3](#)
- [Romans 11:26-27](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6726### Uses:
- [2 Chronicles 5:2-3](#)

translationAcademy

Abstract Nouns

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, injury, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it. For example, "What is its weight?" could be expressed as "How much does it weigh?" or "How heavy is it?"

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **Abstract Nouns** are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, and weight.

Using abstract nouns allows people to express thoughts about ideas in fewer words than if they did not have those nouns. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people can talk about them as though they were things. It is like a short-cut in language. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But if the language did not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," then they would have to make a longer sentence to express the same meaning. They would have to say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun.

Examples from the Bible

...from childhood you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But godliness with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun..

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.
 - **... from childhood you have known the sacred writings ...** (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)
 - Ever since you were a child you have known the sacred writings.
 - **But godliness with contentment is great gain.** (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)
 - But being godly and content is very beneficial.
 - But we benefit greatly when we are godly and content.
 - But we benefit greatly when we honor and obey God and when we are happy with what we have.
 - **Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham.** (Luke 19:9 ULB)
 - Today the people in this house have been saved...
 - Today God has saved the people in this house...
 - **The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be.** (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

- The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider moving slowly to be.
- **He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart.** (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)
 - He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 1:8-11
- 2 Chronicles 1:8-11
- 2 Chronicles 1:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 1:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 2:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 2:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 5:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 6:24-25
- 2 Chronicles 6:40-42
- 2 Chronicles 7:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 7:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 9:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 13:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 13:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 17:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 17:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 19:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 19:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 19:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 19:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 19:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 19:10
- 2 Chronicles 20:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 20:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 20:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 22:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 24:23-24
- 2 Chronicles 25:27-28
- 2 Chronicles 28:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 28:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 29:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 29:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 29:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 30:7-9

- 2 Chronicles 32:1
- 2 Chronicles 32:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 34:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 35:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 35:16-17

Active or Passive

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

Some languages have both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- **ACTIVE:** My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not have passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- **ACTIVE:** My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built by my father in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages have active forms. Some languages have passive forms, and some do not. The passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that have it.

Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.

- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants were killed, and your servant Uriah the Hittite was killed too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULB)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal was broken down ... (Judges 6:28 ULB)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULB)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

- **A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)

- The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like “they” or “people” or “someone.”
- **It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea.** (Luke 17:2 ULB)
 - It would be better for him if they were to put a millstone around his neck and throw him into the sea.
 - It would be better for him if someone were to put a heavy stone around his neck and throw him into the sea.
3. Use a different verb in an active sentence.
- **A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
 - He received a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 1:1
- 2 Chronicles 1:2
- 2 Chronicles 1:8-11
- 2 Chronicles 2:17-18
- 2 Chronicles 4:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 4:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 4:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 4:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 4:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 4:17-18
- 2 Chronicles 4:19-21
- 2 Chronicles 4:19-21
- 2 Chronicles 4:22
- 2 Chronicles 4:22
- 2 Chronicles 5:1
- 2 Chronicles 5:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 5:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 5:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 5:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 6:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 6:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 6:24-25
- 2 Chronicles 6:28-31
- 2 Chronicles 6:32-33

- 2 Chronicles 6:36-39
- 2 Chronicles 6:40-42
- 2 Chronicles 6:40-42
- 2 Chronicles 7:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 8:16
- 2 Chronicles 8:16
- 2 Chronicles 8:16
- 2 Chronicles 8:16
- 2 Chronicles 9:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 9:9
- 2 Chronicles 9:10
- 2 Chronicles 9:19-21
- 2 Chronicles 10:15
- 2 Chronicles 12:1
- 2 Chronicles 12:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 12:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 13:16-18
- 2 Chronicles 13:19-22
- 2 Chronicles 14:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 15:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 15:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 15:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 15:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 15:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 15:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 16:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 16:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 17:14-16
- 2 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 18:33-34
- 2 Chronicles 19:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 19:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 19:10
- 2 Chronicles 19:10
- 2 Chronicles 20:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 20:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 20:31-33
- 2 Chronicles 20:34
- 2 Chronicles 20:35-37
- 2 Chronicles 22:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 23:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 23:14-15

- 2 Chronicles 24:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 25:20-22
- 2 Chronicles 26:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 26:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 27:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 28:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 28:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 28:26-27
- 2 Chronicles 29:22-24
- 2 Chronicles 29:27-28
- 2 Chronicles 29:34
- 2 Chronicles 29:35-36
- 2 Chronicles 29:35-36
- 2 Chronicles 29:35-36
- 2 Chronicles 30:25-27
- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 31:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 31:11-13
- 2 Chronicles 31:16
- 2 Chronicles 31:16
- 2 Chronicles 31:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 31:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 32:24-26
- 2 Chronicles 32:24-26
- 2 Chronicles 32:30-31
- 2 Chronicles 33:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 33:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 33:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 34:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 34:14-16
- 2 Chronicles 34:14-16
- 2 Chronicles 34:14-16
- 2 Chronicles 34:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 34:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 34:23-25
- 2 Chronicles 34:23-25
- 2 Chronicles 34:26-28
- 2 Chronicles 34:29-30
- 2 Chronicles 34:31-32
- 2 Chronicles 34:31-32
- 2 Chronicles 35:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 35:10-12

- 2 Chronicles 35:15
- 2 Chronicles 35:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 35:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 35:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 35:26
- 2 Chronicles 35:26
- 2 Chronicles 35:26
- 2 Chronicles 36:8
- 2 Chronicles 36:8
- 2 Chronicles 36:22-23

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

- **Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker gives the audience information in two ways:
- **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
- **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly is **implicit information**.

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (**assumed knowledge**) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, you can include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULB)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here “I am the Son of Man” but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

- **Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:20 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.
 - Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes to live in, and the birds of the sky have nests to live in, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."
- **it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.
 - ... it will be more tolerable for those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked, at the day of judgment than for you
 - ◇ Or:
 - ... it will be more tolerable for those wicked cities Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you
- **Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat.** (Matthew 15:2 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.
 - Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness when they eat.

2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

- **Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULB) - Implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.
 - Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live."
- **it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULB) - Implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.
 - At the day of judgment, God will punish Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked, less severely than he will punish you

- At the day of judgment, God will punish you more severely than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.### Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 4:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 5:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 6:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 6:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 6:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 6:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 6:24-25
- 2 Chronicles 6:32-33
- 2 Chronicles 7:7
- 2 Chronicles 7:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 7:16-18
- 2 Chronicles 8:11
- 2 Chronicles 8:17-18
- 2 Chronicles 9:17-18
- 2 Chronicles 9:19-21
- 2 Chronicles 10:16
- 2 Chronicles 11:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 12:2-4
- 2 Chronicles 13:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 13:12
- 2 Chronicles 13:19-22
- 2 Chronicles 14:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 14:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 15:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 15:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 16:1
- 2 Chronicles 16:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 16:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 16:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 16:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 17:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 17:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 17:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 18:1-3

- 2 Chronicles 18:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 18:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 18:12-14
- 2 Chronicles 18:17-18
- 2 Chronicles 18:23-24
- 2 Chronicles 20:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 20:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 20:27-28
- 2 Chronicles 20:31-33
- 2 Chronicles 21:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 21:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 21:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 22:9
- 2 Chronicles 22:10-12
- 2 Chronicles 23:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 23:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 23:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 23:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 23:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 23:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 24:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 24:23-24
- 2 Chronicles 26:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 28:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 28:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 28:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 28:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 28:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 29:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 29:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 29:29-30
- 2 Chronicles 29:34
- 2 Chronicles 30:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 30:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 30:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 30:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 30:25-27
- 2 Chronicles 30:25-27
- 2 Chronicles 30:25-27
- 2 Chronicles 31:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 33:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 33:4-6

- 2 Chronicles 33:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 34:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 34:31-32
- 2 Chronicles 34:33
- 2 Chronicles 35:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 35:20-21

Background Information

This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called **background information**. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

Example - The underlined sentences in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because their village was going to have a a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day! They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope they had brought with them, and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are "their village was going to have a feast the next day" and "He once killed three wild pigs in one day," "that they had brought with them," and "Peter had mistakenly killed his cousins's pig."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were", rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "Peter was the best hunter in the village" and "it was his own pig."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

A writer may use background information

- To help their listeners be interested in the story
- To help their listeners understand something in the story
- To help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- To tell the setting of a story
- Setting includes:
 - where the story takes place
 - when the story takes place
 - who is present when the story begins
 - what is happening when the story begins

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- Translators need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- Translators will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that their own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

Examples from the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULB)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story starts up again in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Now it happened on a Sabbath that Jesus was going through the grain fields and his disciples were picking the heads of grain, rubbing them between their hands, and eating the grain. But some of the Pharisees said... (Luke 6:1-2a ULB)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the sentence, "But some of the Pharisees said."

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kind of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

1. Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
2. Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULB English translations.

- **Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli.** (Luke 3:23 ULB) English uses the word "now" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.
- **With many other exhortations also, he preached good news to the people. John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.** (Luke 3:18-20 ULB) The underlined phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

- **Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram.** (Genesis 16:16 ULB)
 - "When Abram was eighty-six years old, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."
- **John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.** (Luke 3:18-20) - The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.
 - "Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 18:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 22:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32:9-10](#)

Biblical Distance

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?*

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man's hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man's hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man's forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **"long" cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as "furlong", which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Metric Measure
handbreadth	8 centimeters
span	23 centimeters
cubit	46 centimeters
"long" cubit	54 centimeters
stadia	185 meters

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as ".46 meters" or even as "46 centimeters," readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say "half a meter," "45 centimeters," or "50 centimeters."
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word "about" to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was sixty stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as "about ten kilometers" from Jerusalem.
6. When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use "about" in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see Copy or Borrow Words)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

- **They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half.** (Exodus 25:10 ULB)
- Use the measurements given in the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see Copy or Borrow Words)
 - "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half."
- Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
 - "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be one meter; its width will be two thirds of a meter; and its height will be two thirds of a meter."
- Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard foot length, you could translate it as below.
 - "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be 3 3/4 feet; its width will be 2 1/4 feet; and its height will be 2 1/4 feet."
- Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.
 - "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits (one meter); its width will be one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter); and its height will be one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)."

- Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULB measurements in notes.
 - "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be one meter¹; its width will be two thirds of a meter ²; and its height will be two thirds of a meter." The footnotes would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1] two and a half cubits
 - ◇ ^[2] one cubit and a half

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 3:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 3:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 3:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 3:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 3:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 4:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 4:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 6:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 25:23-24

Biblical Money

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?*

Description:

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals such as silver and gold and would give a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight	daric	gold coin	8.4 grams	shekel
various metals		11 grams	talent	various metals	33 kilograms	

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage	denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day	mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days	talent	silver	6,000 days

Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see [Biblical Weight](#). The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (see Copy or Borrow Words)
2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a note.
5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a note.

Translation Strategies

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

- **The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii.** (Luke 7:41 ULB)
- Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (see Copy or Borrow Words)
 - "The one owed five hundred denali, and the other owed fifty denali." (Luke 7:41 ULB)
- Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.
 - "The one owed five hundred silver coins, and the other owed fifty silver coins." (Luke 7:41 ULB)
- Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
 - "The one owed five hundred days' wages, and the other owed fifty days' wages."
- Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.
 - "The one owed five hundred denarii¹, and the other owed fifty denarii.²" (Luke 7:41 ULB) The footnotes would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1] five hundred days's wages
 - ◇ ^[2] fifty day's wages
- Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.
 - "The one owed five hundred denarii¹, and the other owed fifty denarii." (Luke 7:41 ULB)
 - ◇ ^[1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 3:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 3:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 36:3-4

Biblical Volume

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the measures of volume that are in the Bible?*

Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Type	Original Measure	Liters	———	———	———	Dry	omer	2 liters	Dry	ephah	22 liters	Dry	homer	220 liters	Dry	cor	220 liters	Dry	seah	7.7 liters	Dry	letheh	114.8 liters	Liquid	metrete	40 liters	Liquid	bath	22 liters	Liquid	hin	3.7 liters	Liquid	kab	1.23 liters	Liquid	log	0.31 liters
------	------------------	--------	-----	-----	-----	-----	------	----------	-----	-------	-----------	-----	-------	------------	-----	-----	------------	-----	------	------------	-----	--------	--------------	--------	---------	-----------	--------	------	-----------	--------	-----	------------	--------	-----	-------------	--------	-----	-------------

Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.
- If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as “3.7 liters,” readers might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as “three and a half liters” or “four liters.”
- When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.

When the unit of measure is stated

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see Copy or Borrow Words)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

- **For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah.** (Isaiah 5:10 ULB)
- Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see Copy or Borrow Words)
 - "For four hektares of vineyard will yield only one bat, and one homer of seed will yield only an efa."
- Use the measurements given in the UDB. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
 - "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters, and ten baskets of seed will yield only one basket."
 - ◇ "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters and 220 liters of seed will yield only twenty-two liters."
- Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
 - "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only six gallons, and six and a half bushels of seed will yield only twenty quarts."
- Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.
 - "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one bath (six gallons), and one homer (six and a half bushels) of seed will yield only an ephah (twenty quarts)."
- Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULB measurements in footnotes.
 - "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters¹, and 220 liters² of seed will yield only twenty-two liters³." The footnotes would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]one bath

- ◇ ^[2]one homer
- ◇ ^[3]one ephah

When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULB and UDB, add the word “measure.”

- **whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty measures of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty.** (Haggai 2:16 ULB)

Translation Strategies

1. Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
2. Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”
3. Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
4. Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

- **whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty measures of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty.** (Haggai 2:16 ULB)
- Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
 - whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty of wine, there were only twenty.
- Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”
 - whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty amounts of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty amounts of wine, there were only twenty.
- Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
 - whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty baskets of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty jars of wine, there were only twenty.
- Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.
 - whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty liters of grain, there were only ten liters, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty liters of wine, there were only twenty liters.

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 2:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 2:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 4:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 27:5
- 2 Chronicles 27:5

Biblical Weight

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of weight in the Bible?*

Description

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term “shekel” means “weight,” and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Shekels	Grams	Kilograms
1 shekel	11 grams	-	-
bekah	1/2 shekel	5.7 grams	-
pim	2/3 shekel	7.6 grams	-
gerah	1/20 shekel	0.57 grams	-
mina	50 shekels	550 grams	1/2 kilogram
talent	3,000 shekels	-	34 kilograms

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as “.57 grams” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a gram.”
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath’s spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as “3300 grams” or “3.3 kilograms,” it can be translated as “about three and one half kilograms.”
6. When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see Copy or Borrow Words)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

- **The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents and 2,400 shekels.** (Exodus 38:29 ULB)
 - Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see Copy or Borrow Words)
 - "The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents and 2,400 shekels."
 - Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
 - "The bronze from the offering weighed 2,400 kilograms."
 - Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
 - "The bronze from the offering weighed 5,300 pounds."
 - Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.
 - "The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents (2,380 kilograms) and 2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms)."
 - Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULB measurements in notes.
 - "The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents and 2,400 shekels.¹"
 - ◇ The footnote would look like:
 - ^[1] This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.### Uses:
 - 2 Chronicles 1:16-17
 - 2 Chronicles 8:17-18
 - 2 Chronicles 9:9
 - 2 Chronicles 9:13-14

- 2 Chronicles 9:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 9:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 25:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 25:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 27:5

Connecting Words

This page answers the question: *What are connecting words for, and how do I translate them?*

Description

Connecting words show how thoughts are related to other thoughts. They are also called **conjunctions**. This page is about connecting words that connect statements and groups of statements to others. Some examples of connecting words are: and, but, for, so, therefore, now, if, if only, since, then, when, while, whenever, because, yet, unless.

- It was raining, so I opened my umbrella.
- It was raining, but I did not have an umbrella. So I got very wet.

Sometimes people might not use a connecting word because they expect the readers to understand the relationship between the thoughts because of the context.

- It was raining. I did not have an umbrella. I got very wet.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Translators need to understand the meaning of a connecting word in the Bible and the relationship between the thoughts it is connecting.
- Each language has its own ways of showing how thoughts are related.
- Translators need to know how to help their readers understand the relationship between the thoughts in a way that is natural in their language.

Translation Principles

- Translators need to translate in a way that readers can understand the same relationship between thoughts that the original readers would have understood.
- Whether or not a connecting word is used is not as important as readers being able to understand the relationship between the ideas.

Examples from the Bible

I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me, but instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. Then after three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days. (Galatians 1:16-18 ULB)

The word “but” introduces something that contrasts with what was said before. The contrast here is between what Paul did not do with what he did do. Here the word “then” introduces something Paul did after he returned to Damascus.

Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. But whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. (Matthew 5:19 ULB)

The word “Therefore” links this section with the section before it, signalling that the section that came before gave the reason for this section. “Therefore” usually links sections larger than one sentence. The word “and” links only two actions within the same sentence, that of breaking commandments and teaching others. In this verse the word “But” contrasts what one group of people will be called in God’s kingdom with what another group of people will be called.

We do not place a stumbling block in front of anyone, for we do not wish our ministry to be brought into disrepute. Instead, we prove ourselves by all our actions, that we are God’s servants. (2 Corinthians 6:3-4 ULB)

Here the word “for” connects what follows as the reason for what came before; the reason that Paul does not place stumbling blocks is that he does not want his ministry brought into disrepute. “Instead” contrasts what Paul does (proving by his actions that he is God’s servant) with what he said he does not do (placing stumbling blocks).

Translation Strategies

If the way the relationship between thoughts is shown in the ULB would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, then consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use a connecting word (even if the ULB does not use one).
2. Do not use a connecting word if it would be odd to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.
3. Use a different connecting word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Use a connecting word (even if the ULB does not use one).

- **Jesus said to them, “Come after me, and I will make you become fishers of men.” Immediately they left the nets and went after him.** (Mark 1:17-18 ULB) - They followed Jesus because he told them to. Some translators may want to mark this with “so.”
 - Jesus said to them, “Come after me, and I will make you become fishers of men.” So immediately they left the nets and went after him.

2) Do not use a connecting word if it would be odd to use one and people would understand the right relationship between the thoughts without it.

- **Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. But whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.** (Matthew 5:19 ULB) -

Some languages would prefer not to use connecting words here, because the meaning is clear without them and using them would be unnatural. They might translate like this:

- Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments, teaching others to do so as well, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. Whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.
- **I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me, but instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. Then after three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days.** (Galatians 1:16-18 ULB) -

Some languages might not need the words “but” or “then” here.

- I did not immediately consult with flesh and blood, nor did I go up to Jerusalem to those who had become apostles before me. Instead I went to Arabia and then returned to Damascus. After three years I went up to Jerusalem to visit Cephas, and I stayed with him fifteen days.

3) Use a different connecting word.

- **Therefore whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. But whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.** (Matthew 5:19 ULB) Instead of a word like “therefore,” a language might need a phrase to indicate that there was a section before it that gave the reason for the section that follows. Also, the word “but” is used here because of the contrast between the two groups of people. But in some languages, the word “but” would show that what comes after it is surprising because of what came before it. So “and” might be clearer for those languages.
 - Because of that, whoever breaks the least one of these commandments and teaches others to do so, will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. And whoever keeps them and teaches them will be called great in the kingdom of heaven.
- **Since the captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.** (Acts 21:34 ULB) - Instead of starting the first part of the sentence with “since,” some translators might prefer to start the second part of the sentence with “so” to show the same relationship.
 - ”The captain could not tell anything because of all the noise, so he ordered that Paul be brought into the fortress.”

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 15:6-7](#)
- [2 Chronicles 32:5](#)

Distinguishing versus Informing or Reminding

This page answers the question: *When a phrase is used with a noun, what is the difference between phrases that distinguish the noun from others and phrases that simply inform or remind?*

Description

In some languages, phrases that modify a noun can be used with the noun for two different purposes. They can either distinguish the noun from other similar items, or they can give more information about the noun. That information could be new to the reader, or a reminder about something the reader might already know. Other languages use modifying phrases with a noun only for distinguishing the noun from other similar things. When people who speak these languages hear a modifying phrase with a noun, they assume that its function is to distinguish one item from another similar item.

Some languages use a comma to mark the difference between making a distinction between similar items and giving more information about an item. Without the comma, the sentence below communicates that it is making a distinction:

- Mary gave some of the food to her sister who was very thankful.
 - If her sister was usually thankful, the phrase “who was thankful” could **distinguish this sister** of Mary’s from another sister who was not usually thankful.

With the comma, the sentence is giving more information:

- Mary gave some of the food to her sister, who was very thankful.
 - This same phrase can be used give us more information about Mary’s sister. It tells us about **how Mary’s sister responded** when Mary gave her the food. In this case it does not distinguish one sister from another sister.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Many source languages of the Bible use phrases that modify a noun **both** for distinguishing the noun from another similar item **and also** for giving more information about the noun. The translator must be careful to understand which meaning the author intended in each case.
- Some languages use phrases that modify a noun **only** for distinguishing the noun from another similar item. When translating a phrase that is used for giving more information, people who speak these languages will need to separate the phrase from the noun. Otherwise, people who read it or hear it will think that the phrase is meant to distinguish the noun from other similar items.

Examples from the Bible

Examples of words and phrases that are used to distinguish one item from other possible items: These usually do not cause a problem in translation.

... The curtain is to separate the holy place from the most holy place. (Exodus 26:33 ULB)

The words “holy” and “most holy” distinguish two different places from each other and from any other place.

A foolish son is a grief to his father, and bitterness to the woman who bore him. (Proverbs 17:25 ULB)

The phrase “who bore him” distinguishes which woman the son is bitterness to. He is not bitterness to all women, but to his mother.

Examples of words and phrases that are used to give added information or a reminder about an item: These are a translation issue for languages that do not use these.

... for your righteous judgments are good. (Psalm 119:39 ULB)

The word “righteous” simply reminds us that God’s judgments are righteous. It does not distinguish his righteous judgements from his unrighteous judgements, because all of his judgments are righteous.

Can Sarah, who is ninety years old, bear a son? - (Genesis 17:17-18 ULB)

The phrase “who is ninety years old” is the reason that Abraham did not think that Sarah could bear a son. He was not distinguishing one woman named Sarah from another woman named Sarah who was a different age, and he was not telling anyone something new about her age. He simply did not think that a woman who was that old could bear a child.

I will wipe away mankind whom I have created from the surface of the earth. (Genesis 6:7 ULB)

The phrase “whom I have created” is a reminder of the relationship between God and mankind. It is the reason God had the right to wipe away mankind. There is not another mankind that God did not create.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the purpose of a phrase with a noun, then consider keeping the phrase and the noun together. For languages that use words or phrases with a noun only to distinguish one item from another, here are some strategies for translating phrases that are used to inform or remind.

1. Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.
2. Use one of your language’s ways for expressing that this is just added information. It may be by adding a small word, or by changing the way the voice sounds. Sometimes changes in the voice can be shown with punctuation marks, such as parentheses or commas.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Put the information in another part of the sentence and add words that show its purpose.
 - **I hate those who serve worthless idols** (Psalm 31:6 ULB) - By saying “worthless idols,” David was commenting about all idols and giving his reason for hating those who serve them. He was not distinguishing worthless idols from valuable idols.
 - Because idols are worthless, I hate those who serve them.
 - **... for your righteous judgments are good.** (Psalm 119:39 ULB)
 - ... for your judgments are good because they are righteous.
 - **Can Sarah, who is ninety years old, bear a son?** (Genesis 17:17-18 ULB) - The phrase “who is ninety years old” is a reminder of Sarah’s age. It tells why Abraham was asking the question. He did not expect that a woman who was that old could bear a child.
 - Can Sarah bear a son even when she is ninety years old?
 - **I will call on Yahweh, who is worthy to be praised** (2 Samuel 22:4 ULB) - There is only one Yahweh. The phrase “who is worthy to be praised” gives a reason for calling on Yahweh.
 - I will call on Yahweh, because he is worthy to be praised
2. Use one of your language’s ways for expressing that this is just added information.
 - **You are my Son, whom I love. I am pleased with you.** (Luke 3:22 ULB)
 - You are my Son. I love you and I am pleased with you.
 - Receiving my love, you are my Son. I am pleased with you.

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 7:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 7:21-22
- 2 Chronicles 8:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 9:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 30:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 30:21-22

Double Negatives

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not” such as the underlined parts of these words: “unhappy,” “impossible,” and “useless.”

A double negative occurs when a sentence has two words that each express the meaning of “not.”

It is not that we do not have authority... (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULB)

And this better confidence did not happen without the taking of an oath, ... (Hebrews 7:20 ULB.)

Be sure of this—wicked people will not go unpunished (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence *No ví a nadie* is literally, “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages, a second negative cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent.”
- In some languages the double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent.”
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative can create a positive sentence, and often strengthens the statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is intelligent” or “He is very intelligent.”

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know both what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples from the Bible

... so that they may not be unfruitful. (Titus 3:14 ULB)

This means “so that they will be fruitful.”

All things were made through him and without him there was not one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULB)

By using a double negative, John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything.

Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
2. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
 - **For we do not have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses.** (Hebrews 4:15 ULB)
 - “For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses.”
 - **... so that they may not be unfruitful.** (Titus 3:14 ULB)
 - “... so that they may be fruitful.”
2. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely.”
 - **Be sure of this—wicked people will not go unpunished ...** (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)
 - “Be sure of this—wicked people will certainly be punished ...”
 - **All things were made through him and without him there was not one thing made that has been made.** (John 1:3 ULB)
 - “All things were made through him. He made absolutely everything that has been made.”

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 6:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 9:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 23:18-19

Doublet

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or very short phrases that mean the same thing or very close to the same thing and that are used together. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Often they are used to emphasize or intensify the idea expressed by the two words.

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. In either case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples from the Bible

King David was old and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was “very old.”

... he attacked two men more righteous and better than himself ... (1 Kings 2:32 ULB)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

This means that they had prepared “many false things to say.”

... as of a lamb without blemish and without spot. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any blemish—not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using one. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate only one of the words.
 - **You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words** (Daniel 2:9 ULB)
 - "You have decided to prepare false things to say."
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."
 - **King David was old and advanced in years.** (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)
 - "King David was very old."
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.
 - **... a lamb without blemish and without spot...** (1 Peter 1:19 ULB) - English can emphasize this with "any" and "at all."
 - " ... a lamb without any blemish at all ..."

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 6:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 6:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 6:28-31
- 2 Chronicles 6:32-33
- 2 Chronicles 6:34-35
- 2 Chronicles 6:36-39
- 2 Chronicles 6:36-39
- 2 Chronicles 6:36-39
- 2 Chronicles 6:36-39
- 2 Chronicles 7:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 7:19-20
- 2 Chronicles 15:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 20:5-7
- 2 Chronicles 20:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 20:24
- 2 Chronicles 24:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 32:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 33:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 34:31-32
- 2 Chronicles 34:31-32
- 2 Chronicles 36:13-14

Ellipsis

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis?*

Description

Ellipsis is what happens when a speaker or writer leaves one or more words out of a sentence because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and fill in the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. The information that is omitted has usually already been stated in a preceding sentence or phrase.

... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5)

This is ellipsis because “sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause.

Reason this is a translation issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know what the missing information is if they do not use ellipsis in their language.

Examples from the Bible

... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, that I might receive my sight.” (Luke 18:40-41 ULB)

The man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him.

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox. (Psalm 29:6 ULB)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. He did not say that Yahweh makes Sirion skip like a young ox because he knew that his readers could fill in the information themselves.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

- **... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.** (Psalm 1:5)
 - ... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and sinners will not stand in the assembly of the righteous
- **... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, that I might receive my sight.”** (Luke 18:40-41)
 - ... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight.”
- **He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6)
 - He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox.

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 2:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 2:17-18
- 2 Chronicles 7:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 12:1
- 2 Chronicles 14:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 16:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 17:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 18:12-14
- 2 Chronicles 20:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 26:16-18
- 2 Chronicles 31:16
- 2 Chronicles 31:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 35:16-17

Euphemism

This page answers the question: *What is a Euphemism?*

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

Definition

... they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead”. It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples from the Bible

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself ... (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?”
(Luke 1:34 ULB)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

- **... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself.** (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
 - "...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to dig a hole"
 - "...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to have some time alone"
- **Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?"** (Luke 1:34 ULB)
 - Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since I do not know a man?" - (This is the euphemism used in the original Greek)

2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

- **they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa.** (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)
 - "they found Saul and his sons dead on Mount Gilboa."

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 9:29-31
- 2 Chronicles 12:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 14:1-4
- 2 Chronicles 14:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 16:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 18:19
- 2 Chronicles 21:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 25:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 26:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 26:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 27:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 28:26-27
- 2 Chronicles 32:32-33
- 2 Chronicles 33:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 34:26-28

Exclamations

This page answers the question: *What are ways of translating exclamations?*

Description

Exclamations are words or sentences that show strong feeling such as surprise, joy, fear, or anger. In the ULB and UDB, they usually have an exclamation mark (!) at the end. The mark shows that it is an exclamation. The situation and the meaning of what the people say helps us understand what feelings they were expressing. In the example below from Matthew 8, the speakers were terribly afraid. In the example from Matthew 9, the speakers were amazed, because something happened that they had never seen before.

Save us, Lord; we are about to die! (Matthew 8:25 ULB)

When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, "This has never been seen before in Israel!" (Matthew 9:33 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

Languages have different ways of showing that a sentence communicates strong emotion.

Examples from the Bible

Some exclamations have a word that shows feeling. The sentences below have "Oh" and "Ah." The word "oh" here shows the speaker's amazement.

Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULB)

The word "Ah" below shows that Gideon was very frightened.

Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. Gideon said, "Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULB)

Some exclamations start with a question word such as "how" or "why," even though they are not questions. The sentence below shows that the speaker is amazed at how unsearchable God's judgments are.

How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33 ULB)

Some exclamations in the Bible do not have a main verb. The exclamation below shows that the speaker is disgusted with the person he is speaking to.

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22 ULB)

Translation Strategies

1. If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is “is” or “are.”
2. Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling.
3. Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
4. Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.
5. If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is “is” or “are.”
 - **You worthless person!** (Matthew 5:22 ULB)
 - “You are such a worthless person!”
 - **Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God!** (Romans 11:33 ULB)
 - “Oh, the riches of the wisdom and the knowledge of God are so deep!”
2. Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling. The word “wow” below shows that they were astonished. The expression “Oh no” shows that something terrible or frightening has happened.
 - **They were absolutely astonished, saying, “He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.”** (Mark 7:36 ULB)
 - “They were absolutely astonished, saying, “Wow! He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.” ”
 - **Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!** (Judges 6:22 ULB)
 - “**Oh no**, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”
3. Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
 - **Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!** (Judges 6:22 ULB)
 - Lord Yahweh, what will happen to me? For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”
 - Help, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!
4. Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.
 - **How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering!** (Romans 11:33 ULB)
 - “His judgements are so unsearchable and his ways are far beyond discovering!”
5. If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

- **Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. Gideon said, "Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"** (Judges 6:22 ULB)
 - "Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. He was terrified and said, "Ah, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULB)

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 9:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 9:7-8

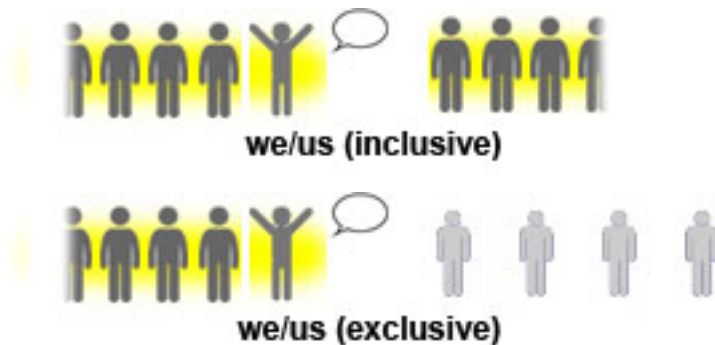
Exclusive and Inclusive “We”

This page answers the question: *What is exclusive and inclusive “we”?*

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we:” an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

They said, “We have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless we went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULB)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this “we” could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that “we” would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to us (1 John 1:2 ULB)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

... the shepherds said one to each other, “Let us now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULB)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us,” they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let us go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULB)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 18:12-14](#)

First, Second, or Third Person

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker referred to himself or to the person he was speaking to with a phrase other than “I” or “you.”

Description

- **First person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we.” (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- **Second person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- **Third person** - This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

Reason this is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker used the third person to refer to himself or to the people he was speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

Examples from the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “Your servant used to keep his father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULB)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
“... Do you have an arm like God’s? Can you thunder with a voice like him? (Job 40:6, 9 ULB)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “him.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look what I have done, taking it upon myself to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes! (Genesis 18:27 ULB)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive his brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULB)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
 - **But David said to Saul, “Your servant used to keep his father’s sheep.”** (1 Samuel 17:34)
 - But David said to Saul, “I, your servant, used to keep my father’s sheep.”
2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.
 - **Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like God’s? Can you thunder with a voice like him?”** (Job 40:6, 9 ULB)
 - Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like mine? Can you thunder with a voice like me?”
 - **So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive his brother from your heart.** (Matthew 18:35 ULB)
 - So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive your brother from your heart.

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 2:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 6:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 6:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 6:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 6:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 6:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 6:21
- 2 Chronicles 19:11
- 2 Chronicles 34:26-28

Generic Noun Phrases

This page answers the question: *What are generic noun phrases and how can I translate them?*

Description

Generic noun phrases refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things. This happens frequently in proverbs, because proverbs tell about things that are true about people in general.

Can a man walk on hot coals without scorching his feet?
 So is the man who goes into his neighbor's wife;
 the one who has relations with her will not go unpunished. (Proverbs 6:28 ULB)

The underlined phrases above do not refer to a specific man. They refer to any man who does these things.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of showing that noun phrases refer to something in general. Translators should refer to these general ideas in ways that are natural in their language.

Examples from the Bible

The one who does what is right is kept away from trouble and it comes upon the wicked instead. (Proverbs 11:8 ULB)

The underlined phrases above do not refer to any specific people but to anyone who does what is right or anyone who is wicked.

People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULB)

This does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who refuses to sell grain.

Yahweh gives favor to a good man, but he condemns a man who makes evil plans.
 (Proverbs 12:2 ULB)

The phrase "a good man" does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who is good. The phrase "a man who makes evil plans" does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who makes evil plans.

Translation Strategies

If your language can use the same wording as in the ULB to refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things, consider using the same wording. Here are some strategies you might use.

1. Use the word "the" in the noun phrase.

2. Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.
3. Use the word “any”, as in “any person” or “anyone.”
4. Use the plural form, as in “people.”
5. Use any other way that is natural in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.
 - **Yahweh gives favor to a good man, but he condemns a man who makes evil plans.** (Proverbs 12:2 ULB)
 - “Yahweh gives favor to the good man, but he condemns the man who makes evil plans.” (Proverbs 12:2)
2. Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.
 - **People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain.** (Proverbs 11:26 ULB)
 - “People curse a man who refuses to sell them grain”
3. Use the word “any, as in ”any person” or “anyone.”
 - **People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain.** (Proverbs 11:26 ULB)
 - “People curse any man who refuses to sell them grain.”
4. Use the plural form, as in “people” (or in this sentence, “men”).
 - **People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain.** (Proverbs 11:26 ULB)
 - “People curse men who refuse to sell them grain”
5. Use any other way that is natural in your language.
 - **People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain.** (Proverbs 11:26 ULB)
 - “People curse whoever refuses to sell them grain.”

Uses:

- **2 Chronicles 31:1**

Go and Come

This page answers the question: *What do I do if the word “go” or “come” is confusing in a certain sentence?*

Description

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words “go” or “come” and whether to use the words “take” or “bring” when talking about motion. For example, when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say “I’m coming,” while Spanish speakers say “I’m going.” You will need to translate the words “go” and “come” (and also “take” and “bring”) in a way that your readers will understand which direction people are moving in.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of talking about motion. The biblical languages or your source language may use the words “go” and “come” or “take” and “bring” differently than your language uses them. If these words are not translated in the way that is natural in your language, your readers may be confused about which direction people are moving.

Examples from the Bible

Yahweh said to Noah, “Come, you and all your household, into the ark (Genesis 7:1 ULB)

In some languages, this would lead people to think that Yahweh was in the ark.

But you will be free from my oath if you come to my relatives and they will not give her to you. Then you will be free from my oath. (Genesis 24:41 ULB)

Abraham was speaking to his servant. Abraham’s relatives lived far away, from where he and his servant were standing and he wanted his servant to go to them, not come toward Abraham.

When you have come to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ... (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULB)

Moses is speaking to the people in the wilderness. They had not yet gone into the land that God was giving them. In some languages, it would make more sense to say, “When you have gone into the land...”

Joseph and Mary brought him up to the temple in Jerusalem to present him to the Lord. (Luke 1:22 ULB)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that Joseph and Mary took or carried Jesus to the temple.

Behold, there came a man named Jairus, and he was one of the leaders of the synagogue. Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet and implored him to come to his house, (Luke 8:41 ULB)

The man was not at his house when he spoke to Jesus. He wanted Jesus to go with him to his house.

Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go out in public for five months. (Luke 1:24 UDB)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that Elizabeth did not come out in public.

Translation Strategies

If the word used in the ULB would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other strategies.

1. Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.
2. Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.
 - **But you will be free from my oath if you come to my relatives and they will not give her to you.** (Genesis 24:41 ULB)
 - But you will be free from my oath if you go to my relatives and they will not give her to you.
 - **Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go out in public for five months.** (Luke 1:24 UDB)
 - Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not come out in public for five months.
2. Use another word that expresses the right meaning.
 - **When you have come to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ...** (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULB)
 - “When you have arrived in the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ...”
 - **Yahweh said to Noah, “Come, you and all your household, into the ark ...** (Genesis 7:1 ULB)
 - “Yahweh said to Noah, “Enter, you and all your household, into the ark ...”
 - **Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go out in public for five months.** (Luke 1:24 UDB)
 - Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not appear in public for five months.

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 1:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 32:1

Hebrew Months

This page answers the question: *What are the Hebrew months?*

Description

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Abib, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months that they use.
- Readers may not realize that phrases such as “the first month” or “the second month” refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
- Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
- The scripture may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

Abib - (This month is called **Nisan** after the Babylonian exile.) This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Abib 10, the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

Ziv - This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on western calendars.

Sivan - This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

Tammuz - This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on western calendars.

Ab - This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on western calendars.

Elul - This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on western calendars.

Ethanim - This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

Bul - This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on western calendars.

Kislev - This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on western calendars.

Tebeth - This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on western calendars.

Shebat - This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rain fall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on western calendars.

Adar - This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

Examples from the Bible

You are going out of Egypt on this day, in the month of Abib. (Exodus 13:4 ULB)

You must eat unleavened bread from twilight of the fourteenth day in the first month of the year, until twilight of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULB)

Translation Strategies

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (see [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

1. Tell the the number of the Hebrew month.
2. Use the months that people know.
3. State clearly what season the month occurred in.
4. Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The examples below use these two verses.

- **At that time, you will appear before me in the month of Abib, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.** (Exodus 23:15 ULB)
- **It will always be a statute for you that in the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month, you must humble yourselves and do no work.** (Leviticus 16:29 ULB)
- Tell the number of the Hebrew month.
 - At that time, you will appear before me in the first month of the year, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.
- Use the months that people know.
 - At that time, you will appear before me in the month of March, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.
 - It will always be a statute for you that on the day I choose in late September you must humble yourselves and do no work.”
- State clearly what season the month occurred in.
 - It will always be a statute for you that in the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month, you must humble yourselves and do no work.
- Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.
 - It will always be a statute for you that in the day I choose in early autumn¹ you must humble yourselves and do no work.
 - ◇ The footnote would look like:
 - ^[1]The Hebrew says, “the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month.”

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 5:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 7:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 29:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 29:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 29:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 29:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 30:1
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 31:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 31:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 35:1-2

Hendiadys

This page answers the question: *What is hendiadys and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

Description

When a speaker expresses a single idea by using two words that are connected with “and,” it is called “hendiadys.” In hendiadys, the two words work together. Usually one of the words is the primary idea and the other word further describes the primary one.

... his own kingdom and glory. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULB)

Though “kingdom” and “glory” are both nouns, “glory” actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a **kingdom of glory** or a **glorious kingdom**.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Often hendiadys contains an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Many languages do not use hendiadys, so people may not understand how the two words work together; one word describing the other.

Examples from the Bible

... for I will give you words and wisdom ... (Luke 21:15 ULB)

“Words” and “wisdom” are nouns, but in this figure of speech “wisdom” describes “words.”

... if you are willing and obedient ... (Isaiah 1:19 ULB)

“Willing” and “obedient” are adjectives, but “willing” describes “obedient.”

Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
2. Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
3. Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.
4. Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word describes the other.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
 - **for I will give you words and wisdom** (Luke 21:15 ULB)
 - for I will give you wise words
 - **that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own kingdom and glory.** (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULB)
 - that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own glorious kingdom.
2. Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
 - **for I will give you words and wisdom.** (Luke 21:15 ULB)
 - for I will give you words of wisdom.
 - **that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own kingdom and glory.** (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULB)
 - that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own kingdom of glory.
3. Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.
 - **if you are willing and obedient** (Isaiah 1:19 ULB)
 - if you are willingly obedient
4. Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word describes the other.
 - **if you are, willing and obedient** (Isaiah 1:19 ULB) - The adjective “obedient” can be substituted with the verb “obey.”
 - if you obey willingly

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 9:5-6](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30:6](#)

How to Translate Names

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this Melchizedek, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULB)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2 ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULB)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me.”

She named him Moses and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)

It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

- **You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites** (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
 - You went over the Jordan River and came to the city of Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the tribe of the Amorites
 - **Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you."** (Luke 13:31 ULB)
 - Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because King Herod wants to kill you.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
- **She named him Moses and said, "Because I drew him from the water."** (Exodus 2:11 ULB)
 - She named him Moses, which sounds like 'drawn out,' and said, "Because I drew him from the water."
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
- **... she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi;** (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)
 - ... she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called Well of the Living One who sees me;
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.
- **... a young man named Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - ... a young man named Paul¹ The footnote would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.
 - **But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9)
 - But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;
5. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."
- **a young man named Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - a young man named Saul The footnote would look like:

◇ ^[1]This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

- **But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9)
 - But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;
- **It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue** (Acts 14:1 ULB)
 - It came about in Iconium that Paul¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue The footnote would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 1:2
- 2 Chronicles 1:2
- 2 Chronicles 1:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 2:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 2:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 3:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 3:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 3:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 4:17-18
- 2 Chronicles 5:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 7:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 8:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 8:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 8:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 8:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 8:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 8:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 8:17-18
- 2 Chronicles 8:17-18
- 2 Chronicles 9:10
- 2 Chronicles 9:10
- 2 Chronicles 9:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 9:19-21
- 2 Chronicles 9:29-31
- 2 Chronicles 10:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 10:15
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 11:2-4
- 2 Chronicles 11:5-10

- 2 Chronicles 11:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 11:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 11:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 11:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 12:2-4
- 2 Chronicles 12:2-4
- 2 Chronicles 12:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 12:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 12:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 13:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 13:19-22
- 2 Chronicles 14:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 14:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 15:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 16:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 16:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 16:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 16:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 16:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 17:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 17:14-16
- 2 Chronicles 17:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 18:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 18:12-14
- 2 Chronicles 18:23-24
- 2 Chronicles 18:25-27
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- 2 Chronicles 19:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 19:11
- 2 Chronicles 20:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 20:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 20:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 20:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 20:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 20:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 20:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 20:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 20:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 20:31-33
- 2 Chronicles 20:34
- 2 Chronicles 20:35-37

- 2 Chronicles 20:35-37
- 2 Chronicles 20:35-37
- 2 Chronicles 20:35-37
- 2 Chronicles 21:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 21:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 22:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 22:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 22:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 22:10-12
- 2 Chronicles 22:10-12
- 2 Chronicles 23:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 23:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 23:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 23:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 23:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 24:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 24:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 24:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 25:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 25:13
- 2 Chronicles 25:17
- 2 Chronicles 25:23-24
- 2 Chronicles 25:27-28
- 2 Chronicles 26:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 26:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 26:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 26:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 26:11-13
- 2 Chronicles 26:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 27:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 27:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 28:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 28:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 28:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 28:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 28:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 28:16-18
- 2 Chronicles 28:19-21
- 2 Chronicles 29:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 29:12-14
- 2 Chronicles 29:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 30:18-20

- 2 Chronicles 31:11-13
- 2 Chronicles 31:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 32:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 32:30-31
- 2 Chronicles 33:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 33:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 33:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 33:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 33:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 34:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 34:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 34:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 34:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 34:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 34:14-16
- 2 Chronicles 34:14-16
- 2 Chronicles 34:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 34:22
- 2 Chronicles 34:22
- 2 Chronicles 35:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 35:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 35:15
- 2 Chronicles 35:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 35:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 35:22
- 2 Chronicles 36:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 36:3-4

Hyperbole and Generalization

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations?*

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something he means as completely true, as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement.

- It rains here every night.
- The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
- The speaker means this as a generalization if he means that it rains here most nights.
- The speaker means this as a hyperbole if he wants to say it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy.

Hyperbole: This is a figure of speech that uses **exaggeration**. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave one stone upon another (Luke 19:44 ULB)

- This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Generalization: This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame, but honor will come to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

- These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7)

- This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles may have done this.

Even though a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” it does not necessarily mean **exactly** “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never.” It simply means “most,” “most of the time,” “hardly any” or “rarely.”

Moses was educated in all the learning of the Egyptians (Acts 7:22 ULB)

- This generalization means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught.

Reason this is a translation issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is completely true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not completely true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

Examples from the Bible**Examples of Exaggeration**

If your hand causes you to stumble, cut it off. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULB)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

Examples of Generalization

They found him, and they said to him, "Everyone is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULB)

The disciples told Jesus that everyone was looking looking for him. They probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for him, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him.

But as his anointing teaches you about all things and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULB)

This is a generalization. God's Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know, not about everything that is possible to know.

Caution

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

... they saw Jesus walking on the sea and coming near the boat ... (John 6:19 ULB)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”

Yahweh is righteous in all his ways and gracious in all he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULB)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the exaggeration or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
3. For a generalization, add a word like “most” or “almost” to show that the generalization is not exact.
4. For a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
 - **The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore.** (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)
 - The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and a great number of troops.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
 - **The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame ...** (Proverbs 13:18 ULB)
 - In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame
 - **And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.** (Matthew 6:7)
 - “And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles generally do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.”
3. For a generalization, add a word like “most” or “almost” to show that the generalization is not exact.
 - **The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.** (Mark 1:5 ULB)

- Almost all the country of Judea and almost all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”
 - Most of the country of Judea and most of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”
4. For a generalization that has a word like “all,” always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.
- **The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.** (Mark 1:5 ULB)
 - The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 1:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 4:17-18
- 2 Chronicles 5:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 5:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 5:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 6:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 7:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 7:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 7:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 9:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 9:22-24
- 2 Chronicles 9:27-28
- 2 Chronicles 9:27-28
- 2 Chronicles 10:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 10:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 10:16
- 2 Chronicles 12:2-4
- 2 Chronicles 15:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 15:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 23:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 23:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 23:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 23:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 23:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 23:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 24:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 25:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 25:20-22
- 2 Chronicles 26:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 26:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 28:3-4

- [2 Chronicles 34:29-30](#)
- [2 Chronicles 36:22-23](#)

Hypothetical Situations

This page answers the question: *What is a hypothetical situation?*

“If the sun stopped shining...”, “What if the sun stopped shining...”, “Suppose the sun stopped shining...”, “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. These occur often in the Bible. We need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen, and that they will understand why the event was imagined.

Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions are the phrase that start with “if.”)

- If he had known about the party, he would have come to it. (But he did not come.)
- If he knew about the party, he would be here. (But he is not here.)
- If he knew about the party, he would come to it. (But he probably will not come.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible.
- Translators need to know their own language’s ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

Examples from the Bible

1. Hypothetical situations in the past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes.” (Matthew 11:21 ULB)

Here in Matthew 11:21 Jesus said that if the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles and repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles yet did not repent.

Martha then said to Jesus, “Lord, if you had been here, my brother would not have died.” (John 11:21 ULB)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus had come sooner. But Jesus did not come sooner, and her brother did die.

1. Hypothetical situations in the present

Also, no man puts new wine into old wineskins. If he did that, the new wine would burst the skins, and the wine would be spilled, and the wineskins would be destroyed. (Luke 5:37 ULB)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out? (Matthew 12:11 ULB)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

1. Hypothetical situation in the future

Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved; but for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULB)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show about how bad those days will be - so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble, so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

1. Expressing emotion about a hypothetical situation

Regrets and wishes are very similar.

The Israelites said to them, "If only we had died by Yahweh's hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full. For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger."
(Exodus 16:3 ULB)

Here the Israelites were afraid they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. I wish that you were either cold or hot! (Revelation 3:15 ULB)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

Translation Strategies

Know how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.
- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_hypo.

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 6:34-35](#)
- [2 Chronicles 6:36-39](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18:25-27](#)

Idiom

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, “You are telling me a lie”)
- Do not push the envelope (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme”)
- This house is under water (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value”)
- We are painting the town red (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely”)

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The phrase “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Let these words go deeply into your ears. (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples from the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, "We and you belong to the same race, the same family."

the children of Israel went out with a high hand. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

the one who lifts up my head (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, "the one who helps me."

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
 - **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."** (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
 - ...Look, we all belong to the same nation.
 - **he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.** (Luke 9:51 ULB)
 - He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.
 - **I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof.** (Luke 7:6 ULB)
 - I am not worthy that you should enter my house.
2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.
 - **Let these words go deeply into your ears** (Luke 9:44 ULB)
 - Be all ears when I say these words to you.
 - **"My eyes grow dim from grief** (Psalm 6:7 ULB)
 - I am crying my eyes out

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 1:1](#)
- [2 Chronicles 5:13-14](#)

- 2 Chronicles 6:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 6:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 6:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 6:24-25
- 2 Chronicles 6:36-39
- 2 Chronicles 7:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 7:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 7:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 9:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 9:22-24
- 2 Chronicles 10:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 10:15
- 2 Chronicles 10:15
- 2 Chronicles 10:16
- 2 Chronicles 11:1
- 2 Chronicles 11:2-4
- 2 Chronicles 11:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 11:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 11:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 12:2-4
- 2 Chronicles 12:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 12:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 12:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 12:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 13:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 13:16-18
- 2 Chronicles 13:16-18
- 2 Chronicles 13:19-22
- 2 Chronicles 15 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 15:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 15:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 15:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 15:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 15:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 16:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 16:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 16:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 17:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 17:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 17:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 18:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 18:12-14
- 2 Chronicles 18:17-18

- 2 Chronicles 19:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 19:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 20:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 20:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 20:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 20:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 20:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 20:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 20:24
- 2 Chronicles 20:27-28
- 2 Chronicles 20:31-33
- 2 Chronicles 21:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 21:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 21:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 21:12-15
- 2 Chronicles 21:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 21:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 22:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 23:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 24:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 24:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 24:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 24:20-22
- 2 Chronicles 25:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 25:13
- 2 Chronicles 25:17
- 2 Chronicles 25:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:20-22
- 2 Chronicles 25:20-22
- 2 Chronicles 25:27-28
- 2 Chronicles 28:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 28:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 28:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 28:16-18
- 2 Chronicles 29:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 29:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 29:12-14
- 2 Chronicles 29:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 29:35-36
- 2 Chronicles 30:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 30:10-12
- 2 Chronicles 30:21-22
- 2 Chronicles 31 General Notes

- 2 Chronicles 31:11-13
- 2 Chronicles 31:11-13
- 2 Chronicles 31:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 32:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 32:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 32:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 32:24-26
- 2 Chronicles 33:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 33:24-25
- 2 Chronicles 33:24-25
- 2 Chronicles 34:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 34:23-25
- 2 Chronicles 34:31-32
- 2 Chronicles 34:31-32
- 2 Chronicles 35:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 35:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 36:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 36:8
- 2 Chronicles 36:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 36:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 36:17
- 2 Chronicles 36:20-21

Irony

This page answers the question: *What is irony and how can I translate it?*

Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

Jesus answered them, "People who are in good health do not need a physician, only people who are sick need one. I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance." (Luke 5:31-32 ULB)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

Reason this is a translation issue

- If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

Examples from the Bible

How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULB)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULB)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
 Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
 Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;
 "the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20, 21 ULB)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two underlined phrases above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

Already you have all you could want! Already you have become rich! You began to reign—and that quite apart from us! (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULB)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. The actual meaning of the irony is not found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

- **How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!** (Mark 7:9 ULB)
 - You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!
 - You act like it is good to reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!
- **I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.** (Luke 5:32 ULB)
 - I did not come to call people who think that they are righteous to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.

2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

- **How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!** (Mark 7:9 ULB)

- You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!
- **“Present your case,” says Yahweh; “present your best arguments for your idols,” says the King of Jacob. “Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.” (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULB)**
 - ‘Present your case,’ says Yahweh; ‘present your best arguments for your idols,’ says the King of Jacob. Your idols cannot bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen so we may know these things well. We cannot hear them because they cannot speak to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.
- **Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?**

Can you find the way back to their houses for them?

**Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;
the number of your days is so large!” (Job 38:20, 21 ULB)**

- Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not!

Uses:

- **2 Chronicles 20:10-11**

Merism

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULB)

I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End. (Revelation 22:13, ULB)

Alpha and Omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth ..., (Matthew 11:25 ULB)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples from the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULB)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

He will bless those who honor him, both young and old. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of, old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
 - **I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth ...** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
 - I praise you, Father, Lord of everything ...
 - **From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised.** (Psalm 113:3 ULB)
 - In all places, people should praise Yahweh's name.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.
 - **I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth.** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
 - I praise you, Father, Lord of everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth.
 - **He will bless those who honor him, both young and old.** (Psalm 115:13 ULB)
 - He will bless all those who honor him, regardless of whether they are young or old.

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 6:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 7:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 9:29-31
- 2 Chronicles 12:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- 2 Chronicles 19:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 20:34
- 2 Chronicles 25:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 26:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 28:26-27
- 2 Chronicles 31:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 34:29-30
- 2 Chronicles 35:26

Metaphor

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a sentence that has one?*

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which one concept (the “image”) stands for another concept (the “topic”). That is, the topic is spoken of as if it were the image. For example, someone might say,

- The girl I love is a red rose.

Here the topic is “the girl I love,” and the image is “a red rose.” The girl is spoken of as if she were a red rose.

Anything in a language can serve as a metaphor. For example, verb forms can be used in unusual ways, as in,

- The Apostle Paul tells us that Christians will rise to life again.

In this case, the English present tense form “tells” is a metaphor for the past tense form “told,” because the Apostle Paul lived long ago.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique.

Speakers most often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Kinds of Metaphors

There are several kinds of metaphors: “live” metaphors, “dead” metaphors, and patterned metaphors.

Live Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept. People also easily recognize them as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2 ULB)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people.

Here is another example: Jesus said, ‘Go and tell that fox...,’” where “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was referring to Herod either as a very evil, cunning person or as a king who was only pretending to be great.

Dead Metaphors

A dead metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Examples in English are “table leg,” “family tree,” “leaf” meaning a page in a book, and “crane” meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads. English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples in Biblical Hebrew are probably “heal” meaning “repair,” and “sick” meaning “spiritually powerless because of sin.”

Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP often stands for the concept of MORE. Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going *up*,” “A *highly* intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The heat is going *down*,” and “The stock market *took a tumble*.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that could be seen or held, as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat *up*.” MORE is spoken of as UP.
- “Let us *go ahead* with our debate.” DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- “You *defend* your theory well.” ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- “A *flow* of words” WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view them as unusual expressions, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. A metaphor has three parts.

1. **Topic** - The thing someone speaks of is called the topic.

2. **Image** - The thing he calls it is the image.
3. **Points of Comparison** - The ways in which the author claims that the topic and image are similar in some manner are their points of comparison.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a red rose. The woman (his “love”) is the **topic**, and “red rose” is the **image**. Beauty and delicacy are the points of comparison that the speaker sees as similarities between both the topic and image. Note, however, that a rose’s beauty is not identical to a woman’s beauty. Neither are the two kinds of delicacy the same. So these points of comparison are not built upon identical characteristics, but rather upon characteristics that are seen by the writer as similar in some way.

- My love is a red, red rose.

Often, as in the metaphor above, the speaker explicitly states the **topic** and the **image**, but he does not state the points of comparison. The speaker leaves it to the hearer to think of those points of comparison. Because the hearers must do that, the speaker’s message tends to be more powerful.

Also in the Bible, normally the **topic** and the **image** are stated clearly, but not the points of comparison. The writer hopes that the audience will understand the points of comparison that are implied.

Jesus said to them. “I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty.” (John 6:35 ULB)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **topic** is “I,” and the **image** is “bread.” Bread is a food that people ate all the time. The point of comparison between bread and Jesus is that people needed bread every day for nourishment. In a similar way, people need Jesus every day in order to live spiritually.

Note that this metaphor is really several metaphors. The first metaphor is that bread is used to represent Jesus. The second metaphor, which is inside the first one, is that physical life represents the spiritual life, which consists of living with God forever. The third metaphor is that eating bread represents benefitting from Jesus, who enables us to live with God forever.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel about the other.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.

- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker is thinking of and wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples from the Bible

Listen to this word, you cows of Bashan, (Amos 4:1 ULB)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria (the topic is “you”) with as if they were cows (the image). Amos does not say what points of comparison between these women and the cows he has in mind, but from the context it seems that he means that both the women and the cows are fat and interested only in eating.

Note, however, that Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows, for he speaks to them as human beings.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two related metaphors. The topics are “we” and “you,” and the images are “clay and ”potter.” The intended point of comparison between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish: the potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people Israel. The point of comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that both the clay and the people of Israel are made into something different from what they were before.

Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the image in his metaphor, and the topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers probably understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression of a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language. (See Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns for lists of some of these patterned pairs of concepts.)
2. If the metaphor seems to be a “live” metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See [Simile](#).
4. If the target audience would not know the image, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that image for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the topic is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
7. If the target audience will not know the intended points of comparison between the image and topic, then state them clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is a common expression of a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
 - **Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet.** (Mark 5:22 ULB)
 - Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, immediately bowed down in front of him.
2. If the metaphor seems to be a “live” metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
 - **It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law,** (Mark 10:5 ULB)
 - It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law,

There is no change to this one - but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

1. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”
 - **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)
 - And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are like clay. You are like a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.
2. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
 - **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
 - Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick.
3. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
 - **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)
 - “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the wood. You are our carver; and we all are the work of your hand.”
 - “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the string. You are the weaver; and we all are the work of your hand.”
4. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
 - **Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
 - Yahweh lives; He is my rock. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.
5. If the target audience will not know the intended points of comparison between the image and the topic, then state them clearly.
 - **Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
 - Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock under which I can hide from my enemies. May the God of my salvation be exalted.
 - **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
 - Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner’s pointed stick.
6. If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

- **I will make you become fishers of men.** (Mark 1:17 ULB)
 - I will make you become people who gather men.
 - Now you gather fish. I will make you gather people.

To learn more about specific metaphors read:

- Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns

Uses:

- Introduction to 2 Chronicles
- 2 Chronicles 1:2
- 2 Chronicles 5:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 6:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 6:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 6:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 6:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 6:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 6:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 6:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 6:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 6:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 6:24-25
- 2 Chronicles 6:26-27
- 2 Chronicles 6:26-27
- 2 Chronicles 6:26-27
- 2 Chronicles 6:26-27
- 2 Chronicles 6:28-31
- 2 Chronicles 6:28-31
- 2 Chronicles 6:28-31
- 2 Chronicles 6:36-39
- 2 Chronicles 6:36-39
- 2 Chronicles 6:36-39
- 2 Chronicles 6:40-42
- 2 Chronicles 6:40-42
- 2 Chronicles 6:40-42
- 2 Chronicles 7:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 7:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 7:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 7:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 7:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 7:16-18
- 2 Chronicles 7:19-20
- 2 Chronicles 7:19-20

- 2 Chronicles 7:19-20
- 2 Chronicles 7:21-22
- 2 Chronicles 8:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 8:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 9:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 9:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 9:22-24
- 2 Chronicles 10 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 10:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 10:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 10:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 10:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:12-14
- 2 Chronicles 10:12-14
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 11:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 11:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 11:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 12:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 12:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 12:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 12:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 12:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 13:12
- 2 Chronicles 13:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 13:16-18
- 2 Chronicles 13:19-22
- 2 Chronicles 14:1-4
- 2 Chronicles 14:1-4
- 2 Chronicles 14:1-4
- 2 Chronicles 14:1-4
- 2 Chronicles 14:1-4
- 2 Chronicles 14:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 14:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 14:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 14:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 14:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 15:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 15:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 15:8-9

- 2 Chronicles 15:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 16:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 16:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 16:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 17:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 18:12-14
- 2 Chronicles 18:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 18:19
- 2 Chronicles 19:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 19:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 19:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 20:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 20:31-33
- 2 Chronicles 21:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 21:11
- 2 Chronicles 21:11
- 2 Chronicles 21:12-15
- 2 Chronicles 21:12-15
- 2 Chronicles 22 General Notes
- 2 Chronicles 22:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 23:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 23:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 24:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 24:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 25:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 25:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 25:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 25:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 26:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 26:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 26:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 26:16-18
- 2 Chronicles 26:19-20
- 2 Chronicles 26:21
- 2 Chronicles 26:21
- 2 Chronicles 27:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 27:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 27:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 27:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 27:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 28:1-2

- 2 Chronicles 28:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 28:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 28:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 28:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 28:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 28:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 28:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 28:19-21
- 2 Chronicles 28:19-21
- 2 Chronicles 28:19-21
- 2 Chronicles 28:24-25
- 2 Chronicles 28:26-27
- 2 Chronicles 28:26-27
- 2 Chronicles 28:26-27
- 2 Chronicles 29:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 29:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 29:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 29:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 29:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 29:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 29:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 29:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 29:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 30:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 30:6
- 2 Chronicles 30:6
- 2 Chronicles 30:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 30:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 30:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 30:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 30:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 30:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 30:10-12
- 2 Chronicles 30:10-12
- 2 Chronicles 30:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 30:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 30:25-27
- 2 Chronicles 31:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 31:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 32:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 32:24-26
- 2 Chronicles 33:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 33:4-6

- 2 Chronicles 33:21-23
- 2 Chronicles 34:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 34:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 34:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 34:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 34:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 34:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 34:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 34:23-25
- 2 Chronicles 34:23-25
- 2 Chronicles 34:26-28
- 2 Chronicles 34:26-28
- 2 Chronicles 34:31-32
- 2 Chronicles 35:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 36:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 36:5-7
- 2 Chronicles 36:8
- 2 Chronicles 36:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 36:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 36:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 36:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 36:15-16

Metonymy

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

and the blood of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- to a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or "reign." This means that God would make him become the king that would follow King David.

Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

... who warned you to flee from the wrath that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
 - **He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.** (Luke 22:20 ULB)
 - "He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "The wine in this cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."
2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.
 - **The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David.** (Luke 1:32 ULB)
 - "The Lord God will give him the kingly authority of his father, David."
 - "The Lord God will make him king like his ancestor, King David."
 - **who warned you to flee from the wrath to come?** (Luke 3:7 ULB)
 - "who warned you to flee from God's coming punishment?"

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies.

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 1:2
- 2 Chronicles 1:8-11
- 2 Chronicles 2:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 2:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 2:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 2:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 2:17-18
- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 3:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 3:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 3:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 3:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 3:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 3:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 4:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 4:4-6

- 2 Chronicles 4:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 4:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 4:17-18
- 2 Chronicles 4:19-21
- 2 Chronicles 5:1
- 2 Chronicles 6:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 6:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 6:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 6:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 6:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 6:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 6:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 6:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 6:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 6:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 6:32-33
- 2 Chronicles 6:32-33
- 2 Chronicles 6:32-33
- 2 Chronicles 6:34-35
- 2 Chronicles 6:36-39
- 2 Chronicles 6:40-42
- 2 Chronicles 6:40-42
- 2 Chronicles 6:40-42
- 2 Chronicles 7:7
- 2 Chronicles 7:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 7:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 7:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 7:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 7:16-18
- 2 Chronicles 7:16-18
- 2 Chronicles 7:16-18
- 2 Chronicles 7:19-20
- 2 Chronicles 8:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 8:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 8:11
- 2 Chronicles 8:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 9:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 9:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 9:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 9:10
- 2 Chronicles 9:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 9:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 9:15-16

- 2 Chronicles 9:17-18
- 2 Chronicles 9:22-24
- 2 Chronicles 9:22-24
- 2 Chronicles 10:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 10:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 10:15
- 2 Chronicles 10:16
- 2 Chronicles 10:16
- 2 Chronicles 10:16
- 2 Chronicles 10:16
- 2 Chronicles 10:16
- 2 Chronicles 10:16
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 11:1
- 2 Chronicles 11:2-4
- 2 Chronicles 11:5-10
- 2 Chronicles 11:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 11:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 12:1
- 2 Chronicles 12:2-4
- 2 Chronicles 12:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 12:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 12:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 12:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 12:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 12:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 12:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 12:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 12:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 12:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 13:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 13:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 13:16-18
- 2 Chronicles 13:16-18
- 2 Chronicles 14:1-4
- 2 Chronicles 14:1-4
- 2 Chronicles 14:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 14:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 14:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 14:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 15:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 15:6-7

- 2 Chronicles 15:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 16:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 16:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 16:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 16:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 16:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 16:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 16:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 16:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 17:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 17:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 18:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 18:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 18:12-14
- 2 Chronicles 18:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 18:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 18:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 18:22
- 2 Chronicles 19:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 19:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 19:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 19:10
- 2 Chronicles 20:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 20:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 20:5-7
- 2 Chronicles 20:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 20:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 20:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 20:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 20:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 20:31-33
- 2 Chronicles 20:35-37
- 2 Chronicles 21:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 21:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 21:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 21:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 21:12-15
- 2 Chronicles 21:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 22:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 22:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 22:7-8

- 2 Chronicles 22:9
- 2 Chronicles 22:10-12
- 2 Chronicles 22:10-12
- 2 Chronicles 23:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 23:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 23:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 24:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 24:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 25:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 25:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 25:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 25:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:20-22
- 2 Chronicles 25:20-22
- 2 Chronicles 25:23-24
- 2 Chronicles 26:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 26:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 26:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 26:11-13
- 2 Chronicles 26:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 26:16-18
- 2 Chronicles 27:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 28:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 28:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 28:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 28:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 28:19-21
- 2 Chronicles 28:24-25
- 2 Chronicles 28:24-25
- 2 Chronicles 29:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 29:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 29:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 29:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 29:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 29:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 29:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 29:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 29:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 29:31
- 2 Chronicles 29:35-36
- 2 Chronicles 30:6
- 2 Chronicles 30:7-9

- 2 Chronicles 30:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 30:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 31:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 31:11-13
- 2 Chronicles 31:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 32:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 32:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 32:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 32:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 32:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 32:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 32:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 32:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 32:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 32:24-26
- 2 Chronicles 32:24-26
- 2 Chronicles 32:30-31
- 2 Chronicles 32:30-31
- 2 Chronicles 33:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 33:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 33:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 33:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 33:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 33:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 33:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 33:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 33:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 33:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 33:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 34:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 34:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 34:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 34:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 34:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 34:23-25
- 2 Chronicles 34:26-28
- 2 Chronicles 34:26-28
- 2 Chronicles 34:26-28
- 2 Chronicles 34:31-32
- 2 Chronicles 34:33
- 2 Chronicles 35:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 35:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 35:10-12

- 2 Chronicles 35:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 35:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 35:23-24
- 2 Chronicles 36:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 36:5-7
- 2 Chronicles 36:5-7
- 2 Chronicles 36:5-7
- 2 Chronicles 36:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 36:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 36:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 36:17
- 2 Chronicles 36:17
- 2 Chronicles 36:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 36:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 36:22-23

Nominal Adjectives

This page answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

... The rich man had huge numbers of flocks and herds ... (2 Samuel 12:2 ULB)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man.”

He will not be rich; his wealth will not last ... (Job 15:29 ULB)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He.”

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

...the rich must not give more than the half shekel, and the poor must not give less.
(Exodus 30:15 ULB)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich,” and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

Examples from the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of the righteous. (Psalms 125:3 ULB)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are the meek (Matthew 5:5 ULB)

“The meek” here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

- **The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of the righteous.** (Psalms 125:3 ULB)
 - The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of righteous people.
- **Blessed are the meek ...** (Matthew 5:5 ULB)
 - Blessed are people who are meek ...

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 19:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 24:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 31:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 33:4-6

Numbers

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words, such as “five” or as numerals, such as “5.” Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000), or “one hundred million” (100,000,000.) Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about three thousand men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULB)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason this is a translation issue: Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples from the Bible

When Jared had lived 162 years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived eight hundred years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived 962 years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULB)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands (Genesis 24:60 ULB)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULB)

1. Write numbers using numerals.
 - I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, 1,000,000 talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
 - I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.
 - I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand (100,000) talents of gold, one million (1,000,000) talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
 - I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand talents of gold, a thousand thousand talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.
 - I have prepared for Yahweh's house a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents), and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULB and UDB

The *Unlocked Literal Bible* (ULB) and the *Unlocked Dynamic Bible* (UDB) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals “130” instead of “one hundred thirty”).

When Adam had lived 130 years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived eight hundred years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived 930 years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULB)### Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 1:2
- 2 Chronicles 1:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 1:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 1:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 1:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 1:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 2:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 2:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 2:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 2:17-18
- 2 Chronicles 2:17-18
- 2 Chronicles 2:17-18
- 2 Chronicles 2:17-18
- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 3:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 3:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 3:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 3:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 4:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 4:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 4:11-13
- 2 Chronicles 5:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 7:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 7:4-6

- 2 Chronicles 8:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 8:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 8:17-18
- 2 Chronicles 9:9
- 2 Chronicles 9:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 9:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 9:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 9:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 9:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 10:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 11:1
- 2 Chronicles 11:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 12:2-4
- 2 Chronicles 12:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 13:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 13:16-18
- 2 Chronicles 13:19-22
- 2 Chronicles 14:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 14:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 16:1
- 2 Chronicles 16:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 16:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 17:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 17:14-16
- 2 Chronicles 17:14-16
- 2 Chronicles 17:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 18:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 20:31-33
- 2 Chronicles 22:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 23:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 23:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 23:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 24:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 24:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 25:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 25:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 25:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 25:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 25:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 25:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 25:23-24
- 2 Chronicles 26:1-3

- 2 Chronicles 26:11-13
- 2 Chronicles 27:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 27:5
- 2 Chronicles 27:5
- 2 Chronicles 27:5
- 2 Chronicles 27:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 28:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 28:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 28:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 29:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 29:32-33
- 2 Chronicles 30:23-24
- 2 Chronicles 31:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 33:21-23
- 2 Chronicles 34:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 35:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 35:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 35:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 35:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 35:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 35:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 35:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 36:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 36:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 36:5-7
- 2 Chronicles 36:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 36:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 36:20-21

Order of Events

This page answers the question: *Why are the events not listed in the order they happened, and how do I translate them?*

Description

In the Bible, events are not always told in the order in which they occurred. Sometimes the author wanted to discuss something that happened at an earlier time than the event that he just talked about. This can be confusing to the reader.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers might think that the events happened in the order that they are told. It is important to help them understand the correct order of events.

Examples from the Bible

But then Herod ... had John locked up in prison. Now it came about, while all the people were being baptized by John, that Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULB)

This could sound like John baptized Jesus after John was locked up in prison, but John baptized Jesus before John was locked up in prison.

Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." (Joshua 6:8-10 ULB)

This could sound like Joshua gave the order not to shout after the army had already started their march, but he had given that order before they started marching.

Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2 ULB)

This sounds like a person must first open the scroll and then break its seals, but the seals that lock the scroll must be broken before the scroll can be unrolled.

Translation Strategies

1. If your language uses phrases or time words to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using one of them.
2. If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that. (See: the section on Aspect on Verbs)
3. If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occurred, consider reordering the events so they are in that order. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6). (See: Verse Bridges)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If your language uses phrases, time words or tenses to show that an event happened before the one just mentioned, consider using one of them.
 - ²⁰ **But then Herod ... had John locked up in prison.** ²¹ **Now it came about, while all the people were being baptized by John, that Jesus also was baptized.** (Luke 3:20-21 ULB)
 - ²⁰ But then Herod ... had John locked up in prison. ²¹ Before John was put in prison, while all the people were being baptized by John, Jesus also was baptized.
 - **Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals?** (Revelation 5:2 ULB)
 - Who is worthy to open the scroll after breaking its seals?
2. If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that.
 - ⁸ **Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets...**¹⁰ **But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout."** (Joshua 6:8-10 ULB)
 - ⁸ Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets...¹⁰ But Joshua had commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout.
3. If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occur, consider reordering the events. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6).
 - ⁸ **Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets...**¹⁰ **But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout."** (Joshua 6:8-10 ULB)
 - ⁸⁻¹⁰ Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." Then just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets ...
 - **Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals?** (Revelation 5:2 ULB)
 - Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_events.## Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 1:2](#)

Ordinal Numbers

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church first apostles, second prophets, third teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULB)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

| Numeral | Number | Ordinal Number | | ——— | ——— | ——— | | 4 | four | fourth | | 10 | ten | tenth | | 100 | one hundred | one hundredth | | 1,000 | one thousand | one thousandth |

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

| Numeral | Number | Ordinal Number | | ——— | ——— | ——— | | 1 | one | first | | 2 | two | second | | 3 | three | third | | 5 | five | fifth | | 12 | twelve | twelfth |

Reason this is a translation issue:

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples from the Bible

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)

People tossed lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The first row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The second row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The third row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The fourth row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULB)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
 - **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)
 - There were twenty-four lots. One lot went to Jehoiarib, another to Jedaiah, another to Harim, ... another to Delaiah, and the last went to Maaziah.
 - There were twenty-four lots. One lot went to Jehoiarib, the next to Jedaiah, the next to Harim, ... the next to Delaiah, and the last went to Maaziah.
 - **A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four rivers. The name of the first is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the second river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the third river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The fourth river is the Euphrates.** (Genesis 2:10-14 ULB)
 - A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four rivers. The name of one is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the next river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the next river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The last river is the Euphrates.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.
 - **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)
 - They cast twenty-four lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim, ... Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 3:1-3](#)

- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 5:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 7:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 7:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 10:12-14
- 2 Chronicles 12:2-4
- 2 Chronicles 13:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 15:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 16:13-14
- 2 Chronicles 17:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 20:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 23:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 29:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 29:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 29:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 29:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 30:1
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 31:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 31:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 34:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 34:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 34:22
- 2 Chronicles 35:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 35:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 36:22-23

Parables

This page answers the question: *What is a parable?*

A parable is a short story that makes truth easy to understand and hard to forget.

Description

A parable is a short story that is told to teach a truth. Though the events in a parable could happen, they did not actually happen. They are told only to teach a truth. Parables rarely contain the names of specific people. (This may help you identify what is a parable and what is an account of a real event.) Parables often have figures of speech such as simile and metaphor.

Then he also told them a parable. “Can a blind person guide another blind person? If he did, they would both fall into a pit, would they not?” (Luke 6:39 ULB)

This parable teaches that if a person does not have spiritual understanding, he cannot help someone else to understand spiritual things.

Examples from the Bible

Neither do people light a lamp and put it under a basket, but rather, on the lampstand, and it shines for everyone in the house. Let your light shine before people in such a way that they see your good deeds and praise your Father who is in heaven. (Matthew 5:15-16 ULB)

This parable teaches us not to hide the way we live for God from other people.

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, “The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches.” (Matthew 13:31-32 ULB)

This parable teaches that the kingdom of God may seem small at first, but it will grow and spread throughout the world.

Translation Strategies

1. If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown things in it, you can replace the unknown things with things that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the teaching the same. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))
2. If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as “Jesus told this story about being generous.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown things in it, you can replace the unknown things with things that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the teaching the same.
 - **Jesus said to them, "Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand".** (Mark 4:21 ULB)
 - If people do not know what a lampstand is, you could substitute something else that people put a light on so it can give light to the house.
 - Jesus said to them, "Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a high shelf.
 - **Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches."** (Matthew 13:31-32 ULB)
 - To sow seeds means to toss them so that they scatter on the ground. If people are not familiar with sowing, you can substitute planting.
 - Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and planted in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches."
2. If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as "Jesus told this story about being generous."
 - **Jesus said to them, "Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand".** (Mark 4:21 ULB)
 - Jesus told them a parable about why they should witness openly. "Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand." (Mark 4:21 ULB)
 - **Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches."** (Matthew 13:31-32 ULB)
 - Then Jesus presented another parable to them about how the Kingdom of God grows. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches."

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 25:18-19](#)

Parallelism

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term “synonymous parallelism” for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term **Doublet** for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

Examples from the Bible

The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

Your word is a lamp to my feet and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULB)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULB)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULB)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

The second completes what is said in the first.

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULB)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULB)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULB)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
 - **Until now you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13, ULB) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.
 - “Until now you have deceived me with your lies.”

- **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB) - The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”
 - “Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.”
 - **For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel.** (Micah 6:2 ULB) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:
 - “For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.”
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
- **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB)
 - “Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”
- **you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13 ULB)
 - “All you have done is lie to me.”
 - **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB)
 - “Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.”

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 6:36-39
- 2 Chronicles 7:21-22
- 2 Chronicles 10:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 29:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 30:25-27
- 2 Chronicles 34:26-28

Personification

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

Or sin:

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were like relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
2. Use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.

- ... **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - God speaks of sin as a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.
 - ... sin is at your door, waiting to attack you

2. Use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.

- ... **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - This can be translated with the word “as.”
 - ... sin is crouching at the door, just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person.

3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

- ... **even the winds and the sea obey him** (Matthew 8:27 ULB) - The men speak of the “wind and the sea as if they are able to hear” and obey Jesus as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.
 - He even controls the winds and the sea.

Note: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics.)### Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 7:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 12:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 16:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 29:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 30:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 36:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 36:20-21

Reflexive Pronouns

This page answers the question: *What are reflexive pronouns?*

Description

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. English does this by using **Reflexive pronouns**. These are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, and themselves. Other languages may have other ways to show this.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. For those languages, translators will need to know how to translate the English reflexive pronouns.
- The reflexive pronouns in English also have other functions.

Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- To show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- To show that someone did something alone
- To show that someone or something was alone

Examples from the Bible

Reflexive pronouns are used to show the same person or thing fills two different roles in a sentence.

If I should testify about myself alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULB)

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify themselves. (John 11:55 ULB)

Reflexive pronouns are used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence.

Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were (John 4:2 ULB)

So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, since he was already in the boat. Other boats were also with him. And a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full. But Jesus himself was in the stern, asleep on a cushion. (Mark 4:36-38 ULB)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone did something alone.

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain by himself. (John 6:15 ULB)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone or something was alone.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place by itself. (John 20:6-7 ULB)

Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”
5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
 - **If I should testify about myself alone, my testimony would not be true.** (John 5:31)
 - “If I should self-testify alone, my testimony would not be true.”
 - **Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify themselves.** (John 11:55)
 - “Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to self-purify.”
2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
 - **He himself took our sickness and bore our diseases.** (Matthew 8:17 ULB)
 - “It was he who took our sickness and bore our diseases.”
 - **Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were.** (John 4:2)
 - “It was not Jesus who was baptizing, but his disciples were.”
3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

- **Now Jesus said this to test Philip, for he himself knew what he was going to do.** (John 6:6)
4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”
- **When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain by himself.** (John 6:15)
 - “When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again alone up the mountain.”
5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.
- **He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place by itself.** (John 20:6-7 ULB)
 - “He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up and lying in it’s own place.”

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 21:8-10](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21:12-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 24:17-19](#)

Rhetorical Question

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all, but if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

Those who stood by said, "Is this how you insult God's high priest?" (Acts 23:4 ULB)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God's high priest. Rather they used their question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. Some of the purposes of these rhetorical questions are to express attitudes or feelings, to rebuke people, to teach something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, and to introduce something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are more limited or different than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULB)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULB)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULB)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was going to compare the kingdom of God to something.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, is the one who asked it bothered that he did not get an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you know what the purpose of the rhetorical question is. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the answer after the question.
 - **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
 - Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!
 - **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
 - Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? None of you would do that!
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
 - **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed...** (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)
 - This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed..."
 - **Is this how you insult God's high priest?** (Acts 23:4 ULB)
 - You should not insult God's high priest!
 - **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11 ULB)
 - I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!
 - **And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULB)
 - How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
 - **Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?** (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)
 - You still rule the kingdom of Israel, do you not?
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

- **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
 - If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, would you give him a stone?
- **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
 - What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 1:8-11
- 2 Chronicles 2:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 6:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 9:29-31
- 2 Chronicles 10:16
- 2 Chronicles 12:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 16:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 18:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 18:17-18
- 2 Chronicles 18:23-24
- 2 Chronicles 19:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 20:5-7
- 2 Chronicles 20:5-7
- 2 Chronicles 20:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 24:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 24:20-22
- 2 Chronicles 25:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 25:16
- 2 Chronicles 25:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 28:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 32:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 32:9-10
- 2 Chronicles 32:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 32:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 32:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 32:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 32:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 32:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 32:13-15
- 2 Chronicles 35:20-21

Simile

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves, so be as wise as serpents and harmless as doves. (Matthew 10:16 ULB)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, as a good soldier of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULB)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULB)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lightning flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
 - **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves** (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
 - See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves.
 - **For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword.** (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)
 - For the word of God is living and active and more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
 - **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves,** (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

- See, I send you out as chickens in the midst of wild dogs,
 - **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!
 - **If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard,** (Matthew 17:20)
 - If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed,
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.
- **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves,** (Matthew 10:16 ULB)
 - See, I send you out and people will want to harm you.
 - **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!

Uses:

- [2 Chronicles 1:8-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18:15-16](#)
- [2 Chronicles 21 General Notes](#)

Symbolic Action

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean “Yes” or turn their head from side to side to mean “No.” Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason this is a translation issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In others cultures it means “Yes.”

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

Translators need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in their own culture, they need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples from the Bible

Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet. (Luke 8:41 ULB)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULB)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
 - **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULB)
 - Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.
 - **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULB)
 - Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
 - **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41)
 - Jairus showed Jesus great respect.
 - **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20)
 - Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.
 - **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULB) - Since Jairus actually did this, we would not substitute an action from our own culture.
 - **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULB) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.
 - Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 6:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 6:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 6:28-31
- 2 Chronicles 6:32-33
- 2 Chronicles 6:34-35
- 2 Chronicles 6:36-39

- 2 Chronicles 7:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 7:21-22
- 2 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 20:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 23:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 23:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 23:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 23:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 25:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 34:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 34:26-28

Synecdoche

This page answers the question: *What does the word synecdoche mean?*

Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

My soul exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

the Pharisees said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful ...?”
(Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.
 - **”My soul exalts the Lord.”** (Luke 1:46 ULB)
 - ”I exalt the Lord.”
 - **...the Pharisees said to him** (Mark 2:24 ULB)

- ...a representative of the Pharisees said to him ...
- **... I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished ...** (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
 - I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 1:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 4:11-13
- 2 Chronicles 4:14-16
- 2 Chronicles 6:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 6:18-20
- 2 Chronicles 6:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 6:32-33
- 2 Chronicles 6:34-35
- 2 Chronicles 6:36-39
- 2 Chronicles 8:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 8:3-4
- 2 Chronicles 9:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 12:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 12:15-16
- 2 Chronicles 13:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 15:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 15:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 16:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 16:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 16:4-6
- 2 Chronicles 16:7-8
- 2 Chronicles 17:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 17:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 17:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 18:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 18:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- 2 Chronicles 20:1-2
- 2 Chronicles 20:5-7
- 2 Chronicles 20:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 20:12-13
- 2 Chronicles 20:27-28
- 2 Chronicles 21:11
- 2 Chronicles 21:16-17
- 2 Chronicles 22:4-5
- 2 Chronicles 26:1-3

- 2 Chronicles 26:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 26:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 27:5
- 2 Chronicles 27:5
- 2 Chronicles 29:6-7
- 2 Chronicles 29:31
- 2 Chronicles 30:1
- 2 Chronicles 30:10-12
- 2 Chronicles 32:1
- 2 Chronicles 32:2-3
- 2 Chronicles 32:5
- 2 Chronicles 33:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 33:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 34:10-11
- 2 Chronicles 34:17-19
- 2 Chronicles 34:23-25
- 2 Chronicles 34:26-28
- 2 Chronicles 34:33
- 2 Chronicles 35:5-6
- 2 Chronicles 35:10-12
- 2 Chronicles 35:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 35:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 35:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 35:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 35:22
- 2 Chronicles 35:22
- 2 Chronicles 35:22
- 2 Chronicles 36:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 36:22-23
- 2 Chronicles 36:22-23

Translate Unknowns

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The translationWords pages and the translationNotes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread or know what it is.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves. (Matthew 7:15 ULB)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULB)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made great lights (Psalm 136:7 ULB)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins ... will be white like snow (Isaiah 1:18 ULB)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

- **Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves.** (Matthew 7:15 ULB)
 - Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly hungry and dangerous animals.

“Ravenous wolves” is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See [Translating Metaphors](#).)

- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
 - We have here only five loaves of baked grain seeds and two fish

2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

- **your sins ... will be white like snow** (Isaiah 1:18 ULB) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

- your sins ... will be white like milk
- your sins ... will be white like the moon

3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

- **Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh. But he refused to drink it.** (Mark 15:23 ULB) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word “medicine.”
 - Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with a medicine called myrrh. But he refused to drink it.
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
 - We have here only five loaves of baked crushed seed bread and two fish

4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

- **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)
 - I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for wild dogs
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
 - We have here only five loaves of baked food and two fish

5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

- **to him who made great lights** (Psalm 136:7 ULB)
 - to him who made the sun and the moon

Uses:

- 2 Chronicles 1:14-15
- 2 Chronicles 2:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 5:11-12
- 2 Chronicles 9:17-18
- 2 Chronicles 9:19-21
- 2 Chronicles 12:2-4
- 2 Chronicles 29:25-26